FOMA® SH906i

ISSUE DATE: '08.5

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

NTT DoCoMo

DoCoMo
W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS System

Thank you for purchasing the FOMA SH906i.

Make sure thoroughly read this manual and the manuals included with optional accessories before and during use to ensure proper operation. If any of the contents in this manual are unclear, please contact number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

The FOMA SH906i is designed to make your everyday life more convenient. Careful use will ensure a long service life.

Using the FOMA terminal

- Because it relies on radio signals, the FOMA terminal cannot be used in places with no signal (such as tunnels, underground, or in buildings), in places with a weak signal or outside the FOMA service area. There may be times when the terminal cannot be used in the upper floors of a building even with no obstructions in sight. There may also be times when the signal is strong and you are not moving but the call is interrupted.
- Make sure not to disturb others when using in public places, places with many people or quiet places.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses electrical signals, it is possible for a third party to listen in on a conversation. However, the W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS system automatically applies privacy to every call, a third party that tries to listen in only hears static.
- The FOMA terminal converts conversations into a digital signal and sends it to the other party over the radio. If the signal cannot be reconverted properly by such as moving to an area with a weak signal, the voice may not be heard correctly.
- Keep a separate memo and note information (e.g. phonebook, schedule, Text memo, Record message, Voice memo, Movie memo) stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content due to a failure, repair, upgrade or other handling of the FOMA terminal.
- Save the important data to the microSD Card. Or, forward and store the information such as a phonebook, mail and schedule to a PC using DoCoMo keitai datalink.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be liable for any such damage or loss.
- Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan, Inc., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports the FOMA Plus-Area and the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo’s roaming area.

Using this manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (☞P. 119). When the Custom menu image is changed by Kisekae Tool, some items in the Custom menu may be changed according to the menu history. In addition, some items cannot be selected even if the function numbers are entered.

In this case, operation may not run as explained in this manual. Switch the menu screen to the Basic menu (☞P. 44) or perform the Reset menu screen (☞P. 120).

Download the latest information on this manual from the DoCoMo website.

- “User’s Manual (in PDF format)” Download
  http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html

※ The URL and contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Viewing/Searching this manual

This manual uses illustrations and icons to explain operations for proper phone use.

- Icons and screens that appear on the display have been set by default in accordance with the handset color (Kisekae Tool ☞P. 119). Refer to “Menu list” on P. 458 for the default settings in each handset color. The explanations in this manual are based on the case when Kisekae Tool is set for the handset color “White”.
- The screens and illustrations in this manual are shown as examples. The actual screens and illustrations may differ.

Searching this manual

Use the following ways to find explanations in this manual.

Index (☞P. 520)	Search for function names or service names.
Easy search (☞P. 4)	Search for frequently used or convenient functions using easy-to-understand language.
Indexed pages (☞Cover)	Search this manual using the index on the cover and the sides of pages.

(See the next page for details)

Contents	**☞P. 6**
Main functions	**☞P. 8**
Menu list	**☞P. 458**
Quick manual	**☞P. 534**

The basic functions are explained briefly. Cut the Quick manual to keep as a reference when away from home.
In addition, the Quick Manual “Overseas Use” is available. Use it when using the FOMA terminal overseas.

- Note that “FOMA SH906i” is referred to as the “FOMA terminal” in this manual.
- This manual describes functions using the microSD Card. Please note that microSD Card are sold separately. For details on microSD Card ☞P. 332
- This manual refers to microSD Card as “microSD Card” or “microSD”.
- This manual refers to “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli with IC card function” as “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli”.
- Reproduction of this manual in part or in whole is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Notation of keys and operation procedure

- This manual refers to keys as simplified icons.

Actual key	Notation in this manual
1あ	1 (Refer to “Component names and functions” on P. 30)

- The notation and meaning of operation procedure are shown below.

Notation	Meaning
In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/ LED/Power saver].	In the Custom menu, select [Settings] with ✥ and press ● → select [Disp/ LED/Power saver] with ✥ and press ●.

- For details on default settings ☞P. 458

Viewing the display

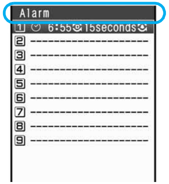
- The explanations in this manual are based on default settings. The actual screens may differ depending on settings changed after purchase.
- When Flash movies and icons featuring animation effects are displayed, screens may differ from those described in this manual.

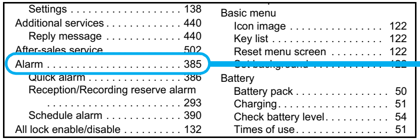
As an example, how to look up the Alarm function using the Index, Easy search, and Indexed pages are explained below.

- Content differs from actual pages in this manual.

Index ☞P. 520

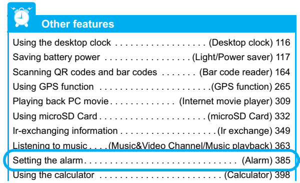
Use this when you know the function or service name, or to search for function names that appear on the display.


Alarm
1 6:55 15seconds
2 --------------------
3 --------------------
4 --------------------
5 --------------------
6 --------------------
7 --------------------
8 --------------------
9 --------------------


Settings 138
Additional services 440
Reply message 440
After-sales service 502
Alarm 385
Quick alarm 386
Reception/Recording reserve alarm 293
Schedule alarm 390
All lock enable/disable 132
Basic menu
Icon image 122
Key list 122
Reset menu screen 122
Set background 122
Battery
Battery pack 50
Charging 51
Check battery level 54
Times of use 51

Easy search ☞P. 4

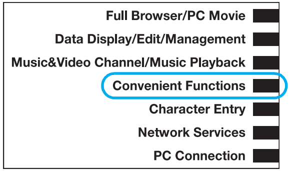
Search for frequently used or convenient functions using easy-to-understand language.

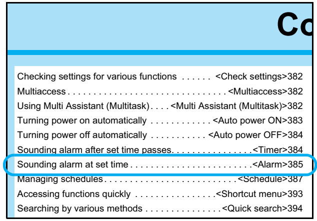

Other features
Using the desktop clock . . . . (Desktop clock) 116
Saving battery power . . . . (Light/Power saver) 117
Scanning QR codes and bar codes . . . . (Bar code reader) 164
Using GPS function . . . . (GPS function) 265
Playing back PC movie . . . . (Internet movie player) 309
Using microSD Card . . . . (microSD Card) 332
Ir-exchanging information . . . . (Ir exchange) 349
Listening to music . . . . (Music&Video Channel/Music playback) 363
Setting the alarm . . . . (Alarm) 385
Using the calculator . . . . (Calculator) 398

P. 385
Page that
explains “Alarm”

Indexed pages ☞Cover

Search for functions going in the order of “cover” → “beginning of the chapter” → “description page”. The beginning of each chapter shows a table of contents.


Full Browser/PC Movie
Data Display/Edit/Management
Music&Video Channel/Music Playback
Convenient Functions
Character Entry
Network Services
PC Connection

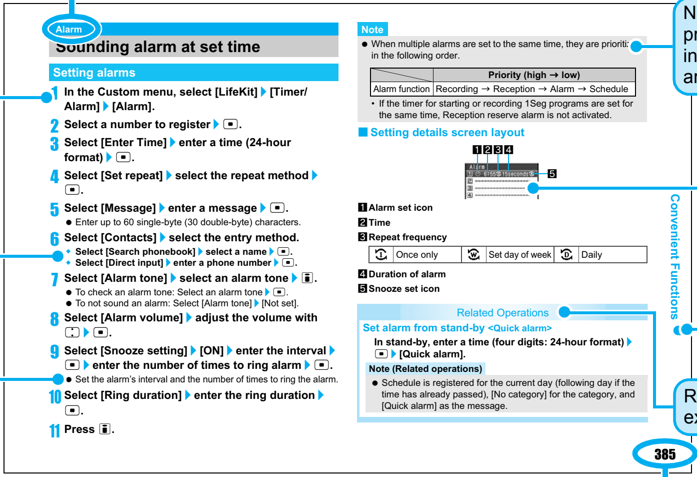

C
Checking settings for various functions . . . . . . <Check settings>382
Multiaccess . . . . <Multiaccess>382
Using Multi Assistant (Multitask) . . . . <Multi Assistant (Multitask)>382
Turning power on automatically . . . . <Auto power ON>383
Turning power off automatically . . . . <Auto power OFF>384
Sounding alarm after set time passes . . . . <Timer>384
Sounding alarm at set time . . . . <Alarm>385
Managing schedules . . . . <Schedule>387
Accessing functions quickly . . . . <Shortcut menu>393
Searching by various methods . . . . <Quick search>394

This is the function name as it appears in the index.

The operation is detailed in steps.

Each operation is explained when the operations are different depending on the selected items.

Additional information, precautions, and advice relating to operations are explained.



Alarm

Sounding alarm at set time

Setting alarms

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Timer/Alarm] ▶ [Alarm].**

2 **Select a number to register ▶ ⊡.**

3 **Select [Enter Time] ▶ enter a time (24-hour format) ▶ ⊡.**

4 **Select [Set repeat] ▶ select the repeat method ▶ ⊡.**

5 **Select [Message] ▶ enter a message ▶ ⊡.**
- ● Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.

6 **Select [Contacts] ▶ select the entry method.**
- ◆ **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a name ▶ ⊡.**
- ◆ **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ⊡.**

7 **Select [Alarm tone] ▶ select an alarm tone ▶ ▯.**
- ● To check an alarm tone: Select an alarm tone ▶ ⊡.
- ● To not sound an alarm: Select [Alarm tone] ▶ [Not set].

8 **Select [Alarm volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ⬍ ▶ ⊡.**

9 **Select [Snooze setting] ▶ [ON] ▶ enter the interval ▶ ⊡ ▶ enter the number of times to ring alarm ▶ ⊡.**
- ● Set the alarm's interval and the number of times to ring the alarm.

10 **Select [Ring duration] ▶ enter the ring duration ▶ ⊡.**

11 **Press ▯.**

Note

- ● When multiple alarms are set to the same time, they are prioriti in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Alarm function	Recording → Reception → Alarm → Schedule

- • If the timer for starting or recording 1Seg programs are set for the same time, Reception reserve alarm is not activated.

■ Setting details screen layout

1 2 3 4 5

Alarm

1 6:55 15seconds

2

3

4

1 Alarm set icon

2 Time

3 Repeat frequency

①	Once only	Ⓦ	Set day of week	Ⓓ	Daily

4 Duration of alarm

5 Snooze set icon

Related Operations

Set alarm from stand-by <Quick alarm>

In stand-by, enter a time (four digits: 24-hour format) ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Quick alarm].

Note (Related operations)

- ● Schedule is registered for the current day (following day if the time has already passed), [No category] for the category, and [Quick alarm] as the message.

Convenient Functions

385

Necessary information, precautions and other information for using functions are explained.

The explanations of screen display are shown. Refer to the screens while using the FOMA terminal (Text which is input, numbers and settings are examples).

Search by chapter from the index.

Related operations are explained in a simplified style.

Page number

※ Content differs from actual pages in this manual.

Easy Search

Use this feature to find simple description for any function.

Useful functions for making calls

Notifying/Hiding caller ID . . . . (Notify caller ID) 58
Putting a call on hold while talking . . . .(Hold active call) 62
Switching to Videophone during voice call
. . . . (Switching between a voice call and a Videophone) 62
Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice
. . . . (Earpiece volume) 73

When unable to take a call

Placing a call on hold without answering the call. . . . . (On hold) 73
Indicating that it is necessary to refrain from talking on the mobile phone
. . . .(Public mode (Drive mode)) 74
. . . .(Public mode (Power OFF)) 75
Recording phone messages
. . . . (Record message (voice/Videophone calls)) 77

Changing melody and illumination

Setting the ring tone for the caller . . . .(Select ring tone) 99
Changing the ring tone . . . .(Select ring tone) 108
Adjusting the ring tone volume . . . . (Phone ring volume) 109
Muting the tone of keys pressed . . . . . . (Key/Standby i-motion) 110
Notifying incoming calls with vibration . . . . (Vibrator) 111
Setting Manner mode . . . . (Manner mode) 113
Changing the light color and pattern for incoming calls
. . . .(LED color settings/LED pattern settings) 123

Changing/Knowing the display

Meanings of display icons. . . . . (View the display) 34
Switching the menu display . . . . (Menu settings and selections) 44
Changing stand-by wallpaper . . . . (Stand-by display) 114
Displaying the calendar. . . . .(Calendar display) 115
Changing the font (font style) . . . .(Font style setting) 124
Changing the font size . . . .(Font size) 124
Keeping the display private. (VeilView) 125

Using mail

Sending Deco-mail . . . . (Deco-mail) 198
Sending images . . . .(File attachment) 203
Sorting and saving mail automatically. . . . . (Sort rules) 217

Using the camera

Using the 1Seg

Securing the FOMA terminal

Other features

*1 This service is a paid service.

*2 This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Frequently used functions are described in the Quick manual (☞P. 534).

Contents

Before Using the Handset **P. 29**	Component names and functions, Display, Optical TOUCH CRUISER, Touch panel, Menu, Supportbook, FOMA card, Battery pack, Power ON/OFF, Select language, Initial setting, Date settings, Notify caller ID, Own number, etc.
Voice/ Videophone Calls **P. 59**	Make calls, Switch between voice call and Videophone, Redial/Received calls, Chaku-moji, WORLD CALL, In-car hands-free, Answer calls, Any key answer, Set when folded, Earpiece volume, Answering hold/On hold, Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF), Record message, Chara-den, Videophone settings, etc.
PushTalk **P. 85**	Send, Receive, PushTalk phonebook, Set PushTalk, etc.
Phonebook **P. 95**	Add, Group settings, Search, Edit, 2-touch dialing/2-touch mail, etc.
Sound/Screen/ Light Settings **P. 107**	Sound settings, Vibrator, Melody Call setting, Manner mode, Display setting, Power saver set, Kisekae Tool, Machi-chara setting, Themes, Change the Basic menu design, Illumination settings, Display image quality, Font setting, VeilView, etc.
Security Settings **P. 127**	Security code, Writing authentic, UIM Settings, Disable PIN lock, All lock, Omakase Lock, Self mode, Function lock, Keypad dial lock, Multi easy lock, Side key guard, Secret mode, Accept calls/Reject calls, Data Security Service, etc.
Camera **P. 143**	Shoot still picture, Shoot movie, Change settings, Bar code reader, Character Reader (OCR), Card reader, Cameraloupe, Shotdeco, etc.
i-mode/ i-motion/ i-Channel **P. 169**	View/Operate sites, i-mode password, Login information, Internet access, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Download, Upload, Set i-mode, SSL certificates, i-motion, i-Channel, etc.
Mail **P. 195**	Compose and send, Deco-mail, Decome-Anime, File attachment, Save, Receive, Check new message, Reply/ Forward, Acquire/Check attached file, Mailbox, Mail setting, Message R/F, Early Warning “Area Mail”, SMS, etc.
i-αppli **P. 229**	Download, Activate i-αppli, Auto start, i-αppli stand-by, Manage i-αppli, etc.
Osaifu-Keitai/ ToruCa **P. 253**	iC transfer service, Start compatible i-αppli, IC owner, Retrieve ToruCa, ToruCa Viewer, ToruCa settings, IC card lock, etc.

GPS Function **P. 265**	Position location, Compatible i-αppli, Location request menu, Location notification, Location history, Use location information, etc.
1Seg **P. 281**	Channel setting, Activate 1Seg, Program guide, Record 1Seg, Booking list, Use data broadcasting, TVlink, 1Seg settings, etc.
Full Browser/ PC Movie **P. 301**	View web pages designed for PC, Set Full Browser, Internet movie player, etc.
Data Display/ Edit/ Management **P. 311**	Image Viewer, Edit image, i-motion player, Edit movie, Video player, Chara-den player, Machi-chara, Melody player, microSD Card, Manage data, Ir exchange, iC transmission, Voice recorder, PDF Viewer, Document Viewer, Manga&BookReader, etc.
Music&Video Channel/Music Playback **P. 363**	Music&Video Channel, Play back music, MUSIC Player, Manage data, Playback settings, etc.
Convenient Functions **P. 381**	Check settings, Multiaccess, Multi Assistant (Multitask), Auto power ON/OFF, Timer, Alarm, Schedule, Shortcut menu, Quick search, Owner information, Voice memo, Talk time/cost, Calculator, Text memo, Earphone/Microphone with switch, Bluetooth® function, Reset settings, Delete user data, etc.

Character Entry **P. 415**	5-touch, Save phrases, Copy text, User dictionary, Download dictionary, Guess conversion, 2-touch, etc.
Network Services **P. 425**	Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Nuisance Call Blocking, Caller ID request, Dual Network, English guidance, Service number, Arrival Call Action, Remote control, Multi Number, 2in1, OFFICEED, Additional services (USSD), etc.
PC Connection **P. 441**	Prepare for data communication, Prepare for data transfer (OBEX™ communication), AT commands, CD-ROM, DoCoMo keitai datalink, etc.
Overseas Use **P. 447**	International roaming (WORLD WING), Make calls, Answer calls, 3G/GSM setting, Network search mode, PLMN setting, Operator name display, Roaming guidance, etc.
Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting **P. 457**	Menu list, Dial key assignments, Multiaccess combinations, Multi Assistant (Multitask) combinations, Options and accessories, Troubleshooting, List of error messages, Warranty and after-sales services, Software update, Scanning function, Main specifications, etc.
Index/Quick Manual **P. 519**	Index, Quick manual, Quick manual “Overseas use”

Main functions of the FOMA SH906i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as a global standard for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

The world of i-mode ☞P. 170

i-mode is an online service used to access useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode supported sites, or easily send and receive e-mail.

i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictograph ☞P. 198, P. 200, P. 419

Attach pictures, movie files, etc. to a message. Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictograph is available. Change text color, character size, and background color and insert images or moving pictographs. Also, for Decome-Anime, compose and send expressive mail by inserting texts to the template.

Mega i-αppli/Chokkan Game ☞P. 230, P. 234

Use i-αppli to play games and automatically update stock prices and weather information. Also, Chokkan Games to enjoy operations such as "tilting", "shaking (or swing)" and "speaking" the mobile phone are supported.

HIGH-SPEED area supported ☞P. 442

FOMA HIGH-SPEED area is supported so that high speed communication is available with download speed of up to 3.6 Mbps and upload speed of up to 384 kbps.

※ The maximum values mentioned above are the values based on the technical standard. The actual connection speed varies depending on the network congestion or transmission environment. The data is sent and received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps outside the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area or when a connection is made to an access point that does not support HIGH-SPEED such as mopera.

International roaming ☞P. 240, P. 448

The same FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address as those used in Japan are available overseas (supporting GSM and 3G areas). In addition, voice/Videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and network services are available. Moreover, J-E/J-C Speech Translation for SH, which translates the voice spoken in Japanese to English/Chinese and the voice spoken in English/Chinese to Japanese, is pre-installed.

Chaku-uta full®/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel*/Video clip ☞P. 364, P. 370, P. 376

* This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Supporting Chaku-uta full® with which one song can be downloaded in whole and Uta-hodai with which you can enjoy your favorite songs as much as you like at flat rate using only the mobile phone. Also, Music&Video Channel is supported so that music programs or the programs with movies can be automatically downloaded at night and enjoyed if the setting is made in advance. In addition, i-motion of up to 10 MB is supported so that a video clip to enjoy a music clip of one entire song is also supported.

- "Chaku-uta full" is a registered trademark of the Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa ☞P. 242, P. 254, P. 256

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli to deposit electronic money to the IC card in the FOMA terminal, check your balance or view usage history from sites. Moreover, i-αppli for "DCMX", a DoCoMo's credit service, is pre-installed. This terminal also supports "iC transfer service" that makes transferring data in the IC card easier when the FOMA terminal is changed into a new model. ToruCa is an electronic card available from scanning device and sites. Easily share using mail or Ir exchange.

Kisekae Tool ☞P. 119

Change the screens such as your favorite stand-by display and menu screens collectively. With FOMA SH906i, sort the order to display the menus according to the usage frequency and customize the menu screens.

GPS ☞P. 266

Based on the acquired location information with GPS, display the map or search peripheral area information of the present location, or navigate to a destination. A mapping appli is pre-installed so that high-resolution maps can easily be used.

Numerous network services

- SMS ☞P. 226
- Call Forwarding Service ☞P. 429
- Dual Network Service (monthly fees apply) ☞P. 432
- Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) ☞P. 426
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service ☞P. 430
- Call Waiting (monthly fees apply) ☞P. 428
- 2in1 (monthly fees apply) ☞P. 435

Security Settings

■ Omakase Lock[1] ☞P. 133

The FOMA terminal can be locked by request when it is lost. The lock can be disabled also by request. Refer to the back cover of this manual for details on inquiries. Omakase Lock is a paid service[2].

*1 Omakase Lock is a service to lock the handset by the request of the subscriber. Please note that the lock service can be applied by a request of the subscriber even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal.

*2 If Omakase Lock is subscribed while or at the same time as when the use of FOMA terminal is suspended, the usage fee of Omakase Lock is not charged.

■ Data Security Service ☞P. 105, P. 141

By using this service, phonebook, images, or messages in the FOMA terminal can be saved in the Data Storage Center, and the lost data can be restored from the data saved on the network when the FOMA terminal is lost. In addition, the data saved in the Data Storage Center can be edited and managed using a PC. The edited data can be reflected to the FOMA terminal. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for precautions and details on the Data Security Service and the back cover of this manual for inquiries. This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

■ Quick search ☞P. 394

Search using registered or set e-dictionaries, search by i-mode or access a search engine by Full Browser. For Full Browser, search by setting search engine.
Also, activate i-αppli “Internet dictionary” (☞P. 237).

■ Touch panel ☞P. 40

In the viewer position, touch the display (touch panel) and operate.
In addition, Writing authentication (☞P. 130) is available.

■ Optical TOUCH CRUISER ☞P. 39

In the Custom menu, i-mode or Full Browser, put a finger on the Optical TOUCH CRUISER and move the pointer to select an item. Alternatively, move the cursor or scroll the screen instead of using ⊡ of Multi-guide key.

■ Bluetooth connection ☞P. 402

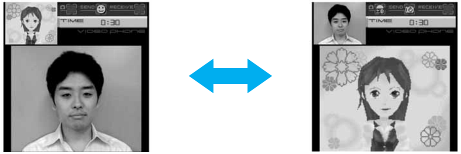
Connect the FOMA terminal wirelessly to the Bluetooth device. Play music and sound of 1Seg wirelessly and use commercially available Bluetooth compatible keyboard.

Maximizing use of the FOMA SH906i

The functions of the FOMA SH906i are described below.

Videophone ☞P. 60, P. 62

Have conversations with the other party who is far away while viewing each other's image. In default settings, the other party's voice is played through the speakers. Start conversation as it is. In addition, switch a voice call to a Videophone call during a call.



During Videophone calls

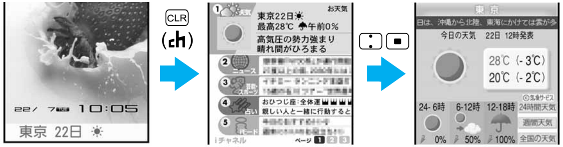
- To send your face image to the other party, rotate the display and make the camera face you (☞P. 81).

i-Channel ☞P. 192

Receive graphical information such as news and weather. Select a channel from the list to retrieve detailed information made with Flash (☞P. 172).

- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

※ The i-Channel is only available in Japanese.



東京22日
最高28℃ 午前0%
高気圧の勢力強まり
晴れ間がひろまる

おひつじ座：全体運
親しい人と一緒に行動すると

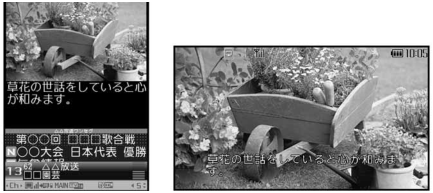
日は、沖縄から北陸、東海にかけては雲が多

28℃（-3℃）
20℃（-2℃）

1Seg

■ 1Seg ☞P. 285

Watch "1Seg", which is digital terrestrial broadcasting for mobile devices.



草花の世話をしていると心が和みます。

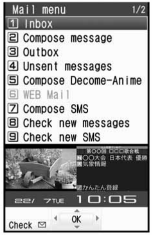
第○○回 □□□歌合戦
N○○大会 日本代表 優勝
13 62 △△放送
□□園芸

■ Video ☞P. 291, P. 329

Record movies and a scene as a still picture for 1Seg program being played. Watch the recorded movies and still pictures with the FOMA terminal.

■ Multi Window ☞P. 290

While watching 1Seg on Multi Window, use another function.



Mail menu 1/2
1 Inbox
2 Compose message
3 Outbox
4 Unsent messages
5 Compose Decome-Anime
6 WEB Mail
7 Compose SMS
8 Check new messages
9 Check new SMS

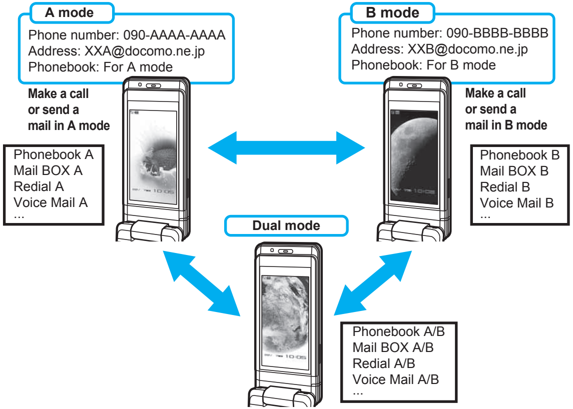
■ Timer for starting or recording 1Seg programs ☞P. 293

Set timer for starting or recording 1Seg programs.

2in1 ☞P. 435

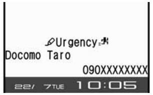
2in1 is a service that two phone numbers and two mail addresses can be used on one mobile phone with dedicated mode function as if two different mobile phones are used. Phonebook, mailbox, call/received history, stand-by display, etc. can be used separately in "A mode" and "B mode" on one mobile phone and also be used in "Dual mode" that can control both A and B modes simultaneously.

- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.



Chaku-moji ☞P. 65

While making a call and ringing the other party, display a message on the other party's receive display. Viewing the message, the receiver side can know the points and feeling of the other party in advance.



Urgency
Docomo Taro
090XXXXXXXX
22/ 7TUE 10:05

Music playback

Music&Video Channel ☞P. 364

Your favorite music programs are automatically distributed at night. The programs are automatically updated on a regular basis. Enjoy the latest music information at any time.

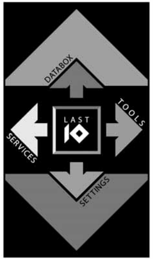
MUSIC Player ☞P. 370

Play back Chaku-uta full® downloaded from sites or Internet web pages and WMA file transferred with Napster® using MUSIC Player. Uta-hodai is available. Also play back the data saved to the [Multimedia] folder of i-motion.

Kisekae Tool/Direct menu ☞P. 119

"Direct menu" accessible to frequently used functions and services is installed.

"LAST10" button, which is dividing the menu into four categories and setting them up/down/left/right and also automatically displaying the last ten function and service items, is located in the center. For the alignment of five categories is linked with ⊡/▣, operate the menu easily.



Left (◀) : SERVICES (Mail, i-mode, i-αppli, MUSIC, 1Seg, Osaifu-Keitai, etc.)
Right (▶) : TOOLS (Alarm, Calculator, Text memo, Schedule, Receive Ir data, etc.)
Down (▼) : SETTINGS (Settings, NW services and Owner Information)
Up (▲) : DATABOX (My picture, etc.)
Center (▣) : LAST10 (Automatically display last ten menu items)

- Functions are registered at the time of purchase.

Safety precautions (to be strictly followed)

- Before use, read these “Safety precautions” carefully and use your FOMA properly.
  Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury or damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

⚠ **Danger**	**This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use”.**
⚠ **Warning**	**This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use”.**
⚠ **Caution**	**This symbol indicates that “bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use”.**

The following symbols indicate specific directions.

⊘ Don’t	**Indicates a prohibited action.**
⊘ No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.
⊘ No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.
⊘ No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet.

❗ Instruction	**Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed).**
Unplug	Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the power outlet.

“Safety precautions” is explained in the following six sections.

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers), and FOMA card (general)

⚠ Danger

Don't

Do not use, store, or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fire, in direct sunlight, or inside a car on a hot day.

The FOMA terminal may malfunction or become deformed. In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify. In addition, do not attempt to solder.

May cause accidents such as fire, bodily injury, electric shock or malfunction.
In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

No liquids

Do not get the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card wet.

Contact with water, pet urine, and other liquids may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction or bodily injury. Be attentive to where and how you use the handset.

Instruction

Use only the battery packs and adapters (chargers) specified by the DoCoMo group companies for use with the FOMA terminal.

The use of devices other than those specified may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or malfunction.

- Battery Pack SH17
- Desktop Holder SH19
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

※ For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer.

⚠ Warning

Don't

Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapters (chargers), or FOMA card inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or pressure cookers.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal and adapters (chargers) may overheat, emit smoke or catch fire. The internal circuitry may also be damaged.

Don't

Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or cause a fire.

Don't

Do not allow conductive materials (such as metal objects and pencil lead) to come into contact with the charger terminal or external device terminal. In addition, do not insert such objects.

The battery pack may short-circuit and cause a fire or malfunction.

Instruction

**Make sure to turn off the mobile phone in locations such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated.
In addition, do not charge the battery. It may cause a gas explosion or fire.**

To use Osaifu-Keitai in locations such as gas stations, make sure to turn off the power in advance (If the IC card lock is set, disable the lock before turning off the power).

Continued on next page ▶▶

Instruction

If you notice anything unusual, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately follow the instructions below.

1. **Unplug the power cord from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**
2. **Turn off the FOMA terminal.**
3. **Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.**

Continued use (charging) may cause overheating, explosion, or fire. In addition, the battery pack may leak.

⚠ Caution

Don't

Do not leave the FOMA terminal on unstable surfaces, such as on a wobbling table or sloped surface.

The FOMA terminal may fall and cause injury or be damaged.

Don't

Do not store the FOMA terminal in locations that are subject to humidity, dust or high temperatures.

May cause a malfunction.

Instruction

If being used by a child, have a guardian teach him/her the proper handling procedures. In addition, check that the child is using the FOMA terminal as directed.

May result in bodily injury.

Instruction

Keep the FOMA terminal out of the reach of young children.

A young child may swallow components or suffer other bodily injury.

Instruction

Be very careful when using the FOMA terminal connected to adapters (chargers) repeatedly or for long periods of time.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapters (chargers) may become warm if i-αppli, Videophone, or 1Seg is used for a long time while charging. Exposure to high temperature areas for a prolonged period of time may cause skin irritations, itchiness, or low-temperature burn in some people.

Handling the FOMA terminal

⚠ Warning

Don't

Do not aim the Infrared port towards the eyes.

May cause eye injury. In addition, do not aim or direct the Infrared port towards another Ir device as this may cause the device to malfunction.

Don't

Do not point the illuminated light directly at someone's eyes.

May damage eyesight. May also cause momentary sight loss or startle someone and cause an accident.

Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal in the place where it could be affected by an expanded airbag, e.g., on the dashboard.

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

Don't

If you are using electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.

Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

Don't

Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the FOMA card or microSD Card port on the FOMA terminal.

May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Don't

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicles.

This may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.

Instruction

Turn off the FOMA terminal in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. In addition, if Auto power ON function is set to ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.
Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises.
In addition, actions such as speaking on a mobile phone aboard aircraft are prohibited and may be punishable by law.

Instruction

During a call in which Hands-free is set, keep the FOMA terminal away from the ears.
When you attach the earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud.

Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident.

Instruction

If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring tone volume for incoming calls.

Various settings may have effects on your heart.

Instruction

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, put the antenna back into the FOMA terminal, immediately turn it off and move to a safe location.

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Instruction

Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

Take particular care with the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, or other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors, and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.

Instruction

In case that the display part or camera lens is damaged, make sure to pay attention to a broken glass and the exposed inside of the FOMA terminal.

The surface of the display is covered by a protective film or the surface of camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.

⚠ Caution

Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its antenna, strap, etc.

The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal in area with many people.

The antenna may strike others, resulting in an accident such as bodily injury.

Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal with the damaged antenna.

Touching the antenna may cause an accident such as burn or other injuries.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Don't

When using Motion tracking, confirm the safety of surroundings, hold the FOMA terminal securely and do not swing it around more than necessary.

Use Motion tracking to operate by tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal may hit people or objects, if shaken (or swung) too much, and cause a serious accident or damage, etc.

Don't

If using Motion tracking with the FOMA terminal to which metallic straps or others are attached, be careful not to hit people or objects with the straps.

Resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

Don't

Never place a magnetic card near or in the FOMA terminal.

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

Don't

Never place magnetized items near the FOMA terminal.

Putting highly magnetized items closer may cause a malfunction.

Don't

If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin. If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor. If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

May result in loss of eyesight and harmful to your skin.

Don't

While the ring tone is ringing or a melody is played on the FOMA terminal, do not put the ears closer to the speaker.

This may cause hearing loss.

Don't

On the surface of the display, there is a protective film for securing the safety (for preventing the reinforced glass panel from shattering) in case of the damage caused by a drop, impact, etc. Do not forcibly peel off or scratch this film.

Using the FOMA terminal with the film removed may cause a bodily injury when the display is damaged.

Instruction

Using the FOMA terminal in an automobile may sometimes affect the electronic equipment in some vehicle models.

In such cases, stop using the FOMA terminal, as this could impede safe driving.

Instruction

Use of the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and seek medical treatment.

The following parts contain metals.

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Metal section of 1Seg antenna	Stainless steel	Nickel plating
External connector terminal		Tin plating
Inside microSD Card slot		
Charger terminal		Gold plating

Instruction

Do not close the FOMA terminal on your fingers or objects such as the strap.

May result in bodily injury or cause a malfunction.

Instruction

Watch 1Seg in a well-lit place, keeping a certain distance from the screen.

Otherwise, eyesight may be decreased.

Handling the battery pack

Check the type of battery using the information printed on the battery pack label.

Label	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Lithium-ion

⚠ Danger

Don't

Do not touch terminals with metallic objects such as wires. In addition, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Don't

If you are having difficulty fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing the correct direction before you attach it.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Don't

Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Instruction

If the battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.

May result in loss of eyesight.

⚠ Warning

Don't

If any trouble is found on the battery pack due to an external impact such as a deformation or scratches caused by a drop, immediately stop using it.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

Instruction

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time has elapsed, stop charging.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Instruction

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop use and move it away from any flame or fire.

The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

Instruction

Prevent your pet from biting the battery pack.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

⚠ Caution

Don't

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.

May cause fires or damage to the environment. Place tape over the terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs, and take them to a DoCoMo Shop, retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area.

Don't

Do not charge a wet battery pack.

The battery pack may overheat, catch fire or explode.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Instruction

If the battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off thoroughly with clean water.

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

Handling the adapters (chargers)

⚠ Warning

Don't

Do not use if the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord is damaged.

May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

Don't

Never use the AC adapter or desktop holder in humid locations such as a bathroom.

May result in electric shock.

Don't

The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. Never use these adapters in positive grounded vehicles.

May cause a fire.

Don't

Do not touch the FOMA terminal or adapters (chargers) if you hear thunder.

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Don't

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when connected to a power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (hands, fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.

May result in a fire, equipment malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.

Don't

Place the charger and desktop holder on stable surfaces when charging. In addition, do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.

The FOMA terminal may detach, overheat, or cause a fire or malfunction.

Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord.

May cause an electric shock or fire.

No wet hands

Do not handle the cord and plug of the adapters (chargers) with wet hands.

May result in electric shock.

Instruction

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.

Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction.

When using overseas, use the AC adapter that is available overseas.

AC adapter: 100 VAC

DC adapter: 12/24 VDC (for negative grounded vehicles only)

AC adapter available overseas: 100 to 240 VAC (Connect only with household AC outlet)

Instruction

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.

Using the fuse other than the specified one may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.

Instruction

Wipe off any dust on the power plug.

May cause a fire.

Instruction

When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.

May cause electric shock, short-circuiting or fire.

Instruction **Always grasp the power plug when unplugging the adapters (chargers) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not forcibly pull by the cord or power cord.**

Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

Unplug **Unplug the power cord from the outlet when not using for a long time.**

May cause an electric shock, fire, or equipment malfunction.

Unplug **Should water or other liquids enter the adapters (chargers), remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket immediately.**

May cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

Unplug **Always unplug the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapters (chargers).**

May result in electric shock.

Handling the FOMA card

⚠ Caution

Instruction **Be careful with the cutting surface when detaching the FOMA card (IC).**

May cause injuries to your hand or fingers.

Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

The safety precautions detailed here conform to the guidelines drawn up by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from signals emitted by mobile phones.

⚠ Warning

Instruction **Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities.**

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If Auto power ON function is set to ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.

Instruction **Turn off your FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.**

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

Instruction **If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, always carry or use your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from your implant.**

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

Continued on next page ▶▶

❗ Instruction **Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of signals on the equipment.**

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling precautions

General notes

- **Do not expose to water.**
  FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) and FOMA card are not waterproof. Do not use in humid or steamy areas such as bathrooms and avoid exposing to rain and other forms of moisture. If FOMA terminal is carried close to skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. Note that if problem is found to be due to moisture, handset and parts are not covered by warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since damage is not covered by warranty.
- **Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).**
  The surface of the handset's LCD has a special coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Forceful rubbing of LCD with a dry cloth may scratch LCD surface. Handle the handset carefully and clean using a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period. Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing on the handset or cause discoloration.
- **Occasionally clean terminals with a dry cotton swab.**
  Unclean terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Additionally, keep terminal clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab to prevent charge performance loss.
- **Do not place the handset near an air conditioning vent.**
  Condensation formed due to rapid changes in temperature may cause internal corrosion and lead to malfunction.
- **Do not apply excessive force to the FOMA terminal and battery pack when using them.**
  Carrying the handset in a tightly packed bag, or sitting on the handset in your pocket may cause a damage to display, other internal components or battery pack, or result in malfunction. Keeping an external connector device plugged into the external connector terminal (earphone/microphone terminal) may cause a damage to the connector or result in malfunction.
- **Read the manuals supplied with the FOMA terminal, adapters (chargers), and desktop holder carefully.**
- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc.**
  May scratch the handset and cause malfunction or damage.

Notes about FOMA terminal

- **Avoid using the handset in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  Use the FOMA terminal within the range of a temperature between 5℃ and 35℃ and a humidity between 45% and 85%.
- **Using the handset close to landline phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before use.**
- **Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal.**
  DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- **When connecting an external connector device to the external connector terminal (earphone/ microphone terminal), do not put it in obliquely or do not pull it while it is plugged in.**
  May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- **Do not fold FOMA terminal on strap.**
  May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- **FOMA terminal may become warm during using or charging but this is normal. This is not a malfunction.**
- **Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight.**
  May cause discoloration or burn-in.
- **Use the FOMA terminal with the external connector terminal cover and microSD Card slot cover on.**
  Dust, water and others enter inside and cause a malfunction.
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal without the back cover.**
  May detach the battery pack or cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not cover the surface of the display, keys, or buttons with an extremely thick sticker.**
  May cause malfunction.
- **While using a microSD Card, do not remove the card or turn off the FOMA terminal.**
  May cause data loss or malfunction.

Notes about battery pack

- **Battery pack is a consumable product.**
  Though usage time varies with use, change battery if battery level is extremely low even after fully charged. Purchase a new battery pack for specified handset.
- **Charge battery in areas where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.**
- **Always charge the battery before the first use or after not using battery for a long time.**
- **The usage time for a battery depends on the usage and deterioration of battery pack.**
- **Depending on usage, the battery may swell as it approaches the end of its service life but this will not cause problems.**
- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.**
  May lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.

Notes about the adapters (chargers)

- **Charge battery in areas where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.**
- **Do not charge battery pack in the following locations:**
  - ■ Areas with high humidity or dust, or in areas exposed to strong vibrations
  - ■ Close to landline phones, TVs, radios, etc.
- **Adapters (chargers) may become warm during charging but this is normal. This is not a malfunction.**
- **Do not use DC adapter to charge battery when the car engine is not running.**
  May cause car battery to run down.
- **When using a power outlet with a feature to prevent the plug from being removed accidentally, follow instructions in the outlet user's guide.**

Continued on next page ▶▶

- **Do not subject to strong force or impacts. Also, do not disfigure the charger terminals.**
  May cause a malfunction.
- **When folding the stand of the desktop holder, prevent the cord for the adapters (chargers) and your fingers from being caught.**
  May result in bodily injury or damage.

Notes about FOMA card

- **Do not apply unnecessary force when inserting/removing the FOMA card.**
- **FOMA card may become warm during using but this is normal. This is not a malfunction.**
- **Customer is responsible for malfunctions arising from inserting FOMA card into a different IC card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep IC area clean.**
- **Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).**
- **Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA card.**
  DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- **To protect the environment, please take any unnecessary FOMA cards to your local DoCoMo Shop or retailer.**
- **Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.**
- **Do not damage, touch haphazardly or short-circuit the IC.**
  May cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop or otherwise subject the FOMA card to severe impact.**
  May cause a malfunction.
- **Never bend or place heavy objects on the FOMA card.**
  May cause a malfunction.
- **Do not insert the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal with a label or sticker attached on the card.**
  May cause a malfunction.

Notes on using Bluetooth function

- **FOMA terminal supports the security function that meets the Bluetooth specification for the security during communication using Bluetooth function. However, the security may not be sufficient depending on the configuration. Take care of the security while making communication using Bluetooth function.**
- **Even if any leak of data or information occurs while making communication using Bluetooth function, DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.**
- **With FOMA terminal, use headset, hands-free, audio, keyboard, dial-up communication, and object push. Also, the audio/video remote-control may be available depending on the audio (Only with compatible Bluetooth devices).**
- **Radio frequencies**
  The radio frequencies the Bluetooth function of the FOMA terminal uses are as follows:

This wireless device uses 2.4 GHz band. The modulation system is the FH-SS system and a coverage distance is 10 m or less. All radio frequencies are used and the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall not be avoided.

- **Cautions on using Bluetooth devices Bluetooth operates at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for a mobile object identifier that have to be licensed and is used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to “another radio station”) in addition to industrial, scientific or medical devices, or home electric appliances such as microwave ovens.**
  1. **Before using this product, make sure that “another radio station” is not operating nearby.**
  2. **If radio interference between this product and “another radio station” occurs, avoid interference by moving immediately to another place or “turning off the power”.**
  3. **Contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual for further details.**

FeliCa reader/writer

- **The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal uses weak electric waves in the handling of which does not require a license of radio station.**
- **The frequency in use is the 13.56 MHz band. When another reader/writer is being used nearby, keep enough distance from it. Make sure that there is no radio station using the same frequency band in the nearby area.**

Caution

- **Never use the FOMA terminal that is modified. Using a modified device violates the Radio Law.**
  The FOMA terminal has acquired the certification of conformity with technical regulations for the specified radio station based on the Radio Law, and the “Technical Conformity Mark 〶” is printed on the model nameplate of the FOMA terminal as a proof. If the screws of FOMA terminal are removed and a modification is given to the inside, the certification of conformity with technical regulations will become invalid. Never use the FOMA terminal without the valid certification. Doing so violates the Radio Law.
- **Be careful when using the FOMA terminal while driving a motor vehicle.**
  While driving, using a mobile phone in hand is regarded as a punishable act. If there is no choice but to receive a call, use Hands-free and tell the caller that you will “call back” and then pull over to a safe place to make a call.
- **Use the Bluetooth function only in Japan.**
  The Bluetooth function in the FOMA terminal conforms to the domestic radio wave standards and is authorized. Using the function overseas may result in punishment.
- **Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.**
  The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal conforms to the domestic radio wave standards. Using the function overseas may result in punishment.

Intellectual property

Copyrights and rights of portrait

- Data with third party copyrights such as text, images, music and software that is downloaded or acquired via Internet web pages, shot by the FOMA terminal, or acquired from TV or other video cannot be duplicated, altered or publicly transmitted without rightful party’s consent. Only duplicating, quoting, etc. for personal use is permitted under copyright laws.
  Even if for personal use, filming and recording may be prohibited for demonstrations, performances and exhibitions.
  Also, shooting another’s image or posting another’s image on Internet web pages without their consent may constitute a violation of one’s right to their image.

Registered trademarks and trademarks

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “ToruCa”, “PushTalk”, “PushTalkPlus”, “mopera”, “mopera U”, “FirstPass”, “Chara-den”, “Deco-mail”, “Chaku-motion”, “i-motion mail”, “i-αppli”, “i-αppliDX”, “i-motion”, “i-mode”, “i-Channel”, “iD”, “DCMX”, “WORLD WING”, “Public mode”, “DoPa”, “WORLD CALL”, “Dual Network”, “visualnet”, “V-live”, “Security Scan”, “musea”, “sigmarion”, “OFFICEED”, “IMCS”, “i-area”, “2in1”, “Chokkan Game”, the “i-mode” logo, the “FOMA” logo, the “i-αppli” logo, the “DCMX” logo, the “iD” logo, the “HIGH-SPEED” logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- **symbian** This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd.
  Symbian, Symbian OS and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd.
  © 1998-2008 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.
- Catch Phone (Call Waiting) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Multitask is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- This product is equipped with NetFront Browser, NetFront Sync Client and NetFront Browser DTV Profile Wireless Edition by ACCESS Co., Ltd. for an internet browser or other application software.
- This product adopts Media: specifications of ACCESS CO., Ltd. for activating broadcasting contents.
  Copyright © 1996-2008 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- ACCESS, NetFront and Media: are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in the United States, Japan and other countries.

ACCESS™ **NetFront**®

- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Vista®, PowerPoint® and Windows Media® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., in the US and other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.

- microSDHC Logo is a trademark.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2008 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend related trademarks are registered trademarks or trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Document Viewer is powered by Picsel Technologies.
  Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies and/or its affiliates.
- This handset features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read. LCフォント/LCFONT and ® are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- Heisei font is an intellectual property of Font Development and Promotion Center of Japanese Standards Association, and “SH Heisei Mincho” is a font developed by DynaComware Corp. with a license.
- DynaFont is a registered trademark of DynaComware Taiwan Inc.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and the G-GUIDE related logos are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan.
- Google and Google Map for Mobile are trademarks of Google Inc.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- FeliCa, which uses non-contact IC card technology, was created by Sony Corporation.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Dolby and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- FlashFX® Pro™ is a trademark or registered trademark of the Datalight, Inc. in the US.
  (U.S.Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156)
- PhotoSolid® and FaceSolid™ are the trademarks or the registered marks of Morpho, Inc.
- “TOUCH CRUISER”, “Desktop clock”, “VeilView”, “Cameraloupe”, “Shotdeco” and “Wakeup TV” are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- All other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- Under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, customers have licensed permission for the following use of this product to engage in non-profit personal use. Other uses are not permitted.
  - ■ Encoding MPEG-4 standard video (henceforth referred to as MPEG-4 video).
  - ■ Decoding an MPEG-4 video that a customer not engaged in personal commercial activities has encoded.
  - ■ Decoding an MPEG-4 video obtained from a licensed provider.

  For details on other intended uses, contact MPEG LA, LLC.

Continued on next page

- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard. An additional license and payment of royalties are necessary in the following cases.
  - ■ Data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis.
  - ■ Data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use.

  Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.
  Contact MPEG LA, LLC for additional details.
- This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (henceforth referred to as AVC video) and/or (ii) decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use.
  Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.
  See HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM
- This product is licensed under the VC-1 Patent Portfolio License for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the VC-1 standard (henceforth referred to as VC-1 video) and/or (ii) decode VC-1 video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide VC-1 video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use.
  Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.
  See HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM
- Contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ and Adobe Reader® LE technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated
  ADOBE FLASH ENABLED
  Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe System Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe Reader LE Copyright © 1993-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash, and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- This product includes modules developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product uses the GestureTek technology.
  Copyright © 2006-2008, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- This product is equipped with “Fugue” by Kyoto Software Research, Inc. for a file system function.
  Kyoto Software Research
  Fugue FLASH FILE SYSTEM
  Fugue ©1999-2008 Kyoto Software Research, Inc. All rights reserved.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

  4,901,307
  5,101,501
  5,228,054
  5,267,262
  5,414,796
  5,710,784
  5,490,165
  5,506,865
  5,535,239
  5,568,483
  5,657,420
  5,778,338
  5,056,109
  5,109,390
  5,267,261
  5,337,338
  5,416,797
  5,504,773
  5,511,073
  5,544,196
  5,600,754
  5,659,569

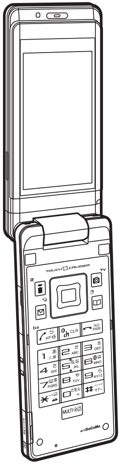
- Bluetooth software stack of this product is developed by TOSHIBA CORPORATION, and contains Toshiba Embedded Bluetooth Stack for Symbian with the copyright of TOSHIBA CORPORATION.
- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management (WMDRM) technology to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected contents. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When you download licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- CP8 PATENT
- This manual refers to each OS (Japanese version) as follows.
  - ■ Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
  - ■ Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - ■ Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by NTT DoCoMo, Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- Internet dictionary embedded in this product uses the BSD license. Copyright © 2002,2003, Stefan Haustein, Oberhausen, Rhld., Germany All rights reserved
  - Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
  - Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
  - Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

  THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

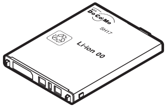
Standard parts packaged with unit and main optional parts

Standard package

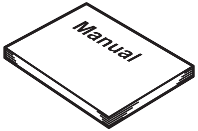
FOMA SH906i terminal
(includes warranty and Back Cover SH21)



Battery Pack SH17

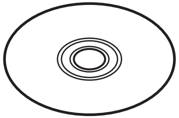


Manual (this manual)



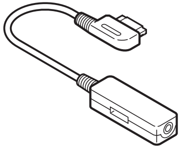
※ Quick manual can be found on P. 534.

FOMA SH906i CD-ROM



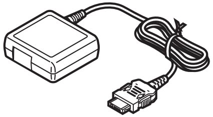
※ “Manual for PC Connection” and “Kuten Code List” in the PDF format are contained.

Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal (sample)
(includes user’s guide)

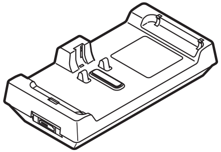


Main optional parts

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(includes warranty and user’s guide)



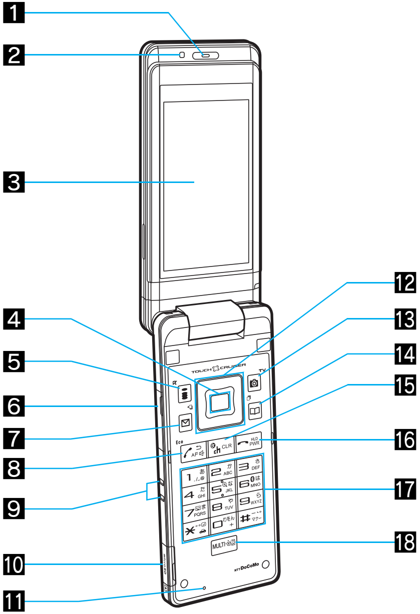
Desktop Holder SH19
(includes user’s guide)

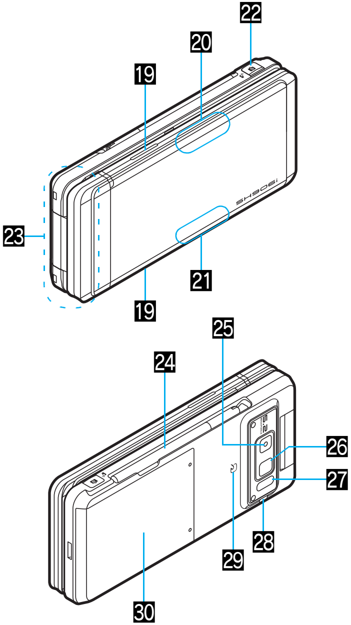


For details on other optional parts ☞P. 485

Before Using the Handset

Component names and functions





※ Key illustrations are examples and may look different from actual keys.

1 Earpiece

- Listen to the other party’s voice.
- Listen to Record message/Voice memo.

2 Brightness sensor (☞P. 118)

- The sensor detects the light of the surrounding area and automatically adjusts the display brightness and turns on/off the keypad backlight.
- Do not cover the sensor area with your hand or a sticker. May interfere with the sensor.

3 Display/Touch panel (☞P. 34, P. 40)

4 Optical TOUCH CRUISER ▣ (☞P. 39)

- Slide the finger to perform the same operations as those for ⁘ of Multi-guide key.

5 i-mode/Operation guidance key ⓘ (α)

- Press to use i-mode (☞P. 170).
- Press to execute the functions of the operation guidance (☞P. 34).
- Press for 1+ seconds to display the i-αppli software list screen (☞P. 231).

6 External connector terminal

- Connect to an external device such as AC adapter/DC adapter, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) (☞P. 52, P. 342).
- Use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately), etc. by connecting to an Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal (☞P. 400).

7 Mail/Operation guidance key ✉

- Press to use mail functions (☞P. 196).
- Press to execute the functions of the operation guidance (☞P. 34).
- Press twice to check new messages (☞P. 207).
- Press for 1+ seconds to display a compose message screen (☞P. 196).

8 Start/Hands-free key ☎

- Press to make or receive a voice call.
- Press to use Hands-free (☞P. 61).
- Press for 1+ seconds to use the Eco mode (Power saver) (☞P. 117).

9 Charger terminal (☞P. 53)

- Terminal for recharging with the desktop holder.

10 microSD Card slot (☞P. 333)

11 Mouthpiece

- Sends out your own voice.

12 Multi-guide key ⁘ ▣

- Move the cursor to select an item and execute or set (☞P. 34).
- Press to display Menu, Redial list screen, Received calls list screen, Shortcut menu and Quick search.
- Press ▣ for 1+ seconds to use Multi easy lock (☞P. 136).
- Press ▭ for 1+ seconds to use IC card lock (☞P. 263).
- Press ▭ for 1+ seconds to use Side key guard (☞P. 137).
- Press ▭ for 1+ seconds to adjust the earpiece volume (☞P. 110).

13 Camera/Operation guidance key 📷

- Press to activate the camera (☞P. 151).
- Press to execute the functions of the operation guidance (☞P. 34).
- Press for 1+ seconds to activate 1Seg (☞P. 285).

14 Phonebook/Operation guidance key 📖

- Press to use the phonebook (☞P. 96).
- Press to execute the functions of the operation guidance (☞P. 34).
- Press for 1+ seconds to display the phonebook entry screen (☞P. 97).

15 i-Channel/Clear key CLR (ch)

- Press to show the channel list (☞P. 192).
- Press to return to the previous screen.
- Use to delete phone numbers and text.

16 Power/End key ☎

- Press for 2+ seconds to turn the power on/off (☞P. 55).
- Use to end the function being used and return to stand-by display.

Continued on next page ▶▶

17 Dial/Text entry keys 1 to 9, 0, *, #

- Press to enter a phone number or text.
- Press * for 1+ seconds to use the Public mode (Drive mode) (☞P. 74).
- Press # for 1+ seconds to use the Manner mode (☞P. 113).
- Press 1 to 3 for 1+ seconds to use assigned functions (☞P. 393).
- Press 5 for 1+ seconds to set font size collectively (☞P. 125).
- Press 6 for 1+ seconds to place the Bluetooth on stand-by (☞P. 406).
- Press 7 for 1+ seconds to record Voice memos or play Voice memos/Recorded messages (☞P. 79, P. 396).
- Press 8 for 1+ seconds to start to use 2in1 or switch modes (☞P. 435, P. 436).
- Press 9 for 1+ seconds to reset Kisekae Tool settings (☞P. 120).

18 Multi/GPS/Supportbook key MULTI

- Press to view Supportbook (☞P. 46).
- Press to use Multi Assistant (☞P. 382).
- Press for 1+ seconds to check your present location (☞P. 266).

19 Speakers

- Emits ring tones, music, etc.
- Emits the other party's voice during hands-free operation.

20/21 Called LED/Charging LED

- Flashes while receiving a call, etc. (☞P. 123).
- Only 21 stays lit while charging (☞P. 51).
- Called LED/Charging LED is looked different depending on the handset color.

22 Shutter/PushTalk key 📷 (P)

- Press to use the PushTalk phonebook (☞P. 90).
- Press for 1+ seconds with the FOMA terminal closed to turn on/off the picture light.
- Press in the viewer position to activate the camera (☞P. 151).
- Press for 1+ seconds in the viewer position to activate 1Seg (☞P. 286).

23 FOMA antenna

- An antenna is built in. To speak in better conditions, do not cover the antenna area by hand.

24 1Seg antenna (☞P. 283)

- Use to receive 1Seg.

25 Camera

- Use to shoot still pictures or movies (☞P. 144).
- Use to send a camera image shot during a Videophone call to the other party (☞P. 60).

26 Picture light

- Lights while activating the camera (☞P. 151).
- Lights/Flashes during shooting (☞P. 153, P. 155).

27 Infrared port

- Use for the Ir exchange (☞P. 349).
- Use for the Ir remote control (☞P. 353).

28 Strap ring

29 FeliCa mark

- The IC card is included (The IC card cannot be removed). Use Osaifu-Keitai holding the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device (☞P. 255).
- Use to send and receive data via the iC transmission (☞P. 354).

30 Back cover (☞P. 50)

- A radio frequency-preventing sticker is attached on the back of the back cover. Do not peel off this sticker.

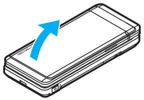
How to open the FOMA terminal

To use the FOMA terminal, open it (normal position) or use it in the viewer position.

- When carrying, keeping the FOMA terminal closed as shown in the diagram for step 1 is recommended.

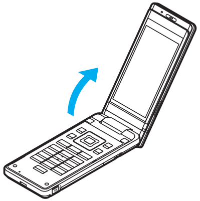
■ Viewer position

1



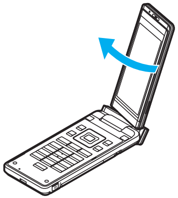
Open carefully with both hands.

2



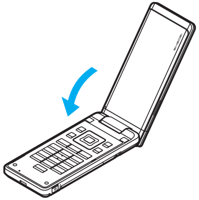
Open the display until it stops midway.

3



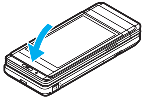
Rotate the display 180° to the right.

4

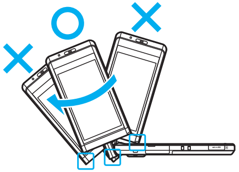


Flip the display forward.

5



Cautions when rotating

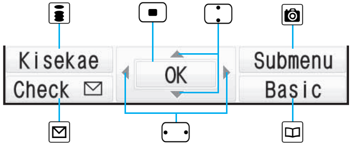


Note

- Note the following when rotating the FOMA terminal display.
  - ■ Do not hit the key surface, etc. May damage the key surface (See “Cautions when rotating” above).
  - ■ Do not rotate in the opposite direction or further than 180°.

How to use the Multi-guide key and Operation guidance key

Use to select or execute the menus that appear in the operation guidance. The following shows the keys allotted to select or execute the menus items that appear in the guidance.



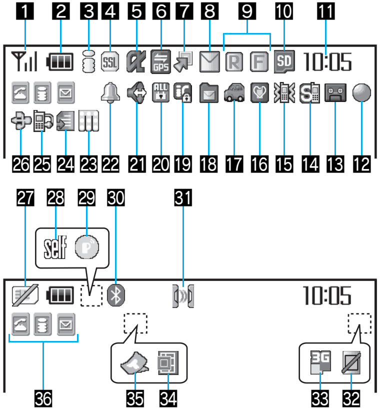
Operation guidance menu

In the operation guidance, menus appear according to the used function and situation.

The following table describes examples of the main operation guidance menus that appear.

OK	Sets the selected item
Submenu	Displays the Submenu
Agree	Checks selected image, music, etc.
Back	Returns to the previous screen
Play/Stop	Plays/Stops i-motion, music, etc.
Full	Displays selected images, etc. in full screen
Show all	Displays sorted files, etc. as a list
1/1 or Zoom↓	Displays selected images, etc. in actual/reduced size
Mail	Displays the compose message screen
Send	Sends a message
Cancel	Cancels the operation such as receiving a message
SelAll/ClrAll	Selects/Disables all selectable items (Up to 50 items can be selected/disabled depending on the function)
Page ▲/Page ▼	Scrolls the display by page
Close	Closes the Submenu, etc.

Viewing the display



1 Signal status

📶	Indication of the signal strength 📶 📶 📶 📶 Strong ←→ Weak

- When 圏外 appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Signal icon can be changed (☞P. 121).

2 Battery level/Charging (☞P. 54)

▮▮▮	Battery level
➡▯	Charging

- Battery icon can be changed (☞P. 121).

3 i-mode/Full Browser (☞P. 170, P. 303)

FB WFB fFB	Indicates i-mode/Full browser status

4 SSL (☞P. 171)

SSL	SSL compatible sites are viewed SSL compatible Internet web pages are viewed

- When SSL appears while Multi Assistant is used, function such as i-mode, Full Browser, i-αppli or Software update is being used with Multi Assistant.

5 i-αppli (☞P. 231)

α	i-αppli is being activated i-αppli stand-by is being activated
α	i-αppli stand-by is set*
dx	i-αppliDX is being activated i-αppliDX stand-by is being activated
dx	i-αppliDX stand-by is set*

* Indicates that i-αppli is set as the stand-by display, but cannot be used.

6 GPS (☞P. 266, P. 273)

GPS (blue)	Location request menu is set to [Loc. provision:ON] Location request menu is set to [Permission sched.] and Location provision is permitted
GPS (black)	Location request menu is set to [Permission sched.] and Location provision is rejected
✦	GPS positioning

7 Shortcut menu (☞P. 393)

↗	Appears when the function can be added to the Shortcut menu

8 i-mode mail/SMS/Area Mail received (☞P. 205)

✉ SMS ✉	Indicates the status of the i-mode mail/SMS/Area Mail reception Indicates the status of the memory to store received mail

9 Message R/F (☞P. 221)

R F R F R F R F R F R F R F	Indicates the reception status of the Message R/F Indicates the storage status of the Message R/F

- The status may not always be indicated even if messages are held at the i-mode center.

10 microSD Card (☞P. 332)

SD (gray)	microSD Card is inserted
SD (pink)	microSD Card is being used

11 Clock display (☞P. 57)

- Small clock icon can be changed (☞P. 121).

12 1Seg being recorded (☞P. 291)

●	1Seg is being recorded

13 Record message (☞P. 77)

▣	Record message is set

- When there are messages, ▣1 to ▣4 appears, indicating the total number of both types of messages. When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone), ▣FULL appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

14 Silent (☞P. 109)

🔕	The phone ring volume [Silent] is set

15 Vibrator (☞P. 111)

📳	Vibration mode is set

16 Manner mode (☞P. 113)

♡	Manner mode is set

17 Public mode (Drive mode) (☞P. 74)

🚗	Public mode (Drive mode) is set

18 Storage status of i-mode center (☞P. 205)

✉	Mail being held at the center
✉	Mail being held at the center full

19 IC card lock (☞P. 263)

iC🔒	IC card is locked

20 Restriction indicator (☞P. 132, P. 138)

🔑	Secret mode is set
✎	Secret data is being edited
Dial	Keypad dial lock
ALL	All lock is set
F	Function lock is set
D/F	Keypad dial lock and Function lock are set
D/F (red)	Secret mode, Function lock and Keypad dial lock are set
D/F (blue)	Side key guard, Secret mode, Function lock and Keypad dial lock are set
🔒	Side key guard is set

21 Hands-free (☞P. 61, P. 81, P. 87, P. 407)

☏ (red)	Hands-free in progress
☏ (green)	USB hands-free in progress
MUTE	Mute in progress (only when rotated the display)
🔈	Bluetooth hands-free in progress

22 Alarm (☞P. 293, P. 294, P. 385, P. 390)

🔔	Alarm is set Schedule alarm is set* Reception reserve alarm is set* Recording reserve alarm is set* Wakeup TV is set*

* Appears only when an Alarm is set for that day.

23 Music&Video Channel program reservation (☞P. 365)

▦	Appears 12 hours before Music&Video Channel program distribution

24 i-mode mail send reservation (☞P. 204)

✉	Mail with send reservation
✉	Mail failed to be automatically sent

25 Earphone/microphone connection (☞P. 401)

🎧	When voice/Videophone call in Auto answer setting is set to [ON] and while a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected When PushTalk in Auto answer setting is set to [ON]

- Appears when Auto answer for PushTalk is set even if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is not connected.

26 USB mode (☞P. 342)

⇄	FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) is connected in the Communication mode

27 FOMA card error

	Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted
?	Appears when a card other than the FOMA card is inserted

28 Self mode (☞P. 134)

self	Self mode is set

29 PushTalk (☞P. 87)

P	During PushTalk transmission

30 Bluetooth (☞P. 405, P. 406)

	Stand-by for Bluetooth registration Stand-by for Bluetooth connection Connected to Bluetooth

- The Bluetooth icon does not appear during SSL page display.

31 Ir exchange/Bluetooth communication/External device

	Data is communicated with another device using the Ir exchange function (☞P. 349) Data is sent using the Ir remote control (☞P. 353)
	Data is communicated with another device using the Bluetooth function (☞P. 409)
HID	Connected to commercially available Bluetooth compatible keyboard (☞P. 408)
(green)	Connected to an external device and transmitting packets
(red)	Connected to an external device and sending/receiving packet data
	Connected to an external device and transmitting 64K data

32 VeilView (☞P. 125)

	VeilView is set

- The VeilView icon does not appear during International roaming or while 1Seg is recorded.

33 3G/GSM (☞P. 453)

3G (green)	3G network (Packet transmission available)
3G (red)	3G network (Packet transmission not available)
GPRS	GSM/GPRS network (Packet transmission available)
GSM	GSM/GPRS network (Packet transmission not available)

34 Status of Comics setting (☞P. 359)

	Frame display is set
	Page display is set

- Status of Comics setting icon does not appear during hands-free operation.

35 ToruCa (☞P. 257)

	Unread ToruCa

- The ToruCa icon does not appear during hands-free operation or e-comic display.

36 Multitask (☞P. 382)

Indicates functions that are running.

	Four or more applications are running		Camera (still picture)
			Camera (movie)
	Videophone		Character reader (OCR)
	Voice call		Bar code reader
	Phonebook		Card reader
	PushTalk/PushTalk phonebook		Voice recorder
			Schedule

Continued on next page ▶▶

	Modem transmission (appears during data transmission)
	Software update
	GPS
	Shotdeco
	Bluetooth function
	Receive via Ir exchange, iC transmission, USB and Bluetooth communication
	i-αppli
	i-mode, i-Channel, WEB mail
	Mail, SMS, Message R/F, Check new message
	Mail/Decome-Anime/SMS being composed
	Received calls/Received messages history
	Redial/Sent messages history

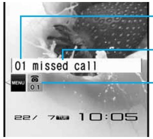
	Text memo
	Calculator
	Manga&BookReader
	Quick search
	Full Browser, Internet movie player
	ToruCa
	Alarm
	Timer
	microSD manager
	General settings
	Record message/Voice memo
	Document Viewer
	Own number
	1Seg
	Reception reserve/Recording reserve alarm sounds
	Data box, Music&Video Channel

Note

- microSD Card is referred to as [microSD] or [SD] on the FOMA terminal (☞P. 332).
- Some of the screen shots in this manual have been modified or abbreviated.
- The display for the FOMA terminal is manufactured using high-precision technology, but it may occasionally contain dots that fail to light or that remains permanently lit. This is not a malfunction.

Checking notices with stock icon

Display stock icons in stand-by when a call is missed or new mail is received. In stand-by, select stock icons to check notice details.


01 missed call

22/ 7 10:05

Stock icon type

Icon	Message	Page
☎	xx missed call^{*1}	P. 76
	Recorded messages xx message/ xx message	P. 79
	xx voice mail^{*1}	P. 427
✉	xx mail message^{*2}	P. 205, P. 227
R✉	xx New Message R	P. 222
F✉	xx New Message F	P. 222
	xx new ToruCa	P. 257
➔✉	New auto send result	P. 204
↻	Update complete	P. 508
	Check update	P. 508
	Update required	P. 505
	Check for update	P. 506
	USB mode setting	P. 342
▦	Download successful (Music&Video Channel)	P. 365
✖	Download failed (Music&Video Channel)	P. 365

Icon	Message	Page
	Send loc - No resp	P. 276
	Send loc - Resp	P. 276
	Send loc - Failed	P. 276
¥	Charge limit exceeded	P. 398
MENU	Custom menu/Basic menu/Menu*3	P. 45

*1 When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the number of [A mode] and [B mode] appears each.

*2 When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the total number of [A mode] and [B mode] appears.

*3 The message that appears differs depending on the menu screen.

1 In stand-by, a stock icon appears ▶ ■.

2 Select the stock icon ▶ ■.

- After the details are checked, the stock icon and message disappear.

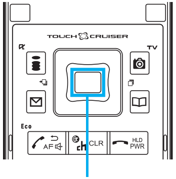
Note

- Stock icons do not appear while the i-motion set as stand-by is played or the i-αppli stand-by is being activated.
- In the viewer position, the messages and the notice details can be checked by using Bluetooth compatible keyboard.

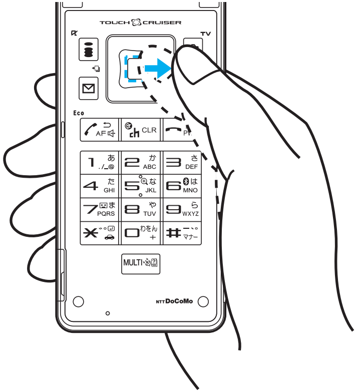
Optical TOUCH CRUISER

Use the Optical TOUCH CRUISER to perform the same operations as those for ✥ of Multi-guide key (e.g. moving the cursor or scrolling the screen).

- Move the pointer or cursor just as covering the whole operating range of the Optical TOUCH CRUISER with finger.
- The pointer or cursor moves in conjunction with sliding of the finger.



Operating range of Optical TOUCH CRUISER



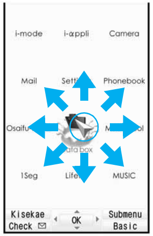
Note

- In the following cases (screens), the Optical TOUCH CRUISER is not available. However, when the Submenu appears, the pad can be operated.
  - ■ Stand-by ■ i-αppli ■ Dial input screen
  - ■ Character reader, Bar code reader, Card reader screen
  - ■ While making, receiving or during the voice call/Videophone call/PushTalk, etc.

■ Moving the pointer

In the Custom menu screen or while i-mode or Full Browser is connected, move the pointer (↖, ☝, ▷, etc.) up/down, left/right or diagonally to select an item.

- In some Custom menus, the pointer shape varies or the pointer is not supported.
- Move the pointer to the edge of the screen while i-mode or Full Browser is connected to show ⇧, ⇩/⇦, ⇨ and scroll the screen to the direction of the arrow. If Link is set, ☝ appears, and press ▣ to move to the linked page.
- The pointer moving speed varies depending on the finger sliding speed.

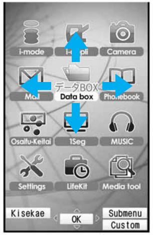


e.g.) Custom menu screen

■ Moving the cursor

In the Basic menu or Submenu, move the cursor up/down and left/right in the same way as ✥ of Multi-guide key.

- When there are multiple pages, move the cursor to switch the pages.



e.g.) Basic menu screen

When using the Optical TOUCH CRUISER

- Do not operate the Optical TOUCH CRUISER using a pointed metallic object such as a pen tip. May cause scratches or a failure of the sensor.
- Note that putting a sticker, etc. to the operating range may cause a malfunction.

Setting the Optical TOUCH CRUISER

<TOUCH CRUISER set>

■ Setting whether to use the Optical TOUCH CRUISER

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [TOUCH CRUISER set] ▶ [Usage settings].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

■ Setting the pointer speed/scroll speed

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [TOUCH CRUISER set].**

2 **Select an item ▶ ▣.**

3 **Select the speed ▶ ▣.**

Touch panel

If the screen is switched from the normal position to the viewer position, operate by putting your finger on the touch panel (screen).

- The operations differ depending on the function and screen in use.

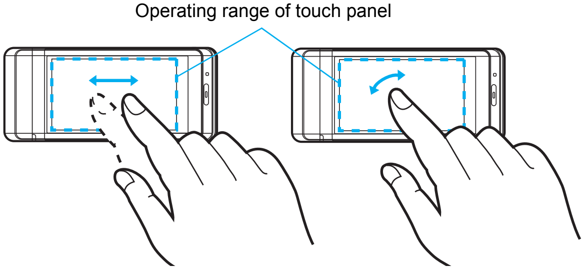
- Operate the touch panel inside the following operating range of touch panel. However, when a substitute image appears in the right side of the screen, operate in the left side of the screen where functions are shown.

Example: Adjusting the zoom

Touch the touch panel and slide the finger left/right.

Example: Selecting

Touch the touch panel.



- When the touch panel is touched, the tone sounds and the vibrator is activated (excluding while activating a camera (still picture/ movie)).
  - For details on setting the volume ☞P. 110
  - For details on setting the vibrator ☞P. 111
  - The tone cannot be changed.

Note

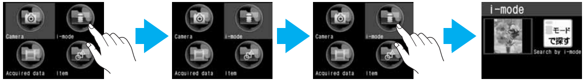
- The message indicating the operation is not available appears when the touch panel cannot be used.
- Other than the viewer position, the touch panel is available in the following cases.
  - ■ During Videophone (☞P. 81)
  - ■ During Writing authentication entry (☞P. 130)

■ Selecting keys

In the touch menu, control keys and others, touch the displayed keys to select it.

■ Selecting data and items

In list and data list screens, select the data or items by touching, moving the cursor and re-touching them.



- When scrolling the screen or when switching the page in the folder list screen or the data list screen, slide the finger up/down or touch ▲/▼ at the bottom of the screen to move pages.

■ Canceling the selection

When having touched data by mistake, keep the finger on the touch panel and slide it away from the selected data to cancel the selection.

- Touch the “CLR” key to return to the previous screen.

When using the touch panel

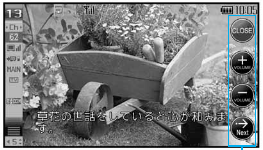
- This product is designed to be operated with one finger. In the following cases, the touch panel is not activated.
  - ■ When operated with a gloved finger
  - ■ When operated with two or more fingers
  - ■ When operated with a fingernail
  - ■ When operated with a pen, ballpoint pen, pencil, etc.
  - ■ When operated with foreign objects placed on the operation pad
- Note that the following cases may cause a malfunction.
  - ■ When operated with a wet finger
  - ■ When operated with the touch panel pressed forcefully
  - ■ When putting a sticker to the touch panel (display)

Touch menu

The following functions can be activated from the touch menu.

- ■ Full Browser ■ 1Seg ■ Camera ■ Mail
- ■ Manga&BookReader ■ Data box
- ● For details on touch menu ☞P. 46, P. 476

Control key



草花の世話をしていると心が和みます。

Set or change the channel using the control key while the camera is activated, 1Seg is watched, etc.

- ● Touch the touch panel and the control key appears.
- ● If no operations are performed for approximately 6 seconds with the control key shown, the control key disappears. Also, touch other than the control key to hide the control key (excluding 1Seg).
- ● For Full Browser, touch menu and the control key appears. Touch the display area other than control keys to hide.
- ● When the control keys appear, only those are available. However, in the camera (still picture/movie) shooting screen, adjusting the brightness and digital zoom are available by using the touch panel even while the control keys are displayed.

■ Using the control keys

The control key appears when the following functions are activated.

Common keys for all functions

CLR/CLOSE[*1]	To end the running function/return to a data list screen
Next	To view the following keys[*2]
↩	To return to previous

[*1] While multiple windows are displayed in Full Browser, close the displayed window.

[*2] This key does not appear when there is no extra key.

While the camera (still picture/movie) is activated

Size	Image size[*1]	✋	Fix camera shake
AF mode	AF mode[*2]	Zoom +	To zoom in[*4]
⚡	Picture light	Zoom −	To zoom out[*4]
Scene	Shoot by scene	📱↔SD	Switch phone⇔SD
White Balance	White balance[*3]	+	To turn up the brightness[*4]
common	Common replay mode[*3]	−	To turn down the brightness[*4]

[*1] Touch after selecting the size (For still pictures, ***QCIF: 176×144*** cannot be viewed).

[*2] Select a mode from Standard AF (Standard)/AF (Def (people first)) (only for still pictures)/SPOT AF (Spot AF) (only for still pictures)/AF (Closeup)/Manual (Manual focus) to touch.

- When AF is touched, touch the face detection frame and adjust the focus.
- When SPOT AF is touched, touch the focus area and adjust the focus.
- When Manual is touched, touch the touch panel, slide the finger left/right and adjust the focus.

[*3] White balance appears only for still pictures, and the Common replay mode appears only for movies.

[*4] Appears even in the movie shooting screen.

- ● The settings other than AF mode and image size change each time the key is touched.
- ● In the preview screen after shooting, the following keys appear.

Save	To save	▶	To play*	↩	To delete

* Only movie is displayed.

While 1Seg is being watched

+ VOLUME	To turn up the volume[*1]	< CHANNEL	To select a station with DOWN
− VOLUME	To turn down the volume[*1]	» CH SEARCH	To select a station by searching a frequency (UP)[*2]

CH	To display ChannelView	« CH SEARCH	To select a station by searching a frequency (DOWN)*2
› CHANNEL	To select a station with UP		

*1 Keep key touched to adjust the volume continuously.

*2 Double-touch the touch panel while selecting a station by searching a frequency to stop selecting a station by searching a frequency.

While an image is displayed from My picture/1Seg of Data box

⟳	To rotate (JPEG image)	↺	To retry (Flash movie)
▶II	To play/stop (Flash movie)	›	To next
⛶	To display in actual size/full screen (excluding Flash movie)	‹	To previous

- For JPEG images, 🔍 (zoom in)/🔍 (zoom out) appears when touching Zoom which is displayed at the bottom of the screen simultaneously with the control key.
  - In the image display screen, which was zoomed up by touching 🔍, touch the touch panel and slide the finger up/down/left/right to change the display position.

While i-motion is displayed from i-motion of Data box/ While a video is played back from 1Seg of Data box

+ VOLUME	To turn up the volume*1	▶▶	To fast forward*3
− VOLUME	To turn down the volume*1	I◀◀	To previous*2
▶II	To pause/play	◀◀	To fast rewind*3
▶▶I	To next*2		

*1 Keep key touched to adjust the volume continuously.

*2 Appears only for i-motion.

*3 Appears only for video.

While e-book, etc. is displayed

⌃	To go to the next line/frame	Jump	To the top page/To view previous pages in backward order (when there is a history)
⌄	To return to the previous line/frame		

While Full Browser is displayed

Cancel	To cancel connection	★	To save Bookmark*3
▤	Visual history*1	FIT	Display Mode*4
✎	To view Bookmark list*2		

*1 Touch the history screen on the right/left or touch the touch panel and slide the finger right/left to move the cursor to next/previous history in the Visual history screen.
- Touch the tab on the upper part of the screen or touch the touch panel and slide the finger up/down to switch windows in the Visual history screen.

*2 Touch ▶/◀ or touch the touch panel and slide the finger right/left to view the next/previous page in the Bookmark list screen.

*3 Check the site URL, touch [OK], select a folder and touch it to save to bookmark.

*4 FIT (Keitai mode) and PC (PC mode) are switched.

- Zoom bar appears at the bottom of the screen simultaneously with the control key. Touch the slider of zoom bar and slide the finger left/right or touch +/- on the both ends of the zoom bar to zoom up/down the screen.

While a PC movie is played back

▶II	To pause/play	− VOLUME	To turn down the volume*
+ VOLUME	To turn up the volume*		

* Keep key touched to adjust the volume continuously.

While a message details screen is displayed

›	To the next mail/message*1	»✉ New	To the next unread mail*1, 2
‹	To the previous mail/message*1	✉« New	To the previous unread mail*1, 2
↺	To play Decome-Anime		

*1 Does not appear when there is no next/previous mail or message and unread mail.

*2 Appears only for received mail.

Menu settings and selections

Set, change or save functions from the menu screens.

The explanations in this manual are based on how to retrieve a function from the Custom menu.

Setting the start menu <Menu priority>

Set the start menu that displayed when ■ is pressed in stand-by.

Start menu	Characteristics
Custom menu	The preset Kisekae Tool (☞P. 119) can be selected and set. Each Kisekae Tool consists of different functions and designs. Kisekae Tools can be downloaded from sites and used. **Preset Kisekae Tools** ■ White ■ Black ■ Pink ■ Blue ■ 拡大メニュー (Large) ■ シンプル (Simple) ■ ダイレクトメニュー ※ Preset Kisekae Tools differ depending on the FOMA terminal handset color.
Basic menu	In the Basic menu, input the function number, which is assigned to each function, to quickly retrieve the function to be used. ● Assigned function numbers ☞P. 458

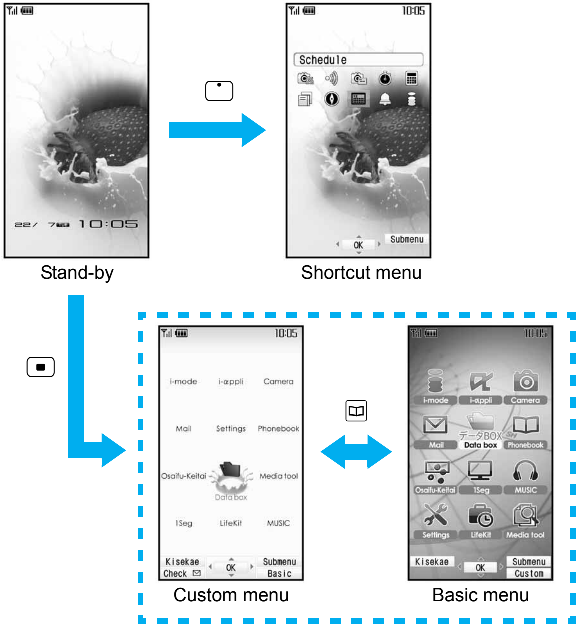
1 **In stand-by, press ■ ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/ Power saver] ▶ [Menu priority].**

- In the Custom menu/Basic menu: Press 📷 ▶ [Menu priority].

2 **Select the start menu ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].**

■ Switching the set start menu temporarily

Switch the start menu temporarily. When the stand-by display reappears, the start menu returns to the one set in Menu priority. Use the Shortcut menu to retrieve saved functions quickly. Other functions can also be saved in the Shortcut menu (☞P. 393).



Stand-by

Shortcut menu

Custom menu

Basic menu

Retrieving a function from each start menu

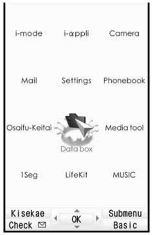
- For details on the available functions ☞P. 458
- Use ✥ and the Optical TOUCH CRUISER in either start menu.
- Press the dial key corresponding to the menu item number (1, 2, 3, etc.) to select a function. However, in the Custom menu, a function may not be selected by using the menu item numbers.
- The method for selecting functions may differ depending on the Kisekae Tool set for the Custom menu.
- Press CLR to re-select a function, and the previous screen reappears. Press ⌒ to return to stand-by.

When a stock icon (☞P. 38) appears in stand-by, select **MENU** to show the start menu.

Retrieving from the Custom menu

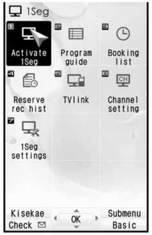
Example: Activating 1Seg with Multi guide key or Optical TOUCH CRUISER

- For the ⊠, use the Optical TOUCH CRUISER to select an item.
- The following shows the screen operated with the Optical TOUCH CRUISER.



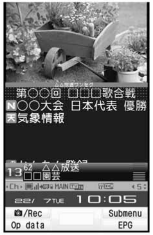
Custom menu

⊠ ■ or ✥ ■



When [1Seg] is displayed

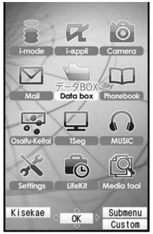
⊠ ■ or ✥ ■



When 1Seg is activated

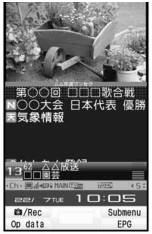
Retrieving from the Basic menu

Example: Activating 1Seg by entering function numbers



Basic menu

9 6 1



When 1Seg is activated

Note

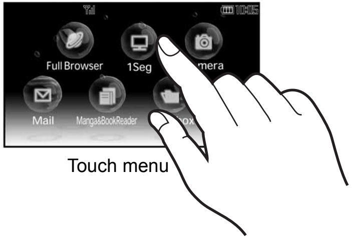
- When the Custom menu image is changed by Kisekae Tool, the operation may differ from the description in this manual. In this case, switch the menu screen to the Basic menu (☞P. 44) or perform Reset menu screen (☞P. 120).

Menu (touch menu) when in the viewer position

If the screen is switched from the normal position to the viewer position in the stand-by display, Custom menu, Basic menu, Shortcut menu or others, the touch menu appears.

- When the stand-by display appears in the viewer position, touch the touch panel to show the touch menu.
- Touch the touch panel to select a menu.
- Available functions to select from the touch menu are limited (☞P. 476).
- The images and items in the touch menu cannot be changed.
- Touch the “CLR” key to return to the previous screen and re-select the function. If the key is touched in the touch menu, the stand-by display appears.

Example: Activating 1Seg by touching the touch panel



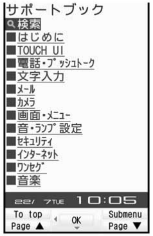
Touch menu

When 1Seg is activated

Supportbook

Displaying the Supportbook

Use this function for unsure operations. After the Supportbook appears, check the explanation and operation procedures of each function. In addition, directly start functions that were looked up in the Supportbook.



1 In stand-by, press MULTI.

2 Select a menu or item ▶ ■.

Related Operations

Start functions directly from the Supportbook

In the details screen, select the function to start ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

Using a FOMA card

A FOMA card is an IC card that records personal information, such as phone numbers. A FOMA card can store phonebook data and SMS. By switching FOMA cards, multiple FOMA terminals can be used for different purposes as needed.

- If a FOMA card is not inserted, transmission functions such as voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmission, i-mode, mail transmission and packet transmission are not available on the FOMA terminal. In addition, 1Seg cannot be watched.

Inserting and removing

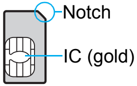
- Before inserting or removing the FOMA card, turn off the power, position the back facing upwards and remove the battery pack. Close and hold the FOMA terminal firmly with your both hands.

■ Inserting

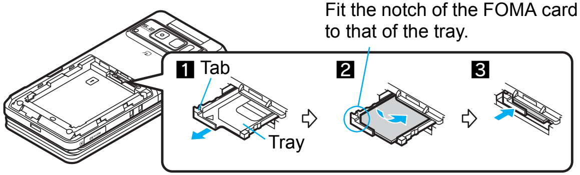
1 Hook a finger on the tab and pull the tray out (❶).

- Pull out the tray straight until it stops.

2 Hold the FOMA card with the IC facing up and set on the tray (❷).



3 Push the tray all the way in (❸).

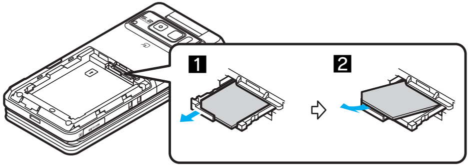


Fit the notch of the FOMA card to that of the tray.

■ Removing

1 Hook a finger on the tab, pull the tray out (❶) and remove the FOMA card (❷).

- Do not allow the FOMA card to fall when removing it.



Note

- Inserting or removing the FOMA card forcibly may damage the card or deform the tray. Use caution.
- Refer to the FOMA card user’s guide for more information on the FOMA card.
- Do not misplace the FOMA card once it is taken out.
- When the tray falls off, slide the tray in straight along the guide rail.

Security codes

The FOMA card has a “PIN1 code” and a “PIN2 code”.
Both are set to [0000] by default but can be changed to a four- to eight-digit number by the user (☞P. 131).

FOMA card security functions

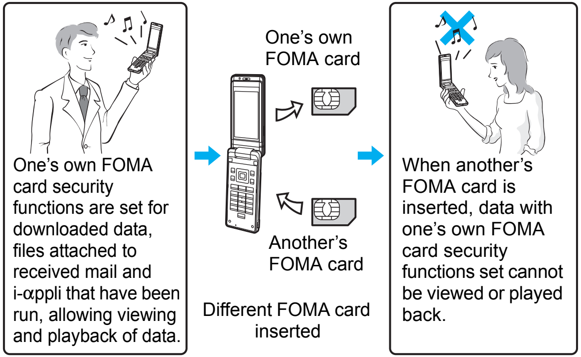
<FOMA card security functions>

The FOMA terminal has built-in FOMA card security functions (FOMA card restriction functions) as functions for protecting personal data and files.

- When the FOMA card is inserted into the FOMA terminal and data or files are retrieved using any of the following methods or when i-αppli is running, FOMA card security functions are automatically set in the retrieved data or files.
  - ■ When a file such as an image, melody or PDF is downloaded from a site or Internet web page
  - ■ When a site or Internet web page is saved as a screen memo
  - ■ When i-mode mail with a file attached is received
  - ■ When i-αppli is running
- Data, files or software with FOMA card security functions run only when in use with the FOMA card inserted at time of acquisition. Display, play, attach to i-mode mail, run software, send data using Ir function and iC transmission function, and copy to microSD Card can be executed.
- The following indicates the data for which FOMA card security is set.
  - ■ Melody
  - ■ Screen memo
  - ■ Chara-den
  - ■ i-motion
  - ■ PDF data
  - ■ Kisekae Tool
  - ■ Machi-chara
  - ■ Download dictionary
  - ■ Contents transfer compatible data
  - ■ Image in Message R/F
  - ■ Music&Video Channel program
  - ■ Deco-mail template with data which FOMA card security functions are set
  - ■ Image (including animation and Flash movie)
  - ■ Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta full®
  - ■ File attached to Message R/F
  - ■ ToruCa (details) image
  - ■ Image inserted to Deco-mail or signature
  - ■ Videophone picture memo
  - ■ i-αppli (including i-αppli stand-by)
  - ■ Decome-Anime Template
  - ■ e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic saved in the [Comic] folder
  - ■ File attached to i-mode mail other than the following
    - ・ToruCa
    - ・Phonebook
    - ・Schedule
    - ・Bookmark
    - ・Documents

※"Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of the Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

- The following indicates the settings saved in FOMA card.
  - ■ Own number
  - ■ Select language
  - ■ SMS center
  - ■ SMS input character
  - ■ PIN setting
  - ■ SSL certificates
  - ■ SMS expiry
- The above operations cannot be performed if the FOMA card inserted at time of data/file retrieval or i-αppli startup is replaced with a different FOMA card.
- Explanation that follows refers to the FOMA card inserted at time of data/files retrieval as "one's own FOMA card" and other FOMA cards as "another's FOMA card".



One's own FOMA card security functions are set for downloaded data, files attached to received mail and i-αppli that have been run, allowing viewing and playback of data.

When another's FOMA card is inserted, data with one's own FOMA card security functions set cannot be viewed or played back.

Note

- When one's own FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, the data or files for which FOMA card security functions are set cannot be set as stand-by displays or ring tones.
- When a FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, FOMA card security functions are activated and if data or file retrieved from a site is set as the stand-by display or ring tone, the setting is reset to the default. When one's own FOMA card is re-inserted, the setting returns.

  Example: When setting [Melody A], for which FOMA card security functions are set, as a ring tone

  When one's own FOMA card is taken out or is replaced with another's FOMA card, ring tone returns to default setting. When one's own FOMA card is put back, the ring tone returns to [Melody A].
- FOMA card security functions cannot be set for data received using Ir exchange or data transmission functions, and still pictures/movies, etc. shot with the FOMA terminal.
- It is possible to move or delete data or files for which FOMA card security functions are set even when another's FOMA card is inserted.
- Running i-αppli by selecting highlighted text in i-mode mail details screen cannot be performed or retrieved when FOMA card security functions are set.
- If the FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card after i-αppli stand-by is set, the set i-αppli cannot be activated in stand-by, and the image set in Stand-by display appears.

FOMA card type

Note the following differences between "FOMA card (blue)" and "FOMA card (green/white)" used on the FOMA terminal.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green/white)	Page
Number of phone number digits available in the FOMA card phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P. 97
Client certificate operations for FirstPass	Not available	Available	P. 188
Use of WORLD WING	Not available	Available	P. 448
Service number	Not available	Available	P. 433

About WORLD WING

WORLD WING is a DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that makes it possible to use the mobile phone number registered in Japan to make and receive calls even overseas by the FOMA card (green/white) and supported FOMA terminal.

- If subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, subscription for "WORLD WING" is not required. However, if subscription for "WORLD WING" is canceled at or after subscription for the FOMA service, subscription for "WORLD WING" is required again.
- If subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but not subscribed to "WORLD WING", subscription for "WORLD WING" is required.
- Some payment plans are not available.
- When the FOMA card (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, promptly contact DoCoMo and conduct a procedure for canceling the use of service. Refer to General Inquiries on the back of this manual for inquiries. Note that transmission/calling charges after the FOMA card is lost or stolen are incurred to the subscriber.

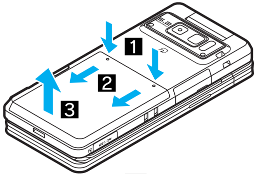
Inserting and removing the battery pack

Use the battery pack SH17 exclusive to the FOMA terminal.

- Turn off the power, close the FOMA terminal, and hold it in your both hands before inserting or removing the battery pack.

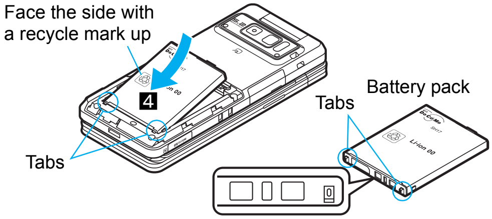
■ Inserting

1 Lightly push the back cover in the direction of the arrow (❶), slide approximately 2 mm (❷) and remove the back cover (❸).



2 Insert the battery pack (❹).

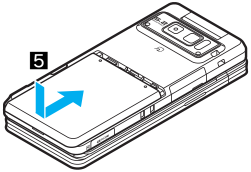
- The battery pack has tabs that make it easy to insert. Attach the battery pack with a recycle mark side faced up.



Battery pack connector terminal side

3 Reattach the back cover (❺).

- Position the back cover as shown in the illustration and then push the back cover and slide into place.

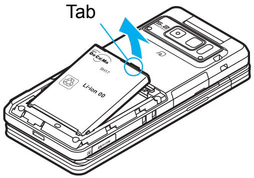


■ Removing

1 Follow step 1 of “Inserting” to remove the back cover.

2 Remove the battery pack.

- The battery pack has a tab that makes it easy to remove. Press the tab with your fingers without placing too much force. Lift the battery pack to remove.



Note

- Using unnecessary force when inserting or removing the battery pack may damage the connector terminal for the battery pack (charger terminal) on the FOMA terminal.
- Firmly close the back cover. If not closed firmly, the back cover may come off and the battery pack may fall out due to vibration.

Charging

Cautions when charging

The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Be sure to charge the battery using the exclusive AC or DC adapter (sold separately) before use.

Estimated charge times and LED display

The following figures are estimated times for charging an empty battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off.

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 120 min
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 120 min

- Charging LED illuminates in red when charging and turn off when charging is completed.
- Check that the battery pack has been properly inserted when charging LED flashes red. The LED also flashes red when the battery pack has reached the end of its service life.
- The battery pack can also be charged with the FOMA terminal turned on (🔌 on the display flashes during charging). When charging is complete, charging LED turns off, and 🔌 on the display changes to 🔋.
- When the battery becomes warm, charging may automatically stop even if the battery has not been fully charged. Charging resumes after the temperature lowers to an appropriate temperature. While charging is stopped, charging LED turns off (🔌 on the display flashes while stopped).

Estimated times of use when fully charged

Continuous talk time	FOMA/3G		Voice call: Approx. 215 min Videophone call: Approx. 100 min
	GSM		Voice call: Approx. 195 min
Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	3G/GSM setting: 3G	When mobile: Approx. 395 hr
		3G/GSM setting: AUTO	When mobile: Approx. 365 hr
			At rest: Approx. 565 hr
	GSM	3G/GSM setting: AUTO	At rest: Approx. 290 hr
1Seg watching time			Approx. 250 min

- Continuous talk time is estimated as the usage time at normal transmission signal strength, and continuous stand-by time is estimated as the usage time while moving with the FOMA terminal folded at normal signal strength. Talk/stand-by time may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, stand-by display, Power saver mode, Missed call notice and New unread mail notice settings, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission)/stand-by time. When i-Channel is subscribed, information is automatically received and updated, so talk (transmission)/stand-by time will be reduced. In addition, when shooting or editing an image, watching 1Seg, composing i-mode mail, activating the downloaded i-αppli or the i-αppli stand-by, or using MUSIC Player or Bluetooth function, the talk (transmission)/stand-by time will be shorten even if calls or i-mode transmission are not made. Some i-αppli software may continue transmission even after downloading. To avoid this, set not to connect in advance.
- The actual usage time is a combination of stand-by time and talk time, and the longer the talk time, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.
- 1Seg watching time depends on conditions including battery level status, functions used, temperature and other environmental conditions.

Battery pack service life

- Battery pack is a consumable product. Service time per charge is gradually reduced every time the battery is charged.
- When service time per charge is reduced to about half of the default time, this means that the battery pack is approaching the end of its service life. In such a case, it is recommended to replace the battery pack as soon as possible. Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it approaches the end of its service life but this will not cause problems.
- If i-αppli, Videophone, or 1Seg is used while charging for a long time, the service life of the battery pack may become shorter than estimated.
- To protect the environment, return used batteries to NTT DoCoMo, any DoCoMo retailer, or a recycling agency.

About charging batteries

- Refer to user’s guide of FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (sold separately), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (sold separately), or FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (sold separately).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 covers only 100 VAC. FOMA AC Adapter 02/ FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use covers from 100 VAC to 240 VAC.
- The shape of the plug for the AC adapter is for 100 VAC (for domestic use). To use the AC adapter of 100 VAC to 240 VAC overseas, a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of your country of stay is required. Do not use a transformer for use overseas to charge the battery.

Cautions when charging

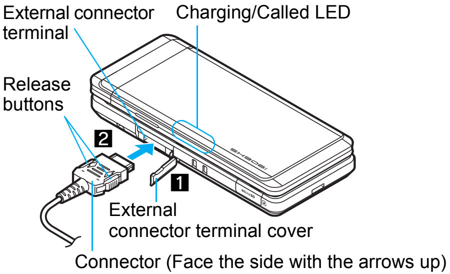
- Do not charge for long periods of time with the power left on. If the FOMA terminal is left on after charging is complete, the battery pack charge decreases.
  In such cases, the AC or DC adapter charges the battery again. However, depending on when the FOMA terminal is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low, the battery alert tone may sound, or the battery may only be usable for a short time.
- When the battery is empty and terminal is recharging, charging LED may not illuminate immediately.
- If the alert tone sounds and the power cannot be turned on, charge the battery for a while.
- If the battery empty alert is displayed and charging begins within 60 seconds of the alert tone, the status returns to normal.
- While charging, terminal may not turn on even when charging LED is illuminated in red. Charge longer and try turning power on again.
- Frequently recharging the battery when its power is still remaining enough may shorten the life of the battery pack. It is recommended to use the battery to a certain level before recharging.
- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.

Charging using the AC adapter/DC adapter

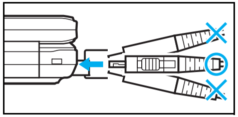
[Read “FOMA AC adapter 01/02 (sold separately) and FOMA DC adapter 01/02 (sold separately) user’s guide” carefully.]

- Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open or in the viewer position.

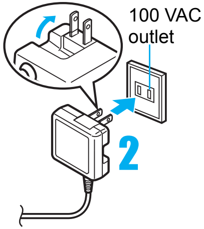
1 Open the external connector terminal cover (❶) and insert the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector terminal (❷).


External connector terminal
Charging/Called LED
Release buttons
❷
❶
External connector terminal cover
Connector (Face the side with the arrows up)

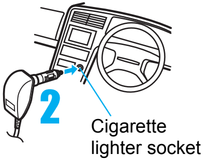
- Check the direction (see diagram) of the connector, keep it parallel with the FOMA terminal and firmly push all the way in until it clicks.



2 **When insert the AC adapter power plug into an outlet or insert the DC adapter power plug into a car cigarette lighter socket, charge start sound is heard, charging LED illuminates, and charging starts.**



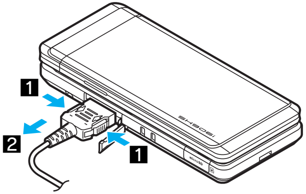
For AC adapter



For DC adapter

3 **When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.**

- When removing the connector, always hold the release buttons on both sides (❶) and unplug it by pulling out horizontally (❷).



Note

- Do not forcibly insert or remove. May cause damage to the external connector terminal and the connector.
- Pull the adapter out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if it will not be used for a long time.
- Do not forcefully pull the external connector terminal cover. May damage the cover.
- Do not place objects near the FOMA terminal when charging. The FOMA terminal may be damaged. In addition, a display may be damaged when charged in the viewer position.

When using a DC adapter

- The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles (12 and 24 VDC).
- Do not use with the car engine shut off. May drain the car battery.
- The DC adapter fuse (2A) is a consumable. For replacement, purchase a new fuse at a local automobile supply shop.
- Refer to the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 user’s guide for details.

Charging using the desktop holder

[Read “Desktop holder SH19 (sold separately) user’s guide” carefully.]

- Battery pack can be charged in the viewer position.
- Charging is not available with the FOMA terminal open.

1 **Face the side with the arrows of the AC adapter connector up and insert it into the connector terminal of the desktop holder.**

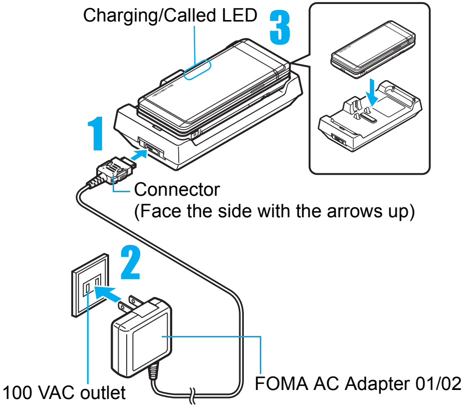
- Keeping the connector parallel with the desktop holder, firmly push it all the way in until it clicks.

2 **Insert the AC adapter power plug into an outlet.**

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Place the FOMA terminal into the desktop holder. Charge start sound is heard, Charging LED illuminates, and charging starts.

- Keeping the connector parallel with the desktop holder as shown below, firmly push it all the way in until it clicks.
- Do not open the FOMA terminal with the terminal placed in the desktop holder.



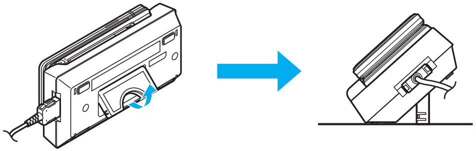
4 When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- Hold the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal out.

Making the desktop holder stand up

Make the stand behind the desktop holder stand up so that charging becomes available with the desktop holder stood up.

- Do not force to make the stand behind stand up.

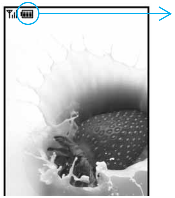


Note

- Pull the AC adapter out of the outlet when left unused for a long period of time.
- When Charge start sound is not heard or when charging LED does not illuminate, check that the FOMA terminal is placed securely in the desktop holder (except when terminal is turned off, Manner mode is set or Charge start sound is Silent).
- When placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder, be careful that the strap is not caught in between the handset and the desktop holder.

Battery level

How to check the battery level



▮▮▮	Battery level is still sufficient.
▮▮	Battery level is low.
▮	Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery.
▯	Battery is empty (Power will turn off soon).
➡▯	Battery pack is being charged.

Checking the battery level with sound and display

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Check status] ▶ [Battery level].

Graphic			
Sound	Three beeps	Two beeps	One beep
Status	Battery is sufficiently full.	Battery is running low.	Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery.

- Wait approximately 2 seconds and the display disappears.
- The battery level sound is heard at the volume set in Key/Standby i-motion (☞P. 110).

If the battery runs out

[Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation] appears if battery starts to run out (Press ◉ to clear the message). After a while, an alert tone sounds. The warning screen stating that the battery runs out appears, handset operations are disabled and power turns off after approximately 60 seconds.

- During a voice/Videophone call, the alert tone sounds and [Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation] appears. The call is disconnected after approximately 20 seconds. At the same time, the screen above appears and after approximately 60 seconds, the power turns off.
- Alert tone does not sound when Manner mode or Public mode (Drive mode) is set (Alert tone sounds during a call).

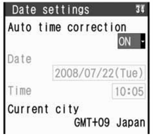
Power ON/OFF

Turning the power on and off

Turning the power on

1 Press ☎ (for 2+ seconds).

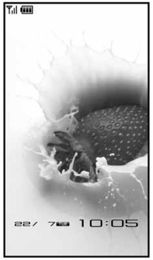
- It may take some time for the wakeup screen to appear.
- The wakeup screen appears followed by the initial settings screen. Proceed to Initial setting (☞P. 56).



Date settings
Auto time correction
ON
Date
2008/07/22(Tue)
Time
10:05
Current city
GMT+09 Japan

Initial settings screen

- If initial settings have been completed, the screen shown on the right appears when power is turned on. This screen is called the “stand-by display”.



Stand-by display

Welcome mail

- “Welcome✨SH906i☖✋” is saved by default.
- To check a welcome mail: In stand-by, press ◉ ▶ select the stock icon ✉ (mail message) ▶ ◉.
  - For details on the following operations ☞P. 209

Note

- If initial settings are not yet completed, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.
- If the FOMA card is not inserted, [Insert UIM] and a FOMA card error appear (☞P. 37).
- When [Enter PIN1 code] appears, enter the PIN1 code (☞P. 131).

Continued on next page ▶▶

- When a FOMA card is replaced with a new card, the terminal security code (four to eight digits) must be entered after turning on the terminal. If a correct terminal security code is entered, stand-by display appears. When a wrong terminal security code is entered five times, the power is turned off. However, turning on the power again is possible.
- When 圏外 appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.

Turning the power off

1 Press ☎ (for 2+ seconds).

- It may take some time for the power to be turned off (The end screen appears on the display until the power is turned off).

Select language

Switching the display to English

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [一般設定] ▶ [Bilingual] ▶ [English].

- To switch the display language from English to Japanese: In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Select language] ▶ [日本語].

Note

- If a FOMA card is inserted, settings are saved to the FOMA card as well. When the setting of the FOMA terminal handset and the setting of the inserted FOMA card are different, the setting in the FOMA card is prioritized.

Initial setting

Making the initial setting

The initial settings screen appears automatically when the power is turned on for the first time. Each setting item can also be set from Menu (When the initial settings are complete, the stand-by display appears).

- ■ Date and time settings
- ■ Key/Standby i-motion
- ■ Font size settings
- ■ Change terminal security code
- ■ Location provision

- When items that have not been set remain, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.

1 Set the date and time (☞P. 57).

- Set the date and time from 00:00 January 1, 2001 to 23:59 December 31, 2050.

2 Register a terminal security code (☞P. 129).

3 Set the Key/Standby i-motion (☞P. 110).

4 Set GPS Location provision ON/OFF (☞P. 273).

5 Set the font size (☞P. 124).

- When the initial settings are complete, the software update function confirmation screen appears. Read the description and select [Agree] (When the initial settings are made from the menu or the software update is set to other than [auto-update], the confirmation screen does not appear).

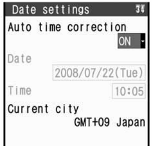
Note

- Press ☎ to cancel the initial settings.

Setting the date and time

Set the date and time on the FOMA terminal. Set to automatically correct the date and time.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Date settings].



Date settings

Auto time correction

ON

Date

2008/07/22(Tue)

Time

10:05

Current city

GMT+09 Japan

2 Select the [Auto time correction] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select the setting.

- **Select [ON] ▶ ▤.**
- **Select [OFF] ▶ select the [Date] field ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the date ▶ ▣ ▶ select the [Time] field ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the time (24-hour format) ▶ ▣ ▶ ▤.**
- When entering month, day and time, add ***0*** before numbers one through nine (example: 01, 02, 03, etc.).

Note

- The date and time that are set are saved even if the battery pack is removed, but if the battery pack remains removed for approximately a week or more or the battery remains empty, the settings may be reset. When this happens, set again after charging the battery.
- If the date and time are not set correctly, the following functions cannot be used properly.
  - ■ Redial, Received calls
  - ■ Alarm
  - ■ SSL (authentication)
  - ■ Starting i-αppliDX
  - ■ Machi-chara
  - ■ Record message (voice), Record message (Videophone calls)
  - ■ Camera image titles/shooting date
  - ■ Playback or view of i-motion/music data/e-comic with replay restrictions
  - ■ Auto power ON/OFF
  - ■ Schedule
  - ■ i-αppli Auto start
  - ■ Reception, Recording

When Auto time correction is set to [ON]

- The FOMA automatically adjusts the time by connecting to the DoCoMo network's time information.
- When time difference is adjusted, [Time adjusted] appears. When Auto time correction is set to [ON], the time is sometimes not adjusted for a while. To activate Auto time correction, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.
- Time is not adjusted depending on the signal status.
- Time may be off by a few seconds.
- When time difference is adjusted overseas, the local time and date and 🌐 appear in Redial, Received calls, Received/Sent messages history (SMS only), and Received/Sent messages list. The received/sent messages are not displayed in order of the displayed time and date but the mail reception/send.
- 🌐 does not appear in the Unsent messages for mail messages. If the date order display is set for the Unsent messages, unsent messages are displayed in the order of the displayed time and date.
- Time correction may not be performed depending on the overseas network.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- During overseas use, Japan time and local time (or time set in City) appear in the dual display except for the following cases.
  - ■ When Auto time correction is set to [ON] and time correction information is not being received from an overseas network
  - ■ When Auto time correction is set to [OFF] and City is set to the city in the same time zone as Japan

Related Operations

Change the time zone manually <City>

In the Date settings screen, select the [Auto time correction] field ▶ ▣ ▶ [OFF] ▶ 📷 ▶ select a time zone ▶ ▣ ▶ select a city ▶ ▣ ▶ ≣.

Notify caller ID

Sending your own phone number to the other party

Display your number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice/Videophone call or transmission PushTalk.

- Handset number (caller ID) is important personal information. Be very careful about your caller ID setting.
- The Notify caller ID function is available only on compatible phone devices.

Setting up Notify caller ID/No caller ID in advance

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Notify caller ID] ▶ [Notify caller ID].

2 Select the setting.

- To notify caller ID: Select [Yes].
- To not notify caller ID: Select [No].

Note

- Notify caller ID cannot be set from outside the service area.

Related Operations

Check the Notify caller ID setting

In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Notify caller ID] ▶ [Check setting].

Own number

Checking your phone number

1 In the Custom menu, press 0.

Note

- When a change for the Number B of 2in1 or a FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 subscriber) is performed, use any of the following methods to obtain the correct Number B.
  - ■ Set 2in1 function OFF and then perform 2in1 setting again to set 2in1 function ON
  - ■ Check the 2in1 subscription
- When a FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 nonsubscriber) is performed, set 2in1 function OFF.

Related Operations

Show a phone number during voice call

During a voice call, press 📷 ▶ [Own number].

Show a phone number during a Videophone call

During a Videophone call, press 📷 ▶ [Own number].

In the Dual mode (while using 2in1), switch between own numbers of Number A and Number B

In the Own number screen, press ≣.

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making calls/Videophone calls

Answering calls/Videophone calls

When calls/Videophone calls cannot be answered/could not be answered

Using Videophone

A Chara-den or still picture is sent to the other party as your image. The camera on the rear side can be used to send surroundings and your own image.

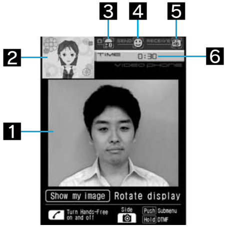
When using Videophone call, the [キャラ(女性)] of Chara-den is sent to the other party as default setting. When making a Videophone call while viewing each other's face, refer to "When making a Videophone call while viewing each other's face" on P. 81.

- To change the substitute image to be sent ☞P. 82
- Videophone transmits at 64K (kbps).
- When the other party answers the phone, [Connected to videophone press ✆ key to enable/disable hands-free] appears. Digital transmission fees are incurred from this point.
- Videophone calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).
- A Videophone communication is available only between terminals compatible with the DoCoMo Videophone.
- To talk while viewing each other's image during a Videophone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☞P. 400) or use Hands-free.
- DoCoMo Videophones comply with "3G-324M*1 as defined by the international 3GPP*2 standard". Connection is not available with Videophones using other standards.

*1 3G-324M: International standard for Videophone systems for third-generation mobile Videophones.

*2 3GPP (3rd-Generation Partnership Project): A regional standardization organization to establish the common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

Viewing the screen during Videophone calls



- The screen shown is only an example. The actual screen may differ.

1 Main screen: Other party's image (default)

2 Subscreen: Your image (default)

3 The brightness of your camera image

	-2	-1	±0	+1	+2
±0	Dark	←	Normal	→	Bright

4 Send image icon

☻	Appears while sending Chara-den in the Full-action mode
☺	Appears while sending Chara-den in the Part-action mode
👤	Appears while sending a still picture as a substitute image
📷	Appears while sending a camera image
◫	Appears while pausing a camera image
♠	Appears while sending a still picture from My picture of Data box

5 Receive image icon

📷	Appears when shooting and saving images of the other party

6 Call duration

- An approximate call duration appears on the screen. When the call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the display resets to 0:00.

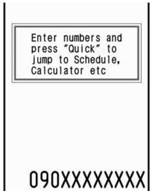
Note

- The display brightness during a Videophone call follows the setting of the Original Eco mode in Light/Power saver.

Making calls/Videophone calls

- Calls may be interrupted even when the signal is strong (📶 appears) and you are not moving.
- To call selecting a Multi Number ☞P. 435
- To call selecting a phone number when the 2in1 is used ☞P. 436

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number.



Enter numbers and press "Quick" to jump to Schedule, Calculator etc

090XXXXXXXX

- Always enter the area code even when the number is in the same area.
- Enter up to 80 digits.
- To erase the last digit: Press CLR.
- To erase all digits: Press CLR (for 1+ seconds).

2 Press ✆ (Phone)/▤ (V.phone).

- Unlike ordinary telephones, mobile phones send call tones in short beeps before the standard ring tone.
- When the other party is busy, there is a busy signal. Disconnect and try again later.

Operation during a voice call

- To display your own phone number: Press 📷 ▶ [Own number].
- To enable/disable Hands-free: Press ✆ (for 1+ seconds).

Operation during a Videophone call

- To display your own phone number: Press 📷 ▶ [Own number].
- To enable/disable Hands-free: Press ✆.
- To switch between My side and Substitute image: Press ▤.
- To set the light: Press 📷 ▶ [Videophone] ▶ [Lighting] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

3 Press ⌐ to end the call.

Note

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the screen for selecting a phone number appears after step 2. Select the phone number from [Number A]/[Number B].

Voice calls

- Calls can be made even when steps 1 and 2 are reversed. If no operations are performed for approximately 5 seconds after entering the phone number, the call is made.

Videophone calls

- A Videophone call is not connected when placed to an unsupported handset. In addition, it is not connected to devices for which 64K cannot be used due to network conditions.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed to, the number is recorded in Received calls and the stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears when a voice/Videophone call is received during a Videophone call.
- When the sending/receiving of audio or video fails, the Videophone call is not automatically restored. Make the Videophone call again.

When the Videophone call does not connect

- When the Videophone call does not connect, a message explaining the reason appears. The other party's actual conditions may vary depending on the type of phone and network service subscriptions.
  - ■ [Check number, then redial]: A call is made to unused phone number.
  - ■ [Busy]: The other party is engaged in a call (The message may appear during a packet transmission depending on the other party's terminal).
  - ■ [Your call is being forwarded]: The other party's handset is set to forward Videophone calls.
  - ■ [Out of service area/power off]: The other party is outside the service area, or their mobile phone is turned off.
  - ■ [Set caller ID to on]: Connected without notifying the caller ID (When calling the visualnet, etc.).

Continued on next page ▶▶

- [Redial using voice call]: The other party's handset is set to the Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination does not support Videophone.
- [Busy with packet transmission]: The other party is performing a packet transmission.
- [Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed]: Upper limit that has been set by payment plans with limit function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) has been exceeded.
- [Please make your call from the i-mode web page]: A Videophone call is directly made to the V-live which should be accessed after connecting to i-mode. Access a site run by the contents provider and view it by making a Videophone call from the link.
- [Connection failed]: Appears in cases other than those any reasons.

Hands-free

- For precautions on using Hands-free ☞"Setting Hands-free Videophone" on P. 82
- Hands-free is available while making a voice call or calling. Not available while receiving a call.
- Hands-free is disabled when a call ends.

Related Operations

Place calls on hold <Hold Active Call>

1 During a call, press 📷 ▶ [Hold Active Call].

- Alternatively, press ⊡ during a Videophone call.

2 To resume a call, press ☎.

- Alternatively, press 📷 during a voice call.
- Press ⓘ during a Videophone call to resume with a camera image.

Add to the phonebook during a voice call

<Add to phonebook>

During a voice call, press 📷 ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.

Note (Related operations)

Hold Active Call

- The other party hears the hold tone, and the call is placed on hold. For Videophone calls, the image set in Hold image is sent to the other party. The image is sent to the other party with [Hold] superimposed.
- Calls stay on hold even when the FOMA terminal is closed. Set when folded does not apply.

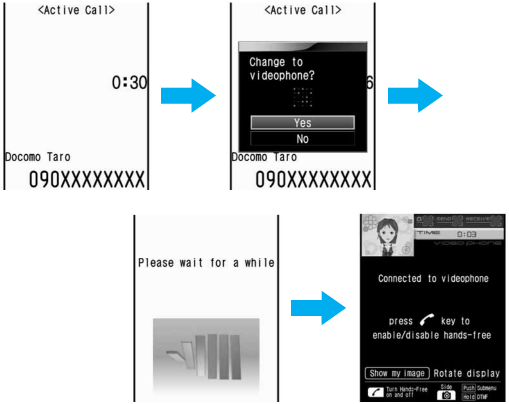
Switching between a voice call and a Videophone

Switch between a voice call and a Videophone for placed calls.

- The Notify switch mode must be set to "Activate" for the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Received calls cannot be switched. Have the other party switch.

1 Press 📷 during a call ▶ [Switch to v.phone]/[chg to voice call] ▶ [Yes].

- Alternatively, press 📖 to switch.
- Switching takes approximately 5 seconds. Switching may take more time depending on the signal status. [Please wait for a while] appears and a guidance message is played.



Change to videophone?

Please wait for a while

Connected to videophone

press key to enable/disable hands-free

Switching from a voice call to a Videophone

Note

- Calls cannot be switched while 1Seg is being activated.
- When switching between a voice call and a Videophone, the call duration resets to 0 seconds.
- Calls may not be switched from a voice call to a Videophone nor from a Videophone to a voice call and may be disconnected depending on the signal status.
- Switching is not included in the talk time and charges are not incurred.

Switching from a voice call to a Videophone

- The other party's camera image does not appear if the other party selects to not show image.
- When performing packet transmissions, disconnect the packet transmission before switching to Videophone.
- If a call is switched to Videophone, Hands-free is activated regardless of the call status before the switching.
- Calls received with Call Waiting cannot be switched from a voice call to a Videophone.

Switching from a Videophone to a voice call

- Hands-free is disabled.

Redial/Received calls

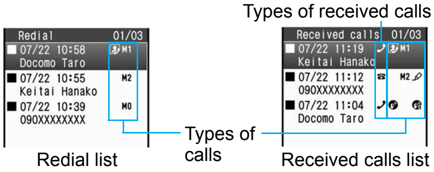
Using Redials/Received calls

The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the 30 most recent phone numbers to which calls were made (including PushTalk).

- If the same number was called multiple times, only the most recent is recorded. However, when ***186*** or ***184*** are added to a phone number, the call is recorded as a separate redial.
- Each call is recorded in Redial if the PushTalk transmission is sent to multiple parties or the call is made using the PushTalk group or PushTalkPlus.
- When 2in1 is used, up to 30 Redials of each Number A and Number B are saved respectively.
- Name appears if saved in the phonebook.
- For PushTalk, the other party's name or the PushTalk group name appears.

1 In stand-by, press ▭ (⧉) (Redial)/▭ (⇥) (Received calls).

- To display the details screen: Select a phone number ▶ ⊡.
- To switch between the Redial and Received calls list screens: Press ▣.
- To switch between Next and Previous: Press ▭.



Redial 01/03
07/22 10:58 M1
Docomo Taro
07/22 10:55 M2
Keitai Hanako
07/22 10:39 M0
090XXXXXXXX

Received calls 01/03
07/22 11:19 M1
Keitai Hanako
07/22 11:12 M2
090XXXXXXXX
07/22 11:04
Docomo Taro

Redial list

Received calls list

Continued on next page ▶▶

Types of calls

No icon	Voice call
👤	Videophone call
D	64K data communications (Only for Received calls)
🌐	International call
M0 to M2	Multi Number outgoing/incoming call (Only when Multi Number is set)
B	Number B outgoing/incoming call (Only when the 2in1 [Dual mode] is used)
✎	Chaku-moji (Only for Received calls)
Ⓟ Ⓟ	PushTalk (When transmitted to one person)
Ⓟ Ⓟ	PushTalk (When transmitted to multiple people)
Ⓟ NW	PushTalk (Using PushTalkPlus)

Types of received calls

📞	Calls that were answered or put on hold
📼	Calls that left a recorded message
☎	Calls that were not answered, calls that forwarded to a forwarding number or Voice Mail Service center, or calls that were rejected because of Reject calls (☞P. 138), Accept calls (☞P. 138), Reject unknown (☞P. 140), Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure (☞P. 139), Public mode (Drive mode) (☞P. 74)

2 Select a phone number and dial.

- Voice call: Press ✆.
- Videophone: Press ■ ▶ ▮.
- PushTalk: Press Ⓟ (Ⓟ).

Note

- Even if a call is switched between a voice call and a Videophone, the received call type depends on the type used when the call was made or answered.
- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- If a call is made from Received calls with Chaku-moji, the received Chaku-moji is not sent.
- If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.

Related Operations

Add to the phonebook from Redials/Received calls <Add to phonebook>

1 **In the list screen, select a phone number ▶ 📷.**
- In the details screen: Press 📷.

2 **Select [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.**

Delete Redials/Received calls <Delete>

1 **In the list screen, select a phone number ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**
- In the details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

2 **Select the deletion method.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Compose a message from Redials/Received calls <Compose message>

1 **In the list screen, select a phone number ▶ 📷.**
- In the details screen: Press 📷.

2 **Select [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.**

Add a phone number and the date and time of Redials/Received calls in the schedule <Create schedule>

1 **In the list screen, select a phone number ▶ 📷.**
- In the details screen: Press 📷.

2 **Select [Create schedule] ▶ save a schedule.**

Perform Display all/Limit display <Display all/Limit display>

In the list screen/details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display all]/[Limit display].

Check the ringing time from Received calls <Ringing time>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Ringing time].

Note (Related operations)

Deleting
- If all Redials are deleted, Chaku-moji Sent messages are also deleted.
- If all Redials/Received calls are deleted, all Redials/Received calls of Number A and Number B are also deleted respectively.

Display all/Limit display
- When Set mute ring time is set to [ON] and Missed call history is set to [OFF] and the following call not saved in phonebook is received, the number does not appear in Received calls.
  - ■ The call is disconnected during mute seconds duration
  - ■ The call is disconnected due to weak signal strength

  However, select [Display all] to show Received calls.

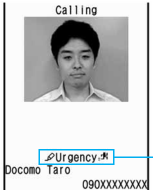
Ringing time
- Ringing time cannot be checked for items with ✓ in the received calls list screen.
- A ringing time of [0:00] appears when a call is rejected due to Reject calls, Accept calls, Reject unknown, Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure and Public mode (Drive mode) settings.

Chaku-moji

Using Chaku-moji

Send a message (Chaku-moji) at the same time when making a voice call or Videophone call to display it on the other party's ringing phone and to previously tell the points.
- Send up to 10 single/double-byte characters, pictographs or symbols.
- Charges are applied to the sender side. Not applied to the receiver side.
- Refer to the DoCoMo website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" for details and compatible models of Chaku-moji.
- While All lock is set or Function lock is applied to Chaku-moji, Chaku-moji is not displayed even if it is received. When the lock is disabled, the message contents can be checked in the received calls details screen.
- Chaku-moji appears only while a call is receiving (calling). When the call is answered, Chaku-moji disappears.

Example: When Chaku-moji is received for a voice call



Chaku-moji

Editing and setting message

■ Saving a message <Create message>
- Save up to ten messages.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Chaku-moji] ▶ [Create message].**

2 **Select a number ▶ ≣.**
- To check a saved message: Select a number ▶ ■.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 **Enter a message ▶ ■.**

Enabling/Disabling a message display

<Message display>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Chaku-moji] ▶ [Message display].**

2 **Select the display method ▶ ■.**

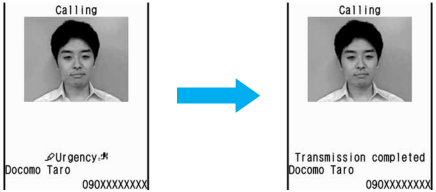
Dialing with message <Chaku-moji>

1 **In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ ✉ (or 📷 ▶ [Chaku-moji]).**

2 **Select a message.**

- **Select [Create message] ▶ enter a message ▶ ■.**
- **Select [Select message] ▶ select a message ▶ ■.**
- **Select [Sent messages] ▶ select a message ▶ ■.**

3 **Press ☎ (Phone)/📹 (V.phone).**



Calling

Urgency

Docomo Taro

090XXXXXXX

Calling

Transmission completed

Docomo Taro

090XXXXXXX

- If Chaku-moji reaches the recipient, [Transmission completed] appears and transmission charges are incurred.

Note

- Alternatively, press ✉ or display Submenus in the Phonebook, Redial or Received calls details screen to make calls with messages.
- On Redial voice call, Chaku-moji used when a Videophone was dialed will be automatically sent.
- In the following setting, transmission charges are applied.
  - When the sending result does not appear even if the other party has sent Chaku-moji, due to the signal strength
  - When a call is shorter than the set ringing time of the Set mute ring time
- When the call recipient is in the following setting, Chaku-moji does not appear and transmission charges are not incurred even if dialed with Chaku-moji.
  - When the recipient's terminal does not support Chaku-moji
  - When a call is received from numbers rejected by the message display settings

  In addition, when the call recipient is in the following setting or status, the send results do not appear on the sender side display (Chaku-moji is not recorded in Received calls on the receiver side).
  - When the handset is outside the service area or the power is turned off
  - When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set
  - When the answering duration for Record message is set to [0 seconds]
- The ten most recently sent messages are recorded as Sent messages.
- For overseas usage, Chaku-moji cannot be sent or received.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.

Related Operations

Delete Sent messages

1 **In step 2 of "Dialing with message", select [Sent messages] ▶ select a message ▶ 📷.**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Send own no./No caller ID

Setting caller ID to send/not send for a single call

- Specifications made when making a call take priority over the method for setting in advance (☞P. 58).

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ 📷 ▶ [Caller ID setting].

2 Select the setting.

- To notify caller ID: Select [Send own no.].
- To not notify caller ID: Select [No caller ID].
- To follow the Notify caller ID of the network service (☞P. 58): Select [As NW setting].

3 Press ☎ (Phone)/▤ (V.phone)/▣ (PushTalk).

Note

- Alternatively, set caller ID from Submenus in the Phonebook, Redial or Received calls details screen.
- The method for specifying the caller ID setting when making a voice call is available for PushTalk transmissions. However, the setting cannot be made by entering a phone number after ***186*** or ***184*** is selected.

Related Operations

Add *186* when dialing (Send own no.)

In stand-by, press 1 8 6 ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ☎ (Phone)/▤ (V.phone).

Add *184* when dialing (No caller ID)

In stand-by, press 1 8 4 ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ☎ (Phone)/▤ (V.phone).

Pause dial

Sending touch-tone signals

Use services such as ticket reservations and bank balance inquiries, with simple operations by saving the combinations of phone numbers and messages (numbers) in the phonebook.

- Send touch-tone signals of the pressed number one at a time during a call by pressing the dial keys.
  - While sending Chara-den: Press 📷 ▶ [DTMF mode] ▶ [ON] ▶ enter numbers to send.
  - To send touch-tone signals while sending your face image to the other party ☞P. 81

Saving touch-tone signals to the phonebook

1 Enter a phone number in the phonebook ▶ ☐.

- Press ☐ to enter a pause [P]. Alternatively, slide the finger up on the Optical TOUCH CRUISER to enter it.

2 Enter the number to send ▶ ■.

- Enter the number and press ☐ to continue adding numbers.

3 Save the phonebook entry.

Sending messages using touch-tone signals

- Pause dial is available only for voice calls.

1 Make a voice call from the phonebook with a touch-tone signal.

- The numbers after [P] appear on the screen.

2 Press ▤ at the appropriate time to send.

- The numbers after [P] are sent with touch-tone signals.
- When multiple numbers separated by [P] are saved, press ▤ for each number.
- Some equipment may not be able to receive signals properly.

WORLD CALL

Making international calls

WORLD CALL is an international calling service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.
"WORLD CALL" is registered when FOMA services are registered (Registration for "WORLD CALL" is optional).

[Calling Method] 010 ➡ Country code ➡ Area code (city code) ➡ Other party's phone number ➡ ☎

- Alternatively, call with 009130 ➡ 010 ➡ Country code ➡ Area code (city code) ➡ Other party's phone number ➡ ☎.
- The calling method shown above can be saved on the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- For area codes (city codes) that begin with ***0***, omit the ***0*** when entering (However, include the ***0*** when making a call to landline phones in some countries or regions such as Italy).

- Call to about 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- "WORLD CALL" charges are billed with the monthly mobile phone charges.
- Subscription and monthly usage fees are free.
- Check an estimate of the most recent call duration on the display when using the WORLD CALL (☞P. 397).
- For further details on WORLD CALL, contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, contact the representative companies directly for instructions.
- Some payment plans may not be available.

When calling Videophone compatible specific overseas 3G mobile phone customers, use "International Videophone" by making the call in Videophone mode after the entering method above.

- Refer to the DoCoMo website for information on available countries and telecommunications carriers.
- Depending on the other party's international Videophone terminal, the image that appears on the FOMA terminal may be distorted, or the connection may not be possible.

Int'l dial assist

Setting an international call

Automatically adding the international access code/country code <Auto conversion>

When making an international call from Japan, enter [+] before dialing the overseas number to automatically place the international access code. When making an international call to Japan, convert the first [0] in the phone number to the country code automatically and make a call.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Int'l dial assist] ▶ [Auto conversion].

2 Select the [Int'l prefix conv] field ▶ ⊡ ▶ [ON].

- Set international access codes as auto prefix in the IDD prefix setting.

3 Select the [Country code conv] field ▶ ⊡ ▶ [ON] ▶ select the country to add ▶ ⊡.

- Select among country codes saved in the Set country code.

4 Press ≣.

■ Entering [+] to make an international call

- Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter [+].

1 In stand-by, press 0 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter the country code, area code (city code) and other party's phone number ▶ ☎.

- The number with the international access code, which is converted from [+], appears.

2 Select [Call].

- To not convert [+] to the international access code: Select [Original number].

Setting numbers other than WORLD CALL <IDD prefix setting>

- Save up to ten international access codes used when international calls are made from Japan.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Int'l dial assist] ▶ [IDD prefix setting].

2 Select a number to save as a new entry ▶ ⊡.

- To change a saved number: Select a number ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Change].
- To delete a saved number: Select a number ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].
- To set/disable Auto prefix: Select a number ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Prefix/cancel].
  - 🌐 appears to the right of the name.

3 Enter a name ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

4 Enter a prefix ▶ ⊡.

- Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter [+].
- Enter up to 16 digits.

■ Selecting an international access code <International Call>

Enter only the country code, area code (city code) and the phone number to make international calls.

1 In stand-by, enter the country code, area code (city code) and other party's phone number ▶ 📷.

- In the phonebook entry details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Number settings].
- In the details screen of Redials/Received calls: Press 📷.

2 Select [Add prefix setting] ▶ [International Call].

3 Select the international access code ▶ ⊡ ▶ ☎.

Setting country codes <Set country code>

- Save up to 30 country codes to make international calls from overseas.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Int'l dial assist] ▶ [Set country code].

2 Select a number to save as a new entry ▶ ⊡.

- To change a saved country code: Select a number ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Edit].
- To delete a saved country code: Select a number ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

3 Enter a country name ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

4 Enter a country code ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to six digits including [+].

Int'l prefix

Setting a first number to phone numbers

- Save up to five prefixes, including international access codes, to place at the beginning of phone numbers. The numbers are also available when calls are made from a phonebook, Redial or Received calls.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Int'l prefix].

2 Select a number to save as a new entry ▶ ⊡.

- To change a saved number: Select a number ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Change].
- To delete a saved number: Select a number ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

3 Enter a prefix ▶ ⊡.

- Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter [+].
- Enter up to 16 digits.

Calling with prefixes <Select prefix>

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ 📷.

- In the phonebook entry details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Number settings].
- In the details screen of Redials/Received calls: Press 📷.

2 Select [Add prefix setting] ▶ [Select prefix].

3 Select a prefix ▶ ▣ ▶ 📞.

Sub address

Making calls with sub address set

Using a sub address allows calls to be made to specific terminals when calling an ISDN terminal.

- A sub address is a number assigned to a terminal when there are multiple ISDN terminals for a single ISDN line. It is used in selecting contents for V-live.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Sub address] ▶ [ON].

■ Making calls with sub address set

- Ask the other party for their phone number and sub address.

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number, press ✱ and enter a sub address ▶ 📞.

Note

- If ✱ is entered at the beginning of a phone number or after ***186***, ***184*** or a prefix, the numbers after ✱ are recognized as the phone number.

Reconnect signal

Reconnecting disconnected calls automatically

- Reconnect signal is also available for PushTalk transmissions.
- The amount of time that can elapse to reconnect varies depending on the signal strength. The estimated time is approximately 10 seconds.
- The other party hears no sound until the call is reconnected (up to approximately 10 seconds). Charges are incurred for this duration.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [In-call settings] ▶ [Reconnect signal].

2 Select an alarm tone ▶ ▣.

Noise reduction

Reducing noise interference to hear calls clearly

- It is recommended that this function be kept set to [ON].

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [In-call settings] ▶ [Noise reduction] ▶ [ON].

Note

- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on the surrounding noise and the tone of the voice.

In-car hands-free

Using the handset in a car

Connect the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (sold separately) or hands-free devices such as car navigation to the FOMA terminal, and make/receive voice calls from the device.

- Bluetooth connection (wireless) is also available (☞P. 407).
- Refer to the user's guide of each product for details on hands-free devices.

Note

- Use a FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (sold separately) for the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01.
- Functions such as display settings, ring tones and Public mode (Drive mode) call functions follow the FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- If a hands-free device has sound enabled, the device plays a ring tone even when the FOMA terminal is set to the Manner mode or [Silent].
- When the FOMA terminal sound is enabled, Set when folded is followed if the handset is closed during a call. If the device sound is enabled, the call continues when the FOMA terminal is closed regardless of Set when folded.
- Record message settings are followed even when the handset is connected to the device.
- Some handset functions may not be available depending on the device characteristics and specifications.

Answering calls/Videophone calls

When receiving a call, verify it using the ring tone, called LED, vibrator, and others.

1 When a call is received, the ring tone sounds and the called LED flashes.

- [Calling]/[Incoming videophone] appears while receiving a call.
- When a caller ID is sent, the phone number appears. If the other party's name and phone number are saved in the phonebook, they appear on the screen. When Picture call is saved in the phonebook, the image appears on the screen.
- When the caller does not send a caller ID, a non-disclosure reason message appears.
  - [User unset]: When the caller purposely withholds caller ID
  - [Payphone]: When the call is received from a payphone
  - [Unavailable]: When the caller cannot send a caller ID, such as when the call is received from overseas or ordinary (landline) telephones via various transfer services (However, a caller ID may still appear depending on the company)

Operation while receiving a call

- On hold (☞P. 73)
- Quick message (☞P. 79)
- Quick silent (☞P. 113)
- Manner mode set/disable (☞P. 113)
- Forwarding with Call Forwarding Service: Press 📷 ▶ [Forward calls].
- Forwarding with Voice Mail Service: Press 📷 ▶ [Auto forward].
- Call Rejection: Press 📷 ▶ [Call Rejection].

2 Press ☎.

- For voice calls, calls can be received with Any key answer (☞P. 72).
- To answer with a camera image (Videophone): Press ▯.

3 Press ☎ to end the call.

Note

- For a Videophone call, when images are not received from the other party, a black screen appears.
- When Multi Number is used, a Multi Number name appears to the right of [Calling]/[Incoming videophone] if a call is received from a saved Multi Number.

Continued on next page ▶▶

When the handset beeps during a voice call indicating an incoming call

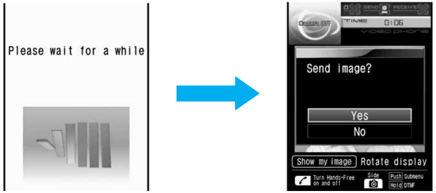
- When any of services such as Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding is subscribed to and Set arrival act is set to “Activate” while Arrival call act is set to [Answer], the following services can be used when the handset beeps during a call.
  - ■ Voice Mail Service (☞P. 426)
  - ■ Call Waiting (☞P. 428)
  - ■ Call Forwarding Service (☞P. 429)

Switching between a voice call and a Videophone

The caller (other party) selects to switch between a voice call and a Videophone.

- The call recipient cannot switch (Available with models that support switching between a voice call and a Videophone).
- The Notify switch mode (☞P. 84) must be set to “Activate” for the recipient’s FOMA terminal.

1 The caller switches between a Videophone and a voice call during a call.



Please wait for a while

Send image?

Switching from a voice call to a Videophone

- Switching takes approximately 5 seconds. Switching may take more time depending on the signal status. [Please wait for a while] appears and a guidance message is played.

Switching from voice call to Videophone

- A guidance message is played and the screen above appears. Select [Yes] to send your image to the other party. Select [No] to send an image of [テレビ電話代替] with [Camera Off] superimposed.

Switching from Videophone to voice call

- A guidance message is played before switching. Start conversation in voice call.

Note

- Switching is not available when another screen is displayed from the Multi Assistant, while a call is on hold, during a packet transmission call, or when the FOMA terminal is closed. When any function is activated from the Submenu, switching may not be available.

Any key answer

Answering calls by pressing any key

Set Any key answer so that calls can be answered with the keys other than the ones normally used.

	Normal	Any key answer
Voice call	📞	1 to 9, 0, ✳, ■, ⁘, ⁝, ✉, 📖, CLR
Videophone	📞, ⁝	–
PushTalk	📞, ◙ (P)	1 to 9, 0, ✳, ■, ⁝, 📷, ✉, 📖, CLR, MULTI

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Incoming settings] ▶ [Any key answer] ▶ [ON].

Set when folded

Closing the FOMA terminal to end/hold calls

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Set when folded].

2 Select an item ▶ ⊡.

3 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Note

- When set to [Hold sound], the set hold tone plays. Hold tone can be changed. For Videophone calls, the image set in Hold image is sent to the other party.
- When set to [Silent], the set hold tone does not play. For Videophone calls, the Chara-den or still picture set in Substitute image is sent to the other party.
- When set to [Hold sound] or [Silent], open the FOMA terminal to resume the call.
- If a device such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected, the call can continue while the handset is closed regardless of Set when folded.
- For voice/Videophone calls, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call will become mute when [Silent] or [Finish call] is set, or the call is put on hold when [Hold sound] is set. The call resumes when the earphone/microphone is reconnected or the handset is open. For PushTalk, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call can be continued through the speaker whether set to Set when folded.
- For PushTalk, when [Speaker phone] is set, open the FOMA terminal to retrieve the transmission status of PT hands-free.
- Set when folded is followed if the handset is switched to the viewer position during a call.

Earpiece volume

Adjusting the volume

- Select from [Volume 1] to [Volume 10].
- The volume remains at an adjusted level even when the handset is turned off or the battery pack is removed.
- For details on adjusting the earpiece volume when in stand-by ☞P. 110

1 During a call, press ▲/▼.

- Alternatively, select [Earpiece volume] from Submenu during a Videophone call.

2 Adjust the volume with ↕.

- After adjusting the volume, wait approximately 2 seconds and the call display reappears.

On hold

Placing calls on hold

- The other party is charged for the call while on hold.
- If subscribed to Call Forwarding Service or Voice Mail Service, a received call is forwarded to the set destination or connected to the Voice Mail Service center (☞P. 72).

1 During an incoming call, press ☎.

- When a voice call is received, the other party hears the On hold tone.
- When a Videophone call is received, the On hold image set by your FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with [On hold] superimposed.
- The call is disconnected when ☎ is pressed while on hold, or when the other party disconnects the call (The call is saved in Received calls).

2 Press 📞 when ready to answer.

- Press ▣ during a Videophone call to answer with a camera image.

Set on hold tone/Set hold tone

Setting the On hold/Hold tone

Set the on hold guidance and hold tone that the other party hears.

- The following guidances are preset as on hold tones.

  [On hold tone 1]

  ただいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、しばらくたってからおかけ直しください。

  [On hold tone 2]

  I can’t take your call now. Please hold the line for a moment or call me back later, thank you.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Hold/On hold tone].

2 Select an item ▶ ●.

3 Select an on hold tone/hold tone.

- To select the preset on hold tone: Select [On hold tone 1]/[On hold tone 2].
- To select the preset hold tone: Select [Hold melody 1]/[Hold melody 2].
- To check the on hold tone/hold tone: Select an on hold tone/hold tone ▶ ⓘ.
- To record and set the Voice memo: Select [Original] ▶ [Record] ▶ record ▶ [Play] ▶ select a memo ▶ ⓘ.
  - To stop the recording: During recording, press ●.
- To set the recorded Voice memo: Select [Original] ▶ [Play] ▶ select a memo ▶ ⓘ.

Public mode (Drive mode)

Using the Public mode (Drive mode)

The Public mode is an automatic answering service used to ensure the manner in public places. When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating you are driving or otherwise unable to speak (on the train, bus, in a movie theater, and others) and the call is disconnected.

- Activating/Deactivating the Public mode is only available in stand-by (Available even when 圏外 is showing on the screen).
- Calls can be made normally in the Public mode.
- This function is not available during data transmissions.

1 In stand-by, press ✱ (for 1+ seconds).

- The Public mode is set and 🚗 appears.
- If the Manner mode is also set, the Public mode setting is prioritized.

Disabling the Public mode (Drive mode)

- In stand-by, press ✱ (for 1+ seconds).
  - The Public mode is disabled and 🚗 disappears.

■ When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set

A ring tone does not sound when a voice/Videophone or PushTalk call is received. The stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears on the display and the call is saved in Received calls (☞P. 63).

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. When a Videophone call is received, the Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. If the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal, the guidance for outside service area plays.

- The FOMA terminal will not vibrate when i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received even if the Vibration mode is set. Although a ring tone does not sound, the message is received automatically, and the received mail icon appears. When an Area Mail is received, the dedicated alarm tone (beep sound), vibrator and called LED are not activated.
- When a data transmission is received, the vibrator, ring tone and called LED are not activated.
- An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and [Connection failed] appears on the caller’s display. The Driving mode status can be notified to all connecting members if 3+ people have participated.
- If Location provision is set to [許可] for usage settings of each service when location information provision, supported by GPS function, is requested, a confirmation screen for location provision is displayed, the GPS positioning screen appears, and the location is provided after GPS positioning. However, Location provision/accept, Location provision/notify, vibrator or called LED does not operate. When Location provision is set to [毎回確認] for usage settings of each service, location information is not provided.
- For arrival call actions when the Public mode (Drive mode) and various network services are set at the same time ☞“Arrival call actions while the Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF) and various network services are set” on P. 76

Note

- Even if the alarm time arrives in the Public mode, the alarm does not sound. The Called LED and vibrator are not activated.

Public mode (Power OFF)

Using the Public mode (Power OFF)

The Public mode (Power OFF) is an automatic answering service used to ensure manner in public places. Set the Public mode (Power OFF) to play a message for the caller indicating that the power is off and you are unable to speak (in a hospital, airplane, train near the priority seats), and the call ends.

1 In stand-by, press *25251 ▶ ☎.

- The Public mode (Power OFF) is set (Nothing changes in stand-by).
- When a call is received while the Public mode (Power OFF) is set, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is currently in a place that does not allow the mobile phone use is played.

Disabling the Public mode (Power OFF)

- In stand-by, press *25250 ▶ ☎.
  - The Public mode (Power OFF) is disabled.

Checking the Public mode (Power OFF) setting

- In stand-by, press *25259 ▶ ☎.
  - Check the current setting.

■ When the Public mode (Power OFF) is set

The Public mode (Power OFF) remains set until disabled. The setting is not canceled when the power is just turned ON. The Public mode (Power OFF) message is played when the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. When a call is received, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played and the call is disconnected. An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and [Connection failed] appears on the caller’s display. Members are notified that the owner of the phone is not a participant in the call when 3+ people have participated.

- For arrival call actions when the Public mode (Power OFF) and various network services are set at the same time, refer to “Arrival call actions while the Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF) and various network services are set” below.

Arrival call actions while the Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF) and various network services are set

Arrival call actions while the Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF) is set are as follows.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a Videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service	● The Public mode guidance message is played to the other party and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service center.*	● The Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service center.
Call Forwarding Service	● The Public mode guidance message is played to the other party and the call is forwarded to the destination.* ● The Public mode guidance message that the other party hears follows the Call Forwarding Service guidance settings.	● The Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and the Videophone is forwarded to destination. ● If the forwarding number is not a 3G-324M compliant Videophone, the call is not connected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	● When a call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the call rejection message is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. ● When calls are received from all other numbers, the Public mode guidance message is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.	● When a call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the call rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. ● When calls are received from all other numbers, the Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	● When the caller ID is not sent, the Caller ID request message plays and the call is disconnected. ● When the caller ID is sent, the Public mode guidance message is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.	● When the caller ID is not sent, the Caller ID request video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. ● When the caller ID is sent, the Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.

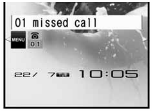
* The Public mode guidance message is not played when the ring time is set to 0 seconds and the call is connected to “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service”. The call is not saved in “Received calls” and the stock icon ☎ (missed call) does not appear in the stand-by display.

Missed calls

Checking Missed calls

If an incoming call is not answered, the stock icon ☎ (missed calls) and the number of missed calls appear in the stand-by display (missed calls).

- If missed calls are checked or the stock icon is selected and CLR is pressed for 1+ seconds, the stock icon disappears.



01 missed call

1 In stand-by, press ●.

- Alternatively, press □ (➜□) to check Received calls.

2 Select the stock icon ☎ (missed call) ▶ ●.

- The Received calls list screen appears. ☎ appears next to missed calls.
- Use the same operations as Received calls to check the details.

Record message (voice/Videophone calls)

Recording messages when calls cannot be answered

Set Record message to record messages when a call cannot be answered. When a voice call is received, a voice message is played and the caller's message is recorded. When a Videophone call is received, a reply image is sent and the caller's message and image are recorded.

- Record message is not available when the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area. This function is convenient when used in conjunction with the Voice Mail Service.
- Record up to three Record messages for voice calls (approximately 15 seconds each). Voice memos recorded during a voice call or in stand-by are also included in these three Record messages for voice calls.
- Record up to two Record messages for Videophone calls (approximately 15 seconds each).
- The number of recorded message icons appearing in stand-by is the total number of Record messages (voice/Videophone calls) and Voice memos.
- Record message cannot be set/disabled in the Manner mode.

Setting Record message (voice/Videophone calls)

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Record message] ▶ [Record message] ▶ [ON].

- Record message is set and ▣ appears on the display.
- When a message is recorded, an icon appears to show the number of messages. Example: ▣ (for one message), ▣ (for two messages), and others.

- When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone), ▣ appears and Record message does not respond when a voice/Videophone call is received. Delete unnecessary messages to reactivate Record message.

Disabling the Record message

- Set Record message to [OFF].

Note

- For the Voice Mail Service, record up to 20 messages of up to approximately 3 minutes each. When the Voice Mail Service is set, messages are saved at the Voice Mail Service center even if there are three Record messages (voice calls) or two Record messages (Videophone).

When Record message (voice/Videophone calls) is set

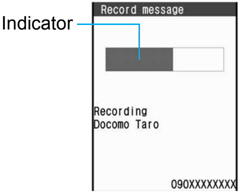
1 When a call is received, Record message is activated after the set answering duration (☞P. 78).

- The reply image appears. When a voice call is received, the caller hears a voice guidance message. When a Videophone call is received, the caller hears a reply message and the image set in Videophone reply image is sent.
- Press ☎ to answer a call while playing a reply message, recording sounds or movies. Press ▮ to answer a Videophone call with a camera image sent.

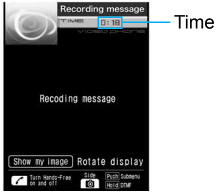
2 Record the caller's message.

- The caller hears a beep when the recording starts.
- The indicator and time are estimates.
- While a message is recorded (voice call), the caller's voice can be heard through the earpiece. When the Manner mode is set, the caller's voice cannot be heard through the earpiece.

Continued on next page ▶▶



Voice call record message



Videophone record message

Note

- Record message (voice/Videophone call) may not be saved if approximately 3 seconds or less.
- Saved contents may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of contents for Record message (voice/Videophone calls).
- While Record message is activated (Videophone) or a Videophone message is recorded, the reply image set on your FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with [Msg answering] or [Recording message] superimposed.
- During a recording, another call cannot be answered. The other party hears a busy signal.
- Record message is not available when the Public mode (Drive mode) is set.

Related Operations

Set the message response time <Answering duration>

In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Record message] ▶ [Answering duration] ▶ enter the answering duration ▶ ⊡.

- To set the response time for Record message immediately started: Enter [000 seconds].

Set reply messages <Reply message>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Record message] ▶ [Reply message].**

2 **Select the type of messages.**

- To select the preset Reply message: Select [Reply message 1]/[Reply msg 2(Eng)].
  - To check the Reply message: Select the Reply message ▶ ≣.
- To set after recording the Voice memo: Select [Original] ▶ [Record] ▶ record ▶ [Play] ▶ select the memo ▶ ≣.
  - To stop the recording: While recording, press ⊡.
- To set the recorded Voice memo: Select [Original] ▶ [Play] ▶ select the memo ▶ ≣.

Set the reply image for Videophone Record message <V.phone reply image>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Record message] ▶ [V.phone reply image].**

2 **Select a still picture ▶ ≣.**

- To check the still picture: Select the still picture ▶ ⊡.

Note (Related operations)

Answering duration

- Cannot be set to the same time as the Auto answer setting.
- When Record message is set simultaneously with the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the priority will depend on the set ringing time.
- To prioritize Record message, set answering duration shorter than for the Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.

Reply message

- The following guidance messages are preset for the Reply message.
  - ■ [Reply message 1]
    ただいま電話に出ることができません。ピーッという発信音のあとに、お名前とご用件をお話しください。
  - ■ [Reply msg 2(Eng)]
    I can't take your call now. Please leave your message, thank you.

- Returns to default setting when the original reply message is deleted (☞P. 79).

Videophone reply image

- For images that can be sent ☞“Setting the image to send” on P. 80

Quick message

Recording messages when incoming calls cannot be answered

Record a message for an incoming voice/Videophone call when Record message is not set.

1 During an incoming call, press 📷 ▶ [Record message].

- Alternatively, press 7 (for 1+ seconds) during an incoming call to record.
- Record messages ☞P. 77

Play/Delete Recorded messages or Voice memos

Playing/Deleting Recorded messages or Voice memos

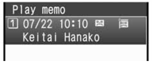
- When Show received calls is set to [OFF], the memo list screen does not appear and Recorded messages and Voice memos cannot be played/deleted.

Playing Recorded messages or Voice memos

- The playback volume follows the Earpiece volume settings.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Voice memo/Rec msg] ▶ [Play].

- In stand-by: Press 7 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ [Play].


Play memo
1 07/22 10:10 📼 ▤
Keitai Hanako

Memo list

When the stock icon 📼 (message) appears

- In stand-by, press ■ ▶ select the stock icon 📼 (Record message) ▶ ■ ▶ [Play].
- ▤ appears for memos that have not been played.

Types of message/memo

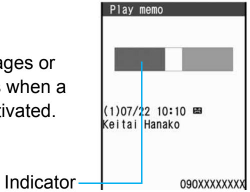
📼	Record message
☎	Voice memo during call
🎤	Voice memo in stand-by

Types of phone

No icon	Voice call
📹	Videophone call

2 Select a memo ▶ ■.

- To stop the playback: Press ■.
- The playback of Recorded messages or Voice memos automatically stops when a call is received or the alarm is activated.


Play memo
(1)07/22 10:10 📼
Keitai Hanako
090XXXXXXXX

Record message for voice calls

Deleting Recorded messages or Voice memos

1 In the memo list screen, select a memo ▶ 📷 ▶ select the deletion method ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

Related Operations

Lock Recorded message and Voice memo

<Function lock>

In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Voice memo/ Rec msg] ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [ON].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note (Related operations)

- For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

Chara-den

- Chara-den ☞P. 330

Switching Chara-den during a Videophone call

<Change Chara-den>

Switch to send different Chara-den during a Videophone call.

1 While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press 📷 ▶ [Chara-den set] ▶ [Change Chara-den] ▶ select Chara-den ▶ ≣.

Switching between Full-action and Part-action

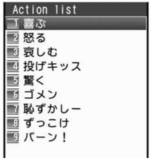
<Change action>

1 While sending Chara-den as the substitute image, press 📷 ▶ [Chara-den set] ▶ [Change action].

- Alternatively, press ▭ (for 1+ seconds) to switch.
- Modes are switched between Full-action and Part-action.

Making Chara-den perform actions <Action list>

- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing 1 to 9 to have the character perform an action.
- When the DTMF mode is set to [ON], the Chara-den key operations become unavailable because of the touch-tone signals sent with the dial keys.
- Perform different actions together in the Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically or may not be performed.



1 While sending Chara-den as the substitute image, press 📷 ▶ [Chara-den set] ▶ [Action list].

- Alternatively, press ✉ or ▭ (for 1+ seconds) to display the action list.

2 Select an action ▶ ●.

- To end the action: Press 0.
- To display details: Select an action ▶ ≣.

Setting the image to send

The following images can be sent during a Videophone call.

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to ***QCIF: 176×144***. However, animated GIFs are not available.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available. Still pictures shot with the FOMA terminal are available regardless of the File restriction (Picture memo is not available).

Changing the image to send during a call <Change send img>

Change the image to send during a Videophone call.

- Images set by Change send img are disabled when a Videophone ends.

1 During a Videophone call, press 📷 ▶ [Change send img].

- Press ≣ during a Videophone call to switch between a substitute image and a camera image.

2 Select the image to send.

- ◆ **Select [My side] (to switch to a camera image).**
- ◆ **Select [Substitute image] ▶ select a still picture ▶ ≣.**
- ◆ **Select [Chara-den] ▶ select Chara-den ▶ ≣.**

Note

- Still pictures saved onto a microSD Card are not available directly. Copy to the FOMA terminal handset in advance.

Related Operations

Zoom in and zoom out

1 While sending a camera image, press ☐/☐.

2 Press ☐ to adjust the zoom.

- For the maximum zoom: Press ⊡./For the minimum zoom: Press ⊠.

Send a still picture from Data box <File playback>

During a Videophone call, press 📷 ▶ [Change send img] ▶ [File playback] ▶ select a still picture ▶ ⊡.

Adjust the brightness

While sending a camera image, press ☐ (for 1+ seconds) to adjust the brightness.

Note (Related operations)

Zoom in/Zoom out

- Set up to 24 zoom levels.

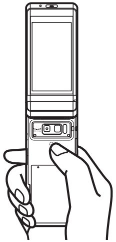
When making a Videophone call while viewing each other's face

To send your face image to the other party, rotate the display and make the camera face you.

1 During a Videophone call, rotate the display.

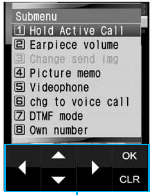
- While sending a substitute image, switch to send camera image.

2 Make the camera face you.



Operations while sending your own image

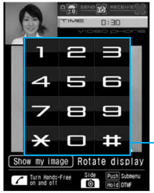
- To display Submenu: Press ⊡.



Operation panel

- Operation panel also appears. Touch it to operate the submenu.
- To hide submenu: Press ⊡.
- When in Hold active call, press ⊡ to resume a call.
- [Change send img] (switching to My side image/Substitute image/Chara-den, playing a file, or pausing a camera) cannot be selected.
- When [Picture memo] is selected, press ⊡ to shot.
- When switching to a voice call, return to the normal position to use.

- To display the DTMF panel: Press ⊡ (for 1+ seconds).



DTMF panel

- Touch numbers to send touch-tone signals.
- To hide the DTMF panel: Press ⊡.
- When the DTMF mode is [OFF], the DTMF panel does not appear.

- The submenu or the DTMF panel does not appear when sending other than camera image.
- Some screens cannot be operated using ⊡ or the touch panel.

Note

- When Hands-free is deactivated in this condition, the sound from the mouthpiece and the earpiece becomes silent. During a call, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☞P. 400) or Hands-free (☞P. 82) (same for a voice call).

Changing an image when making a call <V.phone image>

- The Videophone image is only enabled for one time.

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ 📷.

- In the phonebook entry details screen: Press 📷.
- In the details screen of Redials/Received calls: Press 📷.

2 Select [V.phone image].

3 Select the image to send.

- **Select [My side] (camera image).**
- **Select [Chara-den] ▶ select Chara-den ▶ ≣.**

Setting a substitute image, on hold image or hold image <Substitute image/On hold image/Hold image>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Set sending image].

2 Select an item ▶ ▣.

3 Select an image ▶ ≣.

Note

- While sending a still picture as substitute image, the still picture is sent to the other party with [Camera Off] superimposed. If Chara-den is set, [Camera Off] does not appear.
- Substitute images are sent in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Set a substitute image in the phonebook → Set a substitute image in the Videophone setting

Setting the outgoing image quality <Visual preference>

Set whether to prefer image quality or prefer motion speed.

Prefer img qual	To place an emphasis on shape and color
Normal	To create a balance of clarity and movement
Prefer motion spd	To place an emphasis on movement

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Visual preference].

- During a Videophone call: Press 📷 ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Visual preference].

2 Select the image quality ▶ ▣.

Note

- The image quality settings for the sender and receiver during a Videophone call differ.
- When the setting is made during a Videophone call, the setting is only enabled for one time.

Hands-free V.phone

Setting Hands-free Videophone

Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free for Videophone calls.

- When switching to Hands-free during a call ☞P. 61

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Hands-free V.phone].

2 Select a setting ▶ ▣.

Note

- Speak from approximately 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, the sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.
- When using Hands-free outdoors, in a location where surroundings are noisy and where the sound echoes loudly, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

- If the sound breaks up during a Hands-free call, lower the Earpiece volume.

Setting the image during Videophone calls

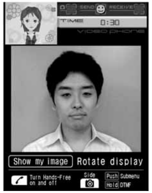
Change the image displayed during Videophone calls.

■ Setting the Videophone display

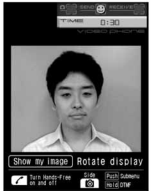
<Display setting/Subscreen disp>

- The Videophone display setting and the subscreen display setting remain even after a Videophone call ends.

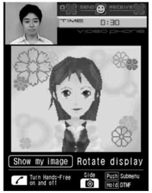
Videophone display setting



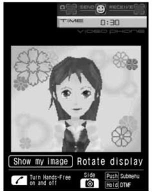
Show me small



Other

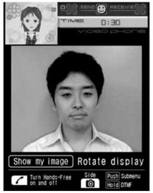


Show me big

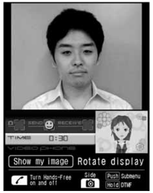


Me

Subscreen display setting



Upper left



Lower right

1 During a Videophone call, press 📷 ▶ [Videophone] ▶ [Display setting]/[Subscreen disp].

- In the Custom menu: Select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Display setting]/[Subscreen position].

2 Select the display method ▶ ●.

Related Operations

Pause your camera image to send the image

<Pause camera>

While sending a camera image, press 📷 ▶ [Change send img] ▶ [Pause camera].

- To disable Pause camera: Press ▮/CLR.

Note (Related operations)

- A paused camera image can be sent.
- While pausing camera, your image is sent to the other party with [Stopped] superimposed.
- When a Videophone call ends, the setting is reset.

Changing the Videophone settings

Redialing as a voice call automatically <Redial voice call>

When a Videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically switched to the voice call and made again.

- If a Videophone communication is started, Redial voice call is not performed.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Redial voice call] ▶ [ON].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- If a call is redialed as a voice call, the voice call charges are incurred.
- Note that Redial voice call may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K access point or an ISDN Videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (☞P. 60) (as of April 2008), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.

Notify switch mode

Setting to switch between a voice call and a Videophone

This setting lets the other party know whether the FOMA terminal can be switched between a voice call and a Videophone.

- When the Notify switch mode is set to “Deactivate”, the other party cannot switch the call.
- The Notify switch mode cannot be changed during voice calls, Videophone calls or outside the service area.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [Notify switch mode].

2 Select a setting ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

- To check settings: Select [Check Indication].

V-phone while packet

Selecting actions for incoming Videophone calls during i-mode

- Set the following answering methods.

V-phone priority	Answers incoming Videophone calls.
Packet priority	Rejects incoming Videophone calls.
Voice mail	Automatically connects to Voice Mail Service.
Call forwarding	Automatically connects to Call Forwarding Service.

- Videophone calls, during PushTalk transmissions, Software updates, Pattern definitions updates or data transmissions using a packet transmission, are rejected.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Videophone set] ▶ [V-phone while packet] ▶ select an answering method ▶ ■.

- [V-phone priority] setting does not automatically end the packet transmission unless the Videophone is answered (The packet transmission is disconnected when the call is answered).
- To set to [Voice mail] or [Call forwarding], applying for the respective service is required. If [Voice mail] or [Call forwarding] is set without a subscription, the Videophone call is set to [Packet priority].

Picture memo

Saving the other party’s image as a still picture

During a Videophone call, take a still picture of the other party.

- When Display setting is set to [Me], this operation is not possible.
- The shot size applicable to a still picture is ***QCIF: 176×144***.
- The picture is saved to the [Camera] folder in My picture of Data box.
- The shot still picture cannot be output from the FOMA terminal.

1 During a Videophone call, press 📷 ▶ [Picture memo] ▶ ■.

- The shutter does not sound.
- While still pictures are being shot, your image is sent to the other party with [Recording] superimposed.

PushTalk

What is PushTalk?

Press the PushTalk key, recall PushTalk phonebook entries, select the other party, and press the PushTalk key again to easily communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself). Transmission fees are incurred each time the key is pressed (transmission is sent).

- Refer to the DoCoMo website or “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]” for details and compatible models of PushTalk.

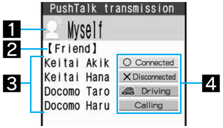
■ PushTalkPlus*

PushTalkPlus is a service to access a phonebook saved on the network and to communicate with up to 20 people (including yourself) at once. In addition, enjoy other useful functions such as checking the status of members with more convenient use than PushTalk.

- Refer to the PushTalkPlus guide provided at the time of subscription for details of the service.

* Subscription is required.

PushTalk transmission screen layout


PushTalk transmission
Myself
【Friend】
Keitai Akik ○ Connected
Keitai Hana ✕ Disconnected
Docomo Taro Driving
Docomo Haru Calling

1 Speaker’s name

- Name of the person who is currently speaking[*1] appears.
  - ■ Myself: When you are the speaker (have the right to speak)
  - ■ No display: Nobody is speaking
  - ■ ?: When the speaker is not identified

2 Group name

- Group name saved in the PushTalk phonebook or the network phonebook appears.

3 Members

- Name appears if saved in the phonebook. If the call is transmitted from PushTalkPlus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears. Phone number appears for unregistered participants.

4 Status of members

- Transmission status of each member appears. When a status changes while connected, a tone indicating that the user is connected or disconnected (leaving PushTalk) sounds and the status shown changes.
  - ■ Connected: Participating in PushTalk.
  - ■ Disconnected[*2]: No reply, the other party has ended PushTalk, the other party is out of the service area, or the other party has power turned off.
  - ■ Driving[*2]: The other party has Public mode (Drive mode) set.
  - ■ Calling: Ringing the other party.
- Scroll bar appears when all members cannot be shown on the screen at once. Scroll with ▭ to view members.

[*1] Phone number appears for unregistered participants. Image also appears if phonebook Picture call is set. If the call is transmitted from PushTalkPlus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears, and the image does not appear even if Picture call is set.

[*2] Appears only when PushTalk transmission is in progress with three or more participants.

Sending PushTalk transmissions

Press the PushTalk key to communicate easily using packet transmissions.

- Only one person can speak at once. Press ▣ (P) to get the right to speak.
- Voice can only be transmitted when granted the right to speak. When granted the right to speak, other people's voices are inaudible.
- PushTalk transmission fees are incurred for the caller while ▣ (P) is pressed and the right to speak is being granted.
- PushTalk and PushTalkPlus cannot be used with the Number B of 2in1.

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number.

- Alternatively, use one of the following methods.
  - ■From the PushTalk phonebook (☞P. 92)
  - ■From the phonebook (☞P. 101)
  - ■From Redial (☞P. 63)
  - ■From Received calls (☞P. 63)
  - ■With Notify caller ID/No caller ID (☞P. 67)
  - ■Using Phone To function (☞P. 184)

2 Press ▣ (P).

- P flashes at the upper left of the display while dialing. When the other party replies, a tone indicating that the user is connected sounds, P lights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears.
- To activate/deactivate Hands-free: Press ✆/▣.
- For details on adjusting the earpiece volume ☞P. 73

3 To speak, speak while pressing ▣ (P) when speaker's name is blank.

- The right to speak is granted, a right-obtained tone sounds, and [Myself] appears for the speaker's name.
- An error tone sounds if ▣ (P) is pressed while another person is speaking.
- Release ▣ (P) when finished speaking. A right-released tone sounds.

4 Press ⊟ to end the transmissions.

- The number of times the right to speak was granted is shown.

Note

- PushTalk calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).
- Even if the transmission of some members (including sender) is disconnected, other members can continue PushTalk transmission.
- There is a time limit when speaking. If the right to speak keeps obtained for a set time, a tone indicating that the speaking time is over sounds and the right to speak is terminated.
- i-mode transmission is disconnected if PushTalk transmission is sent during i-mode.
- When Set PushTalk arrival action is set to [Answer], press ✆ to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission.
- When a voice call is received while a hands-free call is in progress, hands-free is disabled if the voice call is answered.
- PushTalk is automatically disconnected when no one speaks for a set length of time.
- When the PushTalk sender has sent PushTalk transmission with caller ID (☞P. 58, P. 67), phone numbers for the caller and all members are notified. If the PushTalk sender has sent without caller ID, [No ID] appears for speaker and members' fields on the handsets of all the members who received the transmission. The phone number is important personal information. Be careful when sending caller ID.
- Approximate number of times the right to speak was obtained appears when PushTalk transmission is ended. 999 is the maximum value that appears. When exceeded, [✱✱✱] appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- During PushTalk transmission, i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at the i-mode center. However, SMS are received automatically even during PushTalk transmission.

Related Operations

Return to a PushTalk conversation with multiple members after disconnecting

Select Redials/Received calls ▶ 📷 (P).

Note (Related operations)

- When a PushTalk call is disconnected, or when a PushTalk call cannot be answered after the PushTalk transmissions with multiple members, the transmissions can only be rejoined by calling the member from the Redials/Received calls if the PushTalk transmissions are still in progress.
- If the PushTalk transmission has been ended, a new transmission is sent from you.

Add member

Adding a member during PushTalk transmission

When a PushTalk sender is Myself, add a member during PushTalk transmission.

- When calling from PushTalkPlus, a member cannot be added.
- Even if a member is added during transmission, it is not recorded in Redial. It is not recorded in Received calls on the other party's terminal that has been already in transmission.
- Add up to four members to send a transmission as many times as necessary. When the transmissions are already sent to four members, re-calling a disconnected member is available, but a new member cannot be added.

1 Press 📷 during PushTalk transmission ▶ [Add member].

- Alternatively, press ✉ during PushTalk transmission to add a member.

2 Select the adding method and send a transmission.

- ◆ **Select [View phonebook] ▶ select a name ▶ ●.**
- ◆ **Select [View PT phonebook] ▶ select a name ⓘ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter a phone number ▶ 📷.**

Note

- When the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the other party's terminal may operate as follows.
  - ■ When a member is added, the added member does not appear and a tone indicating that the member is connected does not sound.
  - ■ When an added member speaks, [?] appears for the speaker name field.
  - ■ When an added member leaves PushTalk, a tone indicating that the member is disconnected does not sound.
- When a PushTalk sender has sent PushTalk transmission with caller ID (☞P. 58, P. 67), the sender and all members' phone numbers are sent to all the members including the added members. If the PushTalk sender has sent without caller ID, [No ID] appears for speaker and members' fields on the handsets of all the members including the added members.
  However, when the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the added members do not appear on the other party's screen regardless of the caller ID setting.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [A mode], the entries saved in the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] cannot be displayed.

Receiving PushTalk transmissions

1 When PushTalk is received, the ring tone sounds and the called LED flashes.

- The following operations can be performed during an incoming call.
  - ■ Quick silent (☞P. 113)
  - ■ Manner mode enable/disable (☞P. 113)
  - ■ To disconnect: Press ⊟.

2 Press ▣ (P)/📞.

- A PushTalk call can also be received with Any key answer (☞P. 72).
- A call is answered with hands-free if the FOMA terminal is closed. The operation follows Hands-free PT when the FOMA terminal is open (☞P. 94).
- ● at the upper left of the display lights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears.
- The transmission procedures are the same as those of “Sending PushTalk transmissions” on P. 87.

3 Press ⊟ to end the transmissions.

Note

- When Set auto answer is set to [ON], received PushTalk calls are automatically answered with hands-free. However, calls are not answered automatically even if Set auto answer is set to [ON] while in the Manner mode.
- To accept/reject calls from specified callers, set Accept calls, Reject calls, and Reject unknown. The settings are common with voice/Videophone call. However, they are not applied to transmissions from PushTalkPlus.
- PushTalk calls received during a voice/Videophone call or data communication are not connected. During a voice call, the call is recorded in Received calls, and the stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears. During a Videophone call or data communication, the call is not recorded.
- When a Videophone call, 64K data communication, or different PushTalk call is received during PushTalk transmission, the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued. When Set PushTalk arrival action is set to [Answer], press 📞 to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission. If Set PushTalk arrival action is set to other than [Answer], the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued.
- When i-mode arrival action is set to [PushTalk preferred], i-mode transmission is disconnected and PushTalk is connected if PushTalk is received during i-mode. When set to [i-mode preferred], PushTalk is not connected nor recorded in Received calls.
- When a PushTalk call is received while Public mode (Drive mode) is set and the handset is turned on, the call is not connected but is recorded in Received calls and the stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears. [Driving] appears for the status on the other member’s transmission screen. The message does not appear if the other party is one person.

Add to PushTalk PB

Adding to the PushTalk phonebook

Entries saved to the PushTalk phonebook are also saved to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
Save an entry to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and save the name, reading and one phone number to the PushTalk phonebook.
Save entries already saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook. Up to 1,000 entries can be saved in the PushTalk phonebook (☞P. 96).

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], saving to the PushTalk phonebook is not available.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the entries saved in the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] cannot be saved in the PushTalk phonebook.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [A mode], the entries saved in the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] cannot be displayed.

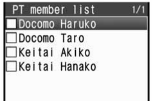
■ Entry items that can be saved in one PushTalk phonebook entry

Icon	Item	Details
👤	Name	Enter a name.
R	Reading	Reading is entered automatically.
👥	PushTalk group	Entries can be sorted and saved in 1 to 9 PushTalk groups.
☎	PushTalk phone number	Save a phone number for PushTalk.

■ PushTalk phonebook

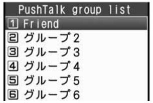
Select a group from the PushTalk group list or select members from the PushTalk member list to send a transmission to the members saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

▣ (P)* ➡


PT member list 1/1
☐Docomo Haruko
☐Docomo Taro
☐Keitai Akiko
☐Keitai Hanako

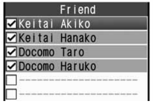
PushTalk member list

✉ ⬌


PushTalk group list
1 Friend
2 グループ2
3 グループ3
4 グループ4
5 グループ5
6 グループ6

PushTalk group list

● ➡


Friend
☑Keitai Akiko
☑Keitai Hanako
☑Docomo Taro
☑Docomo Haruko
☐------------------
☐------------------

Group members screen

* Alternatively, press ▣ (P) (halfway).

■ Adding

1 In the PushTalk member list screen, press 📷 ▶ [New].

2 Add to the PushTalk phonebook.

- **Select [View phonebook] ▶ select a name ▶ ●.**
  - When multiple phone numbers are saved, select a name, press ↕, select a phone number to use for PushTalk, and press ●.
- **Select [Direct input] ▶ add to the phonebook.**
  - The FOMA terminal handset phonebook name entry screen appears.
  - For details on saving ☞“Adding to the phonebook” on P. 97

Registering to the PushTalk group

Set groups in the PushTalk phonebook to easily call all members of a PushTalk group.

- Save up to 19 members per group. Up to four people can be called simultaneously.
- Save up to nine groups. Also, editing group names is available.

■ Creating a new PushTalk group <New group>

To create a new group, delete an already registered group from [グループ 1] to [グループ 9] in advance (☞P. 93).

1 In the PushTalk member list screen/PushTalk group list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [New group].

2 Enter a PushTalk group name ▶ ▣.

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

Related Operations

Edit the PushTalk group name <Edit group name>

1 In the PushTalk group list screen, select a group ▶ 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [Edit group name].

- In the PushTalk member list screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [Edit group name] ▶ select a group ▶ ▣.

2 Edit the group name ▶ ▣.

■ Adding to the PushTalk group from the PushTalk member list screen <Add PushTalk group>

Save PushTalk phonebook entries that are already saved as PushTalk members.

1 In the PushTalk member list screen, select a name ▶ ⓘ.

- Repeat step 1 to select multiple names.
- When nothing is checked, only the entry at the position of the cursor is selected.

2 Press 📷 ▶ [Add PushTalk group].

3 Select the PushTalk group ▶ ▣ ▶ select a save location ▶ ▣.

- If the selected location already has a member saved, the member is overwritten. The same phone number cannot be saved more than once to the same group.
- Selecting a save location is not necessary if multiple names are selected in step 1.

Related Operations

Add to the PushTalk group from the PushTalk group list screen <Add PushTalk group>

1 In the PushTalk group list screen, select a group ▶ 📷.

- In the Group members screen: Press 📷.

2 Select [Set PushTalk group] ▶ [Add PushTalk group] ▶ select a name ▣ (repeatable) ▶ ⓘ.

■ Editing PushTalk phonebook entries <Edit data>

Change phone numbers and groups of saved PushTalk phonebook entries.

1 In the PushTalk member list screen, select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data].

2 Select an item ▶ ● ▶ edit the PushTalk phonebook entry.

- To change phone numbers, select a phone number and select other phone numbers saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry.
- To change the group to save, select in order of the group to be changed, the group to change and the save list.
- To add and save to other groups, select [No groups], select the group to save, and select the save list.

3 Press i ▶ [Yes].

Using the PushTalk phonebook to send

Save members in the PushTalk phonebook in advance.

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the PushTalk phonebook cannot be used.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] cannot be used.

■ Sending from PushTalk groups

- Transmit to up to four people at once.

1 In the PushTalk group list screen, select the other party.

- To send PushTalk transmissions to all members of a group: Select a group.
- To send PushTalk transmissions to some members of a group: Select a group ▶ ● ▶ select a name i (repeatable).
  - ☑ appears for selected entries, and ☐ appears for unselected entries.
  - When nothing is checked, only the party at the position of the cursor is selected.

2 Press ▣ (P).

- For details on transmission procedures ☞“Sending PushTalk transmissions” on P. 87

■ Selecting the other party and sending a transmission

1 In the PushTalk member list screen, select a name i (repeatable).

- Quick search: Enter each character to view the closest entry sequentially.

2 Press ▣ (P).

Related Operations

Receive transmissions automatically <Set auto answer>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Set auto answer] ▶ [ON].

Set the ring duration <Ring time setting>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Ring time setting] ▶ enter the duration of ring tone ▶ ●.

Set the operation when the FOMA terminal is closed during PushTalk transmission <Set when folded>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Set when folded] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

Select Send own no. or No caller ID when send a transmission <Caller ID setting>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Caller ID setting] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

Note (Related operations)

Set auto answer

- When a call is received with Auto answer, the call is automatically switched to hands-free. Auto answer is not available while in the Manner mode.
- The Set auto answer in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the PushTalk in Auto answer setting.

Ring time setting

- When calls are not answered within the set duration in a transmission with multiple people, [Disconnected] appears on the other members' transmission screens.
- The Ring time setting in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with PT ring time set in Ring time setting.
- Ring time setting cannot be selected when Set auto answer is set to [ON].

Set when folded

- Select to end the transmission or activate speakers when the FOMA terminal is closed.
- The Set when folded in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the PushTalk in the Set when folded.

Caller ID setting

- When Caller ID setting is set to [Send own no.], phone numbers for the caller and all members are notified. If set to [No caller ID], [No ID] appears for the speaker and member fields on the handsets of all the members who received the transmission.
- If Caller ID setting is set when PushTalk transmission is sent, it is prioritized than the network service's Notify caller ID (☞P. 58).
- When Caller ID setting is set to [As NW setting], a call is made according to the network service's Notify caller ID.

Network connection

- A PushTalkPlus subscription is required to use the network connection.

Deleting PushTalk phonebook entries

1 **In the PushTalk member list screen, select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a name ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

3 **Select the phonebook type to delete ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

Deleting the PushTalk group <Delete>

1 **In the PushTalk group list screen, select a group ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

Deleting members from PushTalk groups <Delete from group>

1 **In the PushTalk group list screen, select a group ▶ ▣.**

2 **Select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete from group].**

3 **Select the deletion method.**

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a name ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [Del all in group].**

4 **Select [Yes].**

Set PushTalk

Setting PushTalk send/receive options

Set the following items.

Item	Setting details	Page
Ring time setting	Set the duration to sound the PushTalk ring tone.	P. 112
Set auto answer	Set whether to automatically answer PushTalk transmissions.	P. 401
Set PT arrival act	Set actions for voice calls received during PushTalk transmissions.	P. 94
i-mode arrival act	Set to receive/reject PushTalk transmissions received during i-mode transmissions.	P. 187
Hands-free PT	Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start.	P. 94
Set when folded	Set [Finish call] or [Speaker phone] (other party's voice is heard through the speakers) to engage when the FOMA terminal is closed during PushTalk transmission.	P. 73
Set mute ring time	Set the number of seconds to delay the start of ring tone for calls from unknown callers and calls with no ID. This setting is applied to both voice/Videophone calls.	P. 140
Reconnect signal	Set to automatically reconnect when a transmission is disconnected due to signal conditions. This setting is applied to both voice/Videophone calls.	P. 70

Selecting actions for incoming calls during a transmission <Set PT arrival act>

- Set the following response methods.

Voice Mail	Automatically connect to Voice Mail Service*.
Call Forwarding	Automatically connect to Call Forwarding Service*.
Call Rejection	Reject calls.
Answer	Select to continue PushTalk transmission or end and answer the incoming voice call.

* Subscription is required to use these services. If Set PT arrival act is set without subscription, the setting is set to [Answer].

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Set PT arrival act].**

- In the PushTalk member list screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Set PT arrival act].

2 **Select the response method ▶ ▣.**

Setting the PushTalk hands-free operation <Hands-free PT>

- The setting is switched to hands-free regardless of Hands-free PT if the FOMA terminal is closed.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Hands-free PT].**

- In the PushTalk member list screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Set PushTalk] ▶ [Hands-free PT].

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The setting cannot be switched to hands-free while in the Manner mode even if Hands-free PT is set to [ON].

Phonebook

Phonebooks available on the FOMA terminal

Use FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook. Save items such as names, phone numbers and mail addresses for FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook, FOMA card phonebook and PushTalk phonebook

Entries saved in FOMA card phonebook are available even if your FOMA card is inserted into other FOMA terminals. To use phonebook on other FOMA terminals, save numbers in FOMA card phonebook.

- For details on PushTalk phonebook ☞P. 90

■ Number of entries in phonebook

Phonebook	Number of entries
FOMA terminal handset phonebook	1,000
FOMA card phonebook	50
PushTalk phonebook	1,000

■ Entry items for one phonebook

Icon	Item	Details	Entry status	
			FOMA terminal handset	FOMA card
👤	Name	Enter a name.	One	One
R	Reading	Reading is entered automatically.	One	One
👥	Group	Entries can be sorted in groups.	20 groups	11 groups
☎/📇*	Phone number	Save phone numbers. In the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select from one of nine icons for each phone number.	Three	One
✉/✉*	Mail address	Save mail addresses. In the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select from one of six icons for each address.	Three	One
🏢	Company/ school	Enter company/school name.	One	–
🖧	Depart- ment	Enter department.	One	–
🏷	Title	Enter title.	One	–
〒	Postal code	Enter postal code.	One	–
🪪	Postal address	Enter postal address.	One	–
▶	Location info	Enter location information (date of positioning, latitude, longitude, geographical coordinate system, accuracy level).	○	–
🎂	Birthday	Enter a birthday.	One	–
📝	Memo	Save memos.	One	–
🔑	Secret	Keep privacy by hiding phonebook entries. Set to keep phonebook entries private.	○	–

Icon	Item	Details	Entry status	
			FOMA terminal handset	FOMA card
✉	Secret code	Enter secret code specified by the other party. Use when sending mail.	○	–
♪/✉	Select ring tone/Mail ring tone	Differentiate incoming calls or incoming mail using specific ring tones or Chaku-motion.	○	–
💡/✉	Called LED color/ Mail LED color	Differentiate incoming calls or incoming mail using specific LED colors.	○	–
💡/✉	Called LED pattern/ Mail LED pattern	Set Called LED/Mail LED flashing pattern.	○	–
🖼	Picture call set	Images appear when calls are made or received. Specific image appears in phonebook list.	○	–
☺	Substitute image	Set still picture or Chara-den for when sending a substitute image during a Videophone call.	○	–

* Displayed in the FOMA card phonebook.

Note

- When upgrading the handset at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer, data saved in the FOMA terminal may not be copied depending on specifications of the new model.

Add to phonebook/FOMA card phonebook

Adding to the phonebook

Save entries to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or FOMA card phonebook.

- Save to the PushTalk phonebook when saving to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [New] ▶ [Phone]/[UIM].

2 Enter/Select an item ▶ ▮.

- For details on entering/selecting ☞P. 98
- When saving to FOMA card phonebook, the operation ends.

3 Add to the phonebook.

- To save to specify a memory number: Enter the number (three digits: 000 to 999).
- To save to an available memory number: Press ■.
  - Open memory numbers are allocated from 010 to 999, then 000 to 009.
- Use 2-touch dialing to save to memory numbers from 000 to 099.

4 Select whether to save to the PushTalk phonebook ▶ ■.

- When two or more phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk.

■ Entering/Selecting items

An entry can be saved by only entering a name. After entering a name, freely select other items to save. Edit items after saving.

Enter name

Select 👤 ▶ enter a name ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.
- In the FOMA card phonebook, enter up to 10 characters (21 single-byte characters for single-byte alphanumerics).

Enter/Edit reading

Select R ▶ enter/edit reading ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 32 single-byte characters.
- In the FOMA card phonebook, enter up to 12 characters (25 single-byte characters for single-byte alphanumerics).
- Reading is automatically entered when a name is entered. Reading may not be automatically entered depending on the conditions.

Set group

Select 👥 ▶ select a group ▶ ⊡.

- Phonebook entries with no group settings are grouped in [No groups].

Save phone number and phone number type

Select ☎ ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a phone number type icon ▶ ⊡.

- For the FOMA card phonebook: Select ▤ ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ⊡.
- Enter up to 26 digits.
- Always enter from the area code of the phone number.
- Phone number may include [*] or [#] but call may not connect.
- Press ▢ to enter a pause [P]. Alternatively, slide the finger up on the Optical TOUCH CRUISER to enter it.
- For the FOMA card phonebook, enter up to 26 digits for FOMA card (green/white) and 20 digits for FOMA card (blue).

Save mail address and mail address type

Select ✉ ▶ enter a mail address ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a mail address type icon ▶ ⊡.

- For the FOMA card phonebook: Select ✉ ▶ enter a mail address ▶ ⊡.
- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphanumeric characters or certain symbols.

Save company/school

Select ▦ ▶ enter a company/school name ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

Save department

Select ⊞ ▶ enter a department ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.

Save title

Select ▭ ▶ enter a title ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

Save postal code

Select 〒 ▶ enter a postal code ▶ ⊡.

Save postal address

Select ▤ ▶ enter a postal address ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 100 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters.

Save location information

Select ⚑.

- For details on the following operations ☞P. 280

Save birthday

Select 🎂 ▶ enter a birthday ▶ ⊡.

- Enter a birthday between January 1, 1900 and December 31, 2099.

Save memo

Select ▣ ▶ enter a memo ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

Save entries as secret data

Select 🔑 ▶ [ON].

Set Secret code for mail address

1. **Select ✉ ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Set].**
   - To confirm the Secret code: Select [View].
   - To disable the Secret code: Select [Clear settings].
2. **Select a mail address ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the secret code (four digit) ▶ [Yes].**

Set ring tone/mail ring tone

Select ♪ ▶ select an item ▶ ▣ ▶ select a ring tone ▶ ▤.

- For Mail ring tone: Select ✉.

Set called LED color/mail LED color

Select ☼ ▶ select called LED color ▶ ▣.

- For Mail LED color: Select ✉.

Set called LED pattern and mail LED pattern

Select ☼ ▶ select an LED pattern ▶ ▣.

- For Mail LED pattern: Select ✉.

Set Picture call

Select ▨ ▶ select an item.

- ◆ **Select [My picture] ▶ select an image ▶ ▤.**
- ◆ **Select [i-motion] ▶ select i-motion ▶ ▤.**
- ◆ **Select [Shoot still pic] ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣.**
- ◆ **Select [Shoot movie] ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣ ▶ [Save].**
- ◆ **Select [Not set].**

Set Substitute image

Select ☺ ▶ select an item ▶ ▣ ▶ select a substitute image ▶ ▤.

Note

Group settings

- For details on Group settings ☞P. 100

Set secret

- Set the Secret mode to [ON] to view the phonebook saved with Set secret. 🔑 flashes in the phonebook list or the details screen when secret data is selected.
- In Redial, Received calls, Received/Sent messages history and Schedule saved in the Secret mode, phone number and mail address appear instead of name.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone and called LED.

Secret code

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on Secret code or setting Secret code.
- Set Secret code for one mail address per each phonebook entry.

Ring tone/Called LED

- For details on selecting Ring tone ☞P. 108
- For details on selecting Called LED ☞P. 123
- Save entire mail address to set Mail ring tone/Called LED. If mail address is ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, set only phone number.
- In the following cases, a regular ring tone sounds and a regular called LED flashes.
  - ■ Calls and mail from parties set as Secret
  - ■ Calls and mail received while Function lock is applied to the Phonebook

Picture call

- For details on Picture call display ☞P. 116
- When i-motion is set, the image set in the Call/Receive display appears during an outgoing call.
- Depending on data size, the image set to Picture call may take more time to display.
- When i-motion is set, the first frame of the image is displayed in the phonebook.
- If a call is received from a caller with i-motion set, [電話着信 1] appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- Movies/i-motion that are copied from a microSD Card to the FOMA terminal handset or transferred from a PC or another FOMA terminal using Ir exchange, iC transmission or DoCoMo keitai datalink, are not available.
- In the following cases, the regular incoming screen appears.
  - ■ Received call from parties set as Secret
  - ■ Received calls while Function lock is applied to the Phonebook

Copying phonebook entries between the FOMA terminal handset and the FOMA card

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy to UIM]/[Copy to the phone].

2 Select the copy method.

- ◆ **Select [Copy one].**
- ◆ **Select [Copy selected] ▶ select a name ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note

- Unsupported characters may be converted to spaces.
- Entries are allocated accordingly if the same group name exists. If the same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to [No groups]. Single- and double-byte characters are differentiated.

When copying from the FOMA terminal handset to the FOMA card

- Portions of name exceeding 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are discarded.
- Reading is saved as double-byte katakana. Portions exceeding 12 characters are discarded.
- When a name is entered in alphanumeric, reading is saved as single-byte. Portions exceeding 25 characters are discarded.

When copying from the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal handset

- Reading is saved as single-byte characters.
- Phone number and mail address are saved as the first phone number and mail address.
- Open memory numbers are allocated from 010 to 999, then 000 to 009.

Related Operations

Check contents before copying

In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a name ▶ ▣ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ select a destination ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

Group settings

Setting groups

Set groups in the phonebook to set group names, ring tones, Called LED and image shown when calls are received from a member of a group.

- Only group name editing is available for the FOMA card phonebook.

Changing a group name <Edit group name>

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a group ▶ 📷 ▶ [Group settings].

- In the phonebook list screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Group settings] ▶ select a group ▶ ▣.

2 Select [Edit group name] ▶ edit a group name ▶ ▣ ▶ ▤.

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

- In the FOMA card phonebook, enter up to 10 characters (21 single-byte characters for single-byte alphanumerics).
- To restore the default group name: In the edit screen, press CLR (for 1+ seconds) ▶ ●.

Other group settings

In the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, set functions for each group. For details on setting ☞“Adding to the phonebook” on P. 97

- Select ring tone/Mail ring tone
- Called LED color/Mail LED color
- Called LED pattern/Mail LED pattern
- Picture call setting

Search phonebook

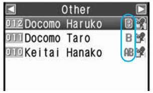
Making calls from the phonebook

Retrieve phone numbers from the phonebook to make calls and send mail.

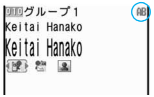
- To make an international call ☞P. 69
- To call with a prefix ☞P. 70
- To call sending/without sending ID ☞P. 67
- To specify a substitute image and make a Videophone call ☞P. 82
- To call selecting Multi Number ☞P. 435
- To call selecting a phone number when the 2in1 is used ☞P. 436
- To call with a message (Chaku-moji) ☞P. 66

Phonebook when the 2in1 is used

- For details on available phonebook depending on the 2in1 mode ☞P. 436
- When [Dual mode] is set, check in which phonebook the number is saved, based on the following marks.



Phonebook list



Details screen

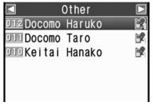
A	A
B	B
AB	Dual

Selecting the phonebook search method

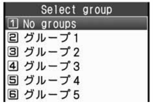
<Search by>

Perform one of the following to search phonebook.

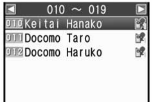
Reading?	FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks are sorted by reading.
Group?	FOMA card phonebook is sorted by group after FOMA terminal handset phonebook is sorted by group.
Memory no.?	FOMA terminal handset phonebook is sorted by memory number.



Search by reading



Search by group



Search by memory no.

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [Search by] ▶ select the search method ▶ ●.

Making calls from searched numbers

1 In stand-by, press 📖.

- Phonebook appears sorted by the previously selected search method.

2 Select a name.

Search by reading

- Appears in the following order: Katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → spaces* → symbols → no reading.
  * When a space is entered as the first character
- Closest entry appears after each character is entered (Quick search).

Search by group

- Entries are sorted by the specified group when entered in the phonebook.
- For searching names in the group, take the same procedure of searching by reading.

Search by memory no.

- Closest entry appears after each digit is entered (Quick search).

3 Make a call.

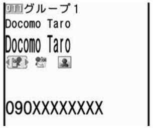
- Voice call: Press 📞.
- Videophone: Press 📹.
- PushTalk: Press 🅟 (🅟).

■ Selecting from details screen

1 In stand-by, press 📖.

2 Select a name ▶ ●.

- Items saved in the phonebook appear as icons. When an icon is selected, an available function appears in operation guidance. Press the assigned key to operate.



Details screen

Related Operations

Search by a part of phone number <Search phone no.>

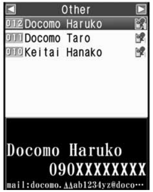
In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [Search phone no.] ▶ enter a part of phone number ▶ ●.

Changing the display method for the phonebook list screen <Switch view mode>

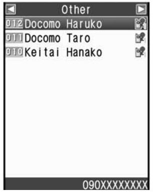
Show images and mail addresses saved in Picture call in the phonebook list screen.

- In the phonebook list screen, the first phone number appears and a call can be made to the phone number.
  For Show business card and Picture list, the first mail address appears, but mail cannot be composed in the phonebook list screen.

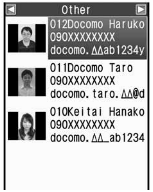
1 In the phonebook list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Switch view mode] ▶ select the display method ▶ ●.



Show business card



List display



Picture list

Note

- When Picture call is set for an individual phonebook and group settings, Picture call for individual is prioritized.

Showing images set in Picture call <Switch view mode>

Show images set in Picture call for entries in the phonebook entry details screen.

1 In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Switch view mode].

Setting whether to transfer images <Image transfer>

Set whether to transfer images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are copied or sent with the following procedures.

- ■ Sending Ir data
- ■ Sending via iC transmission
- ■ Sending via Bluetooth
- ■ Copying phonebook entries to microSD Card
- ■ Backing up phonebook entries to microSD Card

1 In the phonebook list/phonebook entry details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Image transfer].

2 Select the setting.

- ◆ **Select [Yes] ▶ [Yes].**
- ◆ **Select [No].**

Note

- ● Even if Image transfer is set to [Yes], the following images are not transferred.
  - ■ Preinstalled images
  - ■ Images of Videophone source
  - ■ Images of i-mode source with file restrictions

Viewing the microSD Card phonebook <View microSD data>

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [View microSD data].

Related Operations

Copy microSD Card phonebook contents to owner information <Copy to Owner Info>

In the phonebook of microSD Card, select a name ▶ ⊡ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy to Owner Info] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

- ● The first phone number is not copied to owner information.
- ● When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], each item is copied to the owner information of Number B. In other modes, each item is copied to the owner information of Number A.

Sending Phonebook attach to mail <Attach to mail>

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Attach to mail].

2 Compose and send a mail.

Applying Function lock to the Phonebook <Function lock>

- ● For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [Function lock].

- ● While searching by group: In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a group ▶ ⊡ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Function lock].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [ON].

Edit entries

Editing phonebook entries

Edit items saved/set in phonebook entries.

1. **In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit].**
   - In the details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit].
2. **Edit the phonebook ▶ ≣.**
3. **Add to the phonebook.**
   - To overwrite: Press ▣ ▶ [Yes].
   - To save to a specified memory number as a new entry: Enter the memory number.
   - To save to an available memory number as a new entry: Delete the memory number (press CLR for 1+ seconds) ▶ ▣.
   - For FOMA card phonebook: Select [Yes].

Note

- Editing is not available when All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- Editing is not available for phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls.
- When editing and overwriting a phonebook entry that has a phone number also saved in a PushTalk phonebook, a message stating PushTalk phonebook entry will also be changed appears.

Related Operations

Add to PushTalk phonebook <Add to PushTalk PB>

In the phonebook list screen, select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Add to PushTalk PB].

- In the details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Add to PushTalk PB].

Switch the order of saved multiple phone numbers or mail addresses <Switch item>

1. **In the phonebook list screen, select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Switch item].**
   - In the entry details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Switch item].
2. **Select a switch item ▶ ▣ ▶ select a source ▶ ▣ ▶ select a destination ▶ ▣.**

Copy saved details <Copy item>

In the entry details screen, select an icon ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy item].

Delete entries

Deleting phonebook entries

1. **In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**
2. **Select the deletion method.**
   - **Select [Delete one].**
   - **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a name ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
   - **Select [Del all in group] ▶ select a group ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
   - **Select [Delete all] ▶ [Hndset phonebook]/[UIM] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
   - When a phone number is saved in the PushTalk phonebook, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete appears. Select [Yes] to delete both PushTalk and FOMA terminal handset phonebook entries.
3. **Select [Yes].**

Related Operations

Delete from the phonebook entry details screen <Delete one>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

2-touch dialing/2-touch mail

Calling and sending mail with a few key strokes

Easily call or send i-mode mail to parties saved in memory numbers [000] to [099] in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

1 **In stand-by, enter last or last two digits.**

2 **Select the function.**

- Voice call: Press ☎.
- Videophone: Press ▮.
- To compose a message: Press ✉ ▶ compose and send a message.

Note

- First phone number/mail address is called/addressed when multiple are saved.

Data Sec. Service

Saving (restoring/updating) the phonebook to the Data Storage Center

Saving the FOMA terminal handset phonebook to the Data Storage Center <Connect to Center>

- Update the contents when the phonebook has already been saved.
- Restore the phonebook or set automatic updating from the i-mode's "Phonebook data storage site" (i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [マイメニュー] ▶ [電話帳お預かり]).
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version" for details on the use of the Data Security Service.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Data Sec. Service] ▶ [Connect to Center] ▶ [Yes].**

- In the phonebook list screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Connect to Center] ▶ [Yes].

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

Note

- Connection to the Data Storage Center is not available when the handset is outside the i-mode service area or the power is turned off.
- Owner information can also be saved to the Data Storage Center.
- The FOMA card phonebook or phonebook in a microSD Card cannot be saved.
- If the phonebook data in the FOMA terminal are deleted and connect to the Data Storage Center, the phonebook data saved to the Data Storage Center are also deleted. Perform the following when restoring the phonebook data saved to the Data Storage Center.
  - i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [マイメニュー] ▶ [電話帳お預かり] ▶ [お預かりセンター] ▶ enter the i-mode password ▶ ● ▶ [ケータイへダウンロード] ▶ [OK] ▶ the stand-by display appears (downloading is started in approximately 15 seconds).

Automatic updating

- The phonebook is not automatically updated when other functions are activated. Display [PB Data Strg Cntr Update notifice] in the stand-by display when the phonebook is not automatically updated.

Available image files used for Picture call to be stored to the Data Storage Center

- JPEG images, GIF images and animated GIFs are saved.
- Images that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal cannot be saved to the Data Storage Center.

Viewing the phonebook transmission history

<Exchanging history>

Check up to 30 transmission history entries of saving/updating the phonebook, mail and images, starting with the newest. When the transmission history exceeded 30 entries, entries are deleted starting with the oldest.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Data Sec. Service] ▶ [Exchanging history] ▶ select a history ▶ ▣.**

Setting whether to send phonebook images

<Send phonebook img>

Set whether to send images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are saved to the Data Storage Center.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Data Sec. Service] ▶ [Send phonebook img].**
2. **Select the setting.**
    - ◆ **Select [ON] ▶ [Yes].**
    - ◆ **Select [OFF].**

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Sound settings

Screen/Light settings

Sound settings

Changing mobile phone sounds

■ Preset ring tones

Song title	3D data	Song title	3D data
着信音1	–	Skyscraper	Yes
着信音2	–	夏*1	Yes
着信音3	–	ガヴォット*2	–
着信音4	–	王家の末裔	–
着信音5	–	Siesta	Yes
着信音6	–	ワルキューレの騎行*3	Yes
黒電話	–	月の光*4	Yes
Coffee Break	–	サイレント	–
海辺の街	–	TI (標準音)	–
クリスタル	–	TI (時間です)	–
Smily Tap	Yes	TI (It's time)	–

Artist

*1	Vivaldi Antonio Lucio	*3	Richard Wagner
*2	Gossec Francois Joseph	*4	Debussy

Changing the ring tone

<Select ring tone/Select mail tone/PushTalk tone>

- Set preset melodies or melodies, Chaku-uta®, i-motion and Chaku-uta full® downloaded using i-mode, and movies shot with the FOMA terminal (i-motion).
- Set i-motion to play an image or voice for an incoming call (Chaku-motion).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select sound].

2 Select an item ▶ ■.

3 Select a ring tone ▶ ▮.

- To check the ring tone: Select the ring tone ▶ ■.
- When setting Chaku-uta full®, set a full song (Full song ring tone) or a part of a song (Point ring tone).

Note

- i-motion and Chaku-uta full® in the [Movable contents] folder in the microSD Card can directly be set. However, the set i-motion and Chaku-uta full® are transferred to the [i-mode] folder in i-motion or MUSIC of the Data box in the FOMA terminal handset.
- If the ring tone is changed, the Receive display may also change.
- Ring tone and Mail ring tone are prioritized as follows when multiple ring tones are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Ring tone	Phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → V.phone ring tone/Phone ring tone
Mail ring tone	Phonebook mail ring tone → group mail ring tone → regular mail ring tone

- For using Multi Number, when call is received to Additional Number, ring tones are prioritized as Phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → Multi Number ring tone.
- For using 2in1, when call is received to Number B, ring tones are prioritized as Phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → ring tone of call to Number B.
- For using 2in1, when mail is received to Address B, mail ring tones are prioritized as Phonebook mail ring tone → group mail ring tone → ring tone of mail to Address B.
- When receiving a Payphone/User unset/Unknown call, each ring tone which is set in Select ring tone is prioritized. However, for receiving User unset Videophone call, V.phone ring tone is prioritized.

- When a call is received during data transmission, the ring tone and the Receive display are the same as the settings for voice calls.
- A voice only i-motion can be set as a PushTalk tone.
- Setting as the ring tone cannot be performed in the following cases.
  - i-motion copied from microSD Card to FOMA terminal handset
  - i-motion with video only
  - i-motion with ticker
  - Chaku-uta®, i-motion, Chaku-uta full®, and Uta-hodai with replay restrictions
  - Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date or whose valid period for update has ended
  - Chaku-uta®, i-motion, Chaku-uta full®, and Uta-hodai with Ring tone set to [unavailable]
  - Uta-hodai without a license of the compatible MUSIC (subscription) services
  - Chaku-uta full® saved in the middle of download

Changing tones when using GPS function

<GPS tone>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select sound] ▶ [GPS tone].

2 Select an item ▶ ▣.

3 Select a tone.

- **Select [Melody] ▶ select a melody ▶ ▤.**
  - To check the melody: Select the melody ▶ ▣.
- **Select [OFF].**

Changing setting sounds

■ Changing the camera shutter sound <Shutter sound>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select sound] ▶ [Shutter sound].

2 Select a sound ▶ ▣.

- To check the sound: Select the sound ▶ ▤.

■ Changing the timer sound <Timer sound>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select sound] ▶ [Timer sound].

2 Select the sound.

- **Select [Default tone] ▶ enter a ring duration ▶ ▣.**
  - To check the default tone: Press ▤.
- **Select [Melody] ▶ select a melody ▶ ▤ ▶ enter a ring duration ▶ ▣.**
  - To check the melody: Select the melody ▶ ▣.
- **Select [OFF].**

Select volume

Changing the mobile phone sound volume

- Volume remains at adjusted level even when the handset is turned off or the battery pack is removed.

Adjusting the ring tone volume and tone volume when using GPS function

<phone ring vol/Mail ring vol/PushTalk tone vol/GPS volume>

- Select between [Volume 1] to [Volume 10], [Silent] and [Step] (gradually get louder).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select volume].

2 Select an item ▶ ▣.

3 Adjust the volume with ⬍ ▶ ▣.

- Step: Press ⬆ when the volume is set to [Volume 10].
- Silent: Press ⬇ when the volume is set to [Volume 1].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- The ring volume for a call received during data transmission follows the volume set for Phone ring tone.

Adjusting the earpiece volume <Earpiece volume>

- Select from [Volume 1] to [Volume 10].
- If a calendar is shown, press ⊟ to hide.
- For details on adjusting the earpiece volume during a call ☞P. 73

1 In stand-by, press ↑ (for 1+ seconds)/↓ (for 1+ seconds).

  - While viewing stand-by memo: Press ↓ (for 1+ seconds).

2 Adjust the volume with ↕.

  - After adjusting the volume, wait approximately 2 seconds and the stand-by display reappears.

Adjusting setting sound volumes <Key/Standby i-motion, Charge start sound, Charge end sound, Timer sound>

- Select between [Volume 1] to [Volume 10] and [Silent].

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Select volume].

2 Select an item ▶ ⊡.

3 Adjust the volume with ↕ ▶ ⊡.

  - Silent: Press ↓ when the volume is set to [Volume 1].

Note

- Sounds are disabled in the Manner mode regardless of the setting.
- When the touch panel is touched, the volume follows Key/Standby i-motion volume settings.

Snd playbck (melody)

Setting the 3D sound and sound quality

Set stereo effects and equalizer used when playing melodies.

- Stereo effects/Equalizer in Sound playback (melody) is linked with Stereo effects/Equalizer while playing back melody (☞P. 331).

Setting the 3D sound/surround <Stereo effects>

- Set the following effects.

Stereo/ 3D sound	Play realistic 3D sound from stereo speakers. Ring tones without 3D data are played in stereo sound. Enjoy 3D sound compatible i-αppli games and ring tones with lively 3D sound.
Surround	Playback format that offers rich and vibrant sound. Ring tones are also played in surround sound regardless of 3D data.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Snd playbck (melody)] ▶ [Stereo effects].

2 Select an effect ▶ ⊡.

Note

- For the 3D sound to be enjoyed most effectively, hold the FOMA terminal approximately 40 cm off, facing the front.
- Surround effects are disabled when i-motion is set.

Setting the equalizer <Equalizer>

Set the equalizer according to music genres.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Snd playbck (melody)] ▶ [Equalizer].**

2 **Select a type ▶ ■.**

Vibrator

Vibrating for calls and alarms

Set the vibrator to notify you of incoming calls, PushTalk, mail, alarms, GPS function, and touch panel.

Pattern1	Vibrates for approx. 0.8 sec → stops for approx. 0.8 sec and repeats
Pattern2	Vibrates for approx. 0.3 sec → stops for approx. 0.3 sec → vibrates for approx. 0.3 sec → stops for approx. 1 sec and repeats
Pattern3	Continuous vibration
Melody ON	For melodies created with vibration settings, the vibrator is activated in conjunction with the melodies. Melodies that do not have vibration settings vibrate in Pattern 1.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Vibrator].**

2 **Select an item ▶ ■.**

3 **Select the vibrator ▶ ■.**

- Select [Pattern1] to [Pattern3] with ⁝ to sample the vibration pattern.

Note

- Note that if the vibrator is set and the FOMA terminal is left on a table, it may fall due to vibration.

Melody Call setting

Changing the ringing tone

When a voice call is received, the other party hears the melody with sense of the season instead of the normal ringing tone. Also set your favorite melody.

- If a call is made from Videophone/PushTalk, Melody Call is not played.
- Melody Call is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]” for details on using Melody Call.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Incoming settings] ▶ [Melody Call setting] ▶ [Yes].**

- Connects to the i-mode site of Melody Call. Packet charges are not incurred for connecting to the i-mode sites (Packet charges are not incurred for connecting to setting sites).

2 **Set.**

Quality alarm

Sounding an alarm when the signal is weak

- Quality alarm is available only for voice calls.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [In-call settings] ▶ [Quality alarm].**

2 **Select an alarm tone ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding if the signal suddenly becomes weak.

Ring time setting

Setting the duration of mail/PushTalk ring tone and tones when using GPS function

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Ring time setting].**

2 **Select the item.**

- **Select [Mail ring time set] ▶ [ON].**
- **Select [PT ring time set].**
- **Select [GPS ring time set] ▶ select an item ▶ ▣ ▶ [ON].**

3 **Enter the ring duration ▶ ▣.**

Note

- In the following cases, the mail ring tone does not sound even if mail is received.
  - Calls are in progress
  - i-αppli is running
  - Camera is being activated
  - GPS positioning is being performed
  - 1Seg is being watched (excluding when using Multi Window)
  - Pattern definitions are being updated

Headset setting

Sounding the ring tone only from the earphone

Set the ring tone or alarm tone to sound only from the earphone when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- Even when set to [Headset only], if no flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, the ring tone or alarm tone will sound from the speakers.
- When a Bluetooth device is connected using the Headset service, the Headset setting is followed.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Headset setting].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The volume in the earphone/microphone is set using Set volume of the various functions.
- Do not wind the earphone/microphone cord around the FOMA terminal. The internal antenna may not work properly.
- Fully insert the earphone/microphone plug. Interrupted sound, static or loud noise may result when only partially inserted.

- A pop may sound when the power is turned on or the handset is operated. This is not a malfunction.

Manner mode

Silencing the handset

Use the Manner mode to avoid disturbing others when in public. Switch to the mode to silence the FOMA terminal.

- The camera shutter sound and record start/end sound are not silenced while the Manner mode is set.
- The vibrator is activated regardless of the Manner mode settings if the information such as an emergency earthquake report is received. In addition, when in the Original manner mode and any of the following sounds is set to ring, the dedicated alarm tone (beep sound) also sounds.
  ■ Ring tone ■ Mail ring tone ■ Alarm tone ■ Low battery alarm
- Settings vary for each mode.

Function	Normal	Silent	Original[*1]
Record message, Vibrator	ON	OFF	ON
Ring tone, Mail ring tone	Silent	Silent	Silent
Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion sound, Low battery alarm	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mic sensitivity up[*2]	ON	ON	ON

[*1] The Original manner mode settings can be changed.

[*2] When Mic sensitivity up is set, the microphone becomes more sensitive allowing for conversations at lower volumes. Microphone sensitivity does not change during a Hands-free call.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Manner mode] ▶ [ON].

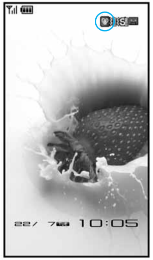
2 Select a type ▶ ⊡.

- For the Original manner mode settings ☞"Changing the Original manner mode" on P. 114

- When no settings are selected, the Manner mode selected previously (the Normal manner mode is set for the first time) is set.

Setting/Disabling the Manner mode by one-touch operation

1 In stand-by/while receiving, press ⌗ (for 1+ seconds).



- The Manner mode selected previously (the Normal manner mode is set for the first time) is set.
- Select the Manner mode type in the Manner mode setting screen when in stand-by. The Manner mode selected previously is set in approximately 2 seconds if no operations are performed.

Related Operations

Disable the Manner mode automatically at a specified time <Auto disable>

In stand-by, enter the disabling time (four digits: 24-hour format) ▶ ⌗ (for 1+ seconds) (or ⊡ ▶ [Disable Manner]).

Silence the current incoming call <Quick silent>

Press ⌗ while receiving.

- When FOMA terminal is closed or in the viewer position while receiving voice/Videophone calls: Press ▣.
- Alternatively, press ▣ (for 1+ seconds) regardless of the position while receiving PushTalk calls.

Original

Changing the Original manner mode

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Manner mode] ▶ [ON] ▶ [Original].

2 Select an item ▶ ⊡.

3 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

- For details on adjusting the volume ☞step 3 of “Adjusting the ring tone volume and tone volume when using GPS function” on P. 109

Changing stand-by display settings

Displaying an image <Stand-by display>

Set preset images, or still pictures and movies shot by the FOMA terminal, or images downloaded from sites, etc., as stand-by.

- The stand-by displays cannot be changed in the viewer position.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Stand-by display].

2 Select an image ▶ ⓘ ▶ [Yes].

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ⊡.
- Depending on the image size, a confirmation screen asking whether to set may appear. Select a display size.
- For details on setting [i-αppli] ☞P. 246

Note

- Voice only i-motion, i-motion with playback restrictions and i-motion in the ASF format cannot be set as stand-by.
- Images saved on the microSD Card cannot be set. Copy/Transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting.
- i-motion saved in the [Movable contents] folder on microSD Card can be directly set.
- When the image set as stand-by is deleted, the default image reappears.
- Some images downloaded from sites, etc. may not appear correctly.

■ Operations of images set as stand-by

Flash movie, animated GIF

- Played back from the first frame up to approximately 20 seconds. A frame of the stopped movie/animation appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press ☎ to switch pause/playback.

i-motion

- Played back from the first frame up to approximately 20 seconds. The first frame appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press ☎ during playback to return to the first frame and stop. Press ☎ again to resume playback.
- To switch audio on/off during playback: Press MULTI (for 1+ seconds).

Note

- Flash movie sound is not played.
- In the Power saver mode, press a key to turn on the screen. A function assigned to the key is executed during voice call only.

Displaying the calendar <Calendar display>

Display the calendar on the stand-by display.

- Japanese national holidays as stipulated in the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly (Law No. 43, 2005) are set by default (as of April 2008). Dates for Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ because they are released on February 1 of the previous year.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Calendar display].

2 Select the display method ▶ ▣.

- For [1 month] and [2 months]: Select [1 month]/[2 months] ▶ select the display position ▶ ▣.

Calendar operations in stand-by

- To show the previous and following months: Press ↕.
- To switch among stand-by, calendar and stand-by memo display: Press ☎.

Note

- While the calendar is shown, i-Channel ticker does not appear.
- In the viewer position, the calendar does not appear.

Displaying the clock <Clock display>

Display the clock on the stand-by display.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Clock display].

2 Select the [Clock display] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select the type.

- ◆ **Select [ON(Large)].**
- ◆ **Select [ON(Small)]/[OFF] ▶ proceed to step 5.**

3 Select the [Set clock style] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select an image ▶ ≣.

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ▣.

4 Select the [Set disp position] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select the display position ▶ ▣.

5 Press ≣.

Displaying the stand-by memo <Stand-by memo disp>

Display the stand-by memo on the stand-by display.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Stand-by memo disp] ▶ [ON].

Saving stand-by memo

Save up to one stand-by memo.

1 In stand-by, press ↑ (for 1+ seconds).

- To switch among stand-by, calendar and stand-by memo display: Press ☎.

2 Enter memo ▶ ▣.

- Enter up to 115 single-byte (57 double-byte) characters.

Note

- In the viewer position, the stand-by memo does not appear.

Desktop clock

Showing the Desktop clock while charging

While stand-by is shown in the viewer position, start charging to show the Desktop clock.

- The Desktop clock ends in 2 hours after the display is started, and stand-by reappears.
- The design of Desktop clock varies depending on the date and day of the week.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/ Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Desktop clock] ▶ [2 hours].

Note

- The Desktop clock is shown at [Brightness 3].
- Perform the following operations to return to stand-by. Press ▣ to show the Desktop clock again.
  - ■ Pressing ▣
  - ■ Receiving a call
  - ■ Receiving mail
  - ■ Operating the alarm
- When charging is started while the warning screen indicating the battery empty is displayed, Desktop clock does not appear. Press ▣ after starting charging to show Desktop clock.

Call/Rcv display, Send/Rcv display

Changing displays for making/receiving calls and sending/receiving messages

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/ Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Call/Rcv display]/ [Send/Rcv display].

2 Select an item ▶ ⊡ ▶ ⓘ.

3 Select an image ▶ ⓘ.

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ⊡.

Note

- i-motion (excluding voice only i-motion) can also be set to the receive display and mail received screen.
- If an image set is deleted, the default setting image reappears.
- Incoming Videophone is prioritized for Videophone calls with no caller ID.
- Images saved on the microSD Card cannot be set. Copy/Transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting.
- i-motion copied from the microSD Card to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as the receive display and mail received screen. Save and set the shot i-motion on the FOMA terminal handset directly.
- i-motion saved in the [Movable contents] folder on the microSD Card can be directly set.
- The SMS and Message R/F receive complete screen cannot be changed.

Setting to show the phonebook image for incoming/outgoing calls <Picture call set>

Set whether to show the picture call (☞P. 99) image set in the phonebook.

- When caller ID is not sent or if picture call images/movies are not set in the phonebook, images are not displayed even if Picture call is set to [ON].

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/ Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Call/Rcv display] ▶ [Picture call set].

2 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Note

- Images are prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call/ Receive display ● If i-motion is set, the set i-motion may be prioritized.

Light/Power saver

Saving the battery power

Adjust settings such as the screen display time and conserve the battery power.

- Settings for items such as display time vary for each mode as shown below (Durations are approximations).

	Norm (auto bright)	Norm (fixed bright)	Eco mode (Pwr saver)	Original Eco mode*1
Display light time	10 sec	10 sec	5 sec	10 sec
Screen dsp time	1 min	1 min	30 sec	1 min
Brightness*2	Automatic	6	1	Automatic
Keypad light setting	Light	Light	OFF	Light

*1 For changing original Eco mode settings ☞P. 117

*2 When set to [Automatic], the brightness sensor (☞P. 31) automatically adjusts the brightness of the display and the keypad backlight according to the surrounding light. The adjustment may take some time depending on the conditions.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/ Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver].

2 Select the type ▶ ●.

Setting the Eco mode (Power saver) by one-touch operation

1 In stand-by, press ✎ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ [Yes].

- Press ✎ for 1+ seconds again to show the Light/Power saver screen and change the settings.

Original Eco mode

Setting the original Power saver mode

Setting the light time of the display and key lights

<Display light time>

Set the length of backlight time by functions when the FOMA terminal is not in use for a set length of time.

Normal	Set the length of time the display lights from 1 to 99 seconds while the handset is turned on, keys are pressed, the handset is open/closed, or a call is received.
Charging	Set to [Same as normal] or [Always ON] while the handset is connected to the AC or DC adapter (sold separately).
Video-phone	Set to [Same as normal] or [Always ON] while Videophone is in use. When [Always ON] is set, the brightness is adjusted to [Brightness 2].
Internet	Set to [Same as normal] or [Always ON] while i-mode/ Full Browser is in use.
i-αppli	Set to [Same as normal] or [Software] while i-αppli is in use.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/ Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Display light time].

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select an item ▶ ●.

3 Select the setting ▶ ●.

- To change the setting in [Normal]: Enter the light duration ▶ ●.

Note

- Note that increasing the light duration shortens the continuous stand-by time.
- Light duration is prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Light duration	i-αppli → Videophone/Internet → Charging → Normal

  - If Videophone is used while i-αppli is being activated, Display light time for Videophone is prioritized.
  - When Charging is set to [Always ON] and Videophone is used while charging, Display light time is set to [Always ON] regardless of the setting for Videophone.

Setting the Screen display time <Screen dsp time>

Turn off the display when the FOMA terminal is not in use for a set length of time.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Screen dsp time].

2 Select the time ▶ ●.

Note

- When the display is turned off, press a key to show the screen.
- During i-Channel ticker playback, the display is turned off according to the screen display time setting. However, when the Screen display time is set to [30 seconds], the display remains for approximately 60 seconds.
- The display is not turned off even when the Screen display time passes in the following cases.
  - ■ Videophone calls are in progress
  - ■ i-mode transmission is in progress
  - ■ Mail is being sent/received
  - ■ Camera is being activated
  - ■ i-motion is being played*1
  - ■ Slideshow is being played
  - ■ GPS positioning is being performed
  - ■ Data is being transferred with an external device
  - ■ PushTalk transmission is in progress
  - ■ 1Seg is being watched/recorded*2
  - ■ Video is being played*2
  - ■ Desktop clock is being shown

  *1 Excluding Stand-by i-motion.
  *2 Excluding when using Multi Window.

Adjusting the display brightness <Brightness>

- Adjusting methods are as follows.

Automatic	Adjust the display brightness automatically according to the surrounding light. Keypad light is automatically switched between Light and OFF when Keypad light setting is set to [Light].
Manual	Select from 16 display brightness levels. Check the brightness while adjusting it.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Brightness].

2 Select the adjusting method ▶ ●.

- When in [Manual]: Select [Manual] ▶ adjust the brightness with ⬍ ▶ ●.

Note

- Note that increasing the brightness shortens the continuous stand-by time.

Setting the keypad backlight <Keypad light setting>

Set whether to turn on or off the keypad backlight.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Light/Power saver] ▶ [Original Eco mode] ▶ [Keypad light setting].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Note

- The duration when set to [Light] follows the Display light time setting.
- Note that the continuous stand-by time decreases when set to [Light].

Kisekae Tool

Changing the Custom menu design

Use the Kisekae Tool to change the Custom menu screen, stand-by display, menu icon, ring tone, etc. collectively.

- For details on downloading the Kisekae Tool ☞P. 182
- The following items can be set. Items that can be changed depend on the set Kisekae Tool.

Screen	Stand-by display, Outgoing voice calls, V-phone sending scrn, Incoming voice calls display, Incoming video phone display, Send display, Receive display, Mail received display, Signal icon, Battery icon, Animate notices, Custom menu image (including i-mode menu image and mail menu image), Machi-chara
Ring tone	Phone ring tone, Videophone ring tone, Mail ring tone, Message R/F ring tone, PushTalk tone
Other	Color theme, Font size

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Kisekae Tool].

- Alternatively, press ▤ in the Custom menu or Basic menu.

2 Select Kisekae Tool ▶ ▤ ▶ [Yes].

- To check data: Select Kisekae Tool ▶ ▣ (to show data list screen) ▶ select data ▶ ▣.
- In the confirmation screen for the collective setting of the font size, select [Yes] to change to the font size specified for Kisekae Tool.

Note

- When the Custom menu image is changed by Kisekae Tool, some items in the Custom menu may be changed according to the menu history. In addition, some items cannot be selected even if the function number is entered. In this case, the operation may not run as explained in this manual. Switch the menu screen to the Basic menu (☞P. 44) or perform Reset menu screen (☞P. 120).
- Checking Kisekae Tool saved in the [Movable contents] folder on the microSD Card is possible. However, they cannot be directly set. Transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting.
- Even if Kisekae Tool is set in each mode while the 2in1 service is set, the following items are not set in the B mode and the Dual mode. Set individually.
  - ■ Stand-by display
  - ■ Videophone ring tone
  - ■ Phone ring tone
  - ■ Mail ring tone

Related Operations

Adjust the data check volume <Set volume>

In the data list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ⊙ ▶ ▣.

Set the display size when setting i-motion as stand-by <Stand-by i-motion>

In the data list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Stand-by i-motion] ▶ select the size ▶ ▣.

Changing the menu items

Depending on the Kisekae Tool, change the items in the Custom menu to other functions (Manual customization).

- The preset [White], [Black], [Pink], [Blue] and [拡大メニュー (Large)] support the manual customization.

Changing the menu items <Assign function>

1 In the Custom menu, select an item ▶ 📷 ▶ [Assign function].

2 Select a function to assign ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].

Resetting the manually customized menu <Rst func asgnment>

1 In the Custom menu, press 📷 ▶ [Rst func asgnment] ▶ [Yes].

Automatically sorting the menu items according to the menu history

Depending on Kisekae Tool, some items in the Custom menu are automatically sorted according to the menu history (Automatic customization).

- The preset [ダイレクトメニュー] supports the automatic customization.
- Depending on Kisekae Tool, the sorting method and others differ.

Resetting the automatically customized menu <Reset menu history>

1 In the Custom menu, press 📷 ▶ [Reset menu history] ▶ [Yes].

Resetting Kisekae Tool settings

Resetting all setting items of display/ring tone <Reset display/sound>

- When the display/sound settings are reset, Kisekae Tool [White] is set.

1 In stand-by, press 9 (for 1+ seconds).

2 Select [Reset display/sound] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ [Agree].

Resetting only menu screen <Reset menu screen>

- When the menu screen is reset, Kisekae Tool [White] is set.

1 In stand-by, press 9 (for 1+ seconds).

- In the Custom menu: Press 📷.

2 Select [Reset menu screen] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ [Agree].

Machi-chara setting

Setting Machi-chara

Set Machi-chara to display a character in stand-by. The display of Machi-chara varies when there are missed calls/ new mail or depending on the time of day.

- For details on downloading Machi-chara ☞P. 182

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Machi-chara].

2 Select a Machi-chara ▶ 📷 ▶ [Machi-chara setting].

- Alternatively, press 📖 to operate.

3 Select the setting ▶ ●.

Note

- Machi-chara is not available if GIF image, animated GIF, Flash movie, i-motion, or i-αppli is set for the stand-by display.
- Depending on the action, some parts of Machi-chara may not be displayed.

Themes

Arranging the display

Changing the Submenu design (image around the edge of display) <Submenu image>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Submenu image].**

2 **Select the upper and the lower frames with ✉ ▶ ⓘ.**

3 **Select an image ▶ ⓘ.**

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ▣.

Setting the number design for the Dial input screen <Dial image set>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Dial image set].**

2 **Select an image ▶ ▣.**

Changing the animation for the Notice window <Animate notices>

Change images for windows with confirmation/error messages.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Animate notices] ▶ ⓘ.**

2 **Select an image ▶ ⓘ.**

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ▣.

Changing the design of icons <Signal/batt/s clock>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Signal/batt/s clock].**

2 **Select a type ▶ ▣ ▶ ⓘ.**

3 **Select an image ▶ ⓘ.**

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ▣.

Changing the color scheme <Color theme setting>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Themes] ▶ [Color theme setting].**

2 **Select the color theme ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

Changing the Basic menu design

Change icons, background image and whether to show icon names in the Basic menu.

- If an image in My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting or background image setting is changed.

Setting Basic menu icons <Icon image>

- Set two images per icon, for selected and unselected status.

1 **In the Basic menu, select an icon ▶ 📷 ▶ [Icon settings] ▶ [Icon image].**

2 **Select an image for unselected status ▶ ≣.**

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ▣.

3 **Select [Yes] ▶ select an image for selected status ▶ ≣.**

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ▣.

Note

- Use JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs that are 76 (W) × 76 (H) pixels or 152 (W) × 152 (H) pixels. Downloaded images can also be used.
- When an animated GIF is set as an image for unselected status, an image for selected status is not available.

Related Operations

Show icon names <Dsp icon name>

In the Basic menu, press 📷 ▶ [Icon settings] ▶ [Dsp icon name] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

Note (Related operations)

- When characters are included in the icon image, the characters appear doubled when Display icon name is set to [ON].

Setting the Basic menu background <Set background>

1 **In the Basic menu, press 📷 ▶ [Set background].**

2 **Select a background image ▶ ≣.**

- To check the image: Select the image ▶ ▣.

Note

- Use JPEG and GIF images. Downloaded images can also be used.

Resetting the Basic menu to the default status <Reset menu screen>

1 **In the Basic menu, press 📷 ▶ [Reset menu screen].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

Viewing the Key list <Key list>

Refer to the Key list and look up key operations.

1 **In the Basic menu, press 📷 ▶ [Key list].**

2 **Select an item ▶ ▣.**

LED color settings/LED pattern settings

Setting the illumination

Set the flashed LED color, the flashing pattern, and whether to flash, in a call, when receiving a call, when using GPS function, etc.

- Available settings differ depending on the items.

Item		Flash	LED color	LED pattern
Called LED	Phone	×	○	○
	Video-phone	×	○	○
	PushTalk	×	○	○
Mail LED	Mail/Message LED	×	○	○
	Mail send/rcv LED	○	○	○
In-call LED		○	○	○
Alarm/Timer LED		○	○	○
IC card LED		○	×	×
Open/close LED		○	○	○
GPS LED	Position location	○	○	×
	Location notification	○	○	×
	Loc provision/accept	×	○	×
	Loc provision/notify	×	○	×

○: Settings can be changed.
×: Settings cannot be changed.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [LED settings].

2 Select an item ▶ ■ ▶ [ON].

3 Select [LED color settings] ▶ select the LED color ▶ ■.

- Select a color with ⁝ to check the LED color.

4 Select [LED pattern settings] ▶ select the LED pattern ▶ ■.

- Select a pattern with ⁝ to check the LED flashing pattern.

Note

- When a call is received during data transmission, the LED color is the set color for the voice called LED.
- Called LED and Mail LED are prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Called LED	Phonebook called LED → group called LED → regular called LED
Mail LED	Phonebook mail LED → group mail LED → regular mail LED

Notice LED

Notifying a call or mail received with LED

Set the LED to flash for missed calls and new mail.

- The LED flashes in [Leaf] for missed calls and in [Sunshine] for new mail at approximately 4-second intervals.
- ⓴ flashes for missed calls and ㉑ flashes for new mail in “Component names and functions” on P. 30.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [LED settings] ▶ [Notice LED].

2 Select an item ▶ ■ ▶ [ON].

Note

- If no operation is performed for approximately 24 hours after Notice LED starts flashing, the LED turns off.

Display img quality

Changing the image quality

Setting the image quality mode <Vibrant image mode>

Set the display quality by functions which show images.

Normal	Standard image quality
Dynamic	Image quality with increased colorfulness and emphasized edges
Vivid*1	Image quality with increased colorfulness
Sharpness*1	Image quality with emphasized edges
Game*2	Image quality to play a game
Link genres*3	Image quality adjusting in conjunction with program genre
Movie*3	Image quality to see a movie
Sports*3	Image quality to see sports

*1 Cannot be set with [1Seg/Data Box(1Seg)].
*2 Can be set with [i-αppli] only.
*3 Can be set with [1Seg/Data Box(1Seg)] only.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Display img quality] ▶ [Vibrant image mode].

2 Select the function ▶ ■.

3 Select the image quality mode ▶ ■ ▶ ■.

Note

- Available image qualities differ depending on the function.

Automatically controlling the brightness of backlight while playing a movie <Control by scene>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Display img quality] ▶ [Control by scene].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

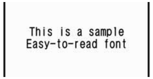
Font style setting

Changing the font (font style)

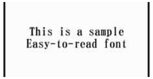
1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Font style] ▶ [Font style setting].

2 Select the font style ▶ ■.

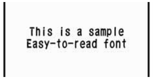
- Select the font with □ to check sample font styles.


This is a sample
Easy-to-read font

LC Gothic


This is a sample
Easy-to-read font

SH Heisei Mincho


This is a sample
Easy-to-read font

SH Crystal Touch

Font size

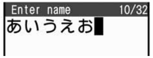
Changing the font size

Change the font sizes displayed on the screen.

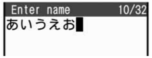
- The font size can be changed collectively or individually on the following.

Collective setting	i-mode, Full Browser, Mail/Message, Text input, Manga&BookReader, Submenu, List display, Confirmation/Error messages
Individual setting	i-mode, Full Browser, Mail/Message, Text input

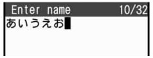
Example: When setting the Text input individually


Enter name 10/32
あいうえお

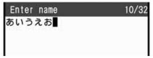
Maximum


Enter name 10/32
あいうえお

Large


Enter name 10/32
あいうえお

Normal


Enter name 10/32
あいうえお

Small

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Font style] ▶ [Font size].

2 Select the setting method.

- **Select [Collective setting] ▶ select the font size ▶ ▣.**
  - When a confirmation screen asking whether to change the menu appears, select [Yes] to change the font size and menu. Select [No] to change the font size only.
- **Select [Individual setting] ▶ select the item field to set ▶ ▣ ▶ select the font size ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**
  - To change multiple items: Repeat step 2.

Note

- When the collective setting of Font size is set to [Large] or [Largest], some function numbers of the Basic menu may be changed.
- In the compose message screen, even if [Maximum] is set to the text input of each setting, texts for address, subject, or attachment file field appear in the size of [Large].
- Font size cannot be changed on some screens (e.g. word input screen of User dictionary).
- Font size for Full Browser is changed when Display Mode is set to [Keitai mode].

Related Operations

Set Font size collectively with one-touch operation

In stand-by, press 5 (for 1+ seconds).

Note (Related operations)

- Font size is switched from [Large] → [Largest] → [Normal].

VeilView

Preventing others from seeing the display

Display the pattern (design or animation) on the screen to prevent others from seeing the screen.

1 In the screen other than stand-by, press 📷 (for 1+ seconds).

- When VeilView is set, ▨ appears.

Disabling VeilView

- In the screen other than stand-by, press 📷 (for 1+ seconds).

Note

- VeilView may not be available depending on the displayed screen.
- VeilView is canceled when the FOMA terminal is closed or turned off.
- The colors of the screen may be looked different depending on the displayed screen.

Disabling the VeilView temporarily in the stand-by <Dis temp in stdby>

Set the VeilView to be temporary disabled automatically when the stand-by reappears.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [VeilView] ▶ [Dis temp in stdby].**
2. **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Setting the pattern of VeilView <Pattern>

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [VeilView] ▶ [Pattern].**
2. **Select the pattern ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The effect of preventing others from seeing differs depending on the selected patterns.

Security Settings

Security codes

Restricting phone operations and functions

Restricting mail and calls

Using data security service

Other security settings

FOMA terminal security code

For convenient use of the FOMA terminal functions, some functions require security codes. In addition to the terminal security code used for various handset operations, use security codes such as the network security code and i-mode password when using network services. Use security codes with various functions to fully utilize the FOMA terminal.

- Entered terminal security codes (security code for each function), network security codes, i-mode passwords, and PIN1/PIN2 codes are masked with [✱].

Precautions for various security codes

- Do not use easily estimated numbers for security codes to be set such as “birthday”, “part of a phone number”, “address or room number”, “1111”, “1234”. Keep a separate memo of passwords and security codes.
- Keep security codes private. If the security codes are found and improperly used by others, DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of the users.
- DoCoMo does not ask the users their security codes.
- When security codes are lost, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring an identification (a driver’s license, etc.), a FOMA terminal and a FOMA card to a DoCoMo Shop.
- For further details, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

Terminal security code (for various functions)

Terminal security code is set to [0000] by default but can be changed by the user (☞P. 129).

- If the terminal security code is incorrectly entered, [Security code is wrong] appears. Enter the correct terminal security code.
- In the viewer position, enter the terminal security code by touching the displayed numbers.

Network security code

Network security code is a four-digit code used for various registration procedures at ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site) or used for accessing network services. The code is set at the time of subscription and afterwards can be changed by the user.
For those with “DoCoMo ID/password” of the general support site “My DoCoMo” designed for PC, the registration procedure for a new network security code is available from PC.
From i-mode terminals, the security code can be changed by the user, accessing “各種手続き (Procedures)” in ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site).

※ Refer to the inside back cover of this manual for details on “My DoCoMo” and “ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site)”.

i-mode password

A four-digit “i-mode password” is required to register/delete sites in マイメニュー (My menu), or subscribe/cancel message services and charged i-mode services (Additionally, information providers may set their own passwords).

- i-mode password is set to [0000] by default but can be changed by the user.
- From i-mode terminals, the password can be changed by accessing [iMenu] ▶ [English] ▶ [Options] ▶ [Change i-mode Password].

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

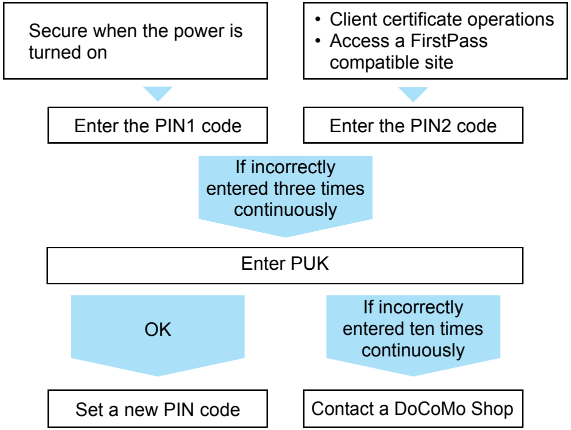
Set two security codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, on the FOMA card. These security codes are set to [0000] by default but can be changed by the user (☞P. 131).
The PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when the FOMA terminal is turned on or when a FOMA card is inserted to prevent unauthorized use by a third party. Enter the PIN1 code to enable making/receiving calls and operating the handset. The PIN2 code is four- to eight-digit security code that is entered for performing operations such as applying for or using Client certificates, or resetting total cost.

- Use the previously set PIN1 and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal.

PUK

PUK is an eight-digit number used to disable the PIN1/PIN2 code lock. PUK cannot be changed by the user.

- If PUK is incorrectly entered a total of ten times continuously, the FOMA card is completely locked.


Secure when the power is turned on
• Client certificate operations
• Access a FirstPass compatible site
Enter the PIN1 code
Enter the PIN2 code
If incorrectly entered three times continuously
Enter PUK
OK
If incorrectly entered ten times continuously
Set a new PIN code
Contact a DoCoMo Shop

Change security code

Changing the terminal security code

Change the terminal security code (four to eight digits).

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Change security code] ▶ enter the current terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

2 **Enter the new terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ enter the new terminal security code again ▶ ⊡.**

Writing authentication

Handwrite characters and symbols on the touch panel to perform the authentication. Handwriting can be used as a secure security function instead of entering the terminal security code. Compared to the terminal security code entry, saved contents can be more flexible. However, since the authentication is not performed with precise handwriting, keep saved contents private.

- Writing authentication is not completely accurate. DoCoMo shall not be liable for damages stemming from a third person using this product or if the product cannot be used because Writing authentication does not recognize properly.

Setting Writing authentication <Writing authentic>

Save characters and symbols that are required for Writing authentication.

- If Writing authentication is failed, the error dates and times are recorded in Error history and can be checked. Up to nine of the most recent errors are recorded.

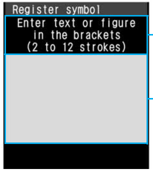
1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Writing authentic] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ [ON].

- The operation is completed if [OFF] is selected.

2 Select [Agree] ▶ [Register symbol] ▶ [Agree].

- To change the registered symbols for the authentication: Select [Register symbol] ▶ [Overwrite] ▶ [Agree] ▶ proceed to step 3.
- To check the registered symbols for the authentication: Select [Register symbol] ▶ [Check saved data].
  - To delete the registered symbols for the authentication: Press i ▶ [Yes].
- To check Error history: Select [Error history].

3 Handwrite characters/symbols on the text input part ▶ ●.



Register symbol

Enter text or figure in the brackets (2 to 12 strokes)

- Handwrite characters and symbols to be used for the authentication on the text input part.
- Handwrite a character or symbol with 2 to 12 strokes. Alternatively, divide them into multiple symbols to save.
- To delete the registered characters/symbols: Press CLR.
- Touch the message display part to view the control key and operate.
- Writing authentication can be saved in the viewer position.

4 Press i ▶ [Agree].

Note

- If the length of each stroke is insufficient, an accurate authentication may not be performed.

Activating Writing authentication

- Writing authentication can be activated in the viewer position.

1 In the Writing authentication screen, handwrite the symbols saved for the authentication on the text input part ▶ ●.

- Handwrite characters and symbols to be used for the authentication on the text input part.
- Handwrite in the same stroke order as when saving.
- To switch to enter the terminal security code: Press i.

- If the authentication is not successful, [Unable to authenticate. Register symbol again if error continues] appears.
  - To authenticate again: Select [Re-authenticate] ▶ operate step 1 again.
  - To enter the terminal security code: Select [Enter sec code] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.
- Touch the message display part to view the control key and operate.

UIM Settings

Setting the PIN code

Setting the handset to require the PIN1 code entry at power on <PIN1 code input set>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [UIM Settings] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [PIN1 code input set].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

3 Enter the PIN1 code ▶ ▣.

■ Entering the PIN1 code at power on

Set the PIN1 code input set to [ON], and the PIN1 code entry screen appears when the power is turned on.

1 In the PIN1 code entry screen, enter the PIN1 code ▶ ▣.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code <Change PIN1 code/PIN2 code>

- When the PIN1 code input set is set to [OFF], the PIN1 code cannot be changed.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [UIM Settings] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.

2 Select the PIN1 or PIN2 code ▶ ▣.

3 Enter the current PIN code ▶ ▣.

- If the PIN1/PIN2 code is entered incorrectly, [PIN1/PIN2 code not recognized] appears after step 4, and return to step 3.

4 Enter the new PIN code ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the new PIN code again ▶ ▣.

Disabling the PIN lock

- Use the same steps to disable the PIN2 code lock.

1 In the PUK entry screen with PIN lock set, enter PUK (eight digits) ▶ ▣.

2 Enter the new PIN1 code ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the new PIN1 code again ▶ ▣.

Lock functions

Restrict phonebook operations such as retrieving, saving and deleting, and calling with the dial keys.

Lock function	Operation/Restrictions	Page
All lock	Prevents the unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal for all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls.	P. 132
Omakase Lock	The access to all the data in the FOMA terminal is remotely locked.	P. 133
Self mode	Making/Receiving voice call and Videophone, sending/receiving PushTalk, i-mode mail, and SMS, receiving Message R/F, and i-mode functions are not available.	P. 134
Function lock	Display, edit and operation for Multimedia, Mail, Phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook), Schedule are not available, preventing an access and rewriting of personal information. Each function can be set individually.	P. 134
Keypad dial lock	Dialing and phonebook editing are not available. Use the phonebook or Redials/ Received calls (with Add to phonebook) to call.	P. 136
Multi easy lock	Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set by one-touch key operation.	P. 136
Multi lock auto-set	Multi easy lock can be automatically set when the display turns off.	P. 137
IC card lock	Prevents the use of IC card functions.	P. 263
Side key guard	Locks side keys and prevents errors.	P. 137

All lock

Preventing the use by others

Prevent all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls.

Enabling All lock

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Lock settings] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [All lock] ▶ [Yes].

- When All lock is set, [All lock] and 🔒 appear in the stand-by display.

Disabling All lock

- In stand-by, enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

Note

- During All lock, [待受画面1] appears in the stand-by display. In such cases, the calendar and Machi-chara do not appear. When All lock is disabled, the previous screen reappears.
- Even if All lock is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are not locked.
- Even if a missed call is received when All lock is enabled, the call is not indicated on the screen. When All lock is disabled, the stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears.
- During All lock, making voice/Videophone calls is not available. However, calls to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) can still be made. To make a call, enter a phone number in the terminal security code entry screen and press 📞. The phone number is masked with [✱✱✱].
- During All lock, Chaku-moji is not available.
- During All lock, alarms are not available.

- i-mode mail, SMS, and Message R/F are automatically received but do not appear on the screen during All lock. Once All lock is disabled, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F icons appear.
- During All lock, Area Mail is automatically received and displayed on the screen.
- Request for Location provision in the GPS function is answered during All lock.
- Failing to disable All lock five times consecutively will turn the FOMA terminal off. Turn the handset on again and enter the correct terminal security code.

Omakase Lock

Using Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal with the registered FOMA card inserted remotely, for example, in case of loss, by your request. Contact DoCoMo or access My DoCoMo website to use the service.
The lock is disabled by a call or others from the user.

- Omakase Lock is a paid service. However, if Omakase Lock is subscribed while or at the same time as when the use of FOMA terminal is suspended, the usage fee of Omakase Lock is not charged.
- When Location provision ON/OFF is set to [Loc. provision:ON] during Omakase Lock or when [Permission sched.] is set while the location provision permission schedule is set, request for Location provision in the GPS function is answered.

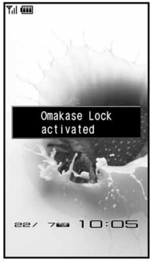
Enable/Disable Omakase Lock

☎ 0120-524-360 Office hours: 24 hours

- Omakase Lock can also be enabled/disabled from the My DoCoMo website using PCs.

- For details of Omakase Lock, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

When Omakase Lock is set


Omakase Lock activated

- [Omakase Lock activated] appears, and Omakase Lock is set.
- While Omakase Lock is enabled, all key operations and functions (including IC card functions) are disabled, except receiving a voice/Videophone call and turning the power ON/OFF.
- When a voice/Videophone call is received while Omakase Lock is enabled, the caller’s name or image is not displayed even if they are saved in the phonebook. Only their phone number is displayed.
- While Omakase Lock is enabled, received mail is held at mail center.
- Turning the power ON/OFF does not affect Omakase Lock (the lock is not released by turning the power OFF).
- The FOMA card and the microSD Card are not locked.

Note

- When Omakase Lock is activated while other functions are being activated, the functions being activated are ended and locked.
- Omakase Lock is prioritized over any other lock functions.
- When the handset is outside the service area, in the Self mode or turned off, the handset cannot be locked.
- If Omakase Lock is enabled with the Public mode (Drive mode) set, a Public mode (Drive mode) message is played and the call is disconnected.
- When the subscriber of the Dual Network Service is using the mova service, the handset cannot be locked.
- Even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal, the lock service is applied by a request of the subscriber.

Self mode

Disabling online activity

Disable all functions that require a signal.

- The following functions are disabled.
  - ■ Voice call
  - ■ SMS
  - ■ Ir exchange
  - ■ Bluetooth function
  - ■ Videophone
  - ■ Message R/F
  - ■ Infrared remote control
  - ■ PushTalk
  - ■ i-mode
  - ■ i-mode mail
  - ■ iC transmission

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Self mode].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

- When the Self mode is set, 📶 disappears and self appears.

Note

- The Self mode is not available when in i-mode stand-by (▯ flashes).

While in the Self mode

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) can be dialed while in the Self mode. However, the Self mode is disabled after the call.
- Message indicating the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to calls received. DoCoMo Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are available.
- Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center and SMS are held at SMS center. To receive, disable the Self mode and perform Check new message or Check new SMS.
- While in Self mode, Position location, Location notification and Location provision in the GPS function cannot be used. In addition, location service clients cannot be saved, edited or deleted.

Function lock

Hiding the phonebook and schedule entries

Restrict an access to mail and phonebook by a function to prevent an access to personal information or unauthorized editing.

- The following items can be locked separately.
  - ■ i-mode/i-Channel
  - ■ Mail (including MessageR/F)
  - ■ Record message/Voice memo
  - ■ ToruCa
  - ■ i-αppli
  - ■ Memo/Schedule/Alarm
  - ■ GPS
  - ■ Multimedia
  - ■ Phonebook
  - ■ Chaku-moji

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Lock settings] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Function lock].

2 Select an item to lock/disable ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.

- ☑ appears for locked items and ☐ appears for disabled items.
- When Function lock is set, 🔒 appears.

Note

- Linked with the Function lock that is set from each function menu.
- Ir exchange, iC transmission and Bluetooth communication for items to which Function lock is applied cannot be received.
- Data to which Function lock is applied cannot be backed up to the microSD Card.
- The terminal security code entry screen appears when some functions under Function lock are attempted. When the terminal security code is entered, Function lock is temporarily disabled.
- Function lock cannot be applied to the Phonebook when Reject unknown is set.

When Function lock is applied to i-mode/i-Channel

- Each menu of i-mode (excluding Check new message) is not available.

- i-Channel ticker does not appear.
- [i-mode Search], [Search from iMenu] and [Search by full browser] of Quick search are not available.

When Function lock is applied to i-αppli

- Each menu of i-αppli is not available.
- i-αppli cannot be activated.
- i-αppli cannot be downloaded.
- When in i-αppli stand-by, the i-αppli stand-by display set as the stand-by display appears.
- [i-αppli Dictionary] of Quick search is not available.

When Function lock is applied to Multimedia

- The following menus are not available.
  - ■ Data box ■ MUSIC
  - ■ Camera (still picture/movie shooting, Cameraloupe, Shotdeco)
  - ■ 1Seg (1Seg watching, reservation recording history, TVlink, Channel setting, 1Seg settings)
  - ■ Media tool (Manga&BookReader, Document Viewer, PDF Viewer, Voice recorder)
- Multimedia is not activated even if the time for starting or recording a program arrives.
- [テレビ電話代替] is sent if a substitute image is sent during Videophone calls.
- The phonebook ring tone and Mail ring tone are disabled.
- Picture call set is disabled.
- Deco-mail pictographs are not available.
- The alarm image is shown for an alarm and Schedule alarm, and [着信音1] sounds.
- Machi-chara setting is invalidated.
- [Internal Dictionary] of Quick search is not available.

When Function lock is applied to Mail

- Each menu of Mail (excluding Check new message and Check new SMS) is not available.
- Auto message display is disabled.
- Mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.

When Function lock is applied to the Phonebook

- The phonebook and the PushTalk phonebook are not available.
- The information saved in the phonebook (name*, memory number, etc.) or the settings made to the phonebook (Accept calls, etc.) are invalidated.

  * When a call is received from PushTalkPlus with a Caller ID, the name saved in the network phonebook appears even while Function lock is applied.
- Your phone number cannot be checked.
- A call cannot be made with a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.
- 2-touch dialing and 2-touch mail are not available.
- As for automatically sorting mail to folders, mail will not be sorted when the Sort rule is set to [Group] or [Phonebook empty].
- Displaying schedule by contact is not available.

When Function lock is applied to Record message/Voice memo

- Record message/Voice memo is not available.

When Function lock is applied to Memo/Schedule/Alarm

- Text memo, Stand-by memo, Schedule, Alarm, and Wakeup TV are not available.
- Each alarm is not activated.
- The Booking list of 1Seg is not available.

When Function lock is applied to ToruCa

- ToruCa is not available (excluding the retrieval from the IC card, the automatic retrieval from the data broadcasting/data broadcasting site, and the automatic reading function).

When Function lock is applied to GPS

- The operation of the GPS menu or the operation of GPS compatible i-αppli using the GPS function is disabled. However, request for Location provision is answered.

When Function lock is applied to Chaku-moji

- Chaku-moji is not available.

Keypad dial lock

Prohibiting keypad dialing

Prevent calling (including PushTalk) to numbers other than saved in the phonebook (excluding the microSD Card phonebook) and the PushTalk phonebook (including the network phonebook).

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) can be dialed even when Keypad dial lock is set. In addition, numbers that are saved in the phonebook can also be dialed from Redials/Received calls.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Lock settings] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Keypad dial lock].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

- 🔒 appears when Keypad dial lock is set.

Note

- The following functions are also disabled when Keypad dial lock is set.
  - Sending SMS or i-mode mail through direct address input (address input from the phonebook is possible)
  - Saving/Editing/Deleting phonebook entries
  - Calling from alarms (available if saved in the phonebook)
  - Sending/Receiving phonebook data through Ir exchange or, iC transmission or Bluetooth communication
  - Prefix settings
  - IDD prefix setting
  - Phone To (AV Phone To) function
  - Mail To function
  - Transferring/Copying phonebook data between the FOMA terminal handset and a FOMA card or microSD Card
  - Calls or compose mails from the Character reader and the Bar code reader
  - Saving/Editing/Deleting location service clients
  - Location service clients by direct input

Multi easy lock

Setting various lock by one-touch operation

Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set at once. Set the item to lock in advance.

- Refer to Keypad dial lock, Function lock or IC card lock for details of each lock function.

Setting functions to lock <Multi easy lock set>

Select items to lock with Multi easy lock.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Lock settings] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Multi easy lock set].

2 Select an item to lock/disable ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.

- ☑ appears for locked items and ☐ appears for disabled items.

Setting Multi easy lock

1 In stand-by, press ■ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ [Yes].

- The set functions are locked, and the corresponding icons appear.

Disabling Multi easy lock

- In stand-by, press ■ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

Setting Multi easy lock automatically
<Multi lock auto-set>

Multi easy lock can be automatically set when the Power saver mode is activated in stand-by or when the FOMA terminal is closed.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Lock settings] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Multi lock auto-set].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣ ▶ [OK].

Disabling Multi lock auto-set

- In stand-by, press ▣ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.

Side key guard
Locking side keys

Lock side keys when the FOMA terminal is closed to prevent errors.

- In the viewer position, key operations are available regardless of Side key guard.

1 In stand-by, press ▭ (for 1+ seconds).

- When Side key guard is set, 🔒 appears.

Disabling Side key guard

- In stand-by, press ▭ (for 1+ seconds).

Note

- Quick silent is available while a call is received even when Side key guard is set. In addition, an incoming PushTalk can also be answered with ▣ (Ⓟ).
- Side key guard is disabled when the power is turned off.

Show call/received, Show sent/received
Setting the display of Redials/ Received calls and Mail history

- Histories are recorded even when Show call/received or Show sent/received is set to [OFF]. Set this setting to [ON] to check the recorded histories.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security].

2 Select the item.

- ◆ **Select [Show call/received] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Show rcvd calls].**
- ◆ **Select [Show call/received] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Show redial].**
- ◆ **Select [Show sent/received] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Show sent messages].**
- ◆ **Select [Show sent/received] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Show rcvd messages].**

3 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Note

- Record message is not played if Show received calls is set to [OFF].
- When Show redial is set to [OFF], Chaku-moji Sent messages (☞P. 66) cannot be viewed.

Secret mode

Viewing information set as secret

If the Secret mode is set, normal and secret data appear when the phonebook and Schedule are displayed.

- Only normal data is shown when the Secret mode is disabled.
- Set to automatically disable the Secret mode if the Power saver mode activates when in stand-by or the FOMA terminal is closed.
- The Secret mode is disabled when the power is turned off.
- For details on saving secret data for phonebook ☞P. 98
- For details on saving secret data for Schedule ☞P. 388

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Secret mode] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [ON].

- When [OFF] is set, the operation is completed.

2 Select the auto disable setting.

- ◆ **Select [No auto disable].**
- ◆ **Select [Auto disable] ▶ [Agree].**
- When the Secret mode is set, 🔑 appears.

Accept calls/Reject calls

Receiving/Rejecting calls from only specified phone numbers

Accept/Reject calls from only specified callers. To set Accept/Reject calls, save specified phone numbers from the saved phonebook (excluding the network phonebook) to the accept/reject list, and enable the function.

- Callers not connected hear a busy signal. The stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears and the caller's name or phone number is recorded in Received calls.
- This setting is available only when a caller sends notify of the caller ID. It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service for Accept calls and to set the Caller ID Request Service or Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure for Reject calls.
- Phone numbers set for Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone and Reject unsupported ID cannot be set for Accept calls. In addition, Reject calls cannot be set for a number set to Accept calls.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.

Saving phone numbers to accept/reject

Save up to 20 phone numbers to the Accept/Reject calls list individually.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.

2 Select an item ▶ ▣ ▶ [Save list].

3 Select a list number ▶ ▣.

4 Select a name ▶ ▣.

- To save other phone numbers: Repeat steps 3 and 4.

- When the other party has two or more phone numbers, saving is required for each number.

Note

- If an entry saved in Accept/Reject calls is edited/deleted in the phonebook, the saved list content is also edited/deleted. However, if Accept/Reject calls is enabled, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).
- FOMA card phonebook numbers cannot be saved.
- While the 2in1 is used, only phonebooks displayed in the mode used can be saved and edited in the list.

Enabling Accept/Reject calls

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

2 **Select an item ▶ ▣ ▶ [ON].**

Related Operations

Register from the phonebook <Accept calls/Reject calls>

Select a name to be saved from the phonebook ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Accept/reject set] ▶ select a registration list ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ select the list number ▶ ▣.

Delete the phone number in the list <Delete>

In the save list screen, select a name ▶ ▣ ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

- If all phone numbers saved in the list are deleted after Accept/Reject calls is set to enable, the setting is disabled.

Change the phone number in the list <Change>

In the save list screen, select a name ▶ ▣ ▶ [Change] ▶ select the name ▶ ▣.

Check the registered other party's phone number

In the save list screen, select a name ▶ 📷.

Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure

Rejecting calls with no caller ID

Set the handset to reject calls (including PushTalk) when caller ID is not sent, depending on reason.

- The following are the types of non-disclosure reason. For details ☞"Answering calls/Videophone calls" on P. 71
  - ■ User unset ■ Payphone ■ Unavailable
- Calls received from a caller who is set to be rejected due to a non-disclosure reason will not be connected. Calls of other non-disclosure reasons will be connected. Rejected callers hear a busy signal. The stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears, and the reason of non-disclosure is recorded in Received calls.
- It is recommended to also set the Caller ID Request Service.
- Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure cannot be set for numbers set to Accept calls.
- Also when Reject unknown is set, Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized when set with the Public mode (Drive mode).

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

2 **Select a reason ▶ ▣.**

3 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Set mute ring time

Silencing the ring tone for callers not in the phonebook

Set a ring tone to sound after a set number of seconds when receiving a call (including PushTalk) from the caller not in the phonebook (excluding the network phonebook).

- This is one way to avoid a nuisance call such as one-ring phone scam.
- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time.
- The Public mode (Drive mode) is prioritized when set with Set mute ring time.
- When setting the mute ring time, set to record calls disconnected during the mute ring time duration in Received calls.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Snd/Vibrator/Manner] ▶ [Set mute ring time] ▶ [ON].**
    - When [OFF] is set, the operation is completed.
2. **Enter the mute ring time ▶ ▣.**
3. **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Note

- Set the mute ring time shorter than the ring duration for Record message or Voice Mail Service to prioritize Set mute ring time.
- Set mute ring time is activated for calls from callers in the phonebook while Function lock is applied to the Phonebook.
- When Set mute ring time and the Manner mode are both activated and the set time passes, the operation follows the Manner mode settings. However, the answering duration for Record message includes the time before the ring tone sounds.

Reject unknown

Rejecting callers not in the phonebook

Set the handset to reject calls (including PushTalk) from callers not in the phonebook (excluding the network phonebook).

- The caller hears a busy signal. The stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears and the call is recorded in Received calls.
- This setting is available only when a caller sends notify of the caller ID. It is recommended to also set the Caller ID Request Service.
- Reject unknown is prioritized when set with the Public mode (Drive mode).
- Also when Reject unknown is set, Reject calls by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time. Disable Ring start time and try again.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Accept/Reject calls] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Reject unknown].**
2. **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

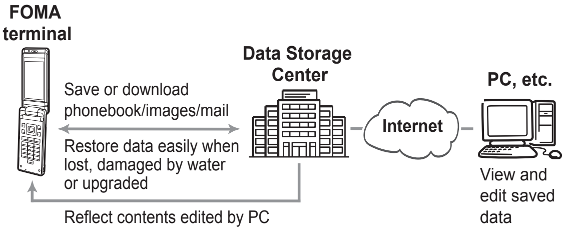
Data Sec. Service

Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service

The phonebook data is backed up and the backup data is automatically updated. The Data Security Service is a service to store your FOMA terminal data such as phonebook, images or mails at the DoCoMo data storage center and the saved data at the Center can be restored in the event of data loss due to the loss of the FOMA terminal itself or upgrading the handset. In addition, a notice that your mail address has been changed can be sent collectively. Packet transmission charges are not incurred for sending the mail. With a PC (My DoCoMo), this service can be used more conveniently.

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on the use of the Data Security Service.


FOMA terminal
Data Storage Center
PC, etc.
Save or download phonebook/images/mail
Restore data easily when lost, damaged by water or upgraded
Internet
View and edit saved data
Reflect contents edited by PC

- The Data Security Service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).
- For details on saving the phonebook ☞P. 105
- For details on saving the mail ☞P. 216
- For details on saving the image ☞P. 323
- When the Data Security Service is not subscribed, a screen indicating so appears.

Other security settings

Use the following settings and functions to secure your FOMA terminal.

Intent	Function/ Service name	Ref.
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	P. 263
To reject “nuisance calls” such as prank calls, unsolicited sales calls, etc.	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P. 430
To reject callers with no ID	Caller ID Request Service	P. 431
To send data security by using a digital authentication service ※ The sites must be FirstPass compatible sites	FirstPass	P. 188
To update software of the FOMA terminal if necessary	Software update	P. 504
To protect the FOMA terminal from harmful files	Scanning function	P. 509
To receive necessary mail when receiving i-mode mail	Receive option	P. 206
To use i-mode to save/check safety information during disasters	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
To change mail address	Change Mail Address	
To reject mail with a URL	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	

Continued on next page ▶▶

Intent	Function/ Service name	Ref.
To receive/reject only mail from specified domains	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
To receive/reject mail from i-mode		
To receive/reject only mail from specified addresses		
To set the recommended setting for Spam Mail Prevention easily	Spam Mail Prevention (Mail Settings)	
To reject the 500th mail or later from i-mode compatible mobile phones that send more than 500 i-mode mail per day	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)	
To reject all SMS	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject unsolicited ad mail	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail)	
To set mail size restrictions for incoming mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check mail settings	Confirm Settings	
To suspend mail functions	Suspend Mail	
To check the rough present location of the lost FOMA terminal	Keitai-Osagashi Service	

Camera

Copyrights and rights of portrait

Images and audio recorded with the FOMA terminal are for personal use and may not be used without the consent of the rightful person in accordance with copyright laws. Please note that the use of the likeness or name of other individuals without their consent, defacement or a similar act may infringe on an individual’s rights of portrait. Please be aware of copyrights and rights of portrait when making public images and audio recorded with the handset on the Internet or similar media. The recording of images or audio may be restricted at concerts, performances and exhibits even when recorded for personal use. Do not use this handset to send copyrighted images for uses other than those permitted under copyright laws.

Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.

Before using the camera

Using the camera

- Fingerprints or oil on the lens may cause the image to be out of focus. In addition, images may blur and rays of light may appear in images when shot near a strong light source. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth before shooting images.
- Shoot when battery level is sufficient. Images may appear dark and distorted when shot with insufficient battery power. Do not shoot images while the handset is charging.
- Although the cameras are made with high-precision technology, constantly bright or dark pixels or lines may be visible. Further, white lines and other noise may appear in images especially when shooting images in dimly lit surroundings.
- The quality of images may deteriorate when shot or saved after the FOMA terminal has been left in a warm location for a long time.
- If the camera lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may discolor, creating a discoloration of shot images.
- Images shot of the sun, a light or other strong light source may appear dark and distorted.
- Direct images shot of the sun may damage the performance of the CMOS.
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after shooting still pictures continuously or shooting long movies. This is not a malfunction.
- If a call is received or the alarm is activated when viewing the still picture preview screen or movie shooting screen, the camera function is canceled and the voice/Videophone call or alarm screen appears. After that screen ends, the camera screen reappears and the previous still picture or movie data can be saved.
- Shot still pictures are saved to the [Camera] folder in My picture of Data box, and shot movies are saved to the [Camera] folder in i-motion of Data box. Data can also be saved to the microSD Card (☞P. 332).
- When the AF mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

Shutter sound, shooting start/end sound, completion sound, Focus lock sound, and auto timer sound

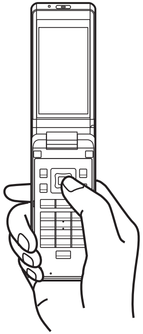
- For still pictures shooting, movies shooting, Shotdeco or Cameraloupe, sounds are enabled regardless of the FOMA terminal settings.
- For the Character reader, Bar code reader and Card reader, sound volume follows the voice call ring volume. Also, sound are disabled in the following cases.
  - ■ While the Manner mode is set
  - ■ While the Public mode (Drive mode) is set
  - ■ While the Phone ring volume is set to [Silent]
- The shutter sound can be changed (☞P. 109). The shutter sound volume cannot be changed.

■ Important notes for shooting images

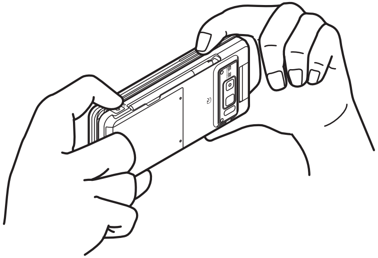
- Images are blurred when the FOMA terminal moves while shooting images. Hold firmly to prevent blurring. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting still pictures and movies.
- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the camera may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Make sure that your fingers, hair and handset strap do not obscure the camera lens when shooting images.
- Because a larger image size requires more data, movement in the image on the FOMA terminal display may appear slow.
- Indoor fluorescent lighting may create flickering or streaky shading on the screen. This flickering or shading may be reduced by changing the lighting conditions, brightness or adjusting the camera brightness and White balance.

Shooting other people and landscape

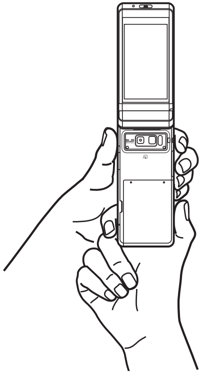
Normal position



Viewer position



Shooting a still picture of yourself



Approximate number of recordable images

This lists the approximate number of shot images and recording times that can be saved in the FOMA terminal handset or 64 MB microSD Card. The number of images that can be shot or recordable image lengths are fewer or less when other images, i-αppli software or other types of files are saved in the FOMA terminal handset or 64 MB microSD Card. Also, the number or time may be fewer or less depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.

- For details on setting the image size of still pictures and movies ☞P. 157

Number of still pictures that can be shot

FOMA terminal handset

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
QCIF: 176×144	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
QVGA: 240×320	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
VGA: 480×640	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
Stand-by: 480×854	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	530 shots
1.2M: 960×1280	710 shots	360 shots	210 shots
UXGA: 1200×1600	400 shots	240 shots	150 shots
FullHD: 1080×1920	400 shots	240 shots	150 shots
3M: 1536×2048	240 shots	150 shots	80 shots
5M: 1920×2560	240 shots	120 shots	65 shots
Panorama: 1280×320	–	–	310 shots

64 MB microSD Card

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
QCIF: 176×144	3,700 shots	1,800 shots	1,200 shots
QVGA: 240×320	1,800 shots	1,200 shots	530 shots
VGA: 480×640	1,200 shots	750 shots	530 shots
Stand-by: 480×854	930 shots	620 shots	310 shots
1.2M: 960×1280	410 shots	200 shots	120 shots
UXGA: 1200×1600	230 shots	140 shots	90 shots
FullHD: 1080×1920	230 shots	140 shots	90 shots

Continued on next page ▶▶

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
3M: 1536×2048	140 shots	90 shots	45 shots
5M: 1920×2560	140 shots	70 shots	35 shots
Panorama: 1280×320	–	–	180 shots

■ Recording time of movie

- File size limit (☞P. 158) for movie files cannot be set to [Unrestricted] when saved to the FOMA terminal handset.

Continuous recording time per shot of FOMA terminal handset

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	155 sec	105 sec	52 sec	–
		Image only	214 sec	130 sec	62 sec	–
		Voice only	318 sec			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	10 min	434 sec	215 sec	–
		Image only	14 min	534 sec	257 sec	–
		Voice only	21 min			
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	134 sec	78 sec	28 sec	19 sec
		Image only	176 sec	91 sec	31 sec	20 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	552 sec	323 sec	117 sec	79 sec
		Image only	12 min	375 sec	129 sec	85 sec
		Voice only	21 min			
QVGA: 320×240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	–	–	–	10 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	10 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	41 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	42 sec
		Voice only	21 min			
VGA: 640×480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	10 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	10 sec
		Voice only	21 min			

Total recording time of FOMA terminal handset

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	258 min	175 min	86 min	–
		Image only	356 min	216 min	103 min	–
		Voice only	530 min			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	517 min	352 min	174 min	–
		Image only	713 min	433 min	208 min	–
		Voice only	1,061 min			
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	223 min	130 min	46 min	31 min
		Image only	293 min	151 min	51 min	33 min
		Voice only	530 min			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	448 min	262 min	94 min	64 min
		Image only	586 min	304 min	104 min	69 min
		Voice only	1,061 min			
QVGA: 320×240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	–	–	–	16 min
		Image only	–	–	–	16 min
		Voice only	530 min			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	33 min
		Image only	–	–	–	34 min
		Voice only	1,061 min			
VGA: 640×480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	487 min
		Image only	–	–	–	487 min
		Voice only	1,061 min			

- The total recording time of FOMA terminal handset is the total time when deleting the data (the data can be deleted) which is registered on the FOMA terminal handset in advance.

Continuous recording time per shot of 64 MB microSD Card

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	155 sec	105 sec	52 sec	–
		Image only	214 sec	130 sec	62 sec	–
		Voice only	318 sec			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	10 min	434 sec	215 sec	–
		Image only	14 min	534 sec	257 sec	–
		Voice only	21 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	60 min	60 min	60 min	–
		Image only	60 min	60 min	60 min	–
		Voice only	360 min			
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	134 sec	78 sec	28 sec	19 sec
		Image only	176 sec	91 sec	31 sec	20 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	552 sec	323 sec	117 sec	79 sec
		Image only	12 min	375 sec	129 sec	85 sec
		Voice only	21 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	60 min	60 min	58 min	39 min
		Image only	60 min	60 min	60 min	42 min
		Voice only	360 min			
QVGA: 320×240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	–	–	–	10 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	10 sec
		Voice only	318 sec			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	41 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	42 sec
		Voice only	21 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	–	–	–	20 min
		Image only	–	–	–	20 min
		Voice only	360 min			
VGA: 640×480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	10 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	10 sec
		Voice only	21 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	–	–	–	321 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	324 sec
		Voice only	360 min			

Total recording time per shot of 64 MB microSD Card

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	312 min	212 min	106 min	–
		Image only	431 min	261 min	127 min	–
		Voice only	611 min			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	313 min	213 min	107 min	–
		Image only	432 min	262 min	128 min	–
		Voice only	613 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	314 min	214 min	108 min	–
		Image only	433 min	263 min	129 min	–
		Voice only	615 min			
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	261 min	160 min	56 min	37 min
		Image only	342 min	186 min	62 min	40 min
		Voice only	611 min			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	262 min	161 min	57 min	38 min
		Image only	343 min	187 min	63 min	41 min
		Voice only	613 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	263 min	162 min	58 min	39 min
		Image only	344 min	188 min	64 min	42 min
		Voice only	615 min			

Continued on next page ▶▶

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
QVGA: 320× 240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	–	–	–	19 min
		Image only	–	–	–	19 min
		Voice only	611 min			
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	20 min
		Image only	–	–	–	20 min
		Voice only	613 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	–	–	–	20 min
		Image only	–	–	–	20 min
		Voice only	615 min			
VGA: 640× 480	For mail (long)	Image + voice	–	–	–	318 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	321 sec
		Voice only	613 min			
	Unre-stricted	Image + voice	–	–	–	321 sec
		Image only	–	–	–	324 sec
		Voice only	615 min			

■ Titles

- The titles of shot (saved) still pictures/movies are labeled automatically according to the date and time the still pictures/movies were shot.
  Example: Shoot at 1:05:07 P.M. on July 22, 2008 →
  [080722_130507]
- Still pictures that were continuously shot are labeled in series ([_01], [_02], etc.) at the end of the title.
- For details on how to edit the titles of still pictures/movies ☞P. 346

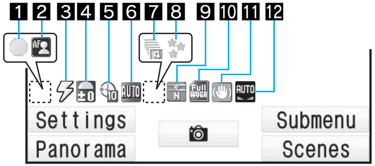
Shooting screen layout

The following indicators appear on the display in the Camera mode.

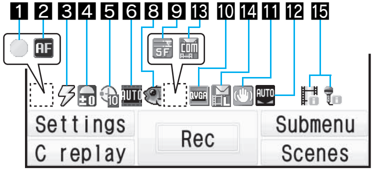
- When switched to the Full-screen mode (☞P. 162), icons do not appear.

■ Icons that appear in the lower part of the display

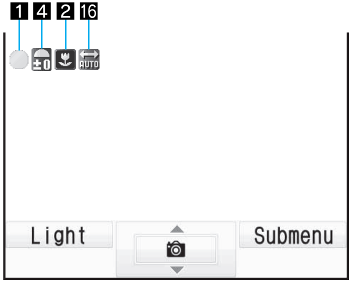
Still picture shooting screen



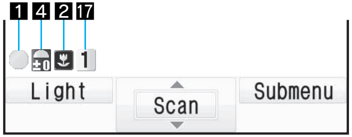
Movie shooting screen



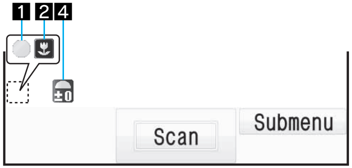
Character reader screen



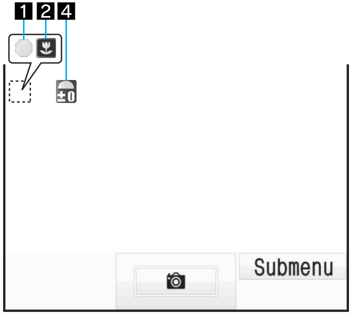
Bar code reader screen



Card reader screen



Shotdeco screen



1 Focus lock indicator

● (green)	Appears when focus is locked
● (red)	Appears when focusing

2 AF mode indicator

AF	Standard	🌷	Closeup
AF	Def (people first) (only for still pictures)	MF	Manual focus (only for still pictures/movies)

3 Picture light indicator

⚡	ON

4 Image brightness indicator

±0	-2 -1 ±0 +1 +2 Dark ← Normal → Bright

5 Auto timer indicator

2	2 seconds	5	5 seconds	10	10 seconds

6 Shoot by scene indicator

Shoot still picture

AUTO	Auto		Night scene	Aa	Character
	People		Landscape		Into the sun
	Portrait		Exercise		

Shoot movie

AUTO	Auto		Landscape (soft)
	People		Landscape (sharp)

7 Continuous mode indicator

25	Fast, Standard, Manual (for 25 pictures)
9	Fast, Standard, Manual (for 9 pictures)
6	Standard, Manual (for 6 pictures)
4	Standard, Manual (for 4 pictures)
2 to 25	Shared Multishot (2 to 25 pictures)

Continued on next page ▶▶

8 Effect indicator

	Black & white		Spectrum (only for movies)
	Sepia		Ripple
	Sparkling		Kaleidoscope (L)
	Colored pencil		Kaleidoscope (S)
	Faded edges (only for still pictures)		Fish-eye

9 Image quality

E	ECONOMY	F	FINE (only for movies)
N	NORMAL	SF	SUPER FINE

10 Size indicator

Shoot still picture

QCIF	QCIF: 176×144	UXGA	UXGA: 1200×1600
QVGA	QVGA: 240×320	Full HD	FullHD: 1080×1920
VGA	VGA: 480×640	3M	3M: 1536×2048
Full WVGA	Stand-by: 480×854	5M	5M: 1920×2560
1.2M	1.2M: 960×1280	PANO RAMA	Panorama: 1280×320

Shoot movie

S QCIF	sQCIF: 128×96	QVGA	QVGA: 320×240
QCIF	QCIF: 176×144	VGA	VGA: 640×480

11 Fix camera shake indicator

	Fix camera shake [Auto] (for still pictures)/[ON] (for movies)

12 White balance indicator

AUTO	Auto		Fluorescent		Cloudy
	Incandescent		Sunlight		

13 Common replay mode indicator

COM	Common replay mode [ON]

14 File size limit indicator

	For mail (short) (500 KB)
	For mail (long) (2 MB)

15 Switch image/voice indicator

	Image + voice
	Image only
	Voice only

16 Inverse mode indicators

AUTO	Automatic		Normal		Reverse text

17 QR code link number indicator

1 to 16	Indicates the number of linked split data being read

Activating/Deactivating the camera

In the viewer position

1 **In stand-by, press 📷.**

- The picture light illuminates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- To end: In the still picture shooting screen, touch the touch panel ▶ touch CLR.

In the normal position

1 **In stand-by, press 📷.**

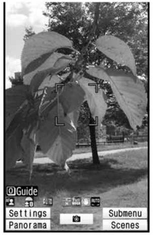
- The picture light illuminates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Switch Camera modes after activating the camera (☞P. 156).
- Close the FOMA terminal or press ⌐ or CLR to end.

Using different camera modes

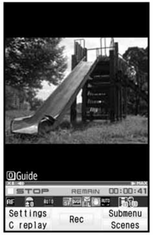
- In the viewer position, Shoot still picture or Shoot movie is activated.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Camera] ▶ select the Camera mode ▶ ●.**

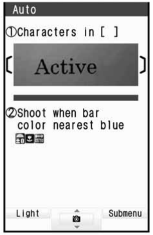
- When Shoot still picture, Shoot movie, Card reader, Cameraloupe or Shotdeco is activated, the picture light illuminates.



Shoot still picture



Shoot movie

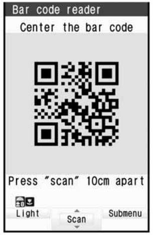

Auto

①Characters in [ ]

Active

②Shoot when bar color nearest blue

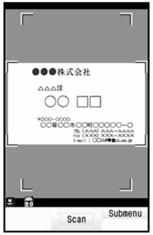
Character reader


Bar code reader

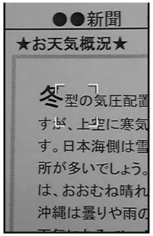
Center the bar code

Press "scan" 10cm apart

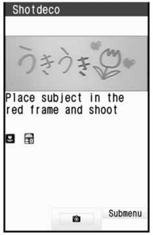
Bar code reader



Card reader



Cameraloupe


Shotdeco

Place subject in the red frame and shoot

Shotdeco

Note

Auto end

- In each Camera mode, if no operations are performed for approximately 2 minutes with the viewfinder display shown, the Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears. The Camera mode does not end if there are unsaved data, or when the Submenu, Shooting settings screen or scan results screen is shown.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

View key list <Key list>

In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Key list].

■ Receiving a call while a still picture is being saved, a movie is being shot or the movie shooting confirmation menu screen is being displayed

The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered.

- For shooting still pictures, shot still pictures are retained.
- For shooting movies, the movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears after the call. Operate according to the screen.

■ Shortcut key

Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

Key	Still picture/ Cameraloupe	Movie	Character reader	Bar code reader	Card reader	Shotdeco
→	Zoom in[1]		–	–	–	Zoom in[1]
←	Zoom out[1]		–	–	–	Zoom out[1]
▤	Shooting settings		Picture light		–	–
📖	Shoot by scene		–	–	–	–
✉	Panoramic shooting/ Normal shooting	Common replay mode/ Normal shooting	–	–	–	–
↑	Brightness ▲[1]					
↓	Brightness ▼[1]					
*	Switch phone⇔SD		–	–	–	–

Key	Still picture/ Cameraloupe	Movie	Character reader	Bar code reader	Card reader	Shotdeco
#	Picture light		–	–	–	–
☎	Focus lock					
1	Switch camera-mode					
2	Folder list screen of My picture	Folder list screen of i-motion	Select subject	Saved data	–	Resize
3	AF mode		Switch AF mode		AF mode	–
4	Auto timer		Inverse mode	–	–	–
5	Select size		–	–	–	–
6	Image quality		–	–	–	–
7	Effect shot[2]		–	–	–	–
8	Fix camera shake		–	–	–	–
9	White balance		–	–	–	–
0	Guide ON/OFF[3]		–	–	–	–

[1] Keep key pressed to adjust the brightness continuously.

[2] For Cameraloupe, Effect shot is not available.

[3] Show the Guide screen to check the Shortcut key assignment before the operation.

Shoot still pic

Shooting still pictures

- When a still picture is shot, the shutter sounds and the picture light flashes once. After that, a still picture appears on the preview screen.
- Use Focus lock when there is a focus error (☞P. 161).

Shooting in the viewer position

1 Activate the camera.

- Hold the FOMA terminal sideways.

2 Press ▣.

- Shoot a still picture.

3 Press ▣.

- Save a still picture.

Shooting in the normal position

1 Activate the camera.

- Use the zoom (☞P. 156) or show the Shooting settings screen (☞P. 161).
- To shoot a still picture of yourself: Rotate the display ▶ make the camera face you.

2 Press ■/▣.

- Shoot a still picture.

3 Press ■/▣.

- Save a still picture.
- To change the save destination: Press ≣.
- To delete a still picture and shoot again: Press CLR.
- To send with mail (☞P. 163): Press ✉ ▶ compose and send a message.
- To add location information: Press 📷 ▶ [Paste loc. Info] ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].
  - The present location is positioned by GPS function (☞P. 266).
- To edit and use a still picture: Press 📷.
  - Edit image (☞P. 320 to P. 323), Facial treatment (☞P. 323), Set screen (☞P. 319), Switching to the Full-screen mode (☞P. 162)

When shooting a still picture of yourself

- To save images as it appears on the display (correct left-right orientation): Press ■/▣.
  - Still pictures appear on the display inverted (left-right orientation backwards) but are saved as a normal image (correct left-right orientation).
- To check a normal image before saving: Press 📷 ▶ [Normal image] ▶ ■/▣.
- To save an inverted image (left-right orientation backwards): Press 📷 ▶ [Save inverted].
  - It is not possible to save inverted images when shooting still pictures with a frame (☞P. 159).
- When the image size is ***Stand-by: 480×854*** or larger, the shot still picture appears as a normal image and is saved.

Continuous shooting <Continuous mode>

Shoot multiple still pictures continuously.

- Image sizes available for the Continuous mode are as follows.

	Fast	Standard	Manual
QCIF: 176×144, QVGA: 240×320	○	○	○
VGA: 480×640, Stand-by: 480×854	×	○	○

- ***QCIF: 176×144*** and ***QVGA: 240×320*** can be shot combining the Continuous mode and Shoot with frame.

■ Fast, Standard and Manual

In the Fast continuous mode, automatically shoot still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals and at approximately 0.2 second intervals in Standard continuous mode. In the Manual continuous mode, shoot multiple still pictures with shutter operations.

- The maximum number of shots for the Continuous mode that can be shot depends on the size.

QCIF: 176×144	25 shots	VGA: 480×640	6 shots
QVGA: 240×320	9 shots	Stand-by: 480×854	4 shots

■ Continuous shooting

1 In the still picture shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Continuous mode] ▶ select the type of Continuous mode ▶ ●.

2 Press ●/📷.

- The first still picture is shot and the following still pictures are shot automatically. At the last shooting, the picture light flashes once.
- In the Manual shooting mode, press ●/📷 until the maximum number of shots for the Continuous mode.
- When continuous shooting is complete, or shooting was cancelled by pressing 📷, the shot image list screen appears.

3 Save.

- To save/delete all: Press 📷 ▶ [Save all]/[Delete all].
- To select one still picture and save/delete: Select a still picture ▶ 📷 ▶ [Save one]/[Delete one].
- To send with mail (☞P. 163): Select a still picture ▶ ⓘ ▶ compose and send a message.
- To add location information: Press 📷 ▶ [Paste loc. info] ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].
  - The present location is positioned by GPS function (☞P. 266).

Note

- When the Auto save mode (☞P. 163) is set to [ON], all still pictures are saved automatically.
- Changing the image size or setting Effect shot cancels the Continuous mode.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm is activated in the Continuous mode, the still pictures being shot are retained and the Continuous mode is canceled. However, depending on the timing when an incoming call is received or the alarm is activated, the still pictures being shot are discarded, and the still picture shooting screen reappears.
- Closing the FOMA terminal or pressing ☎ while shooting in the Continuous mode causes shooting to be interrupted and the Camera mode to be ended. In addition, changing the position causes shooting to be interrupted, and the still picture shooting screen appears.

Shooting panoramic pictures <Panorama>

By importing images continuously while moving the FOMA terminal horizontally, a panoramic picture can be created automatically.

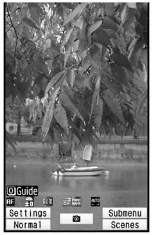
- Panoramic pictures are saved in the size of 1280 (W) × 320 (H).
- The image quality is set to [SUPER FINE], the AF mode is set to [Standard], these settings cannot be changed.
- Shooting panoramic pictures is not available when in the viewer position.

1 In the still picture shooting screen, press ✉.

- Press ✉ again, and the normal still picture shooting screen reappears.

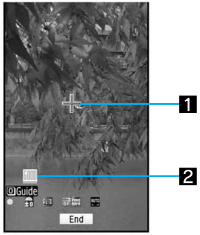
2 Press ●/📷.

- After the shooting start sound, panoramic shooting starts. Move the FOMA terminal to either direction of left or right within the range for shooting a panoramic picture (do not move back once moved to one direction). Steady the position of the cross mark which appears in the center at the start of shooting.



Panoramic picture shooting screen

- For the moving speed of the FOMA terminal, make sure that GOOD appears as the moving speed indicator on the lower left of the screen.
- When shooting is almost completed, OK appears. Even after OK appears, the combined image is updated by moving the FOMA terminal. However, when MAX appears, further updating is not available. Proceed to step 3.



Panoramic picture shooting screen

1 Cross mark display
Appears in the center of the display considering the position where the shooting is started as an origin. Use this display to check the gap from the origin when moving the camera.

2 Moving speed display
Indicates the moving speed of FOMA terminal.

SLOW	Too slow
GOOD	Appropriate speed
FAST	Too fast

3 Press ■ to end shooting.

- After the shooting end sound, the imported images are combined, and the preview screen appears.

4 Press ■/📷.

- Save an image.

Note

- While a panoramic picture is shot, zoom and brightness cannot be adjusted.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm is activated while a panoramic picture is shot, importing is canceled, and the images being imported up to that point are discarded.
- While a panoramic picture is shot, if no operations are made for approximately 2 minutes, the Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears. The images imported up to that point are discarded.
- When FAST appears, the image quality may deteriorate. Especially when shooting close subjects, be careful not to display FAST.
- When shooting is continued even after OK appears, the parts shot at the beginning and ending may be discarded.

Shoot movie

Shooting movies

- Shooting starts after the movie record start sound is heard. However, recording may not begin immediately. The picture light illuminates while a movie is shot (The picture light flashes when Switch image/voice is set to [Voice only]).
- Shooting stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads ***00:00:00*** (the movie file size reaches limit during shooting or microSD Card has no available space). Shot movies can be saved/composed mail/played/canceled.
- Use Focus lock when there is a focus error (☞P. 161).

Shooting in the viewer position

1 Activate the movie mode.

- Hold the FOMA terminal sideways.

2 Press 📷.

- The subject at the center is automatically focused.

3 Press 📷 to end shooting.

4 Touch Save.

- Save a movie.
- To play movies: Touch ▶.
- To cancel movies: Touch ↩ ▶ touch [Yes].

Shooting in the normal position

1 Activate the movie mode.

- Use the zoom (☞P. 156) or show Shooting settings screen (☞P. 161).
- To shoot a movie of yourself: Rotate the display ▶ make the camera face you.

2 Press ■/📷.

- The subject at the center is automatically focused.

3 Press ■/📷 to end shooting.

- After the shooting end sound, the movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears.

4 Select [Save].

- Save a movie.
- To send with mail (☞P. 163): Select [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.
- To play movies: Select [Play].
- To cancel movies: Select [Cancel] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- The remaining time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may continue longer than the remaining time indicated before the start of shooting or may automatically stop before the indicator reads ***00:00:00***.
- The following actions are taken when the FOMA terminal is closed or the position is changed during the shooting.
  - When the shooting time is approximately 1 second or more: shooting ends and movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears
  - When the shooting time is less than approximately 1 second and the FOMA terminal is closed: shooting ends and the Camera mode ends
  - When the shooting time is less than approximately 1 second and the position is changed: shooting ends and the movie shooting screen appears

  However, when Switch image/voice is set to [Voice only], recording is continued.
- Make sure not to press keys while shooting a movie as keypad sounds may be recorded.

Changing settings for shooting

- Depending on the image size, some settings are not available.

Switching the Camera mode <Switch camera-mode>

1 In the shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Switch camera-mode] ▶ select the Camera mode ▶ ■.

Adjusting brightness <Brightness>

Select from five brightness levels.

1 In the shooting screen, press ↕.

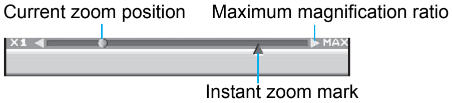
- In the viewer position: In the still picture/movie shooting screen, touch the touch panel to slide the finger up/down.

Using the digital zoom

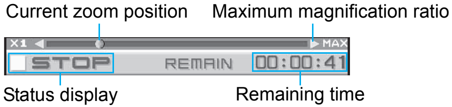
1 In the still picture/movie/Shotdeco shooting screen, press ↔.

- Alternatively, slide the finger left/right on the Optical TOUCH CRUISER. However, for the still picture shooting, when the AF mode is set to [Def (people first)], operate after displaying the zoom bar with ↔.
- In the viewer position: In the still picture/movie shooting screen, touch the touch panel to slide the finger left/right.
  - The range of zoom is changed depending on how far the finger is slid left/right.
  - When zooming up in a moment, slide from the left to right on the edge of the screen (In the still picture mode, zoom up is continued till the instant zoom mark appears).

Still picture mode



Movie mode



- The area affected by zoom depends on the image size.

	Image size	Maximum magnification (zoom step)
Shoot still picture	QCIF: 176×144	Approx. 21.9× (25 steps)
	QVGA: 240×320	Approx. 15.8× (22 steps)
	VGA: 480×640	Approx. 7.9× (16 steps)
	Stand-by: 480×854	Approx. 6.0× (13 steps)
	1.2M: 960×1280	Approx. 3.9× (9 steps)
	UXGA: 1200×1600	Approx. 3.1× (7 steps)
	FullHD: 1080×1920	Approx. 1.3× (4 steps)
	3M: 1536×2048	Approx. 1.2× (3 steps)
	5M: 1920×2560	Actual size (–)
	Panorama: 1280×320	Approx. 5.9× (18 steps)
Shoot movie	sQCIF: 128×96	Approx. 15.9× (26 steps)*1
	QCIF: 176×144	Approx. 13.4× (26 steps)*1
	QVGA: 320×240	Approx. 7.9× (21 steps)*1
	VGA: 640×480	Approx. 4.0× (15 steps)*2

*1 When Fix camera shake is set to [OFF] in the viewer position
*2 When in the viewer position

Note

- Digital zoom is not available when the AF mode is set to [Spot AF].

Using the picture light <Picture light>

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Picture light] ▶ [ON].

- For Character reader and Bar code reader, press ℹ.

Note

- Picture light is a supplementary light source for surroundings with low light. The amount of light is less than that of an ordinary camera flash.
- For the still picture mode or movie mode, the picture light turns on (dims) even if set to [OFF].
- When performing close-up shots of printed materials that are mostly white under fluorescent light, the color or shadow of the FOMA terminal may appear in the picture, depending on the angle and whether the picture light is [ON] or [OFF]. This is not a malfunction.

Setting the image size <Select size>

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Select size].

- For Shotdeco: In the shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Resize].

2 Select the size ▶ ●.

Setting the image quality <Image quality>

The image quality increases from [ECONOMY] → [NORMAL] → [FINE] (movie only) → [SUPER FINE]. As the quality increases, the number of images to save and amount of recordable time decrease.

- For details on the approximate number of images which can be shot and the recording length ☞P. 145

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Image quality].

2 Select the image quality ▶ ●.

Setting the File size limit <File size limit>

Set the File size limit before shooting movies.

- When sending with i-motion mail, select [For mail (short)] or [For mail (long)]. Record based on the allowable size of mail attachment. Select [For mail (short)] to limit the file size to up to approximately 500 KB. Select [For mail (long)] to limit the file size to up to approximately 2 MB.

1 In the movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [File size limit].

2 Select the file size ▶ ●.

- Available settings depend on the image size and save destination.

Note

- When the save destination is set to the microSD Card and File size limit is set to [Unrestricted], the maximum recording time is approximately 1 hour (excluding when Switch image/voice is set to [Voice only]). When mail is sent right after shooting, the first 2 MB or less are cut and sent.
- When the save destination is changed to the FOMA terminal handset, File size limit is set to [For mail (long)]. When the save destination is changed to the microSD Card, File size limit is set to [Unrestricted]. However, when the Common replay mode is set, the file size is set to [For mail (short)] and cannot be changed.

Shooting images with the Auto timer <Auto timer>

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Auto timer].

2 Select the Auto timer time ▶ ●.

3 Press ●/📷.

- The Auto timer sound is audible and the Auto timer is activated. After the set time elapses, a picture is automatically shot after the shutter sound/shooting start sound.
- The Auto timer is not deactivated after shooting or canceling.

Note

- When a call is received or an alarm is activated, the Auto timer is canceled and the shooting screen reappears.

Setting the AF mode <AF mode>

Set the AF (auto focus) mode according to the subject.

- For shooting still pictures, the AF mode setting turns to [Def (people first)] when the image size is changed.

Standard	Focus is activated and the subject at the center is focused.
Def (people first)*1	Detect people's faces and adjust focus. When people's faces are detected, the face detection frame focuses on the object searching for the face even if the object moves. When multiple faces are detected, specify the face to adjust the focus.
Spot AF*1	Select the area on viewfinder to adjust the focus.
Closeup	Recommended mode for shooting close subjects (approx. 10 cm).
Manual focus*2	Adjust focus manually.

*1 Available only for still picture shooting.

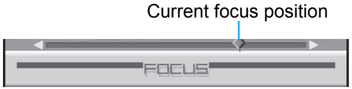
*2 Available only for still picture and movie shooting.

1 In the shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [AF mode].

2 Select the AF mode.

- **Select [Standard].**
- **Select [Def (people first)].**
  - Detect up to five people's faces. When multiple face detection frames appear, the red face detection frames is focused.
  - To specify the face to adjust the focus, slide the finger left/right on the Optical TOUCH CRUISER.

- **Select [Spot AF] ▶ select the focus area with ✥.**
- **Select [Closeup].**
- **Select [Manual focus] ▶ adjust the focus with ◂▸ ▶ ■.**
  - The focus adjusting bar appears. Adjust the center line to make it deep blue.



Focus adjusting bar

Note

- When [Def (people first)] is set, the face detection may not work properly depending on the angle of face, the distance to the subject or the shooting conditions. Also, the object other than face and background may be detected as face by mistake.

Setting the image and voice shooting <Switch img/voice>

When shooting a movie, select [Image + voice], [Image only] or [Voice only].

1 In the movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Switch img/voice].

2 Select the image/voice combination ▶ ■.

Shooting still pictures with a frame <Shoot with frame>

Set and shoot still pictures with frames.

- When the image size is ***1.2M: 960×1280***, ***UXGA: 1200×1600***, ***FullHD: 1080×1920***, ***3M: 1536×2048***, ***5M: 1920×2560***, or ***Panorama: 1280×320***, shooting still pictures with a frame is not available.
- When the Continuous mode is set in ***VGA: 480×640*** or ***Stand-by: 480×854***, shooting still pictures with a frame is not available.
- If the image size differs from the frame size, the frame is rotated 90°.
- Use frames downloaded from sites to shoot with frames.

1 In the still picture shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Shoot with frame] ▶ [ON].

2 Select a frame ▶ ▴▾.

- To preview: Select a frame ▶ ■.

3 Press ■/📷.

Adding various effects <Effect shot>

Set effects for still pictures and movies to change the color tone and touch.

- When the image size for still pictures is ***VGA: 480×640***, ***Stand-by: 480×854***, ***1.2M: 960×1280***, ***UXGA: 1200×1600***, ***FullHD: 1080×1920***, ***3M: 1536×2048***, ***5M: 1920×2560***, or ***Panorama: 1280×320***, Effect shot is not available. Also, when the image size for movies is ***VGA: 640×480***, Effect shot is not available.

Effect type

OFF	To remove effects
Black & white	Image contrast is expressed in monotone
Sepia	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color
Sparkling	Bright areas light up
Colored pencil	A colored line is drawn
Faded edges*1	Image edges have a soft, blurred effect
Spectrum*2	Spectrum of motions
Ripple	Adds ripple effect
Kaleidoscope (L)	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a large pattern
Kaleidoscope (S)	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a small pattern
Fish-eye	Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens

*1 Available only for still picture shooting.
*2 Available only for movie shooting.

Continued on next page ▶▶

1 **In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Effect shot] ▶ select the type of effect ▶ ▣.**

2 **Press ▣/📷.**

Note

- Switching to Continuous mode, changing the image size, or switching image and voice cancels Effect shot when Effect shot is set.
- For movie shooting, Image quality is automatically set as follows and cannot be changed when Effect shot is set.
  - ■ ***sQCIF: 128×96***: [FINE]
  - ■ ***QCIF: 176×144***, ***QVGA: 320×240***: [SUPER FINE]
- For movie shooting, when Effect shot is set, Fix camera shake is automatically set to [OFF]. Afterward, when Effect shot is canceled, the Fix camera shake setting before Effect shot is retrieved.

Shooting while fixing the camera shake

<Fix camera shake>

1 **In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Fix camera shake].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Note

- When Fix camera shake is set to [Auto] for shooting a still picture, Fix camera shake is activated in a dark location where a camera shake often occurs.
- When shooting with Fix camera shake ON, shot images may contain noise or become darker depending on the subjects or surrounding light. This is not a malfunction. In such cases, shoot images after setting Fix camera shake to [OFF].
- If the following action is performed while [Processing] appears after the shot with Fix camera shake, the still pictures being shot are discarded.
  - ■ When an incoming call is received or the alarm is activated (the still picture shooting screen reappears)
  - ■ When the FOMA terminal is closed (the Camera mode ends)
- For still picture shooting, if Shoot by scene/White balance is set to a setting other than [Auto] or Continuous mode is set, Fix camera shake is deactivated.

Shooting environment/subject-specific images

<Shoot by scene>

Set the camera to shoot with natural colors and focus based on the surroundings and subject.

1 **In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Shoot by scene].**

2 **Select a scene ▶ ▣.**

- When a scene is selected and ℹ is pressed, the description of scene appears.

Note

- If Shoot by scene is set to a setting other than [Auto], White balance is automatically set to [Auto].
- If AF mode is set to a setting other than [Def (people first)], [Portrait] cannot be set.

Adjusting the color tone <White balance>

According to the light condition when shooting, adjust the color and shoot.

1 **In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [White balance].**

2 **Select the type of White balance ▶ ▣.**

Note

- If White balance is set to a setting other than [Auto], Shoot by scene is automatically set to [Auto].

Minimizing the audio noise <Noise reduction>

1 **In the movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Noise reduction] ▶ [ON].**

Note

- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

Setting the backlight illumination time <Display light time>

1 **In the movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Display light time].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ■.**

- Even if set to [Always ON], the backlight lit duration is same as the Display light time for all screens other than the viewfinder.

Shooting with Focus lock <Focus lock>

Use the Focus lock to keep the focus on the subject and change the composition.

- The Focus lock sound notifies (excluding shooting movies) that focus is locked.

1 **In the shooting screen, adjust focus and press ✎/📷 (halfway).**

- The focus lock indicator color changes depending on the situation (☞P. 149).

Disabling the Focus lock

- When focus is locked with ✎: Press ✎.
- When focus is locked with 📷: Release 📷.

2 **Change the composition and shoot.**

- When focus is locked with ✎: Press ■.
- When focus is locked with 📷: Press 📷 (fully).
- Do not change the distance to the subject.

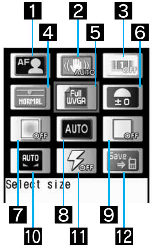
Note

- Focus lock is available while a movie is shot. Use when the distance to a subject changes while shooting. However, the audio noise may affect shooting when the Focus lock is used.

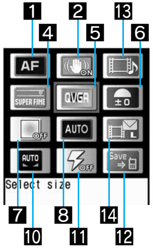
Changing settings for shooting collectively <Shooting settings>

Show settings for functions frequently used when shooting and change them collectively.

1 **In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press ≣.**



For still pictures



For movies

Continued on next page ▶▶

❶AF mode
❷Fix camera shake
❸Continuous mode
❹Image quality
❺Select size
❻Brightness
❼Effect shot
❽Shoot by scene
❾Shoot with frame
❿White balance
⓫Picture light
⓬Switch phone⇔SD
⓭Switch img/voice
⓮File size limit

- To change settings: Select an item with ⊡ ▶ ▣.
- Also, use the Optical TOUCH CRUISER.
- To return to the shooting screen: Press ▤.

Setting to replay movies on other FOMA terminals <Common replay mode>

Replay movies shot in the Common replay mode regardless of FOMA terminal models.

- Image size is set to ***QCIF: 176×144***, image quality to [FINE], file size to [For mail (short)] (500 KB), Fix camera shake to [OFF], Switch image/voice to [Image + voice], and Effect shot to [OFF]. These settings cannot be changed.

1 In the movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Shooting menu] ▶ [Common replay mode] ▶ [ON].

Changing the camera settings

- To change the shutter sound ☞P. 109

Showing images in Full-screen <Full-screen mode>

All icons can be deleted to view a still picture at full screen.

- When the image size is ***QCIF: 176×144*** or ***Panorama: 1280×320***, Full-screen mode is not available.

1 In the still picture shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Full-screen mode].

- To deactivate: Perform the same operations over.

Saving to a microSD Card <Switch phone⇔SD>

Save images to a microSD Card.

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Switch phone⇔SD].

- Alternatively, press ▤ after shooting a still picture to switch.

Note

- The length of movies that can be saved depends on the size of the microSD Card. The maximum length is approximately 1 hour for movies with video.
- For details on checking still pictures/movies saved on a microSD Card ☞P. 342
- When save destination is the microSD Card, still pictures are saved in the [Camerafolder xxx] (“xxx” is the largest number when multiple folders exist), and movies are saved in the [Camerafolder].

- When the number of still pictures or movies saved in the folder exceeds 400, a new folder is automatically created, and still pictures or movies are saved in the new folder. The microSD Card used on a PC or other devices cannot be used for saving unless the manager information is updated (☞P. 343).
- When saving to a microSD Card, images are saved in DCF1.0 (ExifVer.2.2, JPEG) format.
  - “DCF” (Design rule for Camera File system) is a standard created mainly by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for images from digital cameras and other devices to be shared with related devices. However, DCF standard does not guarantee the entire compatibility of all devices.
  - “Exif” is a file format established by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for adding supplementary information to the still picture.

Setting the Auto save mode <Auto save mode>

Set to save a shot still picture automatically.

- If the Auto save mode is set to [ON], Edit image, Set screen and other operations are not available immediately after shooting.
- Shot still pictures are automatically saved in the save destination set with Switch phone⇔SD.

1 In the still picture shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Auto save mode] ▶ [ON].

Preventing the still picture/movie shooting settings from being retained to return to the default settings <Save camera set>

Save the following settings after the Camera mode ends and use those same settings later. Prevent the settings from being retained to return to the default settings after the Camera mode ends.

Still picture	Select size, Image quality, Switch phone⇔SD, Auto save mode, Fix camera shake, Picture light
Movie	Select size, Image quality, File size limit, Display light time, Switch phone⇔SD, Fix camera shake, Noise reduction, Picture light

1 In the still picture/movie shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Camera settings] ▶ [Save camera set] ▶ [OFF].

Send message

Sending still pictures or movies after shooting

After shooting still picture or movie, attach images to i-mode mail and send from the preview screen.

- Movies are sent as i-motion mail.

1 In the still picture preview screen, press ✉.

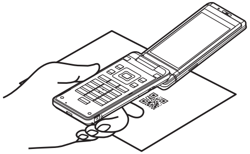
- When shooting movies: Select [Compose message] in the movie shooting confirmation menu screen.
- When a shot movie exceeds 2 MB, a confirmation screen asking whether to cut the file for attaching to mail appears. Select [Yes] to cut and attach the first 2 MB or less.

2 Compose and send a message.

Bar code reader

Using the Bar code reader

Use the camera to scan bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, register bookmark, add to phonebook, display text and i-αppli To. Copy and paste text, play and save melodies, and view and save images or ToruCa.



- Scan results cannot be saved on microSD Cards.
- The Bar code reader is not available in the viewer position.
- The camera cannot scan bar codes/two-dimensional codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.

JAN code

- JAN code is a type of bar code using vertical bars of varying width to express numbers.
- The code on the right is read as [4942857119022].

4 942857 119022

QR code

- QR code is a type of two-dimensional code expressing data vertically and horizontally.
- The code on the right is read as [株式会社NTTドコモ].

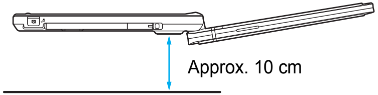
Using text from bar codes (JAN/QR codes)

- Use scanned text from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for functions such as connecting to i-mode or Full Browser, composing mail, making voice/Videophone calls, sending PushTalk transmissions, composing SMS and running i-αppli.
- Some bar codes cannot be scanned depending on types or sizes.
- Bar codes may not be scanned due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or QR code version.

1 Activate the Bar code reader mode.

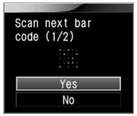
- In the Custom menu: Select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bar code reader].

2 Display bar code (JAN/QR code) to be read in the center of the screen ▶ ■.



- Position the camera approximately 10 cm from the bar code (JAN/QR code). Keep aligned and do not move the FOMA terminal or code while scanning.
- When scanning is complete, an end tone is heard and scan results appear.
- To interrupt scanning: Press ≣/CLR.

Split data



Scan next bar code (1/2)

- QR code may be split into a multiple set of codes (maximum 16) which can be compiled into one set of data. If split data is scanned, a message appears. The parentheses show remaining codes/total codes. Select [Yes] to proceed to the next QR code scanning screen. When the next QR code appears in the center of the screen, scanning starts automatically. Repeat until all split data is scanned. Scan results appear.

3 Use the scanned results.

- When scanned characters and numbers are underlined: Select the scanned text ▶ ■.
  - Based on the type of scanned text, a screen appears.
- To copy all scanned text: Press ≣.
- To copy a part of scanned text: Press 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ select the starting point ▶ ■ ▶ select the ending point ▶ ■.
- To save scanned data: Press 📷 ▶ [Save] ▶ select the save destination ▶ ■.
  - Save up to five entries.

Related Operations

Activate the Bar code reader in the URL entry screen or text input screen for a site

In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Quote] ▶ [Bar code reader].

Scanning and using images/ToruCa/melodies from QR codes

1 Read QR code.

- In the scan results screen, [Image]/[Melody]/[ToruCa] appears depending on the scanned data.

2 Press ■ ▶ select a usage ▶ ■.

- If [Display] is selected when multiple ToruCa are included, only the first ToruCa is acquired.
- When [Save] is selected, images are saved in the [Acquired data] folder in My picture of Data box, melodies are saved in the [Acquired data] folder in Melody of Data box, and ToruCa is saved in [ToruCa] of the Osaifu-Keitai menu.

Adding scanned text to the phonebook or bookmarks

- Add scanned mail addresses, phone numbers and URL numbers to the phonebook or bookmarks.

1 In the scan results screen, press 📷.

2 Add scanned results.

- ◆ **Select [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.**
- ◆ **Select [Add bookmark] ▶ [Register i-mode] ▶ select a folder ▶ ■ ▶ [OK].**
- ◆ **Select [Add bookmark] ▶ [Register FB] ▶ [OK] ▶ select a folder ▶ ■.**

■ Using the saved data

1 In the scanning screen, press 📷 ▶ [Saved data] ▶ select the saved data ▶ ■.

Character Reader (OCR)

Reading text

Shoot printed data such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers and English words, and convert into text to be used by the FOMA terminal.

- Text which can be read is shown below. Such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers, English words, etc. are automatically distinguished based on the text. Double-byte characters such as kanji and hiragana cannot be read.

URL	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [. - _ : / ˜]
Mail address	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [. @ - _ :]
Phone number	Single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- + P # *]
English word	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- / ? ! @ + * ' ( ) , . &]

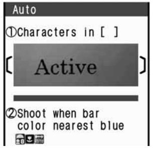
- Text may not be read correctly due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or text size.
- The Character reader is not available in the viewer position.

Using scanned text

Data type (URL, mail address, phone number, English word) is automatically distinguished. Use functions such as reading text, connecting to i-mode, composing mail, making voice/Videophone calls, sending PushTalk transmissions, searching in dictionaries, adding to the phonebook, and saving bookmarks.

Continued on next page ▶▶

1 Activate the Character reader mode.



Auto

①Characters in [ ]

Active

②Shoot when bar color nearest blue

- In the Custom menu: Select [LifeKit] ▶ [Character reader].
- To select the data type for scanning: Press 📷 ▶ [Select subject] ▶ select a category ▶ ■.
- To scan inverted text (white text on black background): Press 📷 ▶ [Inverse mode] ▶ [Reverse text].

2 Display the text to be scanned in the center of the screen ▶ ■.

- Adjust the image so that it appears in the center of the frame 〔 〕. Text near the sides of the frame may be difficult to scan.
- Adjust the distance so that the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue.
- Scan up to approximately 60 characters at one time.
- When multiple lines were scanned: Specify the lines to scan with ⋮.
  - Text is scanned one line at a time.

3 Press ■.

- When scanning is complete, an end sound is heard and the type of scanned text is displayed in the candidate screen.
- Edit scan results.
- To delete text on screen and scan again: Press ≣ ▶ [Yes].

4 Press ■.

- To change the data type of scanned result: Press ⋯.
  - When the scanned result is phone number, the data type cannot be changed.
- To scan additional text: Press 📷 ▶ [Continue] ▶ proceed to step 2.
  - Connect to previously read data to make complete text. Scan up to 256 characters.
- To add text: Press 📷 ▶ [Add] ▶ proceed to step 2.
  - Scan text in up to three sessions and link scanned text into one group.
- To search for scanned text in dictionary: Press 📷 ▶ [Search dictionary] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a dictionary ▶ ■ ▶ search in dictionary.
  - For details on searching for dictionary ☞P. 362
- To edit scanned text: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit].
- To copy all scanned text: Press 📷 ▶ [Copy all].
- To delete scanned text: Press 📷 ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].
- To delete text on screen and scan again: Press ≣ ▶ [Yes].

5 Press ■ ▶ use scanned results.

- To connect to the site with a URL (Category: URL): Select [Connect i-mode]/[Connect FB].
- To compose a message with a mail address (Category: Mail): Select [Yes] ▶ compose and send a message.
- To use a phone number (Category: Tel).
  - To make a voice call: Press ☎/■ ▶ [Yes].
  - To make a Videophone call: Press ≣ ▶ [Yes].
  - To send a PushTalk transmission: Press ▣ (P) ▶ [Yes].
  - To compose an SMS: Press 📖 ▶ [Yes] ▶ compose and send an SMS.
  - To add Chaku-moji: Press ✉ ▶ select the message.
- To search for scanned text in dictionary (Category: Word): Select [Yes] ▶ select a dictionary ▶ ■ ▶ search in dictionary.

Note

- When scanned data is a phone number, parentheses (()) become a hyphen (-). Hyphen (-) is erased for adding to the phonebook or making a call.
- When read data is URL, ***http://*** is added to read results even if it is missing.

■ Adding scanned text to the phonebook or bookmarks

Based on the type of data, read data is added as phonebook entry items or saved as bookmarks.

- Scanned data is added to various following items by data type.

[URL]	Memo	[Mail]	Mail address
[Tel]	Phone number	[Word]	Name/Reading

1 In the scan results screen, press 📷.

2 Add scanned results.

- **Select [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.**
- **Select [Add bookmark] ▶ [Register i-mode] ▶ select a folder ▶ ▣ ▶ [OK].**
- **Select [Add bookmark] ▶ [Register FB] ▶ [OK] ▶ select a folder ▶ ▣.**

Card reader

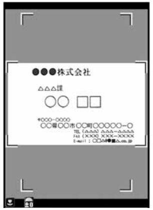
Using the Card reader

Scan a business card (Japanese/English) with the camera to save to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- The following items can be saved.
  - Name
  - Reading (surname only)
  - Phone number/mobile phone number/fax number (up to three in total)
  - Mail address (up to three)
  - Company/school
  - Department
  - Title
  - Postal code
  - Address
  - Memo (URL and other items)

1 Activate the Card reader mode.

- In the Custom menu: Select [LifeKit] ▶ [Card reader].



2 Display a business card in the center of the screen ▶ ▣/📷.

- The picture light flashes once.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to fit the entire business card with the frame shown on the display. Make sure that no other objects, especially text-written objects, are displayed on the screen.
- For scanning, the direction of the business card can be either vertical or horizontal on the screen. Keep it vertical or horizontal when scanning.
- Alternatively, scan in the viewer position.
- The larger the displayed image of the business card is, the clearer the scan result is. However, bringing the camera too close to the business card makes it difficult to adjust the focus. Keep the camera approximately 10 cm away from the business card.

3 Press ▣/📷.

- Scanned items are entered in the phonebook entry screen.
- When the total number of saved phone numbers, mobile phone number and fax numbers is four or more or there are four or more saved mail addresses, the three numbers or addresses from the top are saved. ☎/☎/☎ are the icons for phone number type and ✉ is for mail address type.

Note

- Some business cards cannot be scanned or be recognized properly.
- The following business cards cannot be scanned.
  - Business cards with letters written in a language other than Japanese and English
  - Business cards with background images
  - Handwritten business cards and business cards with handwritten-style fonts
  - Business cards with letters written in both vertical and horizontal directions
  - Business cards shown on a display, etc.
- The following business cards cannot be scanned fine.
  - Business cards with light colored text and low contrast
  - Business cards with extremely small characters
  - Business cards with italic fonts
  - Shiny, coated business cards
  - Business cards with a logo or logo-style characters
  - Business cards in which there is no space between characters since they are placed too close to each other

Continued on next page ▶▶

- The reading (pronunciation in kana) may not be saved correctly or added automatically.
- Items may not be recognized properly.

Cameraloupe

Using as loupe

Use the camera to magnify a small text, such a text in a newspaper and others, and view it in the display. Shooting the magnified image as a still picture is also available.

1 Activate the Cameraloupe mode.

- To shoot still pictures: Proceed to step 2 of “Shooting in the normal position” on P. 153
- Change the settings in the same way as in shooting still pictures (☞P. 156, P. 162).

Note

- If no operations are performed for approximately 2 minutes, Cameraloupe automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears.

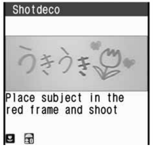
Shotdeco

Creating original Deco-mail picture

Scan hand written pictures or text as a GIF image to create original Deco-mail pictures or Deco-mail pictographs. The color of scanned images can be changed.

- Shotdeco is not available in the viewer position.

1 Activate the Shotdeco mode.



Shotdeco

Place subject in the red frame and shoot

2 Display an image or a character to be scanned in the center of the screen ▶ ■/📷.

- The shutter sounds and the picture light flashes once.

3 Press ■/📷.

- To change the color of images: Press 1 to 6.
- To change the highlighted status of images: Press 7.
- To undo the images: Press 8.
- To send Deco-mail (☞P. 198): Press ✉ ▶ create and send Deco-mail.

Note

- Even if a ruled notepad, etc. is used, pictures and text are scanned excluding the ruled lines and the white background color (Sometimes the ruled lines are scanned).
- The file names of scanned images are labeled automatically according to the date and time the images were shot, and images are saved to the [Decomail picture] folder in My picture of Data box (images are saved to the [Decomail pict] folder when the image size is ***Emoji: 20×20***).
- When there are considerable noise depending on the subjects or the shooting place, adjust the brightness so that the image may be shot clearly.

Related Operations

Activate Shotdeco while composing message

Press 📷 at location to insert in the message entry screen ▶ [Shotdeco].

Note (Related operations)

- When Shotdeco is activated while composing message, the image is discarded and the compose message screen reappears if the FOMA terminal is switched to viewer position before saving the scanned image.

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

i-mode

Viewing sites

Downloading images, melodies, etc. from sites

Uploading images or movies/i-motion to sites

Useful i-mode functions

Setting i-mode

Using certificates

i-motion

i-Channel

What is i-mode?

i-mode is an online service that connects i-mode compatible FOMA terminals (i-mode terminals) to sites (programs) and the Internet, and enables i-mode mail exchange.

- i-mode is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on i-mode service contents.

■ Using i-mode

- Sites (programs) and Internet web pages are generally protected by copyright law. Using downloaded text, images or other data from sites (programs) and web pages for non-personal use without the author’s permission such as changing, selling or redistributing is prohibited.
- Some models may not allow data such as downloaded images/movies/melodies, files sent/received by mail (images/movies/melodies, etc.), “Screen memos” or “Message R/F” to be viewed/played if a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card.
- If files with access restrictions by a FOMA card are set as the stand-by display or ring tone, etc. and a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card, settings are reset to default.

Viewing sites

Use the various services provided by IPs (Information Providers). Use the FOMA terminal for functions such as bank balance inquiries or ticket reservations. Available services vary depending on sites. Separate subscription may be required.

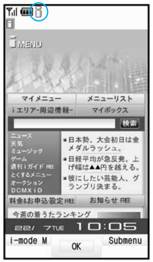
- While viewing sites, use the pointer to select items.

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [iMenu].

- To cancel: Press ⓘ while ϟ flashes.

Icons that appear during i-mode

ⓘ	i-mode is in stand-by (flashes)
ϟ	i-mode is in use (flashes)
SSL	SSL page is being viewed



■日本勢、大会初日は金メダルラッシュ。

■日経平均が急反発。上げ幅は▲▲円を越える。

■彼にしたい芸能人、グランプリ決まる。

2 Select an item ▶ ●.

- To scroll: Press ◎.
- To scroll one screen at a time: Press 📖/✉.
- To return to the i-mode menu: Press ⓘ ▶ [Yes].
- To end i-mode: Press ☎ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Some sites may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display.
- Select [Search by i-mode] on the folder list, Deco-mail template list, Decome-Anime Template list, i-αppli software list, or Osaifu-Keitai menu of Data box to connect to sites.

Sending the usage history of MUSIC Player

- The history of some music data played with MUSIC Player can be sent from i-mode site, Message R/F or ToruCa. If the send key is selected, the information of music played on the user's phone is requested from sites and a confirmation screen to send the information of music appears. Select [Yes] to send the information (title name, artist's name, and played date/time) of music played on the user's phone.
  The information of music to be sent is used by the IP (Information Provider) to offer customized information to the customers.

Related Operations

Replay Flash movies or animated GIFs <Retry>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Retry].

Display iMenu while viewing sites <iMenu>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [iMenu].

Apply Function lock to i-mode <Function lock>

In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ [ON].

Note (Related operations)

Function lock

- For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

■ Sending the terminal ID and UIM ID

While sites are viewed, some sites may ask for the terminal ID. Select [Yes] to send the terminal ID.

Note

- The notification confirmation screen always appears before sending the terminal ID and UIM ID. The terminal ID and UIM ID are not sent automatically.
- The "terminal ID and UIM ID" are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain them. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP with this operation.

■ Viewing images

View images on sites, i-mode mail and Message R/F.

- 🔍 appears while an image is received.
- When no image is received, ⊠ appears.

Note

- Saved images may play differently from when on a site, etc.

Viewing SSL pages

When an SSL-enabled page is attempted to be viewed, [Establishing SSL session (Authenticating)] appears and one of the certificates below is used to view SSL pages.

■ CA certificate ■ DoCoMo certificate ■ Client certificate

- To end the SSL session: Press ⓘ.

■ Returning to a normal site

To return from an SSL-enabled page to a normal page, select [Yes] after [SSL session is released] appears.

Related Operations

View a site's server certificate <View certificate>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [View certificate].

Connecting to the last viewed page <Last URL>

When i-mode is disconnected, the last viewed page is recorded as Last URL.

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [Last URL] ▶ ●.

Note

- Pages may not be displayed if URL exceeds 2,000 single-byte characters.
- Additionally, some pages, such as download screens, may not be saved as Last URL.

Related Operations

Delete Last URL <Delete>

In the Last URL screen, press 📷 ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

Save Last URL as a bookmark <Add bookmark>

In the Last URL screen, press 📷 ▶ [Add bookmark] ▶ select a folder ▶ ● ▶ [OK].

Copy Last URL <Copy>

In the Last URL screen, press 📷 ▶ [Copy].

Note (Related operations)

Copying

- Up to 2,000 single-byte characters can be copied.

Changing the font size <Font size>

Set the font size of sites and screen memos.

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Font size].

2 Select the font size ▶ ●.

Setting the sound effects volume <Sound effect>

Set the sound effects volume from sites, Flash movies and screen memos.

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Sound effect].

- While viewing sites: Press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Sound effect].

2 Adjust the volume with ↕ ▶ ●.

Site layout and operation

Viewing Flash movies

Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Sites that use Flash movies are more expressive. Download and play Flash movies and set them as stand-by.

- When some part of a Flash movie is outside the screen, scroll it until the entire image appears so that it plays automatically.

Note

- When Set image display is set to [OFF], Flash movies cannot be viewed.
- Playback is not available for sound effects from Flash movies set as stand-by or incoming/outgoing call screen.
- Some Flash movies may cause the handset to vibrate during playback. Even if the vibrator is set to [OFF], the handset vibrates.
- Some Flash movies may play differently from when viewed at usual sites.
- When Flash movies are saved in Data box, Screen memo, or microSD Card and played, they may be viewed differently from when on a site, etc. depending on the save destination.

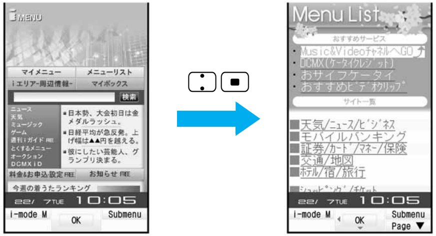
Selecting links and items

Links appear blue normally. A selected link is highlighted.

- Some links may be images. When selected, the image is outlined.

■ Selecting a link and moving to a new screen

Select a link with the Multi-guide key and move to a new screen. When a number appears in front of an item, press the corresponding dial key to move to a new screen. In some cases, this operation is not available.



■ Selecting items and inputting text in sites, etc.

Use the following methods to select items and input text in sites, etc.

Name	Display example	Details
Radio button	○: Unselected ●: Selected	Select only one entry.
Check box	☐: Unselected ☑: Selected	Select one entry or multiple entries.
Pull-down menu	東 京 足立区 北 区	Select pull-down menu to see a list of possible choices.
Text box	ID ☐ パスワード ☐	Use to input text. In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Quote] ▶ [Bar code reader], scan and enter the text information of JAN/QR codes.

■ Operations using the Optical TOUCH CRUISER

- While viewing sites, use the pointer (↖, ☝, etc.) to select items (☞P. 40).
- If Link is set, ☝ appears. Press ■ to move to the linked page.

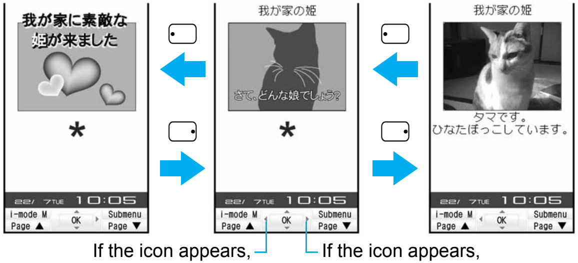
Moving to previous/next page (cache, history)

The FOMA terminal stores up to 50 pages of sites and how they have been viewed. Press □ to show the memory without transmission. This memory is called the “cache”.

Two pages previous

Previous page

Currently viewed page

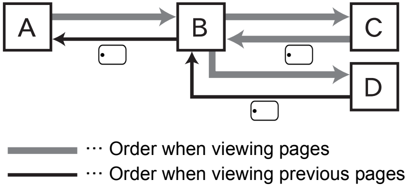


If the icon appears, return to the previous page.

If the icon appears, go to the next page.

- Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
- When pressing □ to scroll through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the cache size is exceeded or the page is set (created) to always download up-to-date information, the transmission is performed.
- Some Flash movies may play differently from when viewed at usual sites.
- The history and cache are reset when i-mode ends.
- Press □ repeatedly to return through previous pages. When using □ to return through previous pages (***C*** to ***B***) and another page (***D***) is viewed, pressing □ twice at ***D*** will not return to ***C***. Page will be return from ***B*** to ***A***.

Example: When viewing ***A*** → ***B*** → ***C*** → ***B*** → ***D***



··· Order when viewing pages

··· Order when viewing previous pages

Related Operations

Reload information <Reload>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Reload].

View a URL <URL>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [URL].

Save phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

While viewing sites, select a phone number or mail address ▶ 📷 ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.

Use display histories <History>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [History] ▶ select a history ▶ ▣.

Compose mail with site URL <Compose message>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Compose message] ▶ [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.

Create image mail from sites <New mail w/image>

1 **While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Compose message] ▶ [New mail w/image] ▶ select an image ▶ ■.**

2 **Select the attaching method.**
- **Select [Insert URL] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
- **Select [Attach image] ▶ [Agree] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
  - Images are saved.

Note (Related operations)

URL

- A URL is an address written in formats like ***http://www.xxx.△△.jp***. Up to 2,033 single-byte characters (including ***http://***, etc.) can be shown in the display.

History list

- A history of up to 50 pages viewed is recorded starting with the newest, and the pages can be displayed by using the history.

Creating image mail

- A confirmation screen, asking whether to attach location URL, appears for images with the location information added. Select [Yes] to attach the location URL in a mail message.
- Location URL is a URL of a site providing maps and peripheral area information with the addition of location information (longitude and latitude), geographical coordinate system* and accuracy level.

  * Geographical coordinate system is a standard for expressing the position on the earth as longitude and latitude.

マイメニュー (My Menu)

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

Register frequently visited sites to マイメニュー (My Menu) for convenient access.

- Register up to 45 sites. Some sites cannot be registered.

Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

1 **Select the マイメニュー (My Menu) registration menu ▶ ■.**

2 **Select the [Input password] field ▶ ■.**

3 **Enter the i-mode password ▶ ■ ▶ [決定] (OK).**

Note

- Page set-up may differ depending on the site.
- Upon subscribing to a paid site, the site is automatically registered to マイメニュー (My Menu).

Viewing sites registered in マイメニュー (My Menu)

1 **In stand-by, press i ▶ [iMenu] ▶ [マイメニュー] (My Menu).**

2 **Select a site ▶ ■.**

Note

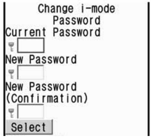
- For Dual Network Service, マイメニュー (My Menu) that was registered on a mova terminal may not be available on a FOMA terminal, and マイメニュー (My Menu) that was registered on a FOMA terminal may not be available on a mova terminal.

Change i-mode Password

Changing the i-mode password

A four-digit i-mode password is required for マイメニュー (My Menu) registration/deletion, Message Service, i-mode paid site subscription/cancellation and mail settings. Keep the i-mode password private.

1 **In stand-by, press i ▶ [iMenu] ▶ [English] ▶ [Options] ▶ [Change i-mode Password].**



Change i-mode Password

Current Password

New Password

New Password (Confirmation)

Select

2 **Select the [Current Password] field ▶ ● ▶ enter the current i-mode password ▶ ●.**

3 **Select the [New Password] field ▶ ● ▶ enter the new i-mode password ▶ ●.**

4 **Select the [New Password (Confirmation)] field ▶ ● ▶ enter the new i-mode password again ▶ ● ▶ [Select].**

Note

- In the case of a forgotten password, bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop. Password is reset to [0000].

Save login info

Saving ID and password

For some sites, a screen to enter ID and password may appear. Save the login information (ID and password) in advance to easily enter them in the text box.

- Save up to 20 login information.

1 **In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Save login info].**
   - While viewing sites: Press 📷 ▶ [Save login info].

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

3 **Select the number to register ▶ ●.**

4 **Select [Title] ▶ enter a title ▶ ●.**
   - Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

5 **Select [Item 1] ▶ enter an ID ▶ ●.**
   - Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

6 **Select [Item 2] ▶ enter a password ▶ ● ▶ i.**
   - Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

Note

- Do not use easily estimated numbers, characters or symbols for the ID or password for each service. Keep the ID and password private when using and managing them. If the ID or password is found and improperly used by others, DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of the users.
- The registered login information is available for both i-mode and Full Browser.

Using the registered login information
<Paste login info>

Paste the login information collectively in the text box. The login information cannot be pasted in some sites.

1. **While viewing sites, select a text box ▶ 📷 ▶ [Paste login info].**
2. **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
3. **Select a login information ▶ ▣.**

Deleting the login information

1. **In the login information saving list screen, select the login information ▶ 📷.**
2. **Select the deletion method ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

Internet access

Viewing Internet web pages

Enter an Internet web page address (URL: addresses that start with *http://*, etc.) to connect.

1. **In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Go to location] ▶ [Input URL].**
   - While viewing sites: Press 📷 ▶ [Go to location] ▶ [Input URL].
2. **Enter a URL ▶ ▣.**
   - Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including ***http://***, etc.).

Note

- Sites that are not i-mode compatible or have excess data may not appear properly.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum size for a page, data transmission stops. Only received data may appear.

Related Operations

View with Full Browser <Switch to FB>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Switch to FB] ▶ [Yes].

Scan a URL with the Bar code reader

In the URL entry screen, press 📷 ▶ [Quote] ▶ [Bar code reader].

View with correct characters <Character code>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Character code].

Note (Related operations)

Character code

- If the characters on a site do not appear properly, convert them to proper characters and view again.
- Some pages may not appear properly even after converting the character code.
- After the character code changes four times, the site or web page is shown with the original code.

Viewing pages from URL history <URL history>

The FOMA terminal stores up to nine Internet web pages accessed from [Go to location] of i-mode menu.

1. **In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Go to location] ▶ [URL history].**
   - While viewing sites: Press 📷 ▶ [Go to location] ▶ [URL history].
2. **Select a URL history ▶ ▣.**

Note

- When nine pages are exceeded, the oldest page in history is overwritten.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Delete the URL history

1 **Select a URL history ▶ 📷.**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Show URLs in the URL history <URL>

Select a URL history ▶ 📷 ▶ [URL].

- To copy the URL: Press 📷.

Bookmark

Saving sites and web pages as bookmarks

Save frequently visited sites and Internet web pages as bookmarks for convenient access.

Saving bookmarks

Save up to 100 bookmarks in total in a maximum of 20 folders.

- Each bookmarked URL can have up to 256 single-byte characters. URLs which exceed 256 characters cannot be saved.

1 **While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Bookmark] ▶ [Add bookmark].**

2 **Select a folder ▶ ■.**

3 **Select [OK].**

- To edit the title and save: Select [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ■.
  - Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.
- To change the save destination: Select [Change folder] ▶ select a folder ▶ ■ ▶ [OK].

Note

- Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from the beginning of a title are saved. If the title exceeds 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters, the extra characters are deleted. When a bookmark does not have a title, its URL appears in the Bookmark list.
- Selected or entered contents in sites, etc. are not saved in bookmarks.
- Some bookmarks may not be saved depending on the sites, etc.

Viewing sites and Internet web pages from bookmarks

1 **In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Bookmark].**

- While viewing sites: Press 📷 ▶ [Bookmark] ▶ [Bookmark list].
- To view a list of all Bookmarks: Press 📷 ▶ [All bookmarks].
- Bookmarks on the microSD Cards: Press 📷 ▶ [View microSD data].

2 **Select a bookmark ▶ ■.**

Note

- Bookmarks are listed in the order of use.
- Full Browser bookmarks do not appear on the Bookmark list of i-mode in the FOMA terminal handset. i-mode and Full Browser bookmarks are shown together in the Bookmark list of microSD Cards. 🔗 appears for i-mode bookmarks and 📎 appears for Full Browser bookmarks.

Related Operations

Attach a bookmark to i-mode mail <Attach to mail>

Select a bookmark ▶ 📷 ▶ [Attach to mail] ▶ compose and send a mail.

Create user folders <New folder>

In the folder list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [New folder] ▶ enter a folder name ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

Edit user folder names <Edit folder name>

Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [Edit folder name] ▶ edit the folder name ▶ ⊡.

Delete user folders <Delete>

1. **Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**
2. **Select the deletion method.**
    - ◆ **Select [Delete one folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**
    - ◆ **Select [Delete sel folders] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a folder ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
    - ◆ **Select [Del all in all fol] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**
3. **Select [Yes].**

Change bookmark titles <Edit title>

Select a bookmark ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Move bookmarks to another folder <Move>

1. **Select a bookmark ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move].**
2. **Select the transfer method.**
    - ◆ **Select [Move one].**
    - ◆ **Select [Move selected] ▶ select a bookmark ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
    - ◆ **Select [All in folder].**
3. **Select a folder ▶ ⊡.**

Delete bookmarks <Delete>

1. **Select a bookmark ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**
2. **Select the deletion method.**
    - ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
    - ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select the bookmark ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
    - ◆ **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**
3. **Select [Yes].**

Show bookmark URL <URL>

Select a bookmark ▶ 📷 ▶ [URL].

Screen Memo

Saving site contents

Use screen memos to save screens from sites, etc.

- Save up to 400 screen memos. Amount varies depending on the size of data. When screen memo data is large, fewer can be saved.

1 While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Add screen memo].

2 Select [OK].

- To edit the title and save: Select [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ⊡.
- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Note

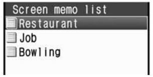
- Selected or entered contents in sites, etc. are not saved in the screen memo.
- When a screen memo is saved, if the maximum saved entries (400 entries) are reached or the available memory space is smaller than the maximum space for one entry (100 KB), a message appears notifying that the screen memo overwrites the other.

Viewing screen memos

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Screen Memo].

Meaning of icons

▤	Standard screen memo
▣	Protected screen memo
▦	FOMA card security function is set


Screen memo list
Restaurant
Job
Bowling

Screen memo list

2 Select a screen memo ▶ ■.

Note

- Screen memo is data from the time of saving. Screen memo may differ from the latest information.

Related Operations

Check URLs <URL>

Select a screen memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [URL].

- In the screen memo display screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [URL].

Check details <File property>

Select a screen memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [File property].

- In the screen memo display screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [File property].

Save screen memo images/background images in My picture <Save image/Save bckgrnd img>

In the screen memo display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Save image]/[Save bckgrnd img] ▶ save an image.

Create mail with screen memo URL <Compose message>

In the screen memo display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Compose message] ▶ [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.

Create mail with image from the screen memo <New mail w/image>

1 In the screen memo display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Compose message] ▶ [New mail w/image] ▶ select an image ▶ ■.

2 Select the attaching method.

- **Select [Insert URL] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
- **Select [Attach image] ▶ [Agree] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
  - Images are saved.

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from a screen memo to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

In the screen memo display screen, select a phone number or mail address ▶ 📷 ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.

Change screen memo titles <Edit title>

1 Select a screen memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title].

- In the screen memo display screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit title].

2 Edit the title ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Protect screen memos <Protect set>

1 Select a screen memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [Protect set].

- In the screen memo display screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Protect].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

Delete screen memos <Delete>

1 Select a screen memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

- In the screen memo display screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes]

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a screen memo ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

Deleting

- By [Delete all], protected entries are not deleted.

Downloading various data (files) from sites

- Data (file) that can be saved and the maximum size for downloading are as follows.
  - ■ Images (GIF, JPEG, SWF): 100 KB
  - ■ Melody (SMF, MFi): 100 KB
  - ■ PDF data: 2 MB
  - ■ Kisekae Tool: 2 MB
  - ■ Machi-chara: 500 KB
  - ■ Download dictionary: 6 KB
  - ■ Chara-den: 100 KB
  - ■ ToruCa: 1 KB
  - ■ ToruCa (details): 100 KB
  - ■ e-comic/e-dictionary/e-book: 10 MB
- For details on the number of saved entries ☞P. 514
- Data (files) whose save destination folder cannot be selected are saved in each prescribed save destination.
- Data (files) that are restricted for output to non-FOMA terminal devices can directly be saved to the microSD Card (Contents transfer compatible).
- Data (files) cannot be saved if the memory space is insufficient. Delete unnecessary data (files) and increase the available memory space to save.
- For details on folder configuration of the microSD Card ☞P. 334
- The default data (files) and Download dictionaries available on the FOMA terminal can be downloaded from [SH-MODE] (☞P. 413).

Downloading images

Save images, frames and stamps downloaded from sites, etc. Set saved images as stand-by and for other functions. Also, download Deco-mail or Decome-Anime Templates to use when composing messages.

1 While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Save image].

2 Select an image ▶ ■.

3 Select a folder ▶ 📷.

- When setting saved images as display screen: Select [Yes] ▶ select a set target ▶ ■.
  - • Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen to set the set target as stand-by.

Note

- JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs that are 20 × 20 pixels without file restrictions are saved as Deco-mail pictographs in the [Decomail pict] folder.
- Depending on the size, some downloaded pictures may not fully appear when set as stand-by, etc.

Related Operations

Download Deco-mail/Decome-Anime Templates and compose mail

Select a Deco-mail/Decome-Anime Template in sites, etc. ▶ ■ ▶ [Save] ▶ [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.

Save background images <Save bckgrnd img>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Save bckgrnd img] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.

Note (Related operations)

Deco-mail/Decome-Anime Templates

- If templates are not saved, a message cannot be composed.

Downloading i-melody

1 While viewing sites, select a melody ▶ ▣.

2 Select [Save] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ▣.

- To play back melodies: Select [Play].

Note

- When [Play] is selected, a melody is played at the same volume as the phone ring tone. When the phone ring tone is set to [Silent] or [Step], the melody is played at [Volume 1].

Downloading PDF files

- The following PDF types are available. The downloading methods vary depending on the type.
  - ■ PDF files that are to be saved after viewed:
    When the first page is downloaded, the PDF viewer is activated and the PDF file appears. Download continues for remaining pages. Use links to move to other pages and download the pages.
  - ■ PDF files that must be saved first before viewed:
    After the confirmation screen to download and save appears, download the entire PDF file and save it to a specified folder to view.

1 While viewing sites, select a PDF file ▶ ▣.

2 Save.

- For PDF files that are to be saved after viewed: In the PDF file display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Save] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.
- For PDF files that must be saved first before viewed: In the confirmation screen to download and save, select [Yes] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.
  - When saving is completed, the PDF file appears.

Note

- When PDF files that are larger than 500 KB are downloaded, a confirmation screen appears.
- PDF files with unknown file size cannot be downloaded.
- PDF files downloaded by an individual page cannot be saved to a microSD Card.
- If download fails, download the PDF file again to view. Some files may not be displayed even when downloaded again.
- When the number of bookmarks or marks exceeds ten, PDF files cannot be saved or closed. Delete bookmarks or marks so that the number of them becomes ten or less.

Downloading Kisekae Tool

1 While viewing sites, select a Kisekae Tool ▶ ▣.

2 Select [Save] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ▣.

- To check the Kisekae Tool: Select [Preview].

Note

- If save destination is the FOMA terminal handset, a confirmation screen asking whether to use Kisekae Tool appears when saving is completed.

Downloading Machi-chara

1 While viewing sites, select Machi-chara ▶ ▣.

2 Select [Save] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.

- To check the Machi-chara: Select [Preview].

3 Select the setting in the confirmation screen ▶ ▣.

Downloading download dictionaries

1 While viewing sites, select a download dictionary ▶ ■.

2 Select [Save].

- To check the dictionary: Select [Show].

3 Select a slot ▶ ■.

- To overwrite: Select [Yes].

4 Set whether to use the downloaded dictionary ▶ ■.

Note

- When five dictionaries are already in use, the confirmation screen does not appear. Clear the dictionary currently in use and try again (☞P. 423).

Downloading Chara-den

1 While viewing sites, select Chara-den ▶ ■.

2 Select [Save].

- To check the Chara-den: Select [Show].

Downloading ToruCa

1 While viewing sites, select ToruCa ▶ ■.

2 Select [Yes].

- To check the ToruCa: Select [Preview].

Downloading e-comic/e-dictionary/e-book

1 While viewing sites, select e-comic and others ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

2 Select [Yes] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ■.

Note

- The types (file extensions) of available e-comic and others are XMDF format (.zbf) and TEXT format (.zbk).

Upload

Uploading images or movies/i-motion to sites

Upload up to 2 MB of still pictures (JPEG images and GIF images) or movies/i-motion saved to the microSD Card or FOMA terminal handset.

- Supported file types differ depending on the site.
- Images that are restricted output from the FOMA terminal are not uploaded.
- Uploading methods differ depending on the site. Operate according to the screen.

Using highlighted data

Use highlighted data (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, etc.) in sites, mail or ToruCa and conveniently make a voice/Videophone call, send mail, or access an Internet web page. In addition, start 1Seg, set a timer for starting or recording 1Seg programs or start i-αppli.

- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To may not be used with decorated mail received from a PC.
- For details on using the address link function ☞P. 280
- Some highlighted data are not available.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)

Use phone number data to make a voice/Videophone call and send a PushTalk transmission or SMS.

1 **Select phone number data ▶ ▣.**

2 **Make a call.**

Note

- Calls cannot be made using Phone To (AV Phone To) while Keypad dial lock is set.
- PushTalk transmission cannot be sent when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].

Using Mail To

Use mail address data to send a mail.

1 **Select mail address data ▶ ▣.**

2 **Compose and send a mail.**

Note

- Mail To may not be available if two or more mail addresses appear together.
- Up to 50 single-byte character mail addresses are valid. Portions of addresses exceeding 50 characters are deleted after the 50th character.
- i-mode mail cannot be sent using Mail To while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Mail To is not available when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].

Using i-αppli To

Use i-αppli address (URL) data to start i-αppli.

1 **Select i-αppli address (URL) data ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

Note

- Start i-αppli when i-αppli To settings are set to [Yes].
- i-αppli does not start with URLs which exceed 512 single-byte characters.

Using Web To

Use address (URL) data to view sites, etc.

1 **Select address (URL) data ▶ ▣.**

Note

- Sites, etc. with URLs which exceed 2,033 single-byte characters cannot be viewed.

Related Operations

Use Web To while viewing i-mode mail

1 **Select address (URL) data in an i-mode mail message ▶ ■.**

2 **Select the connection method.**

- To connect using i-mode: Press ⓘ.
- To connect using Full Browser: Press 📖.

Save an image from the URL in the mail message <Save image>

Select a URL ▶ ■ ▶ ⓘ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Save/Add] ▶ [Save image] ▶ select an image ▶ ■ ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.

Using Media To

Start 1Seg from the link of program information or set a timer for starting or recording a program.

1 **Select the link of program information ▶ ■.**

Note

- When the Channel setting is not made, the Channel setting is activated if 1Seg is activated from Media To.

Setting i-mode

Set various functions relating to i-mode access.

Changing hosts from i-mode (ISP connection transmission) <Host selection>

Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.

■ ISP connection transmission

When changing the FOMA terminal host, connect to various providers (ISP). A subscription to the Packet Transmission Service is required to use the ISP connection transmission. Packet transmission charges apply for the ISP connection transmission.

- A subscription is not required for i-mode subscribers.
- Pake-hodai/Pake-hodai full does not apply to packet transmissions incurred for hosts other than DoCoMo.

■ Provider agreements

- A subscription to another provider is required for the ISP connection transmission. Contact providers for details regarding service contents (site/Internet access, mail, etc.) and subscription procedures.
- Some services may require a separate fee.
- Phone number and location information may be sent to the provider depending on the site.
- Save up to ten hosts in the FOMA terminal handset (excluding [i-mode (UIM)]).
- i-mode is not available when hosts other than [i-mode (UIM)] are used.

■ Saving hosts

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Host selection].

2 Select a number to register ▶ ■ ▶ [Edit].

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

4 Enter the host name ▶ ■.

- [Host ○] appears when a new host is saved. The host number selected in step 2 appears for ○.
- Enter up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters.

5 Enter the host number ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 99 single-byte characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols).

6 Enter the host address ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols).

7 Enter the host address for i-Channel ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols).

■ Changing hosts

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Host selection].

2 Select a host number ▶ ■ ▶ [Set].

Related Operations

Reset saved contents <Reset>

In sand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Host selection] ▶ select a host number ▶ ■ ▶ [Reset] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

Note (Related operations)

- When saved hosts are reset, the host is set to [i-mode (UIM)].

Setting to use the terminal data during Flash playback <Use phone info>

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Use phone info].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

Setting whether to display images <Set image display>

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Set image display].

- While viewing sites: Press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Set image display].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

Note

- When set to [OFF], Flash movies are not shown.
- Even when set to [OFF], images in i-mode mail and Message R/F are shown.

Setting to receive/reject PushTalk transmissions during i-mode transmissions <i-mode arrival act>

1 **In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [i-mode arrival act].**

2 **Set the priority ▶ ▣.**

Resetting i-mode settings <Reset i-mode>

- The following i-mode settings are reset to the default settings.
  - ■ Host selection
  - ■ Save login info
  - ■ Set image display
  - ■ Font size
  - ■ Certificates
  - ■ i-motion auto replay
  - ■ Secure setting (DoCoMo CA Host)
  - ■ Use phone info
  - ■ Sound effect
  - ■ i-mode arrival act
  - ■ i-Channel ticker

1 **In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Reset i-mode].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

Operating SSL certificates

Enabling/Disabling CA certificates <Certificates>

The following certificates are required to view SSL pages.

- CA certificate···Certificate issued by a certification company that is registered in the FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate···Certificate registered in the FOMA card (green/white) required to connect to the FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites.
- Client certificate···Certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting the FirstPass center menu in the FOMA terminal. The certificate is registered in the FOMA card (green/white).

1 **In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Certificates].**

2 **Select a certificate ▶ 📷.**

- ☑ appears for enabled certificates. ☐ appears for disabled ones.
- To show certificate details: Select a certificate ▶ ▣.

Note

- SSL pages using a disabled CA certificate cannot be viewed.

Setting FirstPass <Cert Operation>

Client certificates are required to access FirstPass compatible sites, etc.

Client certificate is a proof of FOMA contract. Request and download from the FirstPass center. Register Client certificates in the FOMA card (green/white) to access certificate compatible sites, etc.

- The FOMA card (blue) is not available.
- The SSL client authentication from i-mode browser is not available with FOMA Data Plan (Available with the ISP connection transmission regardless of payment plan).
- Set the correct date and time to access the FirstPass center.
- Some screens and operations for the FirstPass center may change.
- FirstPass is not available overseas.

Note

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Certificates are exchanged between sites and the FOMA terminal. Certificates are then validated for the client authentication.
- After reading and agreeing with "FirstPass ご利用規則" (Usage Rules), request a Client certificate.
- The PIN2 code is required to use a Client certificate. After entering the PIN2 code, all actions are presumed to be performed by the user. Keep the FOMA card and the PIN2 code private.
- If the FOMA card is lost or stolen, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual and cancel the Client certificate.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for sites or information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. All problems must be resolved between user and site.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification company guarantees security when using FirstPass or SSL. Use at own discretion.
- Packet transmission charges incurred from accessing a FirstPass compatible site with i-mode are included with Pake-hodai/ Pake-hodai full.

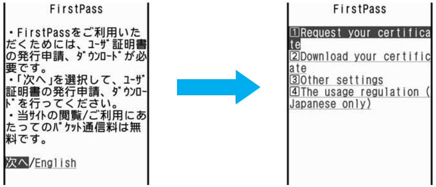
Client authentication

- The server and client authentication allow for a safer data transfer. Certificates are exchanged between sites and the FOMA terminal. Certificates are then authenticated. The client authentication allows for a safer data transmission.

Accessing the FirstPass center

Perform Client certificate operations from the FirstPass center.

1 In stand-by, press i ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Secure setting] ▶ [Cert Operation] ▶ [English].



FirstPass

・FirstPassをご利用いただくためには、ﾕｰｻﾞ証明書の発行申請、ﾀﾞｳﾝﾛｰﾄﾞが必要です。
・「次へ」を選択して、ﾕｰｻﾞ証明書の発行申請、ﾀﾞｳﾝﾛｰﾄﾞを行ってください。
・当ｻｲﾄの閲覧/ご利用にあたってのﾊﾟｹｯﾄ通信料は無料です。

次へ/English

FirstPass

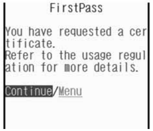
1 Request your certificate
2 Download your certificate
3 Other settings
4 The usage regulation (Japanese only)

Note

- Read [The usage regulation (Japanese only)] carefully before using FirstPass.
- Packet charges are not incurred for accessing to the FirstPass center.
- The following functions are not available during an access to the FirstPass center.
  - ■ Sending/Receiving i-mode mail (SMS can be received/replied)
  - ■ Check new message (Check new SMS)
  - ■ Receiving Message R/F
  - ■ Downloading i-motion
  - ■ Web To
  - ■ PushTalk

■ Applying for a Client certificate and downloading

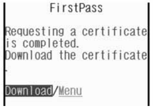
1 Access the FirstPass center ▶ [Request your certificate].



FirstPass

You have requested a certificate.
Refer to the usage regulation for more details.

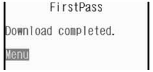
2 Select [Continue] ▶ enter the PIN2 code ▶ ▣.



FirstPass

Requesting a certificate is completed.
Download the certificate.

3 Select [Download] ▶ [Continue].



FirstPass

Download completed.

Note

- Always apply for a Client certificate when renewing or attempting to get a new certificate. A certificate cannot be downloaded without application.

■ Accessing sites with Client certificate

1 View a FirstPass compatible site ▶ [Yes].

2 Enter the PIN2 code ▶ ▣.

Note

- When an access to a FirstPass compatible site, etc. is attempted without Client certificate, a confirmation screen asking whether to access appears. Select [No] to end the SSL transmission. Try again after downloading the certificate from the FirstPass center.
- When the Client certificate expires, a confirmation screen asking whether to continue appears. Select [No] and the previous screen reappears. Try again after renewing the certificate from the FirstPass center.

■ Canceling Client certificates

Invalidate downloaded Client certificates.

1 Access the FirstPass center ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [Revoke your certificate] ▶ [Yes].

2 Enter the PIN2 code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Continue] ▶ [Continue] ▶ [Continue].

Note

- FirstPass compatible sites cannot be viewed after cancellation.
- To reactivate a Client certificate, apply and download again.

Changing the Certificate issuer <DoCoMo CA Host>

Set a host when downloading a Client certificate.

- The setting does not normally need to be changed.

1 **In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [Secure setting] ▶ [DoCoMo CA Host] ▶ [Host] ▶ [Edit].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

3 **Enter the host information ▶ ▣.**

- Enter up to 99 single-byte characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) for host information.

4 **Enter the host address ▶ ▣.**

- Enter up to 100 single-byte characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) for a host address.

i-motion

What is i-motion?

i-motion refers to image, voice and music data. Download i-motion to the FOMA terminal from i-motion sites, etc. and play the downloaded i-motion. Search for i-motion sites in [メニューリスト] of iMenu.

- i-motion types include the Standard type and the Streaming type.

Type	Playback method	Explanation
Standard type*1, 2	Played after download	Data are played after download.
	Played during download	Data are played during download.
Streaming type	Played during download (up to 10 MB)	Simultaneous playback while downloading data. When playback is complete, the played data is discarded, and cannot be played again or saved to the FOMA terminal.

*1 Some Standard type i-motion cannot be saved (data that cannot be played back).

*2 For Standard type i-motion, there are i-motion of up to 500 KB that is downloaded in one operation and i-motion of up to 10 MB that is downloaded in several batches even if the download is interrupted for an unspecified reason.

When setting i-motion as the ring tone or Receive display

- Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) cannot be set only for the Receive display.
- Video only i-motion (with no voice) cannot be set only for the ring tone.
- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the ring tone or the Receive display, the i-motion is set for both.
- When the Videophone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone are set to [Phone ring tone] if i-motion with video and voice is set as Phone ring tone, the actions are as follows.
  - ■ The Receive display returns to the default setting if a melody or voice only i-motion is set for the ring tone.
  - ■ The ring tone is set to [着信音1] if JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF, Flash movie or an image only i-motion is set for the Receive display.
  - ■ The Receive display follows the Incoming voice calls screen.
- Some i-motion are not available.

Download i-motion

Downloading i-motion from sites

Playing i-motion downloaded from sites

1 While viewing sites, select i-motion ▶ ⊡.

Standard type

- i-motion auto replay is set to [Yes]: During or after download, a playback begins.
- i-motion auto replay is set to [No]: After download, select [Play]/[Save], etc.

Streaming type

- Select [Yes] ▶ i-motion is played.

Note

- i-motion downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal, can be moved to a microSD Card. However, some i-motions cannot be moved depending on the download source site.
- For i-motion that plays during download, when unable to play due to weak signal, play it after download is completed.
- Weak signals may stop playback or distort the image during i-motion download.
- Date and time information on the FOMA terminal may be reset after the battery pack has been removed for a long time. In such cases, a playback for i-motion with an expiration date/replay period is not available.
- For i-motion with an expiration date, replay period and replay times, conditions for replay appears. When exceeding the period or times, the i-motion cannot be played.
- Some i-motion may not be played properly after being downloaded.

Saving i-motion

- Save up to 100 i-motion on the FOMA terminal handset. The number of i-motion that can be saved varies depending on the size of i-motion.
- i-motion is saved to the [i-mode] folder in i-motion of Data box. i-motion, which can be saved in the microSD Card, can be saved in the [i-motion] folder included in the [Movable contents] folder (Contents transfer compatible).
- i-motion saved can be played using the i-motion player.

1 While downloaded i-motion is played back/stopped (paused), press 📷 ▶ [Save].

2 Select a save destination ▶ ⊡.

Related Operations

View i-motion file properties <File property>

While downloaded i-motion is played back/stopped (paused), press 📷 ▶ [File property].

i-motion auto replay

Setting whether to automatically replay i-motion

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-mode setting] ▶ [i-motion auto replay].

2 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Note

- Streaming type i-motion are always automatically replayed, regardless of the Auto replay settings.
- Some i-motion are not automatically replayed, even when Auto replay is set to [Yes].

What is i-Channel?

※ The i-Channel is only available in Japanese.

i-Channel is a service that sends news, weather and other information graphically to i-Channel supported terminals. Receive such information periodically and show the latest information in stand-by using a ticker or press the i-Channel supported key to show the latest information in a list of channels (To show a list of channels ☞P. 192).

i-Channel is a paid service that requires a subscription (the i-mode subscription is also required).

i-Channel has a "ベーシックチャネル (Basic channel)" provided by DoCoMo and "おこのみチャネル (Favorite channel)" provided by non-DoCoMo IP (Information Providers). Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by "Basic channel" are not incurred. Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by "Favorite channel" that can be customized are incurred. However, note that the i-Channel service charge, packet transmission charges are incurred for when detailed information are viewed. Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information and detailed information during international roaming are incurred.

Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version" for details on using i-Channel.

Showing i-Channel

Subscribe to i-Channel, receive i-Channel information and automatically show them in the stand-by ticker. Connect to the site from the channel list to retrieve detailed information.

1 In stand-by, press CLR (ch).

- Alternatively, press i in stand-by ▶ [i-Channel] ▶ [Run i-Channel list].
- While i-αppli stand-by is set: Press CLR (ch) (for 1+ seconds).

2 Select a channel ▶ ■.

Note

Receiving the latest information

- Information may not be received when the handset is turned off or signal is weak, such as when outside the service area. A ticker appears in stand-by if information is received when the channel list is shown.
- The ring tone and Vibrator are not activated even when information is received. However, while data is received, the mail send/received LED flashes.
- Depending on settings, information may be received when the channel list is shown.

Changing the i-Channel host

- Set the i-Channel host in i-mode setting host selection. The setting does not normally need to be changed.
- The i-Channel ticker does not appear when the i-Channel host is changed. However, when the channel list is viewed, the latest information is received and the i-Channel ticker appears.
- Information may not be automatically updated when the host is changed. View the channel list to receive the latest information.

Related Operations

Adjust the sound effects volume <Sound effect>

In the channel list, press ◎ ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Sound effect] ▶ adjust the volume ⁝ ▶ ■.

Note (Related operations)

- The i-Channel volume setting is linked with the Sound effect for i-mode.

i-Channel ticker

Setting i-Channel

Set whether to show the i-Channel ticker on the stand-by display.

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-Channel] ▶ [i-Channel ticker] ▶ [ON].

- The operation is completed if [OFF] is set.

2 Select the [Ticker font size] field ▶ ■ ▶ select the size ▶ ■.

- The sample of a ticker appears at the lower part of the display.

3 Select the [Ticker color] field ▶ ■ ▶ select the color ▶ ■.

4 Select the [Ticker speed] field ▶ ■ ▶ select the speed ▶ ■ ▶ ⓘ.

Note

- When i-Channel ticker is set at the same time with Calendar display or Stand-by memo display, i-Channel ticker does not appear while displaying Calendar. Press ▭ in the stand-by display (i-Channel ticker appears) to switch from Calendar display → i-Channel ticker → Stand-by memo display (i-Channel ticker appears).
- When the 2in1 is used, set whether to show the i-Channel ticker for each mode of the 2in1.
- In the following cases, the i-Channel ticker does not appear.
  - ■ When playing i-motion set to stand-by
  - ■ When activating i-αppli in stand-by
  - ■ While All lock is set
  - ■ While Function lock is applied to i-mode/i-Channel
  - ■ While the Public mode (Drive mode) is set

Reset i-Channel

Resetting the i-Channel settings

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [i-Channel] ▶ [Reset i-Channel].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- The i-Channel ticker does not appear. When the information is automatically updated or CLR (ch) is pressed in stand-by to receive the latest information, the information is automatically shown in the stand-by ticker.

▶MEMO◀

Mail

Creating i-mode mail/Deco-mail

Receiving and using i-mode mail

Operating the mailbox

Using mail history

Mail settings

Using message service

Using Early Warning “Area Mail”

Using SMS

What is i-mode mail?

Subscribe to i-mode service to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals and e-mail via the Internet.
Attach up to ten files (pictures, movie files, etc.) in total of 2 MB to a message. Also, Deco-mail is available. Send expressive mail by changing text color, character size, and background color and inserting Deco-mail pictographs.

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on i-mode mail.

Mail menu

Displaying Mail menu

1 In stand-by, press ✉.

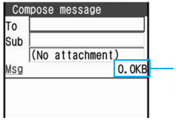
Menu	Function	Page
Inbox	View, reply to, or forward received mail.	P. 207 P. 209
Outbox	View or resend sent mail.	P. 204 P. 209
Unsent messages	Edit or send unsent messages.	P. 204 P. 209
Compose message	Compose and send or save mail.	P. 196 P. 204
Compose Decome-Anime	Compose and send or save Decome-Anime.	P. 200
Compose SMS	Compose and send or save SMS.	P. 226
Template	Edit or view Deco-mail/Decome-Anime Templates.	P. 201
Check new message	Check i-mode center for new mail and Message R/F.	P. 207
Check new SMS	Check SMS center for stored SMS.	P. 227
Receive option	Select mail to receive from i-mode center.	P. 206
WEB Mail*	Access the WEB mail site, and compose and send mail from Address B.	–
Mail setting	Perform various i-mode mail and SMS related settings.	P. 217

* Available when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] or [B mode]. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [2in1]” for details on WEB mail.

Compose and send i-mode mail

Composing and sending i-mode mail

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Compose message].



Compose message
To
Sub
(No attachment)
Msg 0.0KB

The bytes of message text entered

Compose message screen

2 Select the [To] field ▶ ⊡ ▶ select the input method.

- **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter an address ▶ ⊡.**
  - Enter up to 50 single-byte characters.
- **Select [Sent messages] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ⊡ ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Rcvd messages] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ⊡ ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Mail members] ▶ select a mail member ▶ ⊡.**

- To send to multiple ones: Enter the first member to add the input field ▶ select an input field ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a sending type ▶ ⊡ ▶ enter an address.
  - Add up to four addresses.

- To change the address: Select the address ▶ ■ ▶ enter an address.
- To check the address: Select the address ▶ ■ ▶ [View address].
- To delete the address: Select the address ▶ ■ ▶ [Delete address] ▶ [Yes].
- ***@docomo.ne.jp*** is not necessary when sending to i-mode terminals.
- When the recipient is saved in the phonebook, the name appears in the recipient field.

3 Select the [Sub] field ▶ ■ ▶ enter a subject ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.
- [↲] (line breaks) are not available for Subject.

4 Select [Msg] ▶ enter the message text ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters (10,000 bytes).
- [↲] (line breaks) are counted as a double-byte character. Single- and double-byte spaces (blanks) are counted as single- and double-byte characters, respectively.
- In the message entry screen, confirm a character in the character entry area in the middle or bottom of the display, press ■ and move it to the cursor location to insert.
- To insert a phrase: In the message entry screen, press 📷 ▶ [Insert phrase] ▶ select the phrase ▶ ■ ▶ ■.
- To add a signature: In the compose message screen/message entry screen, press 📷 ▶ [Add signature].
- To attach location URL: In the message entry screen, press 📷 ▶ [Location info] ▶ [From position loc.]/[From loc. history]/[From phonebook] ▶ select the location information.
  - For details on selecting location information ☞"Adding location information" on P. 280
- To create Deco-mail: In the message entry screen, press 📷 ▶ [Decorate mail].

5 Press ▤.

- To cancel the sending: Press ■/☎.
  - Sending may occur depending on the timing.
- When i-mode mail cannot be sent outside the service area ☞"Sending mail automatically in service area" on P. 204

Note

- In the viewer position, use the commercially available Bluetooth compatible keyboard to compose i-mode mail (☞P. 409).
- If the FOMA terminal is switched to viewer position in the text input screen, editing is ended and the compose message screen reappears.
- Some receiving models may not be able to receive the title completely.
- i-mode mail that could not be sent by an unspecified reason is saved as unsent mail.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.
- When there is no available memory, sent mail is automatically overwritten starting from the oldest unprotected sent mail.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], i-mode mail cannot be composed and sent.
- If address is ***phone number*** or ***phone number@docomo.ne.jp***, the phonebook is automatically checked for Secret code. If set, Secret code is added and sent.
- When sending mail to a non-DoCoMo address for which a Secret code has been set, error messages such as for unknown recipients are sometimes not received.
- When i-mode mail including pictographs is sent to a mobile phone of other mobile phone companies, pictographs are automatically converted and similar ones appear on the receiver side. However, they may not appear correctly depending on the receiver's mobile phone model and function.

Location information

- Character count includes location URL.
- ⚐ is placed before location URL.

Broadcast

Send an identical i-mode message to up to five people simultaneously.

To	Receiver's address. Addresses entered in [To] appear on the other recipient's screen.
Cc	Used to send carbon copy to a third party.
Bcc	Used to send blind carbon copy to a third party. Unlike [Cc], addresses are invisible to other recipients.

- Sent mail is saved as one mail. All successful recipients are shown in the sent message details screen.
- If mail is not sent to all recipients, one copy is saved in Sent messages and another in Unsent messages. Unsuccessful recipients are shown in Unsent messages.

■ Changing the sending type

1 **Select an address entry other than the first entry ▶ ▣ ▶ [Sending type].**

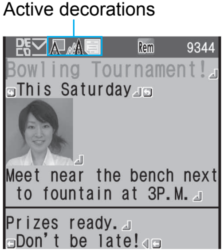
2 **Select the sending type ▶ ▣.**

Deco-mail

Creating and sending Deco-mail

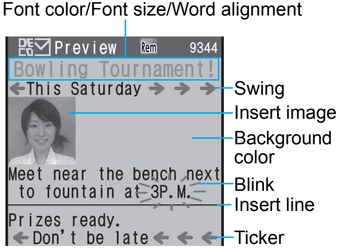
Change color and font size of message text, insert images such as Flash movies or change background color when creating i-mode mail.

- Create Deco-mail message text up to 10,000 bytes. Up to 20 Deco-mail pictographs and images can be inserted. Note that their total size cannot exceed 90 KB. However, for Flash movies, up to two files can be inserted.



Bowling Tournament!
This Saturday
Meet near the bench next to fountain at 3P.M.
Prizes ready.
Don't be late!

Message entry screen



Bowling Tournament!
This Saturday
Meet near the bench next to fountain at 3P.M.
Prizes ready.
Don't be late

Preview screen

1 **In the message entry screen, press 📷 ▶ [Decorate mail].**

2 **Select a decoration method from the palette and then decorate.**

- For details on decoration content and operation method ☞P. 198
- Alternatively, select a decoration name from Submenu.
- To return to the palette screen after decoration: Press ✉.

3 **Press ▣ ▶ i.**

■ Decoration content and operation method

Decoration name	Decoration content	Decoration method
Font color A COLOR	Add color to characters. Pictographs are also shown in selected color. To return a pictograph to default color, select [Default].	Select a color ▶ ▣ ▶ input text

Decoration name	Decoration content	Decoration method
Font size SIZE	Change the font size. ● The size of Deco-mail pictographs cannot be changed.	Select the font size ▶ ■ ▶ input text
Insert image IMAGE	Insert image in message. Animated images such as animated GIFs stop after a set length of time.	■ at the location to insert ▶ select an image ▶ ▮
Blink BLINK	Set text to blink. Stops after a set length of time.	[Select] ▶ input text
Ticker TICK	Show ticker. Automatically stops after a set length of time.	[Select] ▶ input text
Swing SWING	Wobble text sideways. Automatically stops after a set length of time.	[Select] ▶ input text
Word alignment ALIGN	Change the alignment of text.	Select the position ▶ ■ ▶ input text
Insert line LINE	Add line (horizontal rule) in message text. One line's worth is inserted.	■ at the location to insert
Background color BG.	Add message text background color.	Select the background color ▶ ■
Edit decoration EDIT	Specify a range and add decorations. ● Insert image, Insert line and Background color are not available.	■ at the start point ▶ ■ at the end point ▶ set decoration
Undo UNDO	Undo the last operation.	–

Decoration name	Decoration content	Decoration method
Reset decoration NoDECO	Enter undecorated characters. ● All the decorations that have been already inserted are not canceled.	–
Reset all	Cancel all decorations.	–
Input	Input text.	Alternatively, press ✉ when the palette is displayed.
Preview	Preview decoration.	Alternatively, press ▮ (for 1+ seconds).

Key operation	Decoration type	Decoration content
📖	Cursor/Sel deco	Switch between cursor movement in message text and cursor movement in palette selection.
▮	Range	Press to select the range to decorate.

Note

- Mail with URL is received depending on the the receiving i-mode terminal. However, some terminals receive mail only with message text and without a URL.
- When the receiving i-mode terminal does not support the Deco-mail with a Flash movie inserted, mail with URL is received. However, mail without decoration may be received depending on the terminal.
- When the decoration is determined, the status icon DECO✉ appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Inserting images

- If the same image is continuously inserted, 20 or more can be inserted. However, images are not deemed identical in the following cases.
  - ■ When an image is inserted/pasted after a message with the image is saved
  - ■ When an image included in a signature is inserted into a message with the image
- To display the inserted image information, move the cursor right ahead of the image and select [File property] from the Submenu.
- Decorations and inserted images are quoted when replying with quote or forwarding Deco-mail (excluding images with file restrictions).

Setting range and decorating

1 Input text ▶ 📷 ▶ [Decorate mail].

2 Press 📷 ▶ [Edit decoration].

- Alternatively, press ⓘ.

3 Move the cursor to the location to start decorating ▶ ●.

- To select all the text: Press ⓘ.
- To cancel the selection: Press ✉.

4 Move the cursor to the location to end decorating ▶ ●.

5 Decorate.

- Add decorations to the same range.

6 After decorating, press ✉.

Related Operations

Set whether to display the palette <Palette>

In the message entry screen, press 📷 ▶ [Palette] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

Compose Decome-Anime

Composing and sending Decome-Anime

What is Decome-Anime?

Decome-Anime is an expressive mail service that uses Decome-Anime Templates and Flash images with a message or image inserted. In addition to the default templates, other templates can be created using templates downloaded from sites, etc.

Composing and sending Decome-Anime using Decome-Anime Template

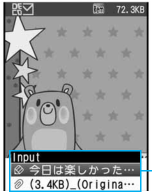
- Compose Decome-Anime Template and image up to 90 KB in total. Also, compose a message up to 10,000 bytes. For exceeding these bytes, messages or images cannot be inserted.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Compose Decome-Anime] ▶ [Edit].

- To select and create a template: In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Template] ▶ [Decome-Anime Template].
- For a template in the microSD Card: In Decome-Anime Template list, press 📷 ▶ [View microSD data].

2 Select a template ▶ ⓘ.

- To check the template: Select the template ▶ ●.



Editing items list

- The items that can be edited are displayed in list.

Meaning of icons

✎	Edit text.
📎	Edit image.

3 Select the edit item ▶ ▣ ▶ edit.

- **Select [Input] ▶ input text ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Font color] ▶ select the font color ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Select image] ▶ select the image ▶ ▤.**
- **Select [Delete] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Return to orig img] ▶ [Yes].**
- Items for editing text may appear differently from the ones for editing image.
- To display in preview: Press ✉ (or 📷 ▶ [Preview]).
  - To return to the Decome-Anime editing screen: Press ▤.
  - To replay: Press 📖.
  - To stop playing: Press ✉.
- To reset editing: Press 📖 ▶ [Yes].

4 Press ▤.

- To re-select a template: In the Decome-Anime editing screen or the compose Decome-Anime screen, press 📷 ▶ [Open template] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a template ▶ ▤.

5 Enter an address and a subject, and send the Decome-Anime.

- To save the Decome-Anime: Press 📷 ▶ [Save] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- When the receiving i-mode terminal does not support the Decome-Anime, mail with URL is received. However, some terminals receive mail only with message inserted.
- Editing items depend on the templates.
- Sent/Received Decome-Anime cannot be edited again. Also, Decome-Anime that is deleted while editing or failed to send cannot be edited again.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], Decome-Anime cannot be composed and sent.
- The following operations cannot be performed on composing Decome-Anime.
  - ■ Inserting Deco-mail pictograph
  - ■ Changing font size
  - ■ Changing the position inserted text or images
  - ■ Changing font
  - ■ Pasting signature
- The text input screen displays the remaining bytes of the number of characters that can be input from the end of the text which is being input.
- Character count includes [↵] (line breaks). The number of count differs depending on the position inserted line break.
- When the total input number exceeds 10,000 bytes, inputting characters may not be possible even though the remaining bytes in the text input screen are not 0.
- When Decome-Anime is combined, the size of image file is increased, and an image whose size is less than the remaining bytes of the mail may not be able to be inserted.
- When an animated GIF or Flash movie is inserted, the mail size may be over for sending Decome-Anime.

Sending using a template

Templates are Deco-mail/Decome-Anime models with set layout and decorations. In addition to the default templates, other templates can be downloaded from sites, etc. and save created, sent or received Deco-mail as a template.

- The number of templates that can be saved is as follows.
  - ■ Deco-mail template: Up to 100 templates
  - ■ Decome-Anime Template: Up to 100 templates

Using a template to create Deco-mail <Template>

- For details on composing Decome-Anime ☞P. 200

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Template] ▶ [Decome-Template].

Continued on next page ▶▶

- In the compose message screen or message entry screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Open template].

2 **Select a template ▶ ⓘ.**

- To check the template: Select the template ▶ ▣.

Note

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], templates cannot be used.

Saving Deco-mail as a template <Save template>

Mail is saved in [Decome-Template] of [Template] of the Mail menu.

1 **In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Add/Save] ▶ [Save template] ▶ [Yes].**

- While composing mail: In the compose message screen, press 📷 ▶ [Save template] ▶ [Yes].
  - When Deco-mail created by opening a Deco-mail template, the saving method can be selected.

Note

- The file names of saved templates are labeled automatically according to the date and time when templates were saved.
  Example: Save at 1:05:07 P.M. on July 22, 2008 → [080722_130507]
- Attachments are not saved with created, sent or received Deco-mail.
- When an inserted image has file restriction, the image is deleted and saved.
- The Decome-Anime cannot be saved as a template.

Related Operations

Check Deco-mail images <View image in mail>

In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [View image in mail] ▶ select an image ▶ ▣.

- To save images: Select an image ▶ ⓘ ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.
- To save Deco-mail pictograph: Select an image ▶ ⓘ ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

- Images are saved in a selected save destination in My picture of Data box. Deco-mail pictographs are saved in the [Decomail pict] folder in My picture of Data box.

Editing Deco-mail templates <Edit>

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Template] ▶ [Decome-Template].**

2 **Select a template ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit].**

3 **Edit Deco-mail ▶ ▣ ▶ select the saving method ▶ ▣.**

Related Operations

Edit Deco-mail/Decome-Anime Template titles <Edit title>

Select a template ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ▣.

Delete Deco-mail/Decome-Anime Templates <Delete>

1 **Select a template ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a template ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

View detailed information of Deco-mail/Decome-Anime Templates <File property>

Select a template ▶ 📷 ▶ [File property].

Attaching a file

Send i-mode mail attached still pictures, movies/i-motion, etc.

- Attach up to ten files in a total size of up to 2 MB.
- Files with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.

Supported attachment types

Image	JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF, Flash movies
Melody	SMF, MFi
i-motion	MP4
ToruCa, ToruCa (details)	ToruCa: Up to 1 KB ToruCa (details): Up to 100 KB
PDF	PDF files being downloaded or PDF files of individual pages partially downloaded cannot be attached
Phonebook	vCard
Schedule	vCalendar
Bookmark	vBookmark
Document	BMP, PNG, Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Text
Other	Other files in the microSD Card
Start cam (still)	Start the camera and attach shot still pictures
Start cam (movie)	Start the camera and attach shot movies

1 In the compose message screen, select the attachment field (No attachment) ▶ ▣.

2 Select the file to attach.

- **Select [Image] ▶ select an image ▶ ⓘ.**
- **Select [Melody] ▶ select a melody ▶ ⓘ.**
- **Select [i-motion] ▶ select i-motion ▶ ⓘ.**
- **Select [ToruCa] ▶ select a ToruCa ▶ ⓘ.**
- **Select [PDF] ▶ select a PDF ▶ ⓘ.**
- **Select [Phonebook] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ▣ ▶ select a name ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Schedule] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ▣ ▶ (select a day ▶ ⓘ)* ▶ select a schedule ▶ ▣.**
  * No operation is needed if [microSD] is selected as the save destination.
- **Select [Bookmark] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ▣ ▶ select a bookmark ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Document] ▶ select a file ▶ ⓘ.**
- **Select [Other] ▶ select a file ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Start cam (still)] ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Start cam (movie)] ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣ ▶ [Save].**

Note

- Depending on the receiving side terminal, files may not be received nor correctly displayed/played. Also, the quality of movies may deteriorate or movies may be converted to continuous still pictures.
- Cut out to [For mail (short)] by using image cutter to send movie/i-motion exceeding 500 KB to a terminal other than the 2 MB compatible models.
- A confirmation screen, asking whether to attach location URL, appears for images with the location information added. Select [Yes] to attach the location URL in a mail message.
- Attached melody is played when melodies are attached to Decome-Anime with sound effects.

Start camera (still picture)

- Image size is set to ***stand-by: 480×854***.
- Shot still pictures are saved to the [Camera] folder in My picture of Data box.

Start camera (movie)

- Image size is set to ***QCIF: 176×144***.
- Shot movies are saved to the [Camera] folder in i-motion of Data box.
- When sending the recorded movie to a terminal other than the 2 MB compatible models, set the File size limit to [For mail (short)] or set the Common replay mode to [ON].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Add attachment file

Select the attachment field ▶ ▣ ▶ [Attach] ▶ proceed to step 2 of “Attaching a file”.

Release attached file

1 **Select the attachment field ▶ ▣ ▶ select a file ▶ 📷.**

2 **Select the releasing method.**
  - ◆ **Select [Release one].**
  - ◆ **Select [Release selected] ▶ select a file ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
  - ◆ **Select [Release all].**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Save i-mode mail

Saving i-mode mail and sending later

Saving i-mode mail

1 **In the compose message screen, press 📷 ▶ [Save].**
- Saved in Unsent messages.

Sending mail automatically in service area

When mail cannot be sent outside the service area, that mail is sent automatically after returning to the service area.

- Make up to 30 send reservations. Mail with a send reservation is saved in [Drafts].
- When the mail is automatically sent, the stock icon ✉ (new auto send result) appears, and the auto send result can be checked.
- The mail, which is not automatically sent, is save in Unsent messages, and ✉ appears in the upper part of the display.

1 **In the compose message screen, press 📷 ▶ [Send reservation].**

Related Operations

Check the error information of auto send <Auto send error>

Select mail with send reservation and press 📷 ▶ [In-area auto send] ▶ [Auto send error].

Cancel send reservation <Cancel send res>

1 **Select mail with send reservation and press 📷 ▶ [In-area auto send] ▶ [Cancel send res].**
- To cancel the selected mail with send reservation only: Press 📖.

2 **Select the cancel method ▶ ▣.**

Note (Related operations)

Canceling send reservation

- Send reservation is cancelled when the following operations are performed.
  - ■ When mail with send reservation is selected from Unsent messages and edited
  - ■ When i-mode setting host selection is changed
  - ■ When the FOMA card is replaced with another FOMA card

Editing and sending sent/saved i-mode mail

■ Editing and resending sent mail

1 **In the sent messages list screen, select mail ▶ ▣ ▶ 📷.**

2 **Edit and resend mail.**
- ◆ **Select [Edit] ▶ edit mail ▶ ⅰ.**
- ◆ **Select [Resend].**

■ Editing and sending saved mail

1 **In the unsent messages list screen, select mail ▶ ▣ ▶ edit mail ▶ ⅰ.**

Auto receive

Receiving i-mode mail

- The following icons appear when mail is received.

Meaning of icons

✉ (green)	Unread i-mode mail
✉SMS	Unread i-mode mail and SMS
✉	Received i-mode mail and SMS in the FOMA terminal are full
✉ (red)	Received i-mode mail and SMS in the FOMA terminal, SMS in FOMA card are full
✉ (blue)	Unread i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F (during Full Browser only)
SMS (red font)	Unread SMS
SMS (blue font)	SMS in FOMA card is full
✉	Unread Area Mail
✉	Mail is at i-mode center
✉	i-mode center is full

- • ✉ may not appear even when mail is held at the i-mode center.
- • ✉ and ✉ do not appear when Receive option setting is set to [ON].

Note

- Up to 100 KB for each i-mode mail (including attached files) can be automatically received. Attached files exceeding 100 KB can be manually retrieved from the i-mode center.
- When there is no available memory, received mail is automatically overwritten starting from the oldest unprotected read mail.
- i-mode mail or Message R/F is held at the i-mode center when one of the following occurs.
  - ■ Handset is turned off
  - ■ While in the Self mode
  - ■ Outside the service area
  - ■ Using Videophone
  - ■ During PushTalk transmission
  - ■ While Omakase Lock is set
  - ■ During Ir exchange
  - ■ While connected to the FirstPass center
  - ■ When there is no available space due to protected or unread i-mode mail
  - ■ During iC transmission
  - ■ During Bluetooth communication

Opening new i-mode mail

1 Receive i-mode mail automatically (✉ flashes).

- To cancel the receiving: Press ■.
  - • Receiving may occur depending on the timing.

2 After reception, the receive complete screen appears and the mail ring tone sounds (✉ appears).

- If no operations are performed in the receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears.
- The stock icon ✉ (mail message) appears when the stand-by display reappears.

Stopping the ring tone

- To show the received message list screen: Press ■.
- To show the screen before reception: Press CLR or ☎.
- To show the receive complete screen: Press ↕.

3 Select [Mail] ▶ select mail ▶ ■.

Note

- Check with FOMA terminal if i-mode mail received from the FOMA terminal and PCs were received as To, Cc or Bcc.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- Mail ring tone does not sound if mail is received while a call is in progress, i-αppli is running, the camera is being activated, GPS positioning is being performed, 1Seg is being watched (excluding when using Multi Window) or pattern definitions are being updated.

Displaying the mail ticker <Mail ticker setting>

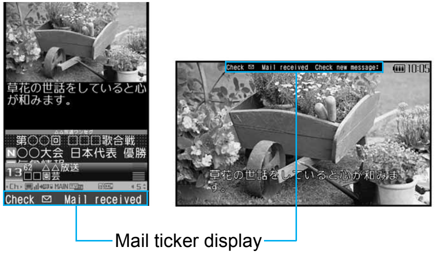
When Mail ticker is set to [Sender+title] or [Only notice], the mail ticker appears in the screen if mail is received while other functions are being activated.

- In the following cases, the mail ticker cannot be displayed.
  - ■ In the normal position
    - • Camera is being activated
    - • Full-screen is being displayed
  - ■ In the viewer position
    - • Camera (still picture, movie) is being activated
    - • Full Browser is being activated
    - • Horizontal wide display compatible data of Manga&BookReader is being displayed
    - • Image in My picture is being displayed
    - • Rcv/Auto send disp is [Operation first] and i-motion is being played

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Mail ticker setting].

2 Select an item ▶ ■.

Example: When mail is received while 1Seg is being watched


草花の世話をしていると心が和みます。
第〇〇回 □□□歌合戦
N〇〇大会 日本代表 優勝
13 62 △△放送
□□園芸
Check ✉ Mail received
Check ✉ Mail received Check new message:
10:05
草花の世話をしていると心が和みます。
Mail ticker display

- To view the Inbox list screen: Press ✉ (for 1+ seconds).
  - • In the viewer position: Press ▣ (for 1+ seconds) or touch the mail ticker.
- To hide the mail ticker: Press ▣.
  - • In the viewer position: Press ▣ or touch the area other than the mail ticker.

Note

- When [Sender+title] is set, the sender is not saved or Function lock is applied to the Phonebook, the sender's mail address appears.
- If Function lock is applied to the Mail or Folder security for the save destination folder of received mail is set, even when Mail ticker is set to [Sender+title], only notification appears.

Receive option

Selecting and receiving i-mode mail

After checking the subject of the i-mode mail stored at the i-mode center, select mail to receive or delete mail stored at the i-mode center before receiving. Set receive option setting to [ON] in advance to make Receive option available. When set to [ON], i-mode mail cannot be automatically received.

- When i-mode mail is received at the i-mode center, [Mail at center] appears.
- For receive option setting ☞P. 219

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Receive option] ▶ [Receive option].

2 Select an item for each mail ▶ ■.

Attached file icon

📷	Image	■	ToruCa
♪	Melody	📄	Other files
🎥	i-motion		

- To delete all mail: Select [削除] at the bottom of the page ▶ [決定].

3 **Select [受信/削除] ▶ [決定].**

- To re-select mail: Select [キャンセル].

Related Operations

Selectively receive mail from i-mode <Receive option>

In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [iMenu] ▶ [メニューリスト] ▶ [メール選択受信].

Check new message

Checking for new i-mode mail

Received i-mode mail or Message R/F are held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in the Self mode or turned off. Check and retrieve mail from the i-mode center.

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Check new message].**

- Alternatively, press ✉ (twice) or ⓘ ▶ [Check new message] to check.
- While mail is being retrieved, ✉, Ⓡ (green), and Ⓕ (green) flash sequentially.

Reply to i-mode mail

Replying to i-mode mail

Reply to i-mode mail with message quoted or unquoted.

1 **In the received message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Reply/Forward].**

- In the received messages list screen/received message details screen: Press ⓘ ▶ [i-mode mail]/[Decome-Anime] ▶ proceed to step 3.

2 **Select the reply method ▶ ●.**

- For [Reply]: Select [Reply] ▶ [i-mode mail]/[Decome-Anime].

3 **Compose and send a mail.**

Note

- [Re:] is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.
- [>] is inserted at the beginning of message and received mail content is quoted for a reply with quote.
- The Decome-Anime cannot be replied with quote.
- Replies cannot be sent to sender with mail address exceeding 50 characters. When mail cannot be replied to, ☒ appears in the received message details screen.

Related Operations

Send a quick reply <Quick reply>

In the received message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Reply/Forward] ▶ [Quick reply] ▶ select the text ▶ ● ▶ ⓘ.

Note (Related operations)

- Register message as Quick reply mail (☞P. 220) in advance.

Forward i-mode mail

Forwarding to another address

1 **In the received message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Reply/Forward] ▶ [Forward].**

2 **Enter an address and send a mail.**

Note

- [Fw:] is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.
- Attachment files must be totally retrieved before forwarded. Attached files for manual reception that are not acquired yet cannot be forwarded.
- If the mail that is addressed to Address B is forwarded when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the mail is sent from Address A and saved in the Outbox of Address A.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- When Decome-Anime is forwarded, editing Decome-Anime is not available. Also, the confirmation screen stating that message cannot be forwarded may appear.

Register address/Add to phonebook

Adding mail addresses and phone numbers to phonebook

Add the received mail's sender and the sent mail's address, or mail address and phone number in message text to the phonebook.

1 In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Add/Save] ▶ [Register address].

- To add phone numbers and mail addresses in message text: Select a phone number or mail address ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add/Save] ▶ [Add to phonebook].

2 Add to the phonebook.

Note

- If there are multiple sender or mail address, the mail address selection screen appears after selecting [Register address]. Select a sender or mail address.
- For SMS, the sender's or recipient's phone number is saved in the phone number field of phonebook.

Acquiring attached files for manual reception

When the size of received i-mode mail including attached files exceeds 100 KB, some or all of the attached files are not acquired automatically but received as attached files for manual reception. In this case, acquire the files from the i-mode center.

1 In the received message details screen, select the name of the attached file ▶ ▣.

Note

- When there are attached files for manual reception that has not been acquired, an expiration date is displayed at the bottom. When all files are acquired, the expiration date disappears.

Checking/Saving/Deleting attached file

- Attached file type

■ Still picture	■ PDF file	■ i-motion
■ Melody	■ Phonebook	■ Schedule
■ Bookmark	■ ToruCa	■ Document file

- Attached files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.
- The file that is not recognizable is saved in the [OTHER] folder of microSD Card.
- Some attached files may not be played or displayed correctly.

Viewing attached file

1 Select an attached file ▶ ▣.

Note

- Melodies or Flash movies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.

Saving attached file

1 Select an attached file ▶ 📷 ▶ [File attachment] ▶ [Save] ▶ [Yes].

- A screen appears to select either the handset or the microSD, as well as an appropriate folder.

Note

- Compliant software is necessary for i-motion playback on PC or other devices. Refer to DoCoMo website for details.
- When files that are not recognizable by the terminal are saved to microSD Card, the file name become one of ***OTHER001*** to ***OTHER999***.
- Unprotected read mail may be deleted if received mail has attached files larger than the available memory space.

Deleting attached file

1 Select an attached file ▶ 📷 ▶ [File attachment] ▶ [Delete from mail] ▶ [Yes].

Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages

Displaying messages in Inbox/Outbox/Unsent mailbox

- Each of these mailboxes can contain the following numbers of i-mode mail and SMS entries. Capacity varies depending on the size of messages.

Received mail	Up to 1,000
Sent mail	Up to 500
Unsent mail	Up to 500

- Welcome mail “Welcome✨SH906i😄✋” is saved in Inbox by default. Transmission charges do not apply. Also, replies cannot be sent to Welcome mail.

1 In stand-by, press ✉.

2 Select the mailbox ▶ ■.

- To change an unread mail to a read mail: Select an unread mail ▶ ✉.

3 Select a mail ▶ ■.

- For Decome-Anime, when a received/sent mail is selected, the playback screen appears and Flash movie is played.
- If set to the viewer position, the Full-screen mode (W) appears.

■ Key operation during message details screen display

	Normal position	Viewer position
To display received/sent mail at Full-screen mode (L)	▮ (for 1+ seconds) (or 📷 ▶ [Full-screen mode])	–
To scroll the screen up/down	↕	Touch the touch panel (☞P. 40) and slide the finger up/down
To display next mail	→	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger right
To display previous mail	←	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger left
To play Decome-Anime	■	Operate with the control key (☞P. 42)
To display the control key	–	Touch the touch panel

■ Key operation during Decome-Anime playback screen display

	Normal position	Viewer position
To play Decome-Anime	📖	–
To stop Decome-Anime	✉	–
To display message details screen	📷	Touch the touch panel (☞P. 40)

Note

- For Decome-Anime with sound effects, the sound effects are played in the playback screen, but not in the message details screen.
- For Decome-Anime, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, i-αppli To, Web To, Media To functions and location information are not available.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- When the Use phone information of i-mode is set to [No], the display may be different in the Decome-Anime playback screen, the compose Decome-Anime screen and the message details screen.

Related Operations

Make calls from the message details screen <Phone>

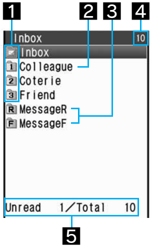
In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Phone] ▶ make a call.

Note (Related operations)

- If a sender/recipient is the person who is saved in the phonebook, a call can be made to that person.

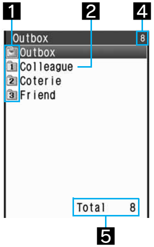
Message box list screen layout

Inbox list



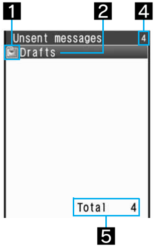
Inbox 10
Inbox
Colleague
Coterie
Friend
MessageR
MessageF
Unread 1/Total 10

Outbox list



Outbox 8
Outbox
Colleague
Coterie
Friend
Total 8

Unsent messages list



Unsent messages 4
Drafts
Total 4

1 Folder icons

Folder icons appear pink when an unread message is saved.

1	User folder ● For folders 0 to 9, press 0 to 9 to open corresponding messages list screen.
α	Mail-type i-αppli folder

2 Folder name

3 Message R/F folder

Folder icons appear pink when an unread message is saved.

R	Message R is saved.
F	Message F is saved.

4 Total number of saved messages

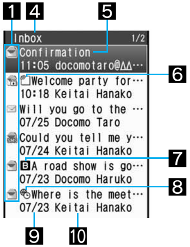
Total number of messages in box is displayed.

5 Number of messages saved in folder

The number of saved messages in a selected folder is displayed. For the Inbox, the number of unread messages is displayed.

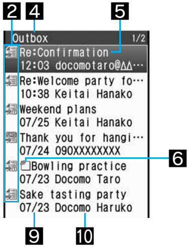
Messages list screen layout

Received messages list



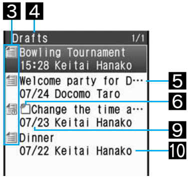
Inbox 1/2
Confirmation
11:05 docomotaro@ΔΔ…
Welcome party for…
10:18 Keitai Hanako
Will you go to the …
07/25 Docomo Taro
Could you tell me y…
07/24 Keitai Hanako
A road show is go…
07/23 Docomo Haruko
Where is the meet…
07/23 Keitai Hanako

Sent messages list



Outbox 1/2
Re:Confirmation
12:03 docomotaro@ΔΔ…
Re:Welcome party fo…
10:38 Keitai Hanako
Weekend plans
07/25 Keitai Hanako
Thank you for hangi…
07/24 090XXXXXXXX
Bowling practice
07/23 Docomo Taro
Sake tasting party
07/23 Docomo Haruko

Unsent messages list



Drafts 1/1
Bowling Tournament
15:28 Keitai Hanako
Welcome party for D…
07/24 Docomo Taro
Change the time a…
07/23 Keitai Hanako
Dinner
07/22 Keitai Hanako

※ Screens for when the Preview is [OFF].

1 Received message type

In [Inbox], i-mode mail and SMS on the FOMA terminal handset and on the FOMA card are shown together.

	Unread i-mode mail		Unread i-mode mail (protected)
	Read i-mode mail		Read i-mode mail (protected)
	Unread SMS		Unread SMS (protected)
	Read SMS		Read SMS (protected)
	Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail		Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail (protected)
	Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail		Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail (protected)
	Replied i-mode mail		Replied i-mode mail (protected)
	Forwarded i-mode mail		Forwarded i-mode mail (protected)
	Unread SMS on FOMA card		Mail-type i-αppli unread Area mail
	Read SMS on FOMA card		Mail-type i-αppli read Area mail
	Unread Area Mail		Forwarded Area Mail
	Read Area Mail		Forwarded mail-type i-αppli Area Mail

2 Sent message type

In [Outbox], i-mode mail and SMS on the FOMA terminal handset and on the FOMA card are shown together.

	Sent i-mode mail		Sent i-mode mail (protected)
	Sent SMS		Sent SMS (protected)
	i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli		i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli (protected)
	Sent SMS on FOMA card		

3 Unsent message type

	Unsent i-mode mail		Unsent i-mode mail (protected)
	Unsent SMS		Unsent SMS (protected)
	i-mode mail for which a send reservation is made		i-mode mail for which a send reservation is made (protected)
	i-mode mail failed to be automatically sent		i-mode mail failed to be automatically sent (protected)

4 Folder name

5 Subject

Shows up to the first 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters. If a subject exceeds 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters, up to 19 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "···". Messages with no subject appear as [Untitled].

Continued on next page ▶▶

6 Attachment type icon

🖼	JPEG image/GIF image/ animated GIF/Flash movie
♪	Melody
α	i-αppli To information
🎞	Movie/i-motion
✎	ToruCa, ToruCa (details)
PDF	PDF data
📖	Phonebook
▦	Schedule
▤	vCalendar that has not been acquired
✎	Bookmark
Word	Word file
Excel	Excel file
PPt	PowerPoint file
text	Text file
BMP	BMP file
PNG	PNG file
?	Data unable to view
eBook	e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic
⧉	Multiple files attached

7 Mode type of 2in1

Appears when set to [Dual mode].

B	Mail to Address B/SMS to Number B

8 Difference time correction

🌐	Mail whose time and date are adjusted to local time overseas, etc.

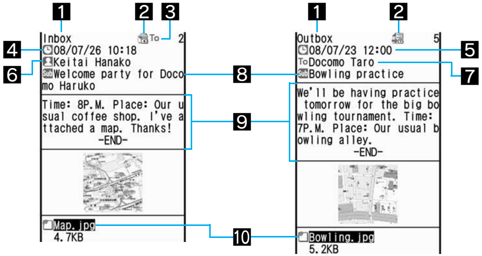
9 Received date and time (received message)/Sent date and time (sent message)/Saved date and time (unsent message)

Time for current day and date for other days.

10 Sender/Address (recipient)

Details screen layout

Received messages details **Sent messages details**



Inbox To 2
08/07/26 10:18
Keitai Hanako
Welcome party for Docomo Haruko
Time: 8P.M. Place: Our usual coffee shop. I've attached a map. Thanks!
-END-
Map.jpg
4.7KB

Outbox 5
08/07/23 12:00
To Docomo Taro
Bowling practice
We'll be having practice tomorrow for the big bowling tournament. Time: 7P.M. Place: Our usual bowling alley.
-END-
Bowling.jpg
5.2KB

1 Folder name

2 Protected icon

Appears when protected.

3 Receiving type*

Shows receiving type (To/Cc/Bcc).

4 Received date*

Shows date and time received at the i-mode center or SMS center.

5 Sent date and time

6 Sender*

Sending type (To/Cc) is shown when Broadcast is set.

To ×←	Shown when address set in To cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.)
Cc ×←	Shown when address set in Cc cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.)

7 Address (recipient)

Mail address (recipient) and sending type (To/Cc/Bcc) appear.

8 Subject*

9 Message

[- END -] appears at the end of the message. When receiving limit is exceeded, [/] or [//] appears and the exceeding portion is automatically deleted.

10 Attachment type icon/File name

	JPEG image/GIF image/ animated GIF/Flash movie
♪	Melody
	Movie/i-motion
	ToruCa, ToruCa (details)
PDF	PDF data
	Phonebook
	Schedule
	Bookmark
Word	Word file
Excel	Excel file
PPt	PowerPoint file
text	Text file
BMP	BMP file

PNG	PNG file
?	Data unable to view
eBook	e-book/e-dictionary/ e-comic
	Attached files for manual reception that have not been acquired
	Attached files for manual reception that are being acquired
	Attached files for manual reception that cannot be acquired
☒	Invalid data pasted/ Deleted attachment
	File with FOMA card security function applied

* For the mail that is addressed to the Address B of 2in1, Receiving type and icon color change green.

Managing mail

Managing folders

Creating user folders <New folder>

Create a new user folder in the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent list screen. Create up to 20 user folders each.

1 In the mailbox list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [New folder].

2 Enter a folder name ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

Editing user folder names <Edit folder name>

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [Edit folder name].

2 Edit the folder name ▶ ■.

Moving the folder order upward/downward <Move folder up/Move folder down>

1 Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders].

2 Select a move direction ▶ ■.

Note

- [Inbox], [Outbox], and [Drafts] cannot be moved.

Setting the folder security <Folder security>

- When Folder security is set, the folder icon changes to 🔒. Enter the terminal security code to view the message list.

1 Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [Folder security].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.

3 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Deleting a user folder <Delete>

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one folder].**
- **Select [Delete sel folders] ▶ select a folder ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Del read in fol]*.**
- **Select [Del unrd in fol]*.**
- **Select [Del all in all fol].**
- **Select [Delete all folders].**

* Only Inbox is displayed.

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- SMS on the FOMA card cannot be deleted.
- Protected messages cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing software compatible with a mail-type i-αppli folder cannot be deleted. When there is no software, the folder can be deleted, but all other mail-type i-αppli folders created in the Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages list are also deleted.
- When Delete read in folder, Delete unread in folder, Delete all in all folders or Delete all folders is selected, Message R/F cannot be deleted.

Managing mail

Displaying a message in the message list <Preview>

1 In the message list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Preview].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Note

- Preview is not available when the Multi Windows are opened.

Switching the message display <List display>

Select the list screen display method.

1 In the message list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [List display].

2 Select the display method ▶ ▣.

Showing sender's address <Check address>

1 Select a message ▶ 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Check address].

Sorting mail <Sort>

1 In the message list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Sort].

2 Select the sorting method ▶ ▣.

Searching mail with subject <Search subject>

1 In the message list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Search subject].

2 Enter a text string ▶ ▣.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters.

Moving mail to another folder <Move>

1 Select mail ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Move].

2 Select the transfer method.

- **Select [Move one].**
- **Select [Move selected] ▶ select mail ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [All in folder].**

3 Select a folder ▶ ▣.

Note

- For Move selected, select up to 50 messages.
- If All in folder is performed when the 2in1 is being used, mail messages received in both A and B modes are moved.

Moving to another folder from the message details screen <Move one>

1 In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Move one].

2 Select a folder ▶ ▣.

Protecting mail <Protect>

1 Select mail ▶ 📷 ▶ [Protect].

- In the message details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Protect] ▶ [ON].

2 Select [Protect] ▶ select the protecting method.

- **Select [Protect one].**
- **Select [Protect selected] ▶ select mail ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Prot all in folder].**
- To disable the protection: Select [Clear] ▶ select the disabling method.

Note

- Area Mail cannot be protected.
- Select up to 50 mail messages for Protect selected/Clear selected.
- SMS on the FOMA card cannot be protected. Copying a protected SMS to the FOMA card will disable the protection.
- If Protect all in folder or Clear all in folder is performed when the 2in1 is being used, mail messages received in both A and B modes are protected/cleared.

Deleting mail <Delete>

1 Select mail ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

- In the message details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select mail ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Read in folder]* ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Unread in folder]* ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

* Only received mail is displayed.

3 Select [Yes].

Note

- For Delete selected, select up to 50 messages.
- If Delete all is performed when the 2in1 is being used, mail messages received in both A and B modes are deleted.

Deleting mail in the i-αppli folder <Delete>

1 In the mailbox list screen, select the i-αppli folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [View i-mode mail] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Perform step 2 of “Deleting mail”.

Saving messages to the data storage center

<Store in Center>

Save i-mode mail and SMS saved on the FOMA terminal.

- This service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

1 Select mail ▶ 📷 ▶ [Store in Center].

- To save only the currently displayed mail: In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Store in Center] ▶ [Yes] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

2 Select the saving method.

- **Select [Save one].**
- **Select [Save selected] ▶ select mail ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
  - Select up to ten entries.

3 Select [Yes] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

Note

- Mail that exceeds 10,000 bytes for the body text and mail with the inserted image exceeding 90 KB cannot be saved/updated.
- SMS delivery reports cannot be saved.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version" for details on the use of saved mails.

Received/Sent messages history

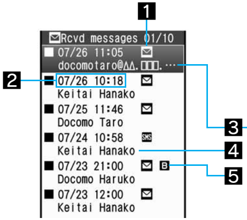
Using mail history

Use a history of received/sent mail to send mail or save the other party's mail address or phone number to the phonebook.

- A history of up to 30 received/sent mail starting with the newest is stored. When 30 entries are exceeded, entries are erased starting with the oldest.

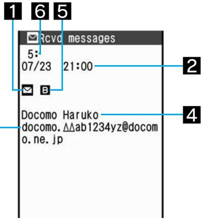
■ History list/History details screen layout

History list screen



✉Rcvd messages 01/10
□ 07/26 11:05 ✉
docomotaro@ΔΔ.□□□.…
■ 07/26 10:18 ✉
Keitai Hanako
■ 07/25 11:46 ✉
Docomo Taro
■ 07/24 10:58 SMS
Keitai Hanako
■ 07/23 21:00 ✉ B
Docomo Haruko
■ 07/23 12:00 ✉
Keitai Hanako

History details screen



✉Rcvd messages
5:
07/23 21:00
✉ B
Docomo Haruko
docomo.ΔΔab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp

1 Types of history

✉	i-mode mail
SMS	SMS
⊠	Mail that cannot be replied to, or SMS with no caller ID (Received messages history)/unsent messages (Sent messages history)

2 Received date/time (Received messages history) or Sent date/time (Sent messages history)

🌐	Appears when time and date are adjusted to local time overseas, etc. (This is not available for i-mode mail)

3 Other party's mail address or phone number

4 Other party's name
Appears when already saved in the phonebook.

5 Mode type of 2in1
Appears when set to [Dual mode].

B	Mail to Address B/SMS to Number B

6 History number
Numbered starting from the most recent.

■ Using a history to send mail

1 In stand-by, press ☐ (❐)/☐ (⇥❐) ▶ ✉ (Received history)/📖 (Sent history).

2 Select a history ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣.

3 Select a mail type ▶ ▣ ▶ compose and send a mail/Decome-Anime.

- For SMS history: Compose and send an SMS.

■ Adding phone numbers and mail addresses from the history to the phonebook

1 Select a history ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.

- In the history details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.

■ Deleting a mail history <Delete>

1 Select a history ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note

- If Delete all is performed when the 2in1 is being used, Received messages histories received in both A and B modes are deleted.

■ Making calls from a history <Phone>

Make a call to another person whose phone number is saved in the phonebook.

1 Select a history ▶ 📷 ▶ [Phone].

2 Make a call.

Mail setting

Setting FOMA terminal mail functions

Changing the font size <Font size>

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Font size].

2 Select an item ▶ ▣.

3 Select a font size ▶ ▣.

Related Operations

Change the font size in the message details screen by one-touch operation

To make the font size smaller: Press 1.
To make the font size larger: Press 3.

Change the font size from the Submenu in the message details screen <Font size>

In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Font size] ▶ select a font size ▶ ▣.

Sorting mail automatically <Sort rules>

Set Sort rules for user folders and sort i-mode mail and SMS automatically.

- Sort to up to 25 folders (including i-αppli folders) in Inbox/Outbox and set up to ten rules for each folder.

Sort rules

Address (From)	Sender's address (Received mail only)
Address (From/Cc)/ Address (To/Cc)	From, To and Cc for received mail and To, Cc, and Bcc for sent mail (criteria are applied from the folder shown at top)
Domain (From)	Domain of sender's address (Received mail only)
Group	Groups set in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook
Subject	Text string in Subject (enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters)
Phonebook empty	Mail from senders not saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook (for sent mail, when an address not saved in the phonebook is entered in To/Cc)
All received (sent) messages	All received (or sent) mail

- [Folder 1] has top priority and the folder listed at the bottom has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders coincide.
- Secret phonebook entries are treated as unsaved entries.
- ***@docomo.ne.jp*** can be abbreviated when sender is using an i-mode terminal (including mova). SMS can be sorted by specifying phone number.
- Normal mail can be sorted to mail-type i-αppli folders. Sort rules for mail-type i-αppli take priority.
- i-αppli mail is sorted to the compatible mail-type i-αppli folder regardless of Sort rules.
- When setting the mail sort rules while using 2in1, specify the condition of [Address(From)]/[Address(From/Cc)/Address (To/Cc)]/[Subject]/[All rcvd (sent) messages] before use.

Setting Sort rules to folders

1. **Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Sort rules].**
2. **Select a number to save ▶ ●.**
3. **Set the Sort rules.**
   - **Select [Address(From)] ▶ select the entry method ▶ ● ▶ select/enter a mail address ▶ ●.**
   - **Select [Address(From/Cc)]/[Address (To/Cc)] ▶ select the entry method ▶ ● ▶ select/enter a mail address ▶ ●.**
   - **Select [Domain(From)] ▶ enter a domain ▶ ●.**
   - **Select [Group] ▶ select a group ▶ ●.**
   - **Select [Subject] ▶ enter a text string ▶ ●.**
   - **Select [Phonebook empty].**
   - **Select [All rcvd (sent) messages] ▶ [Yes].**
     - Set to the Sort rule 1. Select [No] to set to a specified number.
4. **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to set multiple rules.**
5. **Press ⓘ.**

Deleting specified Sort rules

1. **Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Sort rules].**
2. **Select a sort rule ▶ 📷.**
3. **Select the deletion method ▶ ● ▶ [Yes] ▶ ⓘ.**

Adding a signature to i-mode mail <Save signature>

- Only one signature can be saved.
- Enter up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters. Insert up to 90 KB of images. [↲] (line breaks) are available.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Save signature].

2 Enter a signature ▶ ⊡ ▶ [ON].

- To delete the signature: In the signature display, press CLR (for 1+ seconds) ▶ ⊡ ▶ [OFF].

Note

- If the FOMA terminal is switched to viewer position while a signature is being entered, the signature being entered is discarded.

Setting check new message details <Check new message>

Set whether to check by type of message (Mail, Message R/F).

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Check new message].

2 Select the type ▶ ⊡.

3 Select the setting ▶ ⊡ ▶ ⓘ.

Selecting and receiving i-mode mail

<Receive opt. setting>

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Receive option] ▶ [Receive opt. setting] ▶ [ON] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- All mail is received when new messages are checked even if Receive option setting is set to [ON]. To not receive all mail, set the Mail to [OFF] in Check new message.

Saving mail member <Mail member>

Unlike Broadcast mail, multiple mail members can be specified collectively.

- Save up to ten mail members. Save up to five mail addresses per mail member.
- Charges are the same as when sending one mail. However, network charges will increase as addresses are added.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Mail member].

2 Select a number for mail member ▶ ⊡.

3 Select a number to save ▶ ⊡.

4 Select the entry method ▶ ⊡.

5 Select/Enter a mail address ▶ ⊡.

- To save multiple mail addresses, repeat steps 3 to 5.

6 Press ⓘ.

Related Operations

Edit member names <Edit member>

Select a mail member ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit member] ▶ edit the member name ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

Reset member names to default <Reset one member>

Select a mail member ▶ 📷 ▶ [Reset one member] ▶ [Yes].

Delete saved addresses

Select a mail address ▶ 📷 ▶ select the deletion method ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes] ▶ ⓘ.

Setting whether to automatically replay melody <Melody Auto replay>

Set whether to automatically play melodies attached to mail when opened.

- Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back automatically.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Melody Auto replay].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Changing quick reply mail message <Quick reply mail>

Ten quick reply mail messages are pre-installed in your handset. These messages can be changed and saved.

- Enter up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters for a message.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Quick reply mail].

2 Select the message to change ▶ ▣.

3 Edit the message ▶ ▣.

Setting whether to receive attached files <Rcv attached file>

Set attached file types to be received.

- Attached files set not to be received are treated as attached files for manual reception.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Rcv attached file].

2 Select an attached file ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.

  - ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected entries.

Note

- For Message R/F, all attached files are received regardless of settings.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message text are received regardless of settings.

Setting the received mail/auto send notices while using other functions <Rcv/Auto send disp>

- Set the following notification methods.

Notice first	Display or operate for receiving/sending normal mail.
Operation first	Only received i-mode mail, Message R/F, and SMS icon are displayed.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Rcv/Auto send disp].

2 Select the notification method ▶ ▣.

Note

- Even when Notice first is set, the Receive display and the receive complete screen are not shown while a call is in progress, i-αppli is running, the camera is being activated, the handset is being positioned by GPS, pattern definitions are being updated, Streaming type i-motion is being downloaded, data on the microSD Card is being viewed, a PC movie is being played back, Area Mail is being automatically displayed, 1Seg is being watched or 1Seg is being recorded.

Checking mail settings status <Check mail settings>

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Check mail settings].

Resetting mail settings <Reset mail settings>

Reset mail settings to default settings.

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Reset mail settings].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].**

Note

- The following settings are not reset.
  - ■ Saved signature
  - ■ Quick reply mail
  - ■ Mail member
  - ■ Receive entry of Area Mail setting
  - ■ SMS center
  - ■ SMS expiry
  - ■ SMS input character

Applying Function lock to the Mail <Function lock>

- For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Function lock].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ [ON].**

Receive Message R/F

Receiving Message R/F

Subscribe to sites which provide Message Service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

- Save up to 50 messages each in the FOMA terminal. Capacity varies depending on the size of message.
- The following icon appears when Message R/F has been received.

Meaning of icons

R/F (green)	Unread Message R/F
R/F (yellow)	Received Message R/F is full in the FOMA terminal
R/F	Message R/F is at i-mode center
R/F	Message R/F is full at i-mode center
R/F	Unread Message R/F and Message R/F are at i-mode center
R/F	Unread Message R/F and Message R/F at i-mode center is full
R/F	Received Message R/F in the FOMA terminal is full and Message R/F is at i-mode center
R/F	Received Message R/F in the FOMA terminal is full and Message R/F at i-mode center is full

- When Message R/F at i-mode center is full, existing messages may be overwritten.
- For details on retrieving Message R/F from the i-mode center ☞P. 207

Note

- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected Message R/F is overwritten automatically. Protect Message R/F to prevent overwriting.

Opening new Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, the newest one appears automatically. The received Message R/F does not appear when Auto message display is set to [No auto display].

1 Receive Message R/F automatically (R/F flashes).

2 After reception, the receive complete screen appears and the message ring tone sounds (R/F appears).

- The message appears for approximately 15 seconds and the stand-by display reappears automatically.
- In the Message details screen, if the screen returns to stand-by, the stock icon R✉ (New Message R)/F✉ (New Message F) appears.

Not displaying messages automatically

- In the receive complete screen, select [MessageR]/[MessageF] ▶ select a message ▶ ●.

Automatically displaying Message R/F

<Auto message display>

Set priority and message types.

Msg R preferred	When Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message R appears automatically
Msg F preferred	When Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message F appears automatically
MessagesR only	Only Message R appears automatically
MessagesF only	Only Message F appears automatically
No auto display	No messages appear automatically

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Auto message display].

2 Select the display method ▶ ●.

Note

- Message does not automatically appear regardless of Auto message display settings in the following situations.
  - ■ While All lock is set
  - ■ While Function lock is applied to the Mail
  - ■ While Omakase Lock is set

View Message R/F

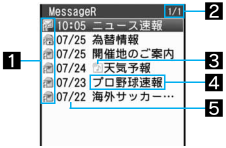
Viewing Messages R/F in message box

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Inbox].

- Alternatively, press i in stand-by ▶ [MessageR/F].

2 Select a message ▶ ●.

Messages list screen layout



MessageR 1/1
10:05 ニュース速報
07/25 為替情報
07/25 開催地のご案内
07/24 天気予報
07/23 プロ野球速報
07/22 海外サッカー…

1 Unread/Read/Protected message icon

R/F	Unread Message R/F
R/F	Read Message R/F
R/F	Read Message R/F (protected)

2 Message R/F list screen page number/total

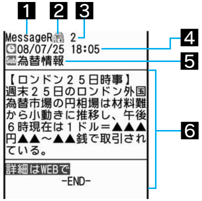
3 Attached data

📎	JPEG image/GIF image/ animated GIF/Flash movie	📎	ToruCa
		📎	Multiple attachment files
♪	Melody		

4 Subject

5 Received date and time
Time for current day and date for other days.

Message details screen layout



MessageR🔒 2
08/07/25 18:05
Sub 為替情報
【ロンドン２５日時事】
週末２５日のロンドン外国為替市場の円相場は材料難から小動きに推移し、午後６時現在は１ドル＝▲▲▲円▲▲～▲▲銭で取引されている。
詳細はWEBで
-END-

1 Message type

2 Protected icon

R🔒	Message R (protected)	F🔒	Message F (protected)

3 Message number

4 Received date and time

5 Subject

6 Message

Adding phone numbers and mail addresses from Message R/F to phonebook <Add to phonebook>

1 **Select a phone number or mail address in the message text ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.**

Checking/Saving attachments <View attachment>

1 **In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [View attachment].**

2 **Check/Save an attached file.**

- To check the attached file: Press ●.
- To save the image: Press ⓘ ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.
- To save Melody/ToruCa: Press ⓘ ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ●.

Checking/Saving inserted images
<View image in mail>

1 **In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [View image in mail].**

2 **Check/Save the images.**

- To check the image: Press ●.
- To save the image: Press ⓘ ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.

Managing Message R/F

Protecting Message R/F <Protect>

- Protect up to 25 of each type of message. The number of protected messages depends on size.
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

1 Select a message ▶ 📷 ▶ [Protect].

- In the message details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Protect].

2 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Deleting Message R/F <Delete>

1 Select a message ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

- In the message details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

2 Select the deletion method.

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a message ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note

- Even if [Delete all] is selected, unread or protected Message R/F is not deleted.

Sorting Message R/F <Sort>

1 In the messages list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Sort].

2 Select the sorting method ▶ ⊡.

What is Early Warning “Area Mail”?

Area Mail is a service to receive the information such as an emergency earthquake report provided from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

- Set the Receive setting before receiving Area Mail (☞P. 225).
- In the following cases, mail may not be displayed automatically even if received.
  - ■ During a call (a voice/Videophone call)
  - ■ During packet transmission (streaming playback, data transmission, PushTalk transmission)
  - ■ While i-αppli is running/During i-αppli transmission
  - ■ While camera is being activated
  - ■ While Public mode (Drive mode) is set
  - ■ While Alarm is being activated
  - ■ During software update
  - ■ During USB transmission
  - ■ During pattern definitions update
  - ■ While 1Seg is being watched
  - ■ While GPS positioning is being performed
  - ■ When battery level is low
- In the following situations, mail cannot be received.
  - ■ While Omakase Lock is set
  - ■ During International roaming
  - ■ While in the Self mode
- Missed Area Mail cannot be received again.
- Area Mail is received without i-mode subscription.

Receive Area Mail

Receiving Early Warning “Area Mail”

Area Mail is automatically received.

- Save up to 30 Area Mails in Inbox. If it exceeds 30, Area Mails are overwritten, starting with the oldest received date and time.

1 Receive Area Mail automatically.

2 When Area Mail is received, the Area Mail dedicated alarm tone or ring tone sounds and Called LED flashes red (📳 appears).

- There are two types of Area Mail: For the first type, the text automatically appears after received, and for the second type, [Area mail received] appears.
- Press ■, CLR or ↩, and the screen before reception reappears if message automatically displays.
- When [Area mail received] appears, the screen before reception automatically reappears in approximately 30 seconds.
- Whether to automatically display Area Mail message when received is set on the distributor side.

Note

- For an emergency earthquake report, the dedicated alarm tone (beep sound) and vibration is activated, and the message is automatically displayed. The volume is set to [Volume 10] and vibrator is set to [Melody ON], the type of the dedicated alarm tone (beep sound), the volume and the vibrator cannot be changed.
- The vibrator is activated regardless of the Manner mode settings if the information such as an emergency earthquake report is received. In addition, when in the Original manner mode and any of the following sounds is set to ring, the dedicated alarm tone (beep sound) also sounds at [Volume 10].
  ■ Ring tone ■ Mail ring tone ■ Alarm tone ■ Low battery alarm
- The tone of the Area Mail dedicated ring tone cannot be changed. The Beep time follows the Mail ring time setting, the volume follows the Mail ring volume and the vibrator follows the vibrator setting. However, the type of vibrator is applied [Melody ON].
- Called LED color of Area Mail is set to [Sun set] and LED pattern is set to [Melody ON], these settings cannot be changed.
- Area Mail is automatically sorted when the sort rule of the folder is set to [All rcvd messages].

Area Mail setting

Setting Early Warning “Area Mail”

Set whether to receive Area Mail.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Area Mail setting] ▶ [Receive setting].

2 Check precautions ▶ ≣.

- To not receive: Press 📷.
- Press ≣ and setting is [ON] to receive Area Mail.

Note

- The Area Mail setting is returned to the default setting [OFF] when Reset mail settings or Reset settings are performed.

Setting receive entry of Area Mail <Receive entry>

Save the Area Mail name and Message ID (ID provided by a service provider) of the information to be received other than emergency information (emergency earthquake report, disaster and evacuation information). When emergency information (emergency earthquake report, disaster and evacuation information) is received, the receive entry is not required.

- The preset [Emergency] cannot be edited or deleted.
- Give any name to the Area Mail.
- Set up to 20 entries (excluding [Emergency]).

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Area Mail setting] ▶ [Receive entry].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ ▤.

- To modify saved contents, select a set receive entry.
- To delete a set receive entry: Select the receive entry ▶ ✉ ▶ [Yes].

3 Enter an Area Mail name ▶ ▣.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters.

4 Enter a Message ID ▶ ▣.

Related Operations

Set time to beep <Beep time>

In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [Area Mail setting] ▶ [Beep time] ▶ enter time to beep ▶ ▣.

Compose and send SMS

Composing and sending

- Exchange messages with users of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications carriers. Refer to the DoCoMo website for information on available countries and overseas telecommunications carriers.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Compose SMS].

2 Select the [To] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select the entry method.

- **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter an address ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Sent messages] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Rcvd messages] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣.**
- To check the address: Select the address ▶ ▣ ▶ [View address].
- Enter up to 20 digits for a recipient's phone number.
- When the recipient is saved in the phonebook, the name appears in the recipient field.

3 Select [Msg] ▶ enter the message ▶ ▣.

4 Press ▤.

- To save an SMS: Press 📷 ▶ [Save].
- To set Report request: Press 📷 ▶ [Report request] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.
- To set SMS expiry: Press 📷 ▶ [SMS expiry] ▶ select the expiration date ▶ ▣.

Note

- In the viewer position, use the commercially available Bluetooth compatible keyboard to compose SMS (☞P. 409).
- When an address is entered, [+] can only be entered at the beginning. Up to 21 digits can be entered when [+] is entered.
- For addresses of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications carriers, enter [+] (press 0 for 1+ seconds), the country code, and the recipient's mobile phone number. If the phone number begins with ***0***, remove the ***0***. Alternatively, enter ***010***, the country code and the phone number. Add ***010*** to reply to SMS received from abroad.
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs in SMS text may not appear correctly for recipient.
- SMS that cannot be sent for an unspecified reason is saved as unsent SMS.

- Depending on the signal status, text for recipient may not appear correctly.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], SMS cannot be composed and sent.
- SMS can be sent even when ***186*** or ***184*** is added. However, SMS can be sent with caller ID notified even when ***184*** is added.

Related Operations

Edit and send saved SMS

In the unsent messages list screen, select an SMS ▶ ■ ▶ edit the SMS ▶ ⓘ.

Edit and resend sent SMS

In the sent messages list screen, select an SMS ▶ ■.

- To edit: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit] ▶ edit the SMS ▶ ⓘ.
- To resend: Press 📷 ▶ [Resend].

SMS rcv

Receiving

- For details on icons displayed when receiving SMS ☞P. 205

1 Receive SMS automatically (▯ flashes).

2 After reception, the receive complete screen appears and the SMS ring tone sounds (▯ appears).

- If no operations are performed in the receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears.
- The stock icon ✉ (mail message) appears when the stand-by display reappears.

3 Select [Mail] ▶ select the SMS ▶ ■.

Checking for new SMS <Check new SMS>

Received SMS is held at the SMS center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. Retrieve from the SMS center.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Check new SMS].

Note

- Automatic retrieval may not start immediately after checking.
- SMS cannot be received when the FOMA terminal handset and the FOMA card memory are full. Delete/View unread SMS or disable protection. Read SMS or unprotected SMS are overwritten in order from the oldest first.

Related Operations

Reply to received SMS <Reply>

In the received SMS details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Reply/ Forward] ▶ [Reply] ▶ compose an SMS ▶ ⓘ.

Forward received SMS <Forward>

In the received SMS details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Reply/ Forward] ▶ [Forward] ▶ enter an address ▶ ⓘ.

SMS setting

Setting

Setting SMS center <SMS center>

The setting does not normally need to be changed.

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [SMS center] ▶ [User set].

2 Enter an SMS center address ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 20 digits.

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 **Select the setting ▶ ●.**

Receiving notification of SMS retrieval

<Report request>

Set whether to receive a delivery report for SMS.

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [Report request].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ●.**

Setting SMS expiration date <SMS expiry>

Set number of days for SMS to be stored at the SMS center on occasions such as the receiver being outside the service area and failed to receive the SMS.

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [SMS expiry].**

2 **Select the expiration date ▶ ●.**

Setting the character type to enter in message

<SMS input character>

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Mail setting] ▶ [SMS setting] ▶ [SMS input character].**

2 **Select the character type to enter ▶ ●.**

Saving to the FOMA card

Copy SMS saved in the FOMA terminal handset to the FOMA card.

- Up to a combined total of 20 received and sent SMS can be saved to the FOMA card.
- Received SMS is copied to [Inbox] and sent SMS is copied to [Outbox].
- SMS cannot be moved between FOMA terminal and FOMA card.

Copying between the FOMA terminal handset and the FOMA card

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Inbox]/[Outbox].**

- In the SMS details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Copy to UIM]/[Copy 1 to phone] ▶ [Yes].

2 **Select the SMS ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Copy to UIM]/[Copy to the phone].**

3 **Select the copy method.**

- **Select [Copy one].**
- **Select [Copy selected] ▶ select the SMS ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**

4 **Select [Yes].**

Note

- Unsent SMS cannot be copied to the FOMA card.
- When sent SMS with the delivery reports are copied, the delivery reports are also copied. Delivery reports cannot be copied.
- Sent date and time for sent SMS are not copied.

Delete SMS

Deleting

SMS can be deleted in the same method as Mail (☞P. 215).

i-αppli

i-αppli

What is i-αppli?

Download i-αppli software from sites for more convenient use of the FOMA terminal. Directly save information from i-αppli to the phonebook or Schedule, or use i-αppli to link with Data box to store or retrieve images.
Also, supporting large Mega i-αppli lets you enjoy high-definition 3D games and long RPGs.

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on i-αppli.

Download

Downloading i-αppli from sites

Download i-αppli software from sites and run the software on the FOMA terminal display.

- Download up to 1 MB i-αppli.
- Save up to 100 i-αppli software (five mail-type i-αppli software). Saved amount may vary depending on the size of software.

1 While viewing sites, select software ▶ ■.

- The i-αppli download screen appears, and download is started.
- To stop download: Press ▮.
- When download is started or completed, a message may appear depending on the available memory space of the FOMA terminal or the downloaded software. Operate according to the message.

Note

- If download is failed due to a weak signal strength, save the data downloaded until the interruption and download the remaining data from the software list.
- If software currently saved in the handset is deleted because of insufficient memory during download, and download fails due to a weak signal strength, the deleted software cannot be restored.
- SSL appears while i-αppli information or i-αppli is being downloaded from an SSL-enabled page.

When selected software is already saved to the FOMA terminal

- If a new version of software is available, a confirmation screen asking whether to upgrade the software appears. Select [Yes] to start download (upgrade).

When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded

- Depending on the IC card data capacity, downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be possible even when the software storage space is available. Follow the instructions on the screen, delete the displayed software, and repeat the download (Depending on the software to be downloaded, some software may not appear as candidates for deletion). Depending on the status inside the IC card, all the displayed software must be deleted. In such cases, perform Delete all following the displayed screen so that the displayed software can be deleted collectively. Some software cannot be deleted collectively. The software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.
- While IC card lock is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be downloaded or upgraded.

Memory area

- Data box and i-αppli share the memory area. Depending on the amount of data saved in Data box, i-αppli software may not be saved.

■ Downloading mail-type i-αppli software

Note the following when downloading mail-type i-αppli software.

- When downloading mail-type i-αppli software, mail-type i-αppli folders are automatically created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The folder name is the name of the downloaded mail-type i-αppli and cannot be changed.
- Save up to five mail-type i-αppli folders.
- If a mail-type i-αppli using the same folder is already on the software list, that mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.
- If a mail-type i-αppli is downloaded again when only the folders for that i-αppli remain, those folders for the i-αppli can be re-used. To not use existing folders, delete the existing folders and create new folders. If new folders are not created, the mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.
- Folders containing mail-type i-αppli cannot be deleted. If the folder contains no mail-type i-αppli, it can be deleted, but all folders created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages are deleted collectively.

Viewing i-αppli information during download

<Software info>

1 In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Software info] ▶ [ON].

- Software description appears when download is started.

Activate i-αppli

Activating i-αppli

- Some i-αppli software may transmit data automatically when started. Use Network set (☞P. 233) in advance.
- Register frequently used i-αppli in advance in the Shortcut menu and run it (☞P. 393).

1 In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Software list].

Software list

- In stand-by: Press i (α) (for 1+ seconds).
- To show only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software: In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [IC card content].
- To show only GPS compatible i-αppli software: In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [i-αppli].
- To activate DCMX credit appli: In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [DCMX].
- To change the software list screen appearance: In the software list screen, press i.
  - Press the key to switch from the graphical display → icon display → list display.
- The following icons appear on the upper part of the screen depending on the settings of the selected software.

Meaning of setting status icons

α (blue)	Software with i-αppli stand-by function
α AUTO (blue)	Software with Auto start function
SSL	Software downloaded with SSL session
DX	i-αppliDX software
α✉	Mail-type i-αppli software

Continued on next page ▶▶

α (purple)	Software set as i-αppli stand-by
α AUTO (purple)	Software set to Auto start
⇆	Software with a data transmission function
SD	Software to save i-αppli used data to a microSD Card
▣	Software set to the FOMA card security functions
iC	Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software
🛰	GPS compatible i-αppli software
📄	Software incompletely downloaded
iC	Software transferred using the iC transfer service (☞P. 254)

2 Select software to run ▶ ⊡.

- A message may appear depending on the software. Operate according to the message.

Note

- If the FOMA card used for downloading the software is not inserted, some i-αppli may not run (start).
- When the time set for Alarm (Alarm/Schedule/Reception/Recording) arrives, running software stops and the alarm screen appears. The software resumes when the alarm screen is closed. However, depending on the i-αppli, the software may be ended when the alarm is activated.
- Mail-type i-αppli can also be started from Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages. Select the mail-type i-αppli folder from each box list.
- Depending on the i-αppli, if a new version of the software is available, a confirmation screen for upgrading the software appears at startup and some software can be upgraded.
- Some i-αppli may save i-αppli used data to the microSD Card. Saved i-αppli used data can be checked in the i-αppli used data list. Check i-αppli used data properties for the software that uses i-αppli used data (☞P. 249).
- If the microSD Card or the battery pack is removed while the i-αppli used data is being saved/deleted, the data may be unable to be viewed. In this case, format the microSD Card with FOMA SH906i. Formatting deletes all the data in the microSD Card.
- Some data saved on the microSD Card may not be available on other models.
- Reading/Writing data saved on/to the microSD Card from i-αppli may become impossible while other running functions are using the card.
- Mail-type i-αppli is not available when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].

Starting i-αppliDX software

- Some i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software Network set. The number of connections and connection time differ depending on the software.
- If the correct date and time are not set, the validity cannot be checked and the software cannot start.
- If the software is not validated, it cannot start until the validity is checked.

Related Operations

Set the volume <i-αppli volume>

In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [i-αppli volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ↕ ▶ ⊡.

View the software description <Software info>

In the software list screen, select software ▶ 📷 ▶ [Software info].

Set whether to display the battery icon <Battery icon>

In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Battery icon] ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Set Power saver of i-αppli <Power saver set>

In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Power saver set] ▶ [ON] ▶ select the time before activating the Power saver mode ▶ ▣.

Set the Program guide i-αppli started from 1Seg <Program guide key>

In the software list screen, select software ▶ 📷 ▶ [Program guide key] ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

i-αppli volume

- Some i-αppli do not have sound.

Software information

- The information that appears in the description includes the software name, version, software by, storage, profile version, compatible models, SSL connection, and others.
- The software name of i-αppli cannot be changed.

Battery icon

- This is available for i-αppli that is displayed in full-screen.

Power saver set

- When the display turns off according to Light/Power saver (☞P. 117) while i-αppli is running, the i-αppli is paused after the set time passes, and the battery power can be conserved.
- While the following operations are performed, the Power saver mode of i-αppli is not activated. After the operations end and the set time passes, the Power saver mode of i-αppli is activated.
  - ■ Packet transmission from i-αppli
  - ■ Access from i-αppli to the microSD Card
- To resume the software in the Power saver mode of i-αppli, press a key and select [Agree] in the confirmation screen.
- In i-αppli stand-by, activate i-αppli so that it is run in the Power saver mode.

Setting operating conditions for i-αppli
<Set software use>

- Set the following operating conditions for each software.

Network set	Set whether data can be transmitted while i-αppli is running.
i-αppli To	Set whether to start i-αppli with i-αppli To.
Icon info set	Set whether software should be notified regarding icons indicating unread mail and Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode setting and whether the handset is inside or outside the service area, while i-αppli is running.
To allow ring tone/ image/icon changes by software	Set whether to allow the i-αppli to change the ring tone and screen.
To show confirmation screen by all changes	When [Allow ring tone/image/icon changes by software] is set to [Yes], set whether to show the confirmation screen when settings are changed.
To access to phone-book/call records by software	Set whether to allow the i-αppli to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls.
Location usage setting	Set whether to use location information for GPS compatible i-αppli.

- Some settings are not available depending on the software.

1 **In the software list screen, select software ▶ 📷 ▶ [Set software use].**

2 **Select a field to set ▶ ▣.**

3 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

- To set other operating conditions successively: Repeat steps 2 and 3.

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Press i.

Note

Network set

- Software may not function properly and information may not be available in a timely manner if Network set is set to [No]. This may also prevent some software from starting.
- Because images used with the i-αppli software and entered data are sent over the Internet, some of these information may be viewed by a third party (“Images used with the i-αppli software” include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli, and images viewed and retrieved from Data box operated with i-αppli).

i-αppli To setting

- The software to start is determined by the site, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa. Download the specified software in advance.

Icon information setting

- i-αppli requiring the use of icon information may not function properly if set to [No].
- If Icon information setting is set to [Yes], the icon status for unread mail/Message R/F, battery level, the Manner mode, and inside/outside the service area may be sent via the Internet to the IP (Information Provider) along with “terminal ID and UIM ID”, and this information may be viewed by a third party.

Phonebook and history access by software

- Setting this to [No] may prevent operation of some i-αppli software.

Motion tracking compatible i-αppli

The FOMA terminal supports “Motion tracking” to operate i-αppli (by tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal) through the recognition technology of the camera.

- Motion tracking may not be used in the following cases.
  - When the lens of the camera is dirty
  - When the clothes are similar to the background
  - When the background is not stable such as while moving
  - When in the dark or too bright place

Warning

This is the appli with tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal.

The mobile phone may hit people or objects, if shaken (or swung) too much, and cause an accident or a damage.

When operating, hold the FOMA terminal securely, do not swing it around more than necessary and confirm the safety of surroundings.

Motion tracking compatible i-αppli detects movements using a camera. Do not cover the camera with fingers while operating.

Starting other software while software is running

Some software allow starting other software without returning to the software list.

- If the software to start is not specified, follow the instructions on the screen to select the software.
- If the software to start is not saved in the FOMA terminal, download the software.

Default software

The following software are preset.

- デビル メイ クライ for SH (Devil May Cry for SH)
- 直感♪プレーパーク (Chokkan Play Park)
- ネット辞典 (Internet dictionary)

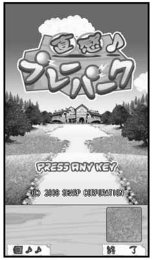
- ■ モバイルGoogleマップ (Google Map for Mobile)
- ■ アバターメーカー for SH (Avatar Maker for SH)
- ■ 日英版しゃべって翻訳 for SH (J-E Speech Translation for SH)
- ■ 日中版しゃべって翻訳 for SH (J-C Speech Translation for SH)
- ■ 地図アプリ (Mapping appli)
- ■ FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli)
- ■ iD 設定アプリ (iD setting appli)
- ■ DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)
- ■ 楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuoku auction appli 2)
- ■ ｉアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)
- ■ ファミリンクリモコン for AQUOS (Familink remote control for AQUOS)
- ■ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)
- ● To use again after deleting, download preset software from the iMenu site, [SH-MODE] (☞P. 413).

■ 直感♪プレーパーク (Chokkan Play Park)

Enjoy the Motion tracking compatible game by tilting and shaking (or swinging) the FOMA terminal.

In three mini games, win a gold, silver or bronze medal depending on the score. Control the player skillfully to win a gold medal.

- ● This appli supports the Motion tracking.



©2008 SHARP CORPORATION

Starting the software

1 In the software list screen, select [直感♪プレーパーク].

- ● The software starts and the TOP screen appears.

2 In the TOP screen, press ⊡.

- ● The TUTORIAL screen appears when this game is activated for the first time. When the TUTORIAL ends, the CLUBHOUSE screen appears. The CLUBHOUSE screen initially appears from the next startup.

3 Select a game ▶ ⊡.

- ● Press 📷 to show the option screen.
- ● Press ⇕ to change the volume during a game.

Games and main operations

● フリフリ！ドラコン (Shake Shake! Long-driving contest)

Hit a ball and outdrive it by using items and gimmick.

- ● Shake (or swing) the FOMA terminal to increase the power. To determine the power or angle, press ⊡. After getting an item, press ⊡ to use it.

● 狙って！クレー (Shoot! Clay)

This is a shooting game to shoot down clay pigeons or items within the time limit.

- ● Tilt the FOMA terminal to aim a target and press ⊡ or 0 to shoot it down.

● 傾けて！カート (Tilt! Cart)

Operate a cart and head toward the goal while avoiding obstacles.

- ● Tilt the FOMA terminal left/right to control the direction of cart movement and press ⊡ or 0 to proceed. Keep ⊡ or 0 pressed to increase the speed of the cart.

Stage mode

There are “通常モード (Normal mode)” and “とことんモード (Thorough mode)”. After winning a gold medal in all games, select “とことんモード (Thorough mode)”.

- ● Press ☐ in the CLUBHOUSE screen to select “とことんモード (Thorough mode)”.

Note

- ● In the option screen during a game, set whether to switch vibration on or off, key operations, etc. for the game.

TUTORIAL

- ● Practice the basic operations with the TUTORIAL. The TUTORIAL can be used from the option screen of the CLUBHOUSE as many times as necessary.

■デビル メイ クライ for SH (Devil May Cry for SH)

This is a wide-screen compatible and fully-fledged 3D action game to operate the devil hunter, “ダンテ (Dante)”, to clear various missions. Enjoy the game in the vertical or horizontal screen.

©CAPCOM 2007

Starting the software

1 **In the software list screen, select [デビルメイクライforSH].**

- The software starts and the title screen appears.

2 **Select [NEW GAME].**

- Select [OPTION] to show the OPTION screen.

Mission mode

This is a main mode used in this game to clear missions following the story. Depending on the mission, there are various conditions.

Challenge mode

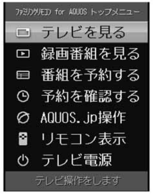
This is a mode used to climb up the devil tower while beating enemies until the character is totally exhausted.

- Select this mode after clearing one of the routes in the mission mode.

Note

- Set the screens, sounds, vibration, key operations, etc. for the game in the option screen.

■ファミリンクリモコン for AQUOS (Familink remote control for AQUOS)



Operate with the FOMA terminal by using “AQUOS Familink System”, a data link equipped on AQUOS, AQUOS Hi-Vision recorder, etc.

- For precautions on operating the remote control ☞“Using the infrared remote control function” on P. 353
- When using for the first time, perform the usage settings.

Usage settings

1 **In the software list screen, select [ファミリンクリモコン for AQUOS].**

- When it is activated next time, the top menu appears.
- To change the usage settings: In the top menu screen, press 📷 ▶ [Usage settings].

2 **Make the usage settings.**

- **Select the [利用機器設定 (AQUOSファミリンク機器)] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select a device to use ▶ ▣.**
  - [AQUOS＋ハイビジョンレコーダー]: AQUOS and Hi-Vision recorder need to be connected with HDMI.
  - [AQUOSのみ]: The recording timer and the playback of a recorded program are not available.
- **Select the [｢テレビを見る｣を選択時の優先放送種別] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select a broadcast type ▶ ▣.**
- **Select the [音設定] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.**
  - Set sounds that ring at an operating time, etc.
- **Select the [バイブレータ設定] field ▶ ▣ ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.**
  - Set whether to activate the vibrator at an operating time, etc.

3 **Select [設定].**

- The top menu appears.

テレビを見る
View the screen for controlling TV. Operate to record a program or view the program/counter program guide. Switch broadcast types or the screen for the TV control to the channel selection screen from the Submenu.

録画番組を見る
View the recorded programs list. Replay recorded programs.

番組を予約する
Set a timer for recording a program from the program guide.

予約を確認する
View the list of programs to be recorded.

AQUOS.jp操作
Operate AQUOS.jp compatible devices.

リモコン表示
View a compatible remote control while watching TV or replaying programs.

テレビ電源
Turn on/off the TV power.

Note

- When set to [AQUOSのみ] in usage device setting, recording related menus cannot be selected.

■ ネット辞典 (Internet dictionary)

Use dictionary such as Japanese dictionary or English-Japanese dictionary on the sites.

- Start from Quick search (☞P. 394).
- Packet transmission charges apply for transmitting.

1 In the software list screen, select [ネット辞典].

- When the software is activated for the first time, the precaution appears. Confirm the precaution. When it is activated next time, the precaution does not appear.

2 Select the keyword entry field ▶ ▣ ▶ enter key words ▶ ▣.

3 Select the dictionary field ▶ ▣ ▶ select the dictionary to use ▶ ▣.

4 Select [検索].

5 Select [はい].

- Select [はい(以後表示しない)] to subsequently not display the confirmation screen for connection.
- Connect to the network, and then search results appears.

6 Select a search result.

- When a search result is selected, a part of details appears at the bottom of the screen.

7 Press ▣.

- The details screen appears. When [さらに詳しく] appears, the details can be checked by connecting the site if [さらに詳しく] is selected in the details screen.

Note

- When [メニュー] is displayed in the operation guidance, press 📷 ▶ [ヘルプ] to check the operation procedures.

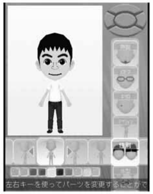
Related Operations

Update the dictionary list to use

In the Internet dictionary screen, press 📷 ▶ [辞典更新] ▶ [はい].

■ アバターメーカー for SH (Avatar Maker for SH)

Create the character (avatar) combining the parts such as sex, outline, hair style, eyes, nose, etc. Also, create Deco-mail pictographs, Deco-mail materials (GIF images, Flash animation) and Machi-chara using the created avatar.



- When the software is activated for the first time, the confirmation screen for the folder creation appears. Select [はい], edit the folder name and press ▣ to create folders in My picture of Data box. Deco-mail materials (GIF images, Flash animation) created from avatar can be saved to this folder. When it is activated next time, the top menu appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- Packet transmission charges apply for transmitting.

1 In the software list screen, select [アバターメーカー for SH].

- The top menu appears.

2 Select [新規作成].

- To edit the saved avatar: Select [保存データ編集] ▶ select the avatar to edit ▶ ● ▶ proceed to step 4.

3 Select [写真を使わずにアバターを作成].

- Select [カメラで撮影した写真を参考にアバターを作成]/[データBOXの写真を参考にアバターを作成] to create an avatar based on a photo of your face shot with a camera or in My picture of Data box.

4 Select the items and parts.

- For the parts that can be changed the color, the color palette appears. Select the color.
- For the parts that can be changed the location or size, press ✣ to edit.
  - To move the locations or switch between zoom/shrink: Press 📷.

5 Press ≣ ▶ [名前を付けて保存] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ●.

6 Select [保存].

- To edit the avatar name: Select the avatar name field ▶ ● ▶ edit the avatar name ▶ ●.

Using the avatar as Deco-mail pictographs or Deco-mail materials (GIF images, Flash animation)

1 In the top menu, select [保存データ出力] ▶ select an output method ▶ ● ▶ select an avatar ▶ ● ▶ [出力].

2 Select [はい].

3 Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [OK].

Using the avatar as Machi-chara

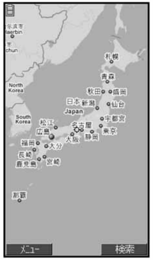
Send the created avatar to the site to download from the site as Machi-chara. Select [マチキャラ] in the top menu, select the avatar and send.

- Up to one data which is sent to the site can be saved. The storage period is 3 days.

Note

- Press 📷 in the top menu to view help and check operation procedures and precautions.

■ モバイルGoogleマップ (Google Map for Mobile)



Display a map, search the peripheral area information and check the information on a shop. Switch between map and aerial photo.

- ©2008 Google - Map Data ©2008 Geocentre Consulting, NFGIS, ZENRIN, EUROPA Technologies

1 In the software list screen, select [モバイルGoogleマップ].

- When the software is activated for the first time, the user agreement appears. Confirm the user agreement and agree to it. When it is activated next time, the user agreement does not appear.
- To move a map: Press ✣.
- To view a menu: Press ≣.
- To search: Press 📷 ▶ search by a keyword.

Note

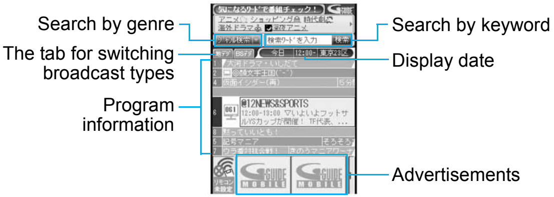
- Press ≣ ▶ [ヘルプ] in the map display screen to view help and check operation procedures and precautions.

■ 地図アプリ (Mapping appli)

This convenient application is for searching destination and viewing a route with means of transportation by using GPS function built in SH906i.

- This appli supports the Motion tracking.
- For details on operating "地図アプリ (Mapping appli)" ☞P. 267

■ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)



This convenient application combines the TV program schedule with AV remote control and does not incur a monthly usage fee.
Easily download the information of TV programs on terrestrial digital or terrestrial analog broadcasting or BS digital broadcasting, which are being shown at a time of your target, anywhere at any time. Access information such as program titles, program details and start/end time for channels. In addition, activate a 1Seg from the program guide, and vice versa.
Programming your DVD recorder, etc. to record your favorite program is available through the internet (The recorder, etc. must support remote programming, and the initial setting to enable this appli function must have been made).
Search programs by keywords such as program genre or TV personality name or pick up keywords in the upper part of the main display. Also operate TVs, VCRs and DVD players with the remote control (Some devices are not supported).

- For precautions on operating the remote control ☞“Using the infrared remote control function” on P. 353
- When using for the first time, perform initial settings and agree to the user agreement.
- Packet transmission charges apply for using this i-αppli.
- During overseas use, set the time of the FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ. Program listings for your area will be shown.
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control).
- This cannot be used when the 2in1 mode is set to B mode.

Setting a timer for starting 1Seg

Select a 1Seg program to be started from the program guide of terrestrial digital shown by this appli and set a timer for starting the 1Seg program.

● How to set a timer for starting a 1Seg program

In the main screen, select a program to be started and select [予約実行] from [視聴予約] of the menu. Since the timer setting screen for starting appears, follow the screen to set timer for starting.

Setting a timer for recording 1Seg

Select a 1Seg program to be recorded from the program guide of terrestrial digital shown by this appli and set a timer for recording the 1Seg program.

● How to set a timer for recording a 1Seg program

In the main screen, select a program to be recorded and select [予約実行] from [#ワンセグ録画予約] of the menu. Since the timer setting screen for recording appears, follow the screen to set a timer for recording.

- Alternatively, in the main screen, select a program to be recorded and press [#] to set a timer for recording.

Setting the recording schedule function remotely

If your DVD recorder, etc. supports remote programming, setting the recorder timer remotely for recording a TV program is available from the TV program schedule shown by this appli via the Internet. To enable this appli function, the initial setting described below is required.

Making the initial setting

1 Set up your DVD recorder, etc. for Internet access.

- Refer to the user’s guide of the DVD recorder, etc. for the setting produce.

2 In the main screen, press 📷 ▶ [リモート録画予約].

- Follow the guidance displayed to complete the initial setting.

Setting the TV program recording schedule

Select a program to be recorded from the TV program schedule, and select [リモート録画予約] from the menu. Your DVD recorder, etc. designated by the initial setting can be programmed via the internet to record the selected program.

- If the designated recording time overlaps with the pre-programmed one, a message indicating the overlapping will appear.
- Packet transmission charges apply for using this service.

Continued on next page ▶▶

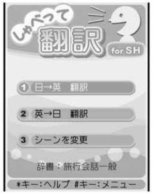
Receiving the recommended information via mail

Set .TV mail to receive the program information according to keywords via mail. Activate this i-αppli directly from the mail or display program search results from the .TV mail sites.

Detailed program information

When the link to a broadcasting station site or program-related site appears, select the link and press ■ to view the site.

■ 日英版しゃべって翻訳 for SH (J-E Speech Translation for SH)



This is a communication tool for a person who is not good at speaking English.

The voices spoken to the FOMA terminal in Japanese or English are converted to characters and translated from Japanese to English or from English to Japanese.

- Use this appli for 60 days from the first-time use as a trial period. All the functions are available. On the 61st day or later from the first-time use, some functions are unavailable. To use all services on and after the 61st day, My menu registration from “しゃべって翻訳” site of ATR-Trek Co.,Ltd. is required. i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [メニューリスト] ▶ [辞書/便利ツール] ▶ [しゃべって翻訳] in the 便利ツール.
- Packet transmission charges apply for transmitting.
- Use this appli overseas. Overseas packet transmission charges differ from those in Japan.

Starting the software

1 In the software list screen, select [日英しゃべって翻訳SH] ▶ ■.

- The description, user agreement and precautions of this appli appear. Agree to the user agreement and check precautions. If [いいえ] is selected when the message appears stating that the description or user agreement is displayed next time when it is activated, the message does not appear from the next startup.

2 Select [はい] ▶ [OK].

- The title screen appears.
- When the software is activated for the first time, the TUTORIAL screen appears. When the TUTORIAL ends, the title screen appears. The title screen appears directly from the next startup.
- To switch the displayed language: Press 📷.

Translating Japanese to English

1 In the title screen, select [Jpn→Eng translation].

- When translating English to Japanese: Select [Eng→Jpn translation].

2 Press ■ ▶ speak the words to be translated to the mouthpiece according to the instructions on screen ▶ ■.

- After the screen during translating appears, the translation result screen appears.
- Finish speaking within 10 seconds. After approximately 10 seconds, the translation starts automatically.

3 Select the translation text ▶ ■.

- The screen, which displays the entire translation text, appears.
- To edit a recognized text and translate the text again: Select a recognized text ▶ ■ ▶ edit the recognized text ▶ ■.

Note

- If ✱ is pressed when [*key: Help] appears in the bottom of the screen, the details and operation methods of each screen appear. To return to the previous screen, press ▮ or ✱.
- If # is pressed when [#key: menu] appears on the bottom of the screen, the menu screen appears to view the Request screen to be presented to whom you wish to talk, view history, set the sound, etc.
- When the network setting is [No] or when the icon information setting is [No], the software setting confirmation screen appears at member authentication or voice entry. Select [OK] to end this appli, set the network setting to [Yes] and set the icon information setting to [Yes] before using.

TUTORIAL

- With TUTORIAL, practice operations following the instructions on screen. Use TUTORIAL as many times as necessary by pressing # in the title screen ▶ [TUTORIAL].

Related Operations

Select a word dictionary that fits the scene to be used

In the title screen, select [Change scene] ▶ select the scene field ▶ ■ ▶ select a scene ▶ ■ ▶ [OK].

■ 日中版しゃべって翻訳 for SH (J-C Speech Translation for SH)

Just speak to the FOMA terminal, and then Japanese will be translated to Chinese and Chinese to Japanese.

- This function supports Standard Chinese (Mandarin).
- For details ☞“日英版しゃべって翻訳 for SH (J-E Speech Translation for SH)” on P. 240

1 In the software list screen, select [日中しゃべって翻訳SH] ▶ ■.

2 Select [はい] ▶ [OK].

3 Select [日→中 翻訳].

- When translating Chinese to Japanese: Select [中→日 翻訳].

4 Press ■ ▶ speak the words to be translated to the mouthpiece according to the instructions on screen ▶ ■.

5 Select the translation text ▶ ■.

- To edit a recognized text and translate the text again: Select a recognized text ▶ ■ ▶ edit the recognized text ▶ ■.
  - When Chinese is translated to Japanese, recognized texts cannot be edited.

■ 楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuoku auction appli 2)

“Rakuoku auction appli 2” is a convenient application for easily putting a thing up to 楽オク (Rakuoku) anywhere at any time.

There is a guidance displayed so that people who put up a thing for the first time can also use this application easily. In addition, there are convenient functions such as shooting or editing pictures and saving the history, and a thing can be put up in a shorter time than from the site.

新規 キャンペーン情報！
「お知らせ！」から。

- When using for the first time, agree to “terms of use”.
- Packet transmission charges apply when this service is used.
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on 楽オク (Rakuoku).
- To put a thing up in 楽オク (Rakuoku), the registration for the membership and the registration as an auctioneer must be approved by Rakuten, Inc.
- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- Refer to the i-mode site for details on 楽オク (Rakuoku).

  i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [オークション].

QR code to connect to the site

■ FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli)

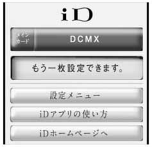
FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli is i-αppli for confirming whether the FOMA terminal can use the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.

FOMA通信環境の確認をします。

- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- When FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli is activated for the first time, “notes regarding use” must be agreed upon before use.
- Depending on the transmission environment (weather, signal status, network congestion, etc.) at the transmission environment confirmation, a different result or a result indicating that the FOMA terminal is outside the service area appears even if in the same place and hour.
- When another function is used while this appli is used, the transmission environment may not be confirmed properly.

■ iD 設定アプリ (iD setting appli)

The electronic money “iD”, which does not require charging, is a service available for shopping only by holding Osaifu-Keitai or a credit card with “iD” installed over. Shopping is made easier and more convenient without signing. Depending on the card issuer, cashing is also supported.


iD
メインカード DCMX
もう一枚設定できます。
設定メニュー
iDアプリの使い方
iDホームページへ

- To use “iD”, an Osaifu-Keitai whose prescribed settings are completed using an iD appli and a Card appli offered by a card issuer or a credit card with “iD” installed is required in addition to the registration to a card issuer supporting iD.
- To use “iD” on Osaifu-Keitai, it is necessary to finish the prescribed settings on the iD appli side, and then download or activate the Card appli offered by a card issuer and make the prescribed settings on the Card appli side. Some cards use only settings on the Card appli side without settings iD appli.
- The cost for the service supporting iD (annual fee, etc.) varies depending on the card issuer.
- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- Refer to the “iD” i-mode site for details on “iD”.

  i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [メニューリスト] ▶ [｢iD｣].

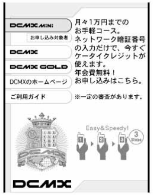
QR code to connect to the site

■ DCMX クレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)

“DCMX” is a credit service supporting “iD”, provided by the NTT DoCoMo group.

DCMX includes DCMX mini that provides 10,000 yen/month credit and other DCMX/DCMX GOLD services that provide more credit and DoCoMo points than DCMX mini.

DCMX mini allows you to enjoy Mobile phone/Portable credit iD by simply signing up from this appli.


DCMX mini
お申し込み対象者
DCMX
DCMX GOLD
DCMXのホームページ
ご利用ガイド
月々1万円までのお手軽コース。ネットワーク暗証番号の入力だけで、今すぐケータイクレジットが使えます。年会費無料！お申し込みはこちら。
※一定の審査があります。

Appli functions

Registration/Prequalification*1

↓

Card information settings

➡

Using
No need to charge.
Enjoy shopping without signature*2 only by holding a mobile phone with card information settings up to the scanning device at stores with the following iD mark.

Checking
Check DCMX service contents, available balance*3 and usage from appli.

Changing
Changing the model and updating of valid period can be done via appli.

*1 For DCMX mini, there will be an online prequalification at the time of subscription.
Subscription of services other than DCMX mini, can be made on the i-mode subscription page that is automatically displayed.

*2 Under certain conditions, a security code may be required.

*3 Available only for DCMX mini.

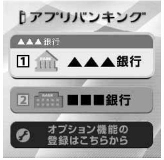
- Refer to the i-mode site of DCMX for details on the service and how to apply.

  i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [DCMX iD].

QR code to connect to the site

- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- When this appli is activated for the first time, “notes regarding use” must be agreed upon before use.
- Packet transmission charges apply for setting or operating.

■ ｉアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)



This i-αppli is for convenient use of mobile banking. Mobile banking is a service that enables the user to check the balance or activity statement of his or her own account, and deposit or transfer money from a mobile phone anywhere at any time. When activating the i-αppli, enter the password set by the user to use mobile banking of up to two financial institutions.

- To use mobile banking, the user must have an account in the financial institution and subscribe to the mobile banking service of the financial institution.
- Packet transmission charges apply when this service is used.
- The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ.
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on i-αppli banking.
- Refer to the i-mode site for details on ｉアプリバンキング (i-αppli banking).
  i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [メニューリスト] ▶ [モバイルバンキング] ▶ [ｉアプリバンキング].

QR code to connect to the site

Note

- The default settings of the preset software functions are as follows. Change settings from the Submenu of the software list.

Setting item	Default setting
Chokkan Play Park	Network set: No (unchangeable)
Devil May Cry for SH	Network set: No (unchangeable)
Familink remote control for AQUOS	i-αppli To: Yes
Internet dictionary	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes Icon info set: Yes
Avatar Maker for SH	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes Icon info set: Yes
Google Map for Mobile	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes Icon info set: Yes View phonebook/history: Yes Location usage setting: Yes
Mapping appli	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes Icon info set: Yes View phonebook/history: Yes Location usage setting: Yes
G-GUIDE program schedule remote control	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes
J-E/J-C Speech Translation for SH	Network set: Yes Icon info set: Yes
Rakuoku auction appli 2	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes Icon info set: Yes
FOMA transmission environment confirmation appli	Icon info set: Yes
iD setting appli	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes
DCMX credit appli	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes
i-αppli banking	Network set: Yes i-αppli To: Yes

- Packet transmission charges apply when this service is used.

Precautions for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for the information set in the IC card.

Auto start

Running i-αppli automatically

There are three methods to automatically start i-αppli.

Auto start using the i-αppliDX setting	Set Auto start to [ON] to enable.
Auto start using the software function	Auto start setting pre-installed in software. Set Auto start to [ON] and register software to enable. Register up to nine.
Auto start using the FOMA terminal setting	Set time, date and day for i-αppli saved in the FOMA terminal to set Auto start. Set Auto start to [ON] and set a schedule to use. Register up to nine.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞P. 57).

Configuring Auto start <Auto start>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Auto start].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Note

- If Auto start cannot be started, the error is recorded in the Auto start error history.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations.
    - Handset is turned off
    - Other functions are activated
    - i-αppli is running
    - Call is in progress
    - When Auto start and Alarm (Alarm/Schedule/Reception/Recording) are set for the same time
    - Function lock is applied to i-αppli
    - Mail-type i-αppli is set to start automatically when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode]
    - FOMA card is not inserted
    - FOMA card inserted is different from the one that was used when the appli with Auto start was downloaded
- The functions below operate with the following priority when the same time is set.

	Priority (high → low)
Function	Auto power OFF → Auto power ON → Alarm → i-αppli Auto start

- Reset settings deletes the auto start error history and disables the i-αppli Auto start settings.
- If the transmission setting for software with Auto start settings is set to [Always confirm], a transmission confirmation screen appears upon startup. If no operations are performed for approximately 5 seconds, software starts automatically as if [No] was selected in the confirmation screen.
- When two Auto start times for the same software are set within 9 minutes of each other, Auto start does not function. Set Auto start time interval to 10 minutes or more. [Run error] appears in the Auto start error history.

Related Operations

Set the software startup time with FOMA terminal settings

1 **In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Auto start] ▶ [Details set].**

2 **Select a number.**

- To save new: Select a slot with [--------------------] ▶ ▣.
- To change the setting: Select a number to change ▶ ▣ ▶ [Update].
- To delete the setting: Select a number to delete ▶ ▣ ▶ [Delete].

3 **Select software ▶ ▣.**

4 **Set.**

- **Select [Daily] ▶ enter a time (24-hour format) ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Select day] ▶ select the day ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ enter a time (24-hour format) ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Set date] ▶ enter the date and time (24-hour format) ▶ ▣.**

Enable the Auto start setting for supported software

Perform the steps 1 to 3 of “Set the software startup time with FOMA terminal settings” ▶ [Time interval].

- To disable, delete the setting in “Set the software startup time with FOMA terminal settings”.
- This cannot be selected for software without Auto start settings.

i-αppli To

Running i-αppli from sites or i-mode mail

If i-αppli To (Run i-αppli) is set, i-αppli can be started from a site, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa.

- i-αppli can also be started when the i-αppli start signal is received in the following methods.
  - ■ Ir exchange
  - ■ When the FeliCa mark is held up to a scanning device
  - ■ Bar code reader
- Set whether to allow i-αppli To in i-αppli To settings (☞P. 233).

Starting i-αppli from sites or i-mode mail <i-αppli To>

- Cannot be activated as i-αppli stand-by.
- Full Browser is not available.

1 **While viewing a site, mail, Message R/F, screen memo or ToruCa, select i-αppli ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

- To cancel: Press ☎ while [i-αppli activating] appears ▶ [Yes].

Note

- When i-αppli is ended, the original site, received message details screen, screen memo, ToruCa display screen or 1Seg watching screen reappears.
- If there is no software corresponding to the Run i-αppli setting, [No requested software] appears.
- Some software run from a site cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the site, the specified i-αppli software can be downloaded or updated if it is not saved on the FOMA terminal or if a newer version is available for the software saved on the FOMA terminal.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save the software if available.
- Network set (☞P. 233) may be required while i-αppli software is running.
- i-αppli To from i-mode mail is a function only available from i-mode mail delivered from an IP (Information Provider). Not available for i-mode mail exchanged between FOMA terminals.

i-αppli stand-by

Setting i-αppli as the stand-by display

- Press CLR to operate i-αppli set as the stand-by display. The i-αppli stand-by settings are not disabled, and the i-αppli stand-by is restarted when the stand-by display reappears.
- Set whether to transmit from the software set as the i-αppli stand-by, using Stand-by network set (☞P. 247).

1 In the software list screen, select software ▶ 📷 ▶ [Stand-by display] ▶ [Yes].

- When the software using a transmission is set, a screen asking whether to allow a transmission appears. Select [Yes] to allow a transmission. When [No] is selected, data is not allowed to transmit and information may not be received.

Disabling the i-αppli stand-by settings

- In the software list screen, select software set as stand-by ▶ 📷 ▶ [Stand-by display] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Only one software can be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- Some software cannot be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. The image set as the stand-by display of Set screen does not appear. If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, the image set as the stand-by display of Set screen appears.
- Web To functions are not available from i-αppli stand-by.
- If software that transmits data is set as i-αppli stand-by, the software may not operate properly depending on the signal strength.
- If All lock is set when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli stand-by display closes and [待受画面1] appears.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position, it appears in the horizontal screen. The stand-by display appears, and the software is interrupted depending on the i-αppli software. Return to the normal position to resume the software.
- If i-αppliDX is set as i-αppli stand-by, the i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software transmission setting.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, the i-αppli stand-by confirmation screen appears when the handset is turned on. Select [Yes] or do nothing for approximately 5 seconds to start i-αppli stand-by. Select [No] to show normal stand-by and cancel i-αppli stand-by settings. However, when the handset is turned on by the Auto power ON setting, the confirmation screen does not appear and i-αppli stand-by starts when the stand-by display reappears.
- i-αppli stand-by is not available when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] or [B mode].

- The following operations end stand-by i-αppli.
  - Camera
  - Data box
  - i-mode
  - Mail
  - Videophone
  - Data Security Service
  - Changing i-αppli settings
  - Playing i-motion
  - ToruCa
  - Updating software
  - iC transmission
  - Ir exchange
  - Bluetooth communication
  - Downloading i-αppli
  - Starting i-αppli
  - Manga&BookReader
  - Document Viewer
  - PDF Viewer
  - 1Seg
  - Updating pattern definitions
  - Changing 2in1 (switching modes, switching ON/OFF of 2in1 function)

Security errors

- While i-αppli stand-by is set, if an incorrect i-αppli action is attempted, or the use of a function not permitted is attempted, i-αppli stand-by is disabled.
- If an error that cancels i-αppli stand-by occurs, the error time and other information appear and are recorded in the error history. No information is recorded when ended properly. When [Security error] appears in stand-by, press ▣ to view the error history.

Related Operations

Set whether to transmit data from i-αppli stand-by <Stand-by NW set>

In the software list screen, select software set as stand-by ▶ 📷 ▶ [Stand-by NW set] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

Set i-αppli stand-by from the menu <Stand-by display>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/ Power saver] ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Stand-by display] ▶ [i-αppli].**

2 **Select software ▶ ▣.**

- To set a different i-αppli as stand-by: Select [Settings] ▶ select software ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].
- To end the i-αppli set as stand-by: Select [End].
- To disable the i-αppli set as stand-by: Select [Cancel].

Managing i-αppli

Upgrade, delete and sort i-αppli saved in the FOMA terminal and view run error and trace information.

- Some software saved on the handset may be accessed by the IP (Information Provider) and service may be stopped directly. In such cases, the software cannot be run, set as stand-by or updated. Only deleting and viewing software details are available. To use again, the software needs to be contacted with an activation transmission. Contact the IP (Information Provider).
- Data may be sent from the IP (Information Provider) to some software saved on the handset.
- When the IP (Information Provider) sends data to stop/resume software, the handset transmits data and the i-mode icon flashes. Transmission charges are not incurred.

Upgrading <Upgrade>

Upgrade software saved in the FOMA terminal if a new version is available on the site.

1 In the software list screen, select software ▶ 📷 ▶ [Upgrade] ▶ [Yes].

- When software description appears: Press ⊡.

Note

- i-αppli cannot be upgraded when the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough available memory. Delete other software or data in Data box that shares memory area with i-αppli.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, downloading and upgrading may not be available while IC card lock is set.
- Mail-type i-αppli software that changes the mail folder name cannot be upgraded while Function lock is applied to the Mail.

Sorting <Sort>

1 In the software list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Sort].

2 Select the sorting method ▶ ⊡.

Viewing the error display <Error display>

View the run error information ([Auto start error], [Stand-by error] and [Security error]) and the trace information.

1 In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Error display].

2 Select an error history ▶ ⊡.

Related Operations

View Trace information <Trace info>

In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Trace info].

- If there is no Trace information, [No Trace info available] appears.
- To delete Trace information: Press ≣ ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

To i-αppli creators

- If a created i-αppli does not function properly, use Trace information details as a reference.
- Trace information does not appear if there is no software set to obtain a trace.

Applying Function lock <Function lock>

- For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

1 In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Function lock].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [ON].

Deleting <Delete>

- G-GUIDE program schedule remote control and iD setting appli cannot be deleted.

1 In the software list screen, select software ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select software ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note

- When deleting mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete automatically created mail folders. If the folder contains protected messages, the folder cannot be deleted.
- When i-αppli used data of the software to be deleted is saved to the microSD Card, select whether to delete the i-αppli used data simultaneously.
- When mail-type i-αppli is deleted and only the folder remains, press 📷 in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages and select [View i-mode mail] to check the i-mode mail in the folder. View the i-mode mail in the folder without starting the mail-type i-αppli.

When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is deleted

- For some software, the software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be able to be deleted.
- While IC card lock is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be able to be deleted.

When all software including mail-type i-αppli is deleted

- If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the folders cannot be deleted.

Used by i-αppli (Contents transfer compatible)

Viewing i-αppli used data in the microSD Card

- Delete i-αppli used data folders or view detailed information of a selected folder.
- Properties show Software/CP names, folder availability and cause for unavailability.
- The folders cannot be used under the following conditions.
  - ■ Restrictions [Y]: The software to use the saved data does not exist.
  - ■ UIM restrictions [Y]: The FOMA card inserted is different from the one that was used for saving the data.
  - ■ Model rstrctns [Y]: The model of the FOMA terminal is different from the one that was used for saving the data.
  - ■ Series rstrctns [Y]: The series of the FOMA terminal is different from the one that was used for saving the data.

1 In the Custom menu, select [i-αppli] ▶ [Used by i-αppli].

- To delete one data folder: Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Yes].
- To display Properties: Press 🔘.

Note

- Viewing i-αppli used data folders is impossible while other running functions are using the microSD Card. Exit other functions in advance.

Using various i-αppli functions

- Depending on software to be used, operation methods may vary or some functions are not available.

Viewing sites from i-αppli

- Download software that enables viewing of sites.
- Sites with URLs exceeding 255 characters, including single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols, cannot be viewed.

1 While software is running, select a URL ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

Making calls

Make voice/Videophone calls and send PushTalk transmission from running software.

- It is required to download software that supports the use of voice call, Videophone call and PushTalk.
- Calls cannot be made while Keypad dial lock or the Self mode is set.

1 While software is running, select a phone number ▶ ▣.

2 Make a call.

- Voice call: Press ☎/▣ ▶ [Yes].
- Videophone: Press ▤ ▶ [Yes].
- PushTalk: Press ▣ (P) ▶ [Yes].

Using the camera

- When the camera is started from i-αppli, shot images are saved and used as a part of i-αppli.

1 While software is running, select camera startup ▶ ▣.

- The Camera mode appears. Adjust the brightness and use Auto timer and Zoom.
- Use some software to set [Image size], [Continuous mode], [Image quality] and [Frame].

2 Press ▣.

- To save: Press ▣.

Note

- Some software may automatically send images and entered data used with i-αppli over the Internet. Images used with i-αppli include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images selected from My picture of Data box operated with i-αppli and images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli.

Using the Bar code reader

1 While software is running, select Bar code reader startup ▶ ▣.

- The Camera mode (Bar code reader) is activated.

2 Position the camera to show the bar code (JAN/QR code) ▶ ▣.

- An image of the bar code (JAN/QR code) is shot.

Note

- Scanned data may be used for some software.

Saving ToruCa

1 While software is running, select a ToruCa item ▶ ▣.

2 Preview/Save item.

- **Select [Preview].**
- **Select [Save new] ▶ select a folder ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Overwrite] ▶ select data ▶ ▣ ▶ ≣.**

Setting alarms

- [Enter time] and [Set repeat] are entered with i-αppli.

1 While software is running, select an alarm setting item ▶ ▣ ▶ ▣.

2 Select a number to register ▶ ▣.

3 Set the alarm.

- For setting alarms ☞“Setting alarms” on P. 385

Using location information

1 While software is running, select location history ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

2 Select location information to be used from the location history list ▶ ▣.

Note

- For i-αppli that can refer to the phonebook, saved location information is available.

Using Ir exchange/iC transmission

- Not available while in the Self mode.

1 While software is running, start Ir exchange/iC transmission ▶ [Yes].

- To cancel transmission: Press 📷.

▶MEMO◀

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Osaifu-Keitai

ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

Osaifu-Keitai allows you to pay by simply holding the FOMA terminal up to the scanning device at stores. Also, use the Osaifu-Keitai as point cards or coupons.
Moreover, Osaifu-Keitai enables you to deposit electronic money, check your balance or view usage history, and use other useful functions using transmission. In addition, Osaifu-Keitai has enough securities to use.
Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details.

- To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, it is necessary to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli from Osaifu-Keitai compatible sites[*1] and make the setting.

  [*1] i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [メニューリスト] ▶ [おサイフケータイ].
- FOMA terminal malfunctions may cause data (including electronic money, points, etc.) saved in the IC card to be lost or altered (Note that as a rule, you will be asked to delete data when leaving your FOMA terminal for repairs, etc.). For the service such as a reissue, restoration, or transfer of the data except the transfer by iC transfer service, contact your provider of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Be sure to use a service including a backup service for important data.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content or the damage of Osaifu-Keitai service caused by any reason such as malfunctions and upgrading.
- When the FOMA terminal is stolen or lost, immediately contact your provider of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service for handling methods. In the FOMA terminal, Omakase Lock (☞P. 133) and IC card lock (☞P. 263) can be used.

What is iC transfer service?

iC transfer service[*1] is a service which transfers the data on the IC card of Osaifu-Keitai to a new Osaifu-Keitai[*2] collectively[*3] when changing Osaifu-Keitai such as upgrading, repairing, etc.
After transferring data saved in the IC card, download[*4] Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli to use the Osaifu-Keitai compatible services easily. Use the iC transfer service at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer near you.
Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details.

[*1] Both mobile phones of the transfer source and destination must be the iC transfer service compatible FOMA terminal. Go to a DoCoMo Shop or retailer for using this service.

[*2] This service does not “copy” but “transfer” data. Therefore, the data in the IC card does not remain in the FOMA terminal of the transfer source. There may be a case when the iC transfer service cannot be used. In such cases, use the Osaifu-Keitai compatible services such as a backup service.

[*3] Depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service, some services are not supported by the iC transfer service. Only the data in the IC card of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service supported by the iC transfer service can be transferred.

[*4] Packet transmission fees apply to download/various settings of i-αppli.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

Using Osaifu-Keitai

Use Osaifu-Keitai in the following procedure.

- When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is started or downloaded for the first time, an inserted FOMA card (UIM) is registered as IC owner. IC card functions are not available unless the FOMA card registered as IC owner is inserted. In addition, to use the IC card functions with a different FOMA card inserted, change IC owner. To change them, the FOMA card registered as IC owner may be required.

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli ☞P. 230

↓

Start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli and read/write data in the IC card ☞P. 255

↓

Hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device ☞P. 255

Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli and reading/writing data in the IC card

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli enables charging of electronic money or railway tickets, checking of balance and usage history, as well as other useful functions.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [IC card content].

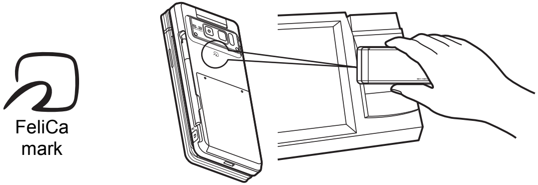
2 Select an Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli ▶ ■.

Holding the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device

Hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device to enable payment with electronic money, replacement for railway tickets, as well as other functions.

- Pay attention to the following points when holding the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device.
  - ■ Avoid contact between the FOMA terminal and the scanning device
  - ■ Hold the FeliCa mark parallel to the scanning device
  - ■ Hold the FOMA terminal up to the center of the scanning device
  - ■ If you hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device and it is still not recognized, try moving the handset around
  - ■ Do not attach a metallic substance on the FeliCa mark side

1 Hold the FeliCa mark up to the scanning device.



2 Confirm that the data was read.

Note

- Starting the software is not needed except for some services.
- Set the FOMA terminal called LED to flash when the scanning device recognizes the FOMA terminal (☞P. 123).

Precautions for using Osaifu-Keitai

Use Osaifu-Keitai even when the handset is turned off.

- Osaifu-Keitai is not available in the following situations.
  - ■ The power has never been turned on after the battery pack was removed and then inserted
  - ■ The battery pack is not attached
  - ■ The battery is empty
  - ■ IC card is locked
  - ■ Omakase Lock is enabled
- Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be started in the following situations.
  - ■ The handset is turned off
  - ■ i-mode is in progress
  - ■ A call is in progress
  - ■ Function lock is applied to i-αppli
  - ■ Other functions are activated

Check IC owner

Checking IC owner

Check whether the FOMA card currently inserted is registered as the IC owner of the FOMA terminal.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [Check IC owner].**

Changing IC owner <Change IC owner>

Delete the FOMA card information registered as the IC owner of the FOMA terminal, the data on the IC card, and Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [Change IC owner].**

2 **Select [Reset IC owner] ▶ [Yes].**

3 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

ToruCa

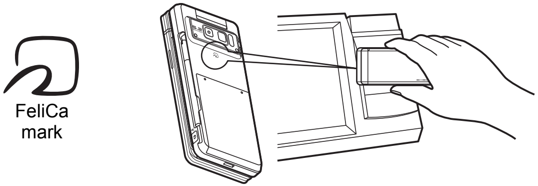
What is ToruCa?

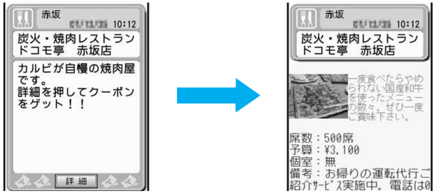
ToruCa is an electronic card that can be retrieved with Osaifu-Keitai. Use ToruCa conveniently as fliers, restaurant cards, coupons, etc. ToruCa is available from scanning devices, sites, and QR codes. Easily share using mail, Ir exchange, iC transmission, Bluetooth communication and microSD Card. Retrieved ToruCa is saved in [ToruCa] of the Osaifu-Keitai menu.

- ToruCa is available with compatible handsets. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details.

■ Using ToruCa

Hold Osaifu-Keitai up to the scanning device and retrieve ToruCa.



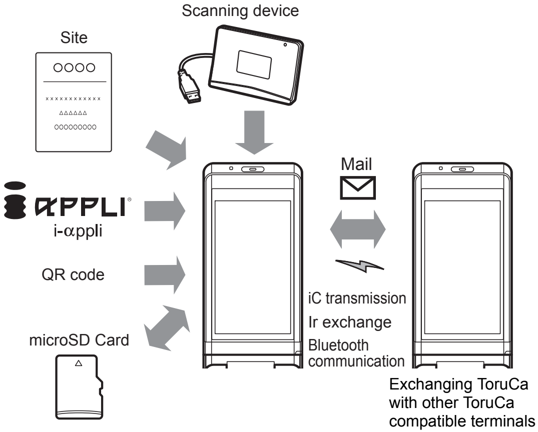


赤坂 10:12
炭火・焼肉レストラン
ドコモ亭　赤坂店
カルビが自慢の焼肉屋です。
詳細を押してクーポンをゲット！！
詳 細

赤坂 10:12
炭火・焼肉レストラン
ドコモ亭　赤坂店
一度食べたらやめられない国産和牛を使ったメニューの数々。ぜひ一度ご賞味下さい。
席数：500席
予算：¥3,100
個室：無
備考：お帰りの運転代行ご紹介ｻｰﾋﾞｽ実施中。電話は0

The retrieved ToruCa appears. Press [詳細] key to view further details.

Retrieving ToruCa



Note

- Normal packet transmission charges are incurred for retrieving ToruCa with i-mode transmissions.
- Some ToruCa may not be updated or redistributed using mails or Ir exchange depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider).

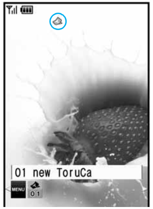
Retrieving ToruCa

- Save up to 200 ToruCa. Capacity varies depending on size of ToruCa.
- Retrieve/Save ToruCa up to 1 KB each and ToruCa (details) up to 100 KB each.
- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the scanning device to use ToruCa with the automatic reading function. Up to 20 used ToruCa are saved in the [Used ToruCa] folder. When the save limit is exceeded, ToruCa are deleted starting with the oldest retrieved date.

Retrieving from a scanning device

Hold the FOMA terminal up to a scanning device and retrieve ToruCa/ToruCa (details).

- The stock icon 🎫 (new ToruCa) appears when a new ToruCa is retrieved using IC card functions. 🎫 appears on the upper part of the screen when there is an unread ToruCa.



01 new ToruCa

1 **When ToruCa/ToruCa (details) is retrieved, the retrieval complete tone sounds, the called LED flashes, and ToruCa/ToruCa (details) appears.**

- If no operations are performed, the previous screen reappears in approximately 15 seconds.
- For ToruCa including detailed information, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to access a site to retrieve ToruCa (details) when retrieval is completed.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a scanning device when the IC card lock is set or when Retrieve ToruCa from IC card is set to [OFF].
- If ToruCa is retrieved from the scanning device when a screen other than stand-by is shown, ToruCa/ToruCa (details) or a confirmation screen for connection of sites does not appear even after the retrieval is completed.

Related Operations

Retrieve from a file attachment of i-mode mail or Message R/F

1. **Select a file to save from mail, etc. ▶ ▣.**
2. **Select the saving method.**
   - To save ToruCa: Press ▤ ▶ [Yes].
   - To save ToruCa (details): Press ▣ ▶ [Yes].
3. **Select a save destination ▶ ▣.**

ToruCa Viewer

Viewing ToruCa

1 In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [ToruCa].

- To show all ToruCa as a list: Press ▤.
  - This operation is not available while viewing data in a microSD Card.

2 Select data ▶ ▣.

■ Retrieving ToruCa (details) from ToruCa

Connect to a site and retrieve ToruCa (details).

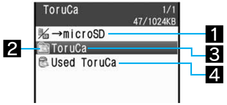
1 In the ToruCa display screen, select [詳細] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- ToruCa (details) cannot be retrieved from ToruCa saved on a microSD Card.
- Retrieve/Update ToruCa (details) with i-mode transmission.
- Upload up to 2 MB of still pictures (JPEG and GIF images) or movies/i-motion saved in the FOMA terminal handset or microSD Card from ToruCa (details). Uploading methods differ depending on the ToruCa. Operate according to the screen.

Viewing the ToruCa list and display screen

■ Folder list screen layout



1 →microSD/→phone

2 Folder icons

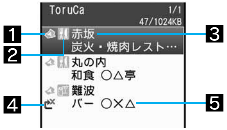
▨	With unread ToruCa	▨	Without unread ToruCa

3 Folder name

Show up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

4 Used ToruCa

■ ToruCa list screen layout



1 ToruCa type

(orange)	Unread ToruCa*
(gray)	Unread ToruCa (expired)
(orange)	Read ToruCa
(gray)	Read ToruCa (expired)

* ToruCa retrieved from sites and i-mode mails do not become unread.

2 Category

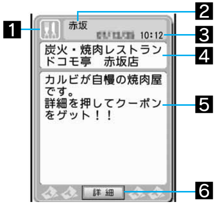
3 Index

4 Non-redistributable ToruCa

5 Title

■ ToruCa display screen layout/ToruCa (details) display screen layout

ToruCa display screen



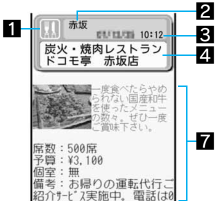
赤坂

10:12

炭火・焼肉レストラン
ドコモ亭　赤坂店

カルビが自慢の焼肉屋
です。
詳細を押してクーポン
をゲット！！

ToruCa (details) display screen



赤坂

10:12

炭火・焼肉レストラン
ドコモ亭　赤坂店

一度食べたらやめ
られない国産和牛
を使ったメニュー
の数々。ぜひ一度
ご賞味下さい。

席数：500席
予算：¥3,100
個室：無
備考：お帰りの運転代行ご
紹介ｻｰﾋﾞｽ実施中。電話は0

1 Category

2 Index

3 Date retrieved

4 Title

5 Description

6 [詳細] key
Select to retrieve ToruCa (details).

7 ToruCa (details) information

Related Operations

Add phone numbers and mail addresses in ToruCa to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

In the ToruCa/ToruCa (details) display screen, select a phone number or mail address ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.

Save ToruCa (details) images <Save image>

In the ToruCa (details) display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Save image] ▶ select an image ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

Attach ToruCa to i-mode mails <Attach to mail>

In the ToruCa/ToruCa (details) display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Attach to mail] ▶ compose and send a mail.

- In the ToruCa list screen: Press ✉.

Replay the Flash movies or animated GIFs in ToruCa <Retry>

In the ToruCa (details) display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Retry].

Adjust the Flash movie sound effects volume in ToruCa <Sound effect>

In the ToruCa/ToruCa (details) display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Sound effect] ▶ adjust the volume with ⁝ ▶ ■.

Update ToruCa

In the ToruCa (details) display screen, press ≣ ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

- Adding to the phonebook or saving a ToruCa image is not available for used ToruCa or ToruCa saved in a microSD Card.

Continued on next page ▶▶

File attachment

- ToruCa exceeding 1 KB, ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB, non-redistributable ToruCa and used ToruCa cannot be attached to mails.
- When ToruCa (details) attached to mail includes an image with file restrictions, the mail is sent with ToruCa. Details can be retrieved again by the mail recipient.

Managing ToruCa

Sorting ToruCa automatically <Sort rules>

- Set up to ten rules for each folder.
- Only ToruCa retrieved with a scanning device and retrieved from the data broadcasting/data broadcasting site are automatically sorted.

Setting Sort rules to user folders

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Sort rules].

2 Select a number to save ▶ ▣.

3 Set the Sort rules.

- **Select [Category] ▶ select a category ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Index] ▶ enter the text string contained in Index ▶ ▣.**
  - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- **Select [Title] ▶ enter the text string contained in Title ▶ ▣.**
  - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- **Select [All ToruCa] ▶ [Yes].**
  - Set to the Sort rule 1. Select [No] to set to a specified number.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to set multiple rules.

5 Press ⓘ.

Deleting specified Sort rules

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Sort rules].

2 Select a Sort rule ▶ 📷.

3 Select the deletion method ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes] ▶ ⓘ.

Managing folders

Create up to 20 user folders and manage files.

Creating user folders <New folder>

1 In the folder list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [New folder].

2 Enter a folder name ▶ ▣.

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

Editing user folder names <Edit folder name>

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [Edit folder name].

2 Edit a folder name ▶ ▣.

Moving the user folder order upward <Move folder up>

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [Move folder up].

Note

- The user folder at the top of the list and the folders in the microSD Card cannot be moved.

Applying the Function lock to ToruCa <Function lock>

- For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

1 **In the folder list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Function lock].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [ON].**

Deleting user folders <Delete>

1 **Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- **Select [Delete one folder].**
- **Select [Delete sel folders] ▶ select a folder ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Del all in all fol].**
- **Select [Delete all folders].**

3 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**

Note

- Select [Del all in all fol] to keep all folders but delete all ToruCa. Select [Delete all folders] to delete all user folders and ToruCa.

Managing ToruCa

Sorting ToruCa <Sort>

1 **In the ToruCa list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Sort].**

2 **Select the sorting method ▶ ⊡.**

Note

- Only ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal handset is to be sorted.

Moving or copying ToruCa <Move/Copy>

1 **Select ToruCa ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy].**

2 **Select an item ▶ ⊡.**

3 **Select the move/copy method.**

- **Select [Move one]/[Copy one].**
- **Select [Move selected]/[Copy selected] ▶ select ToruCa ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [All in folder] (move)/[All in folder] (copy) ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

4 **Select a folder ▶ ⊡.**

- When copying between the FOMA terminal handset and the microSD Card: Select [Yes].
- When copying to the microSD Card, the message stating that ToruCa includes image with file restrictions is copied without details appears. In that case, select [Agree].

Note

- ToruCa cannot be moved without user folders.
- ToruCa cannot be moved between the FOMA terminal handset and the microSD Card.

Deleting ToruCa <Delete>

1 **Select ToruCa ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select ToruCa ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Searching ToruCa

Search ToruCa in the FOMA terminal handset by genre of category icons, index or title.

1. **Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Search].**
2. **Select the range of search ▶ ⊡.**
3. **Specify the search method and a keyword.**
   - **Select [Category] ▶ select a category ▶ ⊡.**
   - **Select [Index] ▶ enter a part of index ▶ ⊡.**
     - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
   - **Select [Title] ▶ enter a part of title ▶ ⊡.**
     - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
4. **To continue the advanced search, in the search results screen, press 📷 ▶ [Advanced search].**

Note

- ToruCa cannot be searched inside the [Used ToruCa] folder.

ToruCa settings

Setting ToruCa

Set to use ToruCa.

Item	Setting details
ToruCa from IC	Set whether to retrieve using a scanning device and iC transmission.
BC ToruCa setting	Set whether to automatically retrieve ToruCa from data broadcasting/data broadcasting site.
ToruCa duple check	Set to check that the same ToruCa has not been saved before retrieving, to prevent duplication.
ToruCa auto read	Set whether to automatically read available ToruCa when ToruCa is used by holding the FOMA terminal up to the scanning device. When set to [ON], available ToruCa is automatically recognized and transferred to the [Used ToruCa] folder.
ToruCa auto disp	Set whether to automatically view ToruCa when retrieving is completed.
ToruCa sound fx	Adjust the Flash movie sound effect volume in ToruCa.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [Setting].**
2. **Select an item ▶ ⊡.**
3. **Select the setting ▶ ⊡.**
   - When ToruCa auto read is set to [ON], a usage confirmation screen appears asking whether to use the automatic reading function. Select [Yes].

Note

- When ToruCa auto read is set to [OFF], some functions of ToruCa may not be available.
- When the FOMA terminal is held up to the scanning device if ToruCa auto read is set to [OFF], a confirmation screen may appear asking whether to use the automatic reading function. To use ToruCa, select [Yes].
- Expired ToruCa, used ToruCa and ToruCa saved in microSD Card are not objects of ToruCa duple check or ToruCa auto read.

IC card lock

Locking IC card functions

Lock IC card functions to restrict usage of the FeliCa IC card function.

1 In stand-by, press ▭ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ [Yes].

- When IC card lock is set, 🔒 appears.

Disabling IC card lock

- In stand-by, press ▭ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

Locking IC card functions when the power is turned on or off <IC lock(power-on)/IC lock(power-off)>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] ▶ [IC card lock].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

3 Select an item ▶ ■.

4 Select the setting ▶ ■.

Note

- Alternatively, set Omakase Lock to automatically lock the IC card.
- While the IC card lock is set, ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a scanning device, and the automatic reading function is not available.
- When the battery pack is removed, the IC card lock is automatically set. If the battery pack is reinserted, the IC card lock is disabled when the handset is turned on. However, if the battery pack is removed with the IC card lock [ON] at power-on, the IC card lock is retained when the battery pack is reinserted and the handset is turned on.
- When IC card lock is set or IC card lock is set using Omakase Lock, IC card lock is retained even if the battery becomes empty and the power turns off.

▶MEMO◀

GPS Function

Using GPS function

- Note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the pure economic loss if you cannot confirm the positioning (communication) result with FOMA terminal failure, malfunction, error or external factors such as power failure (including battery exhaustion).
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as navigation system for professional use of aircrafts, vehicles, person, etc. Therefore, note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the loss caused by the navigation system to use location information.
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as surveying GPS of high accuracy. Therefore, note that DoCoMo shall not be liable for the loss caused by the error of location information.
- GPS is the service in charge of Department of Defense of USA, therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degradation, radio wave abort, etc.) for the US national security reason.
- Position location and Location notification are not available when Function lock is applied to GPS.
- Location provision, Position location and Location notification are not available in the following cases.
  - ■ When a FOMA card is not inserted
  - ■ During the Self mode
  - ■ During Software update
- Note that GPS is using the radio wave from satellites, and following conditions may cause the radio wave abort or difficulty to receive.
  - ■ In or under buildings
  - ■ In basement, tunnel, underground or water
  - ■ In bags or boxes
  - ■ In density area with buildings or residence
  - ■ In or under densely trees
  - ■ Near high-tension line
  - ■ Inside cars or trains
  - ■ In bad weather with heavy rain/snow
  - ■ When people or objects are blocking mobile phones
  - ■ When hands are covering screen/keypad/microphone/speaker of mobile phones

  In these cases, the error of retrieved location information may be 300 m or more.
- Unable to use GPS function of FOMA terminals out of service area or overseas.

Position location

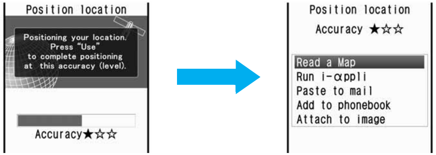
Positioning your location

Position the present location and check your place. Use this function for more convenient use such as showing a map from positioning location information, changing the location information to a URL, sending mail with the URL pasted, etc.

- Transmission charges are not incurred when the present location is positioned. However, packet transmission charges are applied when a map is displayed based on the location information.
- Change sound/volume/LED color for Position location (☞P. 109, P. 123).

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Position location].

- In stand-by: Press MULTI (for 1+ seconds).
  - It is activated following the GPS button setting after positioning.
- 🛰 flashes while GPS positioning is being performed.



Positioning your location.
Press “Use”
to complete positioning
at this accuracy (level).

Accuracy level ★★★ : Almost accurate location information
Error is less than 50 m

Accuracy level ★★☆ : Relatively accurate location information
Error is less than 300 m

Accuracy level ★☆☆ : Rough location information
Error is 300 m or more

- Accuracy level is a rough indication. It may differ depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.
- To use the location information as a result of location positioning at the displayed accuracy level while the present location is being positioned: Press 📷.

- To cancel position location: Press ⓘ ▶ ▣.

2 Select a usage.

- **Select [Read a Map] ▶ [OK].**
  - Check peripheral area information using “iエリア (周辺情報)” (i-area (peripheral area information)) after displaying a map. Refer to the DoCoMo website for “iエリア (周辺情報)” service.
- **Select [Run i-αppli] ▶ select i-αppli ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Paste to mail] ▶ [OK] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
  - The Location URL to be sent appears only on the i-mode supported terminal.
- **Select [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.**
- **Select [Attach to image] ▶ select an image ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ select the saving method ▶ ▣.**

- To check the location information: Press ⓘ.

Set position loc.

Setting position location

Setting GPS button <GPS button setting>

Set the operation that is automatically launched after positioning the present location by pressing MULTI for 1+ seconds.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Set position loc.] ▶ [GPS button setting] ▶ select the action ▶ ▣.

2 Select [OK].

Setting Positioning mode for positioning location <Positioning mode>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Set position loc.] ▶ [Positioning mode] ▶ select the Positioning mode ▶ ▣.

- When [Quality mode] is selected, the positioning is performed with longer time. As a result, more accurate positioning is performed than in the Standard mode.

2 Select [OK].

Using GPS compatible i-αppli

Start i-αppli compatible with GPS function.

- When GPS compatible i-αppli is used, location information is sent to the information provider of the software used.
- When GPS function is used on GPS compatible i-αppli, set Location usage setting of the software used to [Send].

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [i-αppli].

2 Select software ▶ ▣.

Using “地図アプリ” (Mapping appli)

With the pre-installed “地図アプリ” (Mapping appli), use the GPS function and maps for various uses such as viewing the present location or specified location, searching the peripheral area information or navigating to a destination for using vehicle, walking or driving a car.
Enter the information with voice to use transfer information easily.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Packet transmission charges apply when using this service. It is recommended to use this software with Pake-hodai or Pake-hodai full.
- To undo after deleting this software, download it from [iエリア-周辺情報-] in iMenu.
- This software cannot be used when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].
- Note that there is no guarantee for the accuracy and immediacy of the information such as a map and route.
- Make sure that a person other than the driver operates this software while driving.
- Screenshots in this manual are examples and may differ from actual screens.

■ Basic service and additional services

For this software, there are basic service and additional services.

- Basic service: Service provided by DoCoMo for free
- Additional services: Services provided by ZENRIN DataCom for a fee

Use the additional services (except the traffic information) for free until the 90th day from the first-time use of this software.

To use the additional services on and after the 91st day, the membership subscription (fees apply) for “ゼンリン⌂地図+ナビ” provided by ZENRIN DataCom is required.

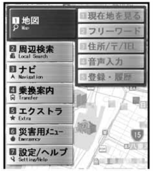
Even if the membership is signed up while this software is used, the software does not need to be downloaded again. Use this preinstalled software.

Menu	Details	From the 91st day
Map	Use GPS to view the map of the present location or a map by entering any word, address or phone number. Enter the address with voice to view a map easily.	Free
	Check the map of the location saved in this software, the server or the phonebook or previously searched. Save the location to the server so that the saved point is shared with a PC.	Fees apply
Local Search	Search the information on a shop, facility or iD-supporting shop near the current location or specified location to download a coupon from the restaurant information. Check the information on parking availability in the peripheral area. Enter the information with voice to search peripheral area information.	Free
Navigation	Totally navigate to the destination including the means of using vehicle, walking and driving. Easily navigate to your home saved.	Fees apply
Transfer	Check train transfer information and timetable. Check a train route on a map and set an alarm before departure. Enter the information with voice to use transfer information easily.	Fees apply
Extra	Change the mode to various maps such as a map that is moved by tilting the FOMA terminal, a 3D map, and a map with emphasized railways, including a normal map. Use GPS to leave footprints in the present location or view the track of motion. Display the location, which was positioned using GPS in the past, in the unit of municipality or prefecture with color on a map.	Free
	Send “footprints” data saved in the microSD Card to Mapping appli server, and check the footprints even on a PC. Backup the area which was positioned using GPS in the past to the server.	Fees apply
Emergency	Search helpful facilities in case of disaster. This i-αppli working with Mapping appli without communication is for emergency.	Fees apply
Setting/Help	Check the settings of map display, navigation display, etc. and how to use them.	Free

■ Starting the “地図アプリ”

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ (ｱﾌﾟﾘ) (for 1+ seconds) ▶ [地図アプリ].

- Each menu appears on the TOP screen. Close the menu to view the previously searched map.
- When the software is activated for the first time, the user agreement and the safety precaution appear.



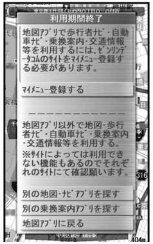
TOP screen

When the 91st day passes without the membership subscription

When this software is activated for the first time on and after the 91st day, a message indicating that available functions are limited and a message referring to the membership subscription appear.

Also, when the additional service menu is selected, the same messages appear.

- Sign up as a member on the site of “ゼンリン🏠地図+ナビ” from this software.



利用期間終了

地図ｱﾌﾟﾘで歩行者ﾅﾋﾞ・自動車ﾅﾋﾞ・乗換案内・交通情報等を利用するには、ｾﾞﾝﾘﾝﾃﾞｰﾀｺﾑのｻｲﾄをﾏｲﾒﾆｭｰ登録する必要があります。

ﾏｲﾒﾆｭｰ登録する

地図ｱﾌﾟﾘ以外で地図・歩行者ﾅﾋﾞ・自動車ﾅﾋﾞ・乗換案内・交通情報等を利用する。

※ｻｲﾄによっては利用できない機能もあるのでそれぞれのｻｲﾄにて確認願います。

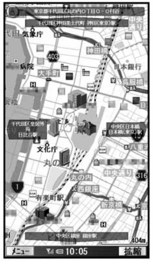
別の地図・ﾅﾋﾞｱﾌﾟﾘを探す

別の乗換案内ｱﾌﾟﾘを探す

地図ｱﾌﾟﾘに戻る

When the 91st day passes

■ Map display screen and operations



©2008 ZENRIN DataCom

Key operations while displaying a map

To view menu	ⓘ (メニュー) ● To close the menu: Press ⓘ (閉じる).
To view quick access menu	▣
To zoom/shrink a map	📷 (拡縮) ● The bar indicating the scale appears. Press ▼ to view details of the map and press ▲ to view a wide area of the map. Press 📷 (閉じる) to determine the scale and hide the bar.
To move a map to up/down/left/right	✣
To close menu or to return to the first result position	CLR
To rotate a map to right/left	Right: # Left: *
To position a map facing north	0

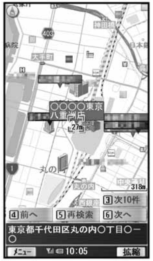
Continued on next page ▶▶

Key operations while displaying quick access menu

To check the peripheral area information around the location displayed on the map	↑ (周辺を調べる)
To search a route to the center of the map on which a departure place is set and displayed	↓ (ココへナビ)
To send the URL of the displayed map via mail	← (ココを✉送信)
To save the location information of the center of the map to this software, the server or the phonebook	→ (ココを登録) ● Save the location information to the server so that the saved point is shared with a PC.
To close the quick access menu	■ (地図へ)
To display the point to view a 3D intersection or panoramic picture	1 (３Ｄ･パノラマ) ● Select a point to view a 3D intersection or panoramic picture.
To display buildings in the peripheral area	2 (ビルテナント) ● To check tenants: Select a building ▶ ■ ▶ [このビルのテナント].

■ Search result screen of the neighborhood information and key operations

- A screen displaying a search result as a map is shown and the operations are explained below. When viewing the search results as a list, select a search result from the list to view the map.



©2008 ZENRIN DataCom

Key operations while displaying result to search the neighborhood information

To confirm details information of search result	Select a search result ▶ ■ ● When the cursor is not placed on the search result, the quick menu appears.
To move a map to up/down/left/right	✥
To search with displayed map centered again	5
To view the previous search result	4
To view the next search result	6
To view menu	☰ (メニュー) ▶ [はい] ● The search result is deleted, and the peripheral area information ends.
To zoom/shrink a map	📷 (拡縮) ● The bar indicating the scale appears. Press ↓ to view details of the map and press ↑ to view a wide area of the map. Press 📷 (閉じる) to determine the scale and hide the bar.

■ Searching a route to guide (navigate) to the destination with voice and a screen

Set a departure place and a destination to search a route. Routes for walking, using public transportation and driving are displayed. Guide (navigate) to the destination with voice and a screen after searching a route.

1 In the TOP screen, select [Navigation] ▶ [ナビをする].

2 Select the [出発地] field ▶ ■ ▶ select an item ▶ ■ ▶ set a departure place.

現在地 (GPS)	Position the present location to set (only for setting a departure place).
フリーワード検索	Search by key words to set.
地図上で指定	Set a departure place on a map.
TEL/〒検索	Search by a phone number or postal code to set.
住所一覧から	Select an address to set.
ジャンルから	Select a genre to set.
履歴から	Set from the previously displayed map.
登録地点から	Set from the location information saved in this software, the server or the phonebook.
自宅	Set the location information of your home.

- To check the set departure place: Select [出発地の確認].

3 Select the [目的地] field ▶ ■ ▶ select an item ▶ ■ ▶ set a destination place.

- Use the same operations as step 2 to set a destination place.
- To check the set destination place: Select [目的地の確認].

4 Select the [時間指定] field ▶ ■ ▶ select an item ▶ ■.

現時刻で指定	Search a route with the current time.
出発時刻指定	Specify a departure time to search a route.
到着時刻指定	Specify an arrival time to search a route.
終電を利用	Search a latest train route on the day.

5 Select the [条件設定] field ▶ ■ ▶ select an item ▶ ■ ▶ set the condition ▶ [上記で設定] ▶ [OK].

乗換条件	Select a priority criterion of selecting transfer among "早い", "安い", and "楽々".
徒歩ルート	Select a priority criterion of the route among "おまかせ", "屋根多い", and "階段少ない".
🚄特急利用	Select whether to use a limited express train when the total distance of the route is 100 km or less.
通常利用車種	Select a car model to be used.

6 Select [👟🚆🚗で検索].

- To search route used car only: Select [🚗のみで検索].
- Routes (up to six entries) appear. When there are transfer routes of different transportations, the characteristics of the routes are shown as icons.

Icon	Characteristics
早	Route of the shortest time distance
安	Route with the lowest fee
楽	Route with the least number of transfers
オススメ	Route that satisfies the above three conditions
有料	Route for a car with toll roads
一般	Route for a car with open roads

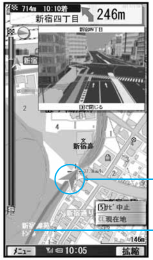
- To register the route: Select [ルートを登録].

7 Select a route ▶ ■ ▶ [ナビ･ルート確認] ▶ [ナビ]/[ナビ (省電力)] ▶ [はい].

- Starts navigation to your destination.
- To check the route: Select a route ▶ ■ ▶ [ナビ･ルート確認] ▶ [ルート確認] ▶ [はい].

■ Navigation (automobile) display screen and operations

Navigation (automobile) display screen layout



©2008 ZENRIN DataCom

Key operations while using a navigation

To view TOP menu	🅘 (メニュー)▶[はい] ● The navigation ends.
To view quick access menu	■
To zoom/shrink a map	📷 (拡縮) ● The bar indicating the scale appears. Press ↓ to view details of the map and press ↑ to view a wide area of the map. Press 📷 (閉じる) to determine the scale and hide the bar.
To move a map to up/down/left/right	✛
To return to the original position	CLR
To switch to the intersection mode	2
To stop/start the navigation	5
To rotate a map to right/left	Right: # Left: *
To position a map facing north	0

Key operations while displaying quick access menu

To search a parking area around the destination	↑ (目的地周辺Ⓟ)
To display the route search result (time, fare, etc.)/To set the navigation	↓ (結果＆設定)
To search a route to the destination with up to three stopover places added	← (経由地を設定)
To search a route from the present location to the destination again	→ (リルート)
To delete the displayed route	1 (ルート消去)
To switch to the intersection mode	2 (⚑モード切替)

■ Using 音声入力

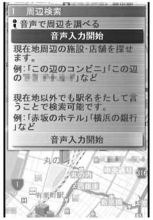
In 音声入力 menu, enter the information with voice to search peripheral area information, use transfer information or view a map easily.

Example: Searching “a nearby convenience store”

1 In the TOP screen, select [Local Search]▶[音声入力].

- The voice entry startup screen appears.

2 Select [音声入力開始]▶speak the peripheral area information to search to the mouthpiece (example: “この辺のコンビニ”)▶[音声入力完了].



1　周辺検索

音声で周辺を調べる

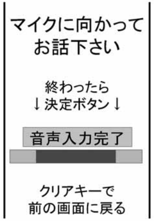
現在地周辺の施設･店舗を探せます。

例:「この辺のコンビニ」「この辺の[redacted]」など

現在地以外でも駅名をたして言うことで検索可能です。

例:「赤坂のホテル」「横浜の銀行」など

Voice entry startup screen

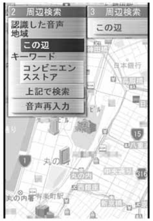


マイクに向かって
お話下さい

終わったら
↓決定ボタン↓

クリアキーで
前の画面に戻る

Microphone screen



Voice entry result screen

3 **In the voice entry result screen, select [上記で検索].**

- To perform the voice recognition again: Select [音声再入力].

■ Using Setting/Help

1 **In the TOP screen, select [Setting/Help] ▶ select an item ▶ ⊡.**

各種設定	Perform reset appli general settings, settings for navigation, your home or the nearest station, deletion of all histories, or appli settings.
ヘルプ･規約	Check how to use, frequently-asked questions and the user agreement.
会員情報確認	Check whether the membership of "ゼンリン⌂地図+ナビ" is signed up.
PC確認方法	Display URL, login ID, or password to view mapping appli site for PC.

Related Operations

Move a map by tilting the FOMA terminal

In the TOP screen, select [Extra] ▶ [地図モード] ▶ [直感地図モード] ▶ [OK].

Loc. request menu

Providing location information upon the request

Set whether to provide the present location upon the request from the other party.

- Location provision may require the subscription to a service provider supporting the service and the service usage fee.
- To use a service supporting location provision, set Location request menu to [Loc. provision:ON]. In addition, usage settings for each service (GPS Service settings) may be required. To use "imadoco-search", settings accessed by [iMenu] ▶ [料金＆お申込･設定] ▶ [オプション設定] ▶ [位置情報利用設定] ▶ [イマドコサーチ設定] is required.
- Sent location information may not reach a service provider depending on the signal strength.
- Location information may be sent to a service provider without any operation under [Loc. provision:ON]. Under [Loc. provision:OFF], even if the location information from the other party is received, it is automatically rejected, and the history of location provision does not remain.
- ▤ (blue) appears when [Loc. provision:ON] is set. Until a location provision permission schedule ends if it is set, ▤ (blue) is displayed while permitted and ▤ (black) while rejected.
- Change sound/volume/LED color for Location provision (☞P. 109, P. 123).
- Location information is provided free of charge.
- For the use of location information, check the information of a service provider and DoCoMo website. Charges may apply for these functions.

Continued on next page ▶▶

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Loc. request menu] ▶ [Loc. prov. ON/OFF] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

Note

- Location provision can also be set from initial settings.

■ Setting permission schedule onto Location provision

1 In the Location provision ON/OFF setting screen, select [Permission sched.].

2 Select [Start] ▶ enter the start time (24-hour format) ▶ ■.

3 Select [End] ▶ enter the end time (24-hour format) ▶ ■.

4 Select [Repeat] ▶ select the repeat method.

- **Select [Daily].**
- **Select [Set day of week] ▶ select a day of the week ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Not set] ▶ proceed to step 6.**

5 Select [From] ▶ [Start date setting] ▶ enter the start date ▶ ■ ▶ [End date setting] ▶ enter the end date ▶ ■.

- To not set valid period: Select [End date] ▶ [Not set].

6 Press ▤.

Note

- If an end time is set to the time before the scheduled time, location information is not provided for the day.

Related Operations

Set Positioning mode of Location provision

<Positioning mode>

In the GPS menu, select [Loc. request menu] ▶ [Positioning mode] ▶ select the Positioning mode ▶ ■ ▶ [OK].

Operation when permission schedule is set onto location provision

Example: When the current date is "July 22, 2008, 14:00"

Start: 15:00 End: 22:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	**Valid period**	
Not set	–	07/22/2008, 15:00 to 07/22/2008, 22:00
Everyday	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/27/2008, 15:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/22/2008, 15:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Everyday after 07/22/2008, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
Set day of week	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/27/2008, 15:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/22/2008, 15:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Set day of week after 07/22/2008, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 22:00)

Start: 09:00 End: 22:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	**Valid period**	
Not set	–	07/22/2008, 14:00 to 07/22/2008, 22:00
Everyday	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/27/2008, 09:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/22/2008, 14:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Everyday after 07/22/2008, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
Set day of week	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/27/2008, 09:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/22/2008, 14:00 to 08/27/2008, 22:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)
	Not set	Set day of week after 07/22/2008, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 22:00)

Start: 15:00 End: 10:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	**Valid period**	
Not set	–	07/22/2008, 15:00 to 07/23/2008, 10:00
Everyday	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/27/2008, 15:00 to 08/28/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/22/2008, 15:00 to 08/28/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Everyday after 07/22/2008, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
Set day of week	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/27/2008, 15:00 to 08/28/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/22/2008, 15:00 to 08/28/2008, 10:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Set day of week after 07/22/2008, 15:00 (between 15:00 and 10:00 on the next day)

Start: 09:00 End: 09:00

Setting details		Schedule when location provision is performed
Repeat	**Valid period**	
Not set	–	07/22/2008, 14:00 to 07/23/2008, 09:00
Everyday	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/27/2008, 09:00 to 08/28/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Everyday from 07/22/2008, 14:00 to 08/28/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Everyday after 07/22/2008, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
Set day of week	From 07/27/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/27/2008, 09:00 to 08/28/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	From 07/17/2008 End date 08/27/2008	Set day of week from 07/22/2008, 14:00 to 08/28/2008, 09:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)
	Not set	Set day of week after 07/22/2008, 14:00 (between 09:00 and 09:00 on the next day)

Setting host <Host setting>

Set the host for the GPS service setting site.
※ Setting does not normally need to be changed.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Loc. request menu] ▶ [Host setting] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**
2. **Select [User specified host] ▶ 📷.**
   - To return to the default host: Select [Default].
   - To change to the preset user-defined host: Select [User specified host].
   - To delete to the set user-defined host: Select [User specified host] ▶ 📷 ▶ 📷 ▶ [Yes].
3. **Select [Host name] ▶ enter the host name ▶ ⊡.**
   - Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.
4. **Select [Host URL] ▶ enter the host URL ▶ ⊡.**
   - Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.
5. **Press ⓘ.**

GPS service settings <Service settings>

Configure the setting required for Location provision.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Loc. request menu] ▶ [Service settings].**
   - Connected to the GPS service setting site.
2. **Configure the settings.**
   - Please contact GPS service providers for the setting details.

When the location information is requested

Location provision starts when the request to provide the location information is received.

- When each service usage setting is set to [許可], the location information is automatically provided upon request.
- When each service usage setting is set to [毎回確認], a confirmation screen asking whether to provide appears at every request. Select [Yes] to start providing the location information.
- If no operation is performed when the location is requested, return to stand-by display after providing location information is end, and the stock icon 📡 (Send loc - Resp/Send loc - No resp/Send loc - Failed) appears. Select the stock icon and location histories appear.
- To cancel Location provision, press ⓘ and press ⊡. However, the location information may be sent depending on timing.
- Sent location information may not reach a requestor of the location information depending on the signal strength.
- Host ID for Location provision may not be displayed on the screen.

Note

- When the 2in1 service is used, only Number A is available regardless of the mode. If the location information provision is requested with Number B, the location information is not provided, and the failure of search is notified to the other party.

When the location information is requested from the other party who used imadocokantan search

- A confirmation screen for location provision appears at every request. Select [Yes] to immediately notify to a rough positioning result to the other party.
  After [Yes] is selected, the GPS positioning screen appears, and a high-accuracy positioning result is notified.
- If the location provision is canceled after [Yes] is selected on a confirmation screen for location provision, a rough positioning result is notified to the other party. In this case, the location history is recorded, but the location information does not appear.

When the location information is requested while in Public mode (Drive mode)

- If Location provision is set to [許可] for usage settings of each service, a confirmation screen for location provision is displayed, the GPS positioning screen appears, and the location is provided after GPS positioning. However, Location provision/accept, Location provision/notify, vibrator or called LED does not operate.
- When Location provision is set to [毎回確認] for usage settings of each service, location information is not provided.

Location notification

Notifying present location

Notify the positioned Location information of the present location to specified service clients (service provider supporting Location notification).

- See the information of a service provider supporting Location notification or DoCoMo website. In addition, subscription to a service provider supporting Location notification and a service usage fee may be required.
- Sent location information may not reach a service provider depending on the signal strength.
- Using Location notification is charged.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Loc.notification/set] ▶ [Location notification].

2 Select the service client.

- ◆ **Select [Select from list] ▶ select a service client ▶ ■.**
- ◆ **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter the service client ID ▶ ■.**
- To cancel positioning location: Press ℹ ▶ ■.
    - Positioning may not be canceled or the location information may be sent depending on timing.

Note

- Change sound/volume/LED color for Location notification (☞P. 109, P. 123).
- When the 2in1 service is used, the location information is notified with Number A regardless of the mode.

Related Operations

Set Positioning mode of Location notification
<Positioning mode>

In the GPS menu, select [Loc.notification/set] ▶ [Positioning mode] ▶ select the Positioning mode ▶ ■ ▶ [OK].

Saving service clients <Notification clients>

Save up to five service clients to notify the present location.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Loc.notification/set] ▶ [Notification clients].

2 Press 📷 ▶ [Save new].

- Alternatively, press ℹ.

3 Select [Name] ▶ enter a service client name ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.

4 Select [ID] ▶ enter the service client ID ▶ ■.

- Enter ID specified by a GPS service provider.
- Enter up to 12 single-byte numeric characters. [*] and [#] are also available to enter.

5 Select [Phone number] ▶ enter a phone number.

- ◆ **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a phone number ▶ ■.**
- ◆ **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ■.**

Continued on next page ▶▶

- The phone number already saved as location service client cannot be added.

6 Select [Auto] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

- If automatic notice is set to [Yes], automatically notifies the present location to the recipient when a voice call is made to a saved phone number.

7 Press ≡.

Note

- Copy location service clients to a microSD Card or location service clients saved on a microSD Card to the FOMA terminal handset.

Related Operations

Edit the saved contents of location service clients

In the notification clients screen, select a location service client ▶ ● ▶ select an item ▶ ● ▶ edit ▶ ≡.

Add location service clients to phonebook

<Add to phonebook>

In the notification clients screen, select a location service client ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.

Delete location service clients <Delete>

1 In the notification clients screen, select a location service client ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a service client ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

3 Select [Yes].

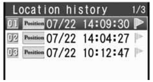
Location history

Displaying the history of confirmed location information

Up to 50 entries of location information positioned by GPS function are saved in Location history. Use location information on the history to display a map or for other operations.

- When 50 entries are exceeded, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest.
- Even if latitude and longitude are indicated on the Location history screen, sent location information may not reach the service clients or provider.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [GPS menu] ▶ [Location history].



Location history 1/3
01 Position 07/22 14:09:30
02 Position 07/22 14:04:27
03 Position 07/22 10:12:47

Location history list

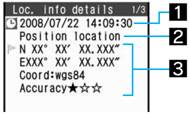
- Location history types and dates are listed starting with the most recent.

Location history type

Position	Position location	Notify	Location notification
Provide	Location provision		

- ⚑ appears when the location history contains location information.
- To show a map: Select a location history ▶ ≡ ▶ [OK].

2 Select the location history ▶ ■.


Loc. info details 1/3
2008/07/22 14:09:30
Position location
N XX° XX′ XX.XXX″
EXXX° XX′ XX.XXX″
Coord:wgs84
Accuracy★☆☆

Location history
detail screen

1 Positioning date

2 History type

[Position location]/[Location notification]/[Location provision] appears. For [Location notification]/[Location provision], the icon and the information of the service client or service client for provision appear.

For Location notification

🏢	Service client name	🏢ID	Service client ID

For Location provision

🏢	Service client name for Location provision
🏢ID	Service client ID for Location provision
👤	Requestor name for Location provision
👤ID	Requestor ID for Location provision

※ When the requestor ID for Location provision is a phone number or mail address, Phone To (AV Phone To) (☞P. 184) and Mail To (☞P. 184) can be used.

3 Location information

Latitude : Degrees, Minutes, Seconds
Longitude : Degrees, Minutes, Seconds
Datum : wgs84 (World Datum), tokyo (Tokyo Datum)
Accuracy : Error range of accuracy (☞P. 266)

Note

- Accuracy is a rough indication. It may differ depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.
- The entry that has failed or interrupted to position for Position location is not saved as Location history.
- If the location information is provided when the 2in1 service is used, the requestor name for Location provision appears in each mode of 2in1 according to the Phonebook 2in1 setting.
- The location information and accuracy recorded in Location history may differ from those sent to a location provider and a location service client due to the signal strength, etc.

Using location history

1 Select the location history on the Location history list screen ▶ 📷 ▶ select a usage.

- **Select [Read a Map] ▶ [OK].**
- **Select [Run i-αppli] ▶ select i-αppli ▶ ■.**
- **Select [Paste to mail] ▶ [OK] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
- **Select [Add to phonebook] ▶ add to the phonebook.**
- **Select [Attach to image] ▶ select an image ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ select the saving method ▶ ■.**
- **Select [Delete] ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Delete] ▶ [Delete selected] ▶ select a location history ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Delete] ▶ [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].**

Using location information from each function

Use location information with each function by adding location information to data such as phonebook and still pictures or displaying a map based on the added location information.

Adding location information

Example: Phonebook

1 In the phonebook entry screen, select ⚑ ▶ select a location information to add.

- **Select [From position loc.] ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**
  - The present location is positioned by GPS function.
- **Select [From loc. history] ▶ select a location history ▶ ▤ ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [From image] ▶ select an image ▶ ▤.**
- **Select [Loc. info details].**
- **Select [Del. location info].**

- ● For pictures saved in My picture of Data box or i-mode mail, location information added to the phonebook can be selected. The location information added to an image cannot be selected.
- ● For My picture of Data box, when the operation is made from the image list screen, multiple images to which location information is added can be selected.

Using added location information

■ Using location information in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or in the images saved in My picture of Data box

Example: Phonebook

1 In the phonebook entry details screen, select ⚑ ▶ select a usage.

- **Select [Read a Map] ▶ [OK].**
- **Select [Run i-αppli] ▶ select i-αppli ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Paste to mail] ▶ [OK] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
- **Select [Attach to image] ▶ select an image ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ select the saving method ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Loc. info details].**
- ● For My picture of Data box: In the image list or image display screen, press 📷 ▶ [Location info] ▶ select a usage.
  - Save location information to the phonebook.

■ Using location information of sites, data broadcasting, ToruCa or Message R/F

Example: Sites

1 While viewing a site, select location information ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a usage.

- **Select [Run i-αppli] ▶ [OK] ▶ select i-αppli ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Read a map] ▶ [OK].**
- **Select [Paste to mail] ▶ [OK] ▶ compose and send a mail.**
- ● To check the location information: Select a usage ▶ ⊡ ▶ 📷.

1Seg

What is 1Seg?

What is 1Seg?

1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices and can receive data broadcasting with image and voice. Moreover, use i-mode to freely enjoy acquiring more detailed program information, participating in a quiz program, teleshopping, etc.

For details on the “1Seg” service, see the website below.

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
PC: ***http://www.dpa.or.jp/***
i-mode: ***http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/***

Using 1Seg

1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations), etc.

In 1Seg shown on a broadcast wave, a mobile phone can receive video, voice and sound, and other information of data broadcasting. Reception of them is free of charge and does not require any subscription.

Information available in the area of the data broadcasting is “data broadcasting” information and “data broadcasting site” information. Information of “data broadcasting” is carried in a broadcast wave, together with video, voice and sound. “Data broadcasting site” information is used to access sites provided by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). The “i-mode site” can also be accessed with this service. To access sites, subscription of the i-mode service is required. Packet transmission charges apply when accessing a site such as a “data broadcasting site”, “i-mode site” or others.

Also, paid sites (i-mode paid sites) require another cost for some sites.

About signal

1Seg is one of the broadcasting services, and the signal (broadcast wave) different from that of FOMA service is received. Therefore, it cannot be received at the place where the broadcast wave does not reach or during the hours when the broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is outside or inside the FOMA service area.

Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the FOMA terminal is inside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

- ■ Place that is far from the tower which sends the broadcasting wave
- ■ Place where the signal is interrupted due to the landscape or buildings such as mountain areas or behind a building
- ■ Place where the signal is weak or does not reach to, such as a tunnel, basement or a place in the rear of a building

To improve the reception status, fully pull out the 1Seg antenna. In addition, change the direction of antenna, hold the FOMA terminal apart from or close to the body or move to another place, so that the reception status may become better.

Screen display for when 1Seg is used for the first time

A confirmation screen of disclaimer appears when 1Seg is activated for the first time after purchase.

Check the contents and press ● three times. The same confirmation screen does not appear after that.

- ● In the following cases, a confirmation screen for using the service appears again.
  - ■ When Reset settings is made
  - ■ When Delete user data is performed
  - ■ When another FOMA card is inserted
  - ■ Reset 1Seg

What is broadcast storage area?

A mobile phone has a storage area that is used exclusively for 1Seg information. This area is called broadcast storage area. When watching a program, the user may enter some information, following instructions provided in the data broadcasting area. The broadcast storage area stores this entered information, based on the setting made by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). The stored personal information may be results of panel shows, member's number, sex, age, occupation or others.

These stored items may be displayed even if not re-entered when the data broadcasting site is accessed. They may also be transmitted to the TV broadcaster (broadcast station).

For details on deleting the broadcasting storage area ☞P. 299

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to format the broadcasting storage area when a different FOMA card is inserted. Select [Yes] to format. Select [No] to not format. In this case, the services of the broadcasting storage area become unavailable.

■ Screen display when using information in the broadcasting storage area

When using information in the broadcasting storage area while watching a TV program, [Use saved information? It may include info used by the same broadcasting group] appears. Select [Yes] to not display the message again while watching the same program. Select [Yes(Always)] to not display the message for all the TV programs.

Before using 1Seg

Procedures for watching 1Seg

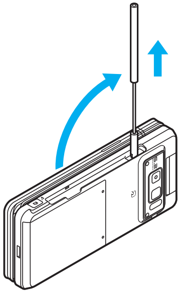
Example: When watching 1Seg for the first time

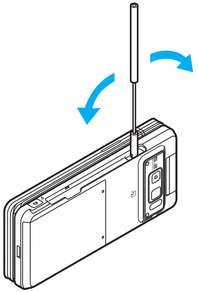
STEP1 Setting channels ☞P. 284
Save channel lists corresponding to your area and select the channel list to use.

STEP2 Watching 1Seg ☞P. 285
Pull out the 1Seg antenna to activate 1Seg.

Using the 1Seg antenna

- Do not force to change the direction of the 1Seg antenna.
- When putting the 1Seg antenna back into the FOMA terminal, do not force to do so holding its top part. May result in damage. Push the antenna straight out until it stops and tip the 1Seg antenna to put back into the FOMA terminal.





Other notes for 1Seg

- When 1Seg is activated for the first time, it cannot be activated in the condition that communication is disabled.
- 1Seg is not available when the FOMA card is not inserted, subscription with DoCoMo is canceled, or the FOMA service is disabled.
- When 1Seg is repeatedly played in the condition that communication is disabled (for example, the FOMA terminal is in Self mode or outside the FOMA service area), 1Seg may not be activated even if the inserted FOMA card is subscribed to DoCoMo. In such cases, move into the FOMA service area and reactivate 1Seg in there.
- If 1Seg is used for a long time while charging, the service life of the battery pack may become shorter than estimated.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss or change of the saved data due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal.
  Before changing the model or asking for repair of your FOMA terminal, it is recommended to make a copy of the stored contents (video and still pictures taken from 1Seg, TVlink, data in the broadcasting storage area, etc.) by preparing a memo or other means.
- 1Seg cannot be used overseas since the broadcasting format and the broadcasting frequency are different (1Seg programs video-recorded on the FOMA terminal can be watched).

Channel setting

Setting channels

To watch 1Seg, first set the channels, and then select the channel list in the Channel setting.

- A channel list can be saved using either Auto channel setting or Preset channel setting.
- Up to nine channel lists can be saved. Each channel list can have up to 62 stations.

Automatically saving a broadcast station into the channel list <Auto channel set>

Select a prefecture/district. The terminal begins to search for broadcast stations and then saves them into the channel list.

- Perform Auto channel setting inside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

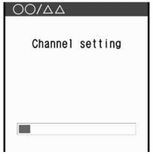
1 **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Channel setting].**

2 **Select a number to save ▶ 📷 ▶ [Auto channel set] ▶ [Yes].**

- Alternatively, press ✉ to perform Auto channel setting.

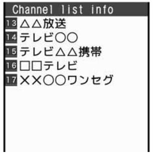
3 **Select a prefecture/district ▶ ●.**

- Searching broadcast stations starts. It takes approximately 40 seconds to end the search.



○○/△△

Channel setting



Channel list info

13 △△放送
14 テレビ○○
15 テレビ△△携帯
16 □□テレビ
17 ××○○ワンセグ

4 **Press ● ▶ [Yes].**

Saving preset channel list <Preset CH setting>

Save broadcast stations in a prefecture/district, selected from the information, into the channel list for your current prefecture/district.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Channel setting].**

2 **Select a number to save ▶ 📷 ▶ [Preset CH setting].**

- Alternatively, press 📖, and then perform Preset channel setting.

3 **Select a prefecture/district ▶ ⊡.**

4 **Press ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**

Note

- If the Preset channel setting cannot be performed, make the Auto channel setting.

Selecting a channel list to be used

1 **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Channel setting].**

2 **Select a channel list ▶ ⊡.**

- To display the details for a given channel list: Select channel list ▶ ▤.
- ✓ appears in the set channel list.

Related Operations

Edit a title of channel list <Edit title>

Select a channel list ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 40 single/double-byte characters.

Delete a channel list <Delete>

1 **Select a channel list ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a channel list ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Delete a broadcast station in the channel list <Delete>

Select a channel list ▶ ▤ ▶ select a broadcast station ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

Change the remote control number <Change remote no.>

Select a channel list ▶ ▤ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Change remote no.] ▶ select a broadcast station ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a new remote control number ▶ ⊡.

Note (Related operations)

Deleting

- The channel list being used cannot be deleted.

Deleting broadcast stations

- When only one station is saved, it cannot be deleted.

Changing a remote control number

- Those channels that are assigned to No. 1 to 12 on the remote control can be selected with one-touch operation (☞P. 286).

Activate 1Seg

Watching 1Seg

- Connect commercially available Bluetooth device, and play sound of 1Seg (☞P. 408).

In the normal position

1 In stand-by, press 📷 (for 1+ seconds).

- In the Custom menu: Select [1Seg] ▶ [Activate 1Seg].
- When the message confirming whether to initialize the broadcast storage area appears, check the content and press ■.

In the viewer position

1 Press 📷 (for 1+ seconds).

Note

- Activate 1Seg from program information on sites or mail (☞P. 185).
- When 1Seg is activated in Manner mode, the message whether to sound appears. Select the setting.
- While watching 1Seg, the color such as a color theme may appear differently.

Operations while watching 1Seg

Video mode

	Normal position	Viewer position
To select a station with UP/DOWN*1	◀▶	Touch the touch panel (☞P. 40) and slide the finger left/right
To select a station with one-touch operation*2	1 to 9, *, 0, #	–
To select a station by searching a frequency*3	▶ (for 1+ seconds)/ ◀ (for 1+ seconds)	Operate with the control key (☞P. 42)
To adjust volume (volume 0 to 10)	▲▼*4	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger up/down
To mute/disable	✎	–
To turn Caption Settings ON/OFF	✎ (for 1+ seconds)	–
To activate the Program guide i-αppli	📖	–
To record a movie of 1Seg programs	▮ (for 1+ seconds) ● To stop recording: Press ▮.	📷 (for 1+ seconds) ● To stop recording: Press 📷.
To record 1Seg programs as a still picture	▮	📷
To switch between video mode and data broadcasting mode	✉	–
To end 1Seg	CLR/☎ ▶ [Yes]	Operate with the control key
To show the control key	–	Touch the touch panel

*1 Select a station in order/reverse order of the remote control numbers 1 to 62.

*2 1 to 9, *, 0, and # correspond to remote control No. 1 to 9, 10, 11, and 12, respectively.

*3 Stations are searched and switched in order of received frequencies.

*4 Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously.

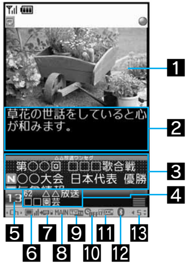
Data broadcasting mode

	Normal position
To select the highlight in data broadcasting items	▲▼
To access a selected site	■
To move to the previous/next page	◀▶
To record a movie of 1Seg program	▮ (for 1+ seconds) ● To stop recording: Press ▮.

	Normal position
To record 1Seg programs as a still picture	[≡]
To operate data broadcasting*	CLR, 1 to 9, 0, ✱, #

* Operations differ according to the data broadcasting.

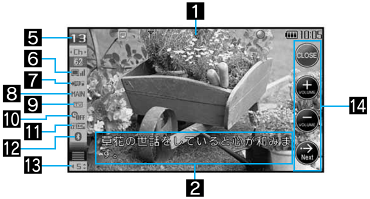
1Seg watching screen layout



草花の世話をしていると心が和みます。

第〇〇回 □□□歌合戦
N〇〇大会 日本代表 優勝

62 △△放送
□□園芸



草花の世話をしていると心が和みます。

1 Video

2 Caption

- In the viewer position, text other than Caption appears when Display mode (W) is set to the following settings. When an image is displayed full screen, the position of caption can be changed.
  - For [Video+data]: Data broadcasting
  - For other than [Video+data] with Caption Settings [OFF]: Broadcast station/Program name

3 Data broadcasting

4 Broadcast station/Program name

5 Channel number

6 Icon indicating reception of broadcast waves

▭ıl	▭ıl ▭ı ▭. Strong ⟷ Weak

- When ▭✕ appears, the handset is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received.

7 Icon indicating the recording status

➔▮	Video recording destination: phone
➔SD	Video recording destination: microSD
➔▮ SD	Video recording destination: Auto (handset first)
➔SD ▮	Video recording destination: Auto (microSD first)
○	Recording is being prepared
●▮	Recording to the phone is in progress
●SD	Recording to microSD Card is in progress

8 Icon indicating the settings of Main/Sub language

MAIN	Main language	MAIN SUB	Main + Sub language
SUB	Sub language		

9 Icon indicating operation mode

TV TA	Video mode (Data broadcasting displayed)
TV	Video mode (Data broadcasting not displayed)
DATA TV	Data broadcasting mode

10 Icon indicating the settings of the Off timer

◷OFF	Off timer is being set

11 Icon indicating the settings of Dolby sound

AUTO DDM	Link genres	DDM	Variety
NORMAL	Normal	♪DDM	Music
DDM	News	DDM	Movie
DDM	Sports	ORIGINAL DDM	Original
DDM	Drama		

Continued on next page ▶▶

⑫Icon indicating Bluetooth output

ᛒ	Bluetooth outputting

⑬Icon indicating volume

◀5	◀0 (Volume 0) to ◀10 (Volume 10), 🚫 (Mute), 🎧 (Bluetooth outputting)

⑭Control keys (☞P. 42)

Note

- At the viewer position, when data transmission is not indicated but there is program data being transmitted, ▯ may appear on the 1Seg watching screen.

Related Operations

Perform channel setting while watching 1Seg <Channel setting>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Channel list] ▶ [Channel setting].

- For details on Channel setting ☞“Setting channels” on P. 284

Save the broadcast station of a 1Seg program being watched into the channel list <Add channel>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Channel list] ▶ [Add channel].

Search a service station to be used on the channel <Service station>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Channel list] ▶ [Service station] ▶ select the service ▶ ●.

Switch the display size of video and data broadcasting in the normal position <Display mode (L)>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Display mode (L)] ▶ select a display method ▶ ●.

Switch the display size of video and data broadcasting in the viewer position <Display mode (W)>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Display mode (W)] ▶ select a display method ▶ ●.

Set whether to show icons in the viewer position <Mark display (W)>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Mark display (W)] ▶ select a display method ▶ ●.

Set whether to display the name of broadcast station and 1Seg program in the normal position <App area (L)>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [App area (L)] ▶ select a display method ▶ ●.

Set to display captions <Caption Settings>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Caption Settings] ▶ [Caption] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

- To set to Caption position in the viewer position while viewing an image in full screen: Select [Caption(hori wide)] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.
- To set to Caption Settings when activating 1Seg: Select [Startup settings] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

Set image quality mode <Vibrant image mode>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Image quality] ▶ [Vibrant image mode] ▶ select an image quality mode ▶ ●.

- For details on image quality mode ☞“Setting the image quality mode” on P. 124

Adjust display brightness <Brightness>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Image quality] ▶ [Brightness] ▶ select an adjustment method ▶ ●.

- For [Manual]: Select [Manual] ▶ adjust the brightness with ⇕ ▶ ●.

Set Dolby sound <Dolby Sound Set.>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.] ▶ select the setting ▶ ●.

- When Original is selected, set an item and press ▯.

Set the duration to automatically stop 1Seg <Off timer>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Off timer] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

View the Key list <Key list>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Key list].

Compose an i-mode message including program information <Comp intro message>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Comp intro message] ▶ compose and send a message.

View program information <Program info>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Program info].

Note (Related operations)

Add channel

- When a 1Seg program in the different area from the one set to the channel list is being watched, the broadcast station of the program may not be added to the channel list.

Mark display (W)

- Set whether to show icons (indicating Clock, Signal status, etc.) that appear on the upper side of the screen. If [Temporary display] is set, the icons appear for approximately 6 seconds when the channel and volume are changed.

Application area (L)

- Set whether to display the name of broadcast station or 1Seg program, and the channel number. If [Temporary display] is set, the names or numbers appear for approximately 6 seconds when the channel is changed.

Caption Settings

- Captions are not available for some programs. For the setting with captions shown, the caption area appears even if a program does not have captions.
- If [Linked manner] is set, captions appear when 1Seg is activated in Manner mode.

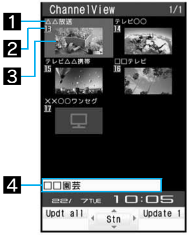
Compose introduction message

- Send to the FOMA terminal supporting Media To function so that the recipient can select the information and activate 1Seg.
- i-mode mail cannot be composed and sent when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode] (☞P. 196).

Displaying ChannelView <ChannelView>

Select a program from a list of program images (still pictures) being displayed.

1 In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [ChannelView].



1 Broadcast station

2 Channel number

3 Program image (still picture)

When still pictures are not displayed

🖥	Not downloaded
○	During download
⊘	Out of the service area, unavailable channel
🖥	Copy prohibited program

- When the program image cannot be downloaded due to the reception status of broadcast waves, etc., nothing appears.

4 Program name

■ Operations during ChannelView display

	Normal position	Viewer position
To watch a program	Select a program ▶ ▣	Select a program ▶ touch a program
To update a program image	Select a program ▶ 📷	Select a program ▶ touch [Update 1]
To update all program images	▤	Touch [Updt all]

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- It takes approximately 5 to 15 seconds per a broadcast station to download program images (still pictures) depending on the reception status. During download, ○ is flashing at the bottom of the screen.

Setting operations while watching 1Seg program

<1Seg settings>

1 In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [1Seg settings].

2 Select an item.

- **Select [Main/Sub language] ▶ select main/sub language ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Change language] ▶ select main/sub language ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Set when folded] ▶ select an operation ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Video recding dest] ▶ select a video destination ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Switch auto area] ▶ select a setting ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Status request].**

Note

Set when folded

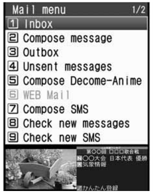
- While making a video recording, setting [End] will also set mute, while the recording continues.
- When 1Seg is activated if the close operation is set to [Continue] or [Silent], the information of data broadcasting/data broadcasting site may be automatically updated since 1Seg is kept activated even with the FOMA terminal closed. In such cases, packet transmission charges may apply.

Switch auto area

- If the broadcasting area is changed due to transfer while watching 1Seg when auto area switching of the 1Seg settings is set to [ON], a confirmation screen appears asking whether to change to a channel list that can be viewed. Select [Yes] to automatically search and set the channel list. In this case, the channel list for the destination number 9 may be overwritten.

Using another function while watching 1Seg

While watching 1Seg on Multi Window, use another function.



Mail menu 1/2

1 Inbox

2 Compose message

3 Outbox

4 Unsent messages

5 Compose Decome-Anime

6 WEB Mail

7 Compose SMS

8 Check new messages

9 Check new SMS

Multi Window

- The following shows functions that can be activated using Multi Window while watching 1Seg.
  - ■ i-mode*1
  - ■ Full Browser
  - ■ i-Channel
  - ■ Supportbook
  - ■ GPS*4
  - ■ Bluetooth function
  - ■ Mail*2
  - ■ Phonebook
  - ■ ToruCa
  - ■ Manga&BookReader*3
  - ■ Document Viewer
  - ■ Quick search*5
  - ■ Text memo
  - ■ Schedule
  - ■ Calculator
  - ■ Folder list and file list screens in Data box*6, 7
  - ■ Playlist and music data list screens of MUSIC Player

  *1 [Reset i-mode] is not available.

  *2 [Mail setting] cannot be selected.

  *3 For e-books, etc. displayed in full screen, Multi Window is not available.

  *4 [i-αppli] is not available.

  *5 In the Quick search menu or search string input screen of [i-mode Search], Multi Window is not available. Also, [i-αppli Dictionary] is not available.

  *6 For data in the [My picture], set [5-part/details] in view mode to check the details screen.

  *7 [Music&Video ch] is not available.
- Even when performing operations other than the following, Multi Window is displayed if 1Seg and other functions are used simultaneously.

1 While watching 1Seg, press [MULTI].

- To use mail function: Press ✉ (for 1+ seconds).

2 Select a function ▶ [●].

Setting the viewer position in Multi Window

- The switching appli screen appears. Select and touch the function to use and the following appear depending on the functions:
  - ■ If a function that supports the full-screen is selected: The selected function appears in full-screen.
  - ■ If a function that does not support the full-screen is selected: The selected function appears on the left side of the screen and the 1Seg watching screen appears on the right side of the screen. Touch the display part in the 1Seg watching screen to display in full-screen (When 1Seg ends, a substitute image appears at the display position in the 1Seg watching screen).

Receiving calls while watching 1Seg

When any of the following occur while watching 1Seg, Multi Window appears for the normal position or 1Seg watching screen appears in the right side for the viewer position, and the corresponding function is activated. 1Seg sound is interrupted.

Incoming voice call/ Incoming PushTalk call	A call can be answered. ● Return to the status existing before receiving a call when a call is finished.
Incoming Videophone call	A call can be answered. ● 1Seg is terminated when a call is answered. ● Return to the status existing before receiving a call when a call is rejected by pressing ✉.
Alarm/Schedule alarm	The details of alarm/schedule can be checked when the alarm is stopped. ● Return to the status existing before the alarm was activated when an alarm is finished.
Notification of Reception/Recording	For details on the operation after the notification of Reception/Recording ☞P. 294

Note

- When talking in the viewer position, use the flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch (sold separately).
- After a call is ended, 1Seg may starts automatically. At this time, the voice and sound are played in the volume for 1Seg. Keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear.

Program guide

Using the Program guide i-αppli

Use the Program guide i-αppli to select a program and start 1Seg program. Also, set timer for starting or recording a program.

- For details on changing the Program guide i-αppli ☞P. 233

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Program guide].

- In the 1Seg watching screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Disp program guide].
  - • Alternatively, press 🕮 to activate the Program guide i-αppli.
- In the Program guide i-αppli screen, press [i] to watch the selected program.

Note

- The preset G-GUIDE program schedule remote control cannot be used when 2in1 mode is set to [B mode].

Recording 1Seg

Record movies of a program being displayed or a scene as a still picture.

- Recorded videos/still pictures are automatically assigned names, as follows.
  - ■ The videos/still pictures recorded to the FOMA terminal handset are named according to the date and time of recording.
    Example: End recording at 1:05 P.M. on July 22, 2008 →
    [200807221305xxx] ("xxx" is a single-byte number)

Continued on next page ▶▶

  - The videos recorded to the microSD Card are automatically named as [PRGxxx] ("xxx" is a single-byte alphanumeric)
- The recording of some videos may be prohibited.
- Video recording cannot be started while the Multi Window is displayed.
- The following operations cannot be performed on a recorded video/still pictures.
  - Screen settings such as the stand-by display settings or incoming call screen settings
  - Mail attachment or transmission based on Ir exchange/iC transmission
  - Editing video and images

Estimated number of saved entries and recording time

- For details on video recording destination setting ☞P. 298
- The following figures are estimated number of saved entries and recording time.

	Number of entries	Recording time
FOMA terminal handset	Up to 99	Up to approx. 30 min
microSD Card (8 GB)*	Up to 99	Up to approx. 2,560 min

* Record up to 2 GB (Approx. 640 minutes) of 1Seg for each time. Use a microSD Card of more than 2 GB and end the recording even if the available memory space is sufficient.

- Once all the free space at the save destination has been used, recording stops automatically, and the recording made up to that point is saved.

Recording movies of 1Seg programs while watching

- For details on playing back a recorded program ☞P. 329

1 In the 1Seg watching screen, press ▯ (for 1+ seconds).

- In the viewer position: Press ◙ (for 1+ seconds).
- It may take some time for recording to start.

2 Press ▯ to end recording.

- In the viewer position: Press ◙.
- Recording ends, and the video is automatically saved.

Note

- Called LED flashes red while recording movies.
- While recording movies, the following operations are not available.
  - Changing channels
  - Channel setting
  - Record 1Seg programs as a still picture
  - Service station
  - ChannelView
  - Off timer
  - Video recording destination setting
  - Using the Program guide i-αppli
  - Using TVlink
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal is closed during recording.
- When the time set for recording arrives while another movie is being recorded, the recording of the timer-set movie is started. Recording up to that point ends, and the video data is saved.

Related Operations

Set the end time of recording movies <Recording end time>

While recording movies, press 📷 ▶ [Recording end time] ▶ select a time ▶ ⊡ ▶ select the operation after recording ▶ ⊡.

Note (Related operations)

- The recording end time cannot be set during the reservation recording.
- When [Unrestricted] is selected as the recording end time, movies are recorded until available space on the save destination becomes insufficient. After recording, continue watching 1Seg.

Recording 1Seg programs as a still picture

- A recorded still picture is saved into the [Substitute image] folder of 1Seg in the Data box of the FOMA terminal handset.
- Save up to 1,000 images.
- For details on displaying the saved images ☞P. 329
- When the memory space is insufficient, or the available maximum number of items are exceeded ☞P. 348

1 In the 1Seg watching screen, press ▯.

- In the viewer position: Press 📷.
- The still image is recorded and then automatically saved. A few moments may have to pass until the image is saved.

Note

- For still pictures, only images are recorded, and the contents of data broadcasting are not recorded.
- For the normal position, when Display mode (L) is set to [Data broadcasting], still pictures cannot be recorded.

Booking list

Setting timer for starting or recording 1Seg programs

- Perform the following in advance.
  - ■ Set the correct date and time (☞P. 57)
  - ■ Set the channels (☞P. 284)
  - ■ Confirm disclaimer displayed when using 1Seg for the first time (☞P. 282)
- Save up to 50 timer settings for starting and recording 1Seg programs.
- For precautions on recording video ☞“Recording 1Seg” on P. 291

Setting timer for starting or recording 1Seg programs

■ Using the Program guide i-αppli <EPG>

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list] ▶ 📷 ▶ [New] ▶ [EPG] ▶ set a timer.

- Alternatively, in the Booking list screen, press ☰.

■ Setting date/time and a channel <Manual input>

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list] ▶ 📷 ▶ [New] ▶ [Manual input].

- Alternatively, in the Booking list screen, press ☰.

2 Select the timer setting.

◆ **Select [Reception].**

◆ **Select [Recording] ▶ [Yes]/[Yes(Always)].**

- Select [Yes(Always)] to subsequently not display the confirmation screen for recording.

3 Enter the start/end date and time ▶ ▣.

- For details on entering the date and time ☞step 2 of “Saving schedules” on P. 388

4 Select the repeat method.

◆ **Select [Once only].**

◆ **Select [Daily XX:XX]/[Weekly XX] ▶ enter the number of repeats ▶ ▣.**

- The saved time/day appears.
- *00* represents unlimited repeats.

5 Select [Channel] ▶ select a channel ▶ ▣.

6 Select [Prog name] ▶ enter the program name ▶ ▣.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

7 Set the start announcement ▶ ☰.

■ Setting method to start announcement

Setting alarms. For setting timer for starting 1Seg programs, the operation after an alarm is sounded can be set with Linked startup setting.

Linked startup setting	Operation after alarm
[ON (Notify)]	Alarm end ▶ 1Seg start confirmation screen appears ▶ [Yes] ▶ 1Seg start
[ON (Do not notify)]	Alarm end ▶ 1Seg start
[OFF]	Nothing is performed after alarm end (1Seg is not started)

- If set to [ON (Do not notify)], the off timer of [After 30 min] is automatically set.
- For details on the priority of alarm functions ☞P. 385

Continued on next page ▶▶

1 In the timer setting screen for starting/recording, select [Start ann].

- When setting timer for starting programs: Select [ON].
  - If the start announcement is set to [OFF], the timer for starting program is not activated.
- When setting timer for recording programs: Proceed to step 3.

2 Select [Alarm time] ▶ enter the alarm time (number of minutes before the start time) ▶ ▣.

3 Select [Alarm tone] ▶ select an alarm tone ▶ ▤.

- To check an alarm tone: Select an alarm tone ▶ ▣.
- To not sound an alarm: Select [Alarm tone] ▶ [Not set].

4 Select [Alarm volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ↕ ▶ ▣.

- When the setting timer for recording programs: Proceed to step 6.

5 Select [Linked startup] ▶ select the operation performed after alarm.

6 Press ▤.

Note

- Multiple programs cannot be watched/recorded simultaneously. If the recording period is partially same as that of an existing timer-set program, the confirmation screen for saving appears. Check the contents of the message, and then perform registration.

Setting Wakeup TV <Wakeup TV>

Set date/time and a channel and use 1Seg as alarm clock.

- At a set start time, 1Seg is activated automatically.
- For Wakeup TV, the off timer of [After 30 min] is automatically set.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Timer/ Alarm] ▶ [Wakeup TV].

- For details on the following operations ☞step 3 of "Setting date/time and a channel" on P. 293
- If start announcement is set to [OFF] and the linked startup settings are changed, Wakeup TV is not activated.

Note

- To edit or delete Wakeup TV, use Booking list in the 1Seg menu in the same way as when setting a timer for starting or recording a program.

When the start time arrives

An alarm, which set in start announcement, is activated approximately 1 minute before the set alarm time (for Reception) or the start time (for Recording). After approximately 15 seconds, the alarm stops.

- For details on stopping the alarm or adjusting the volume ☞"Key operation when an alarm sounds" on P. 386

Operation after alarm

Timer classes	Terminal status when an alarm is activated	Operation after alarm
Reception	Normal	Complies with start announcement of the Linked startup setting ● For details ☞"Setting method to start announcement" on P. 293
	While watching 1Seg	Nothing is performed (continue watching 1Seg)
	While watching 1Seg (different channel from timer)	Channel change confirmation screen appears ▶ [Yes] ▶ channel change
Recording	Normal	1Seg start* ▶ recording start
	While watching 1Seg	Message display ▶ recording start
	While watching 1Seg (different channel from timer)	Message display ▶ channel change ▶ recording start

* 1Seg is muted.

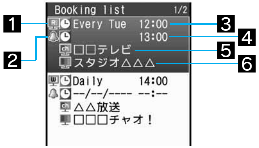
Note

- In the following cases, Reception reserve alarm and Recording reserve alarm are activated. However, watching or recording does not start.
  - ■ When a function that cannot be activated simultaneously with 1Seg is being used
  - ■ When a FOMA card is removed or a different FOMA card is inserted after setting timer
  - ■ When battery level is insufficient
  - ■ When Video recording destination is set to [microSD] without microSD Card inserted
  - ■ While Function lock is applied to the Multimedia
- In the following cases, Reception reserve alarm and Recording reserve alarm are not activated. In addition, watching or recording does not start.
  - ■ While making, receiving or during a voice/Videophone call or PushTalk
  - ■ During Ir exchange or while sending data using Ir remote control
  - ■ While All lock is set
  - ■ While the Wakeup screen or end screen at power ON/OFF is displayed
  - ■ While the Auto power OFF confirmation screen is displayed
  - ■ While the screen indicating the battery empty is displayed
  - ■ During software update
  - ■ While deleting user data collectively
  - ■ During USB transmission
  - ■ During packet transmission

Checking timer for starting or recording programs

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list].

- To show calendar: Press ✉.



Booking list 1/2
R Every Tue 12:00
13:00
ch □□テレビ
スタジオ△△△
W Daily 14:00
--/--/---- --:--
ch △△放送
□□□チャオ！

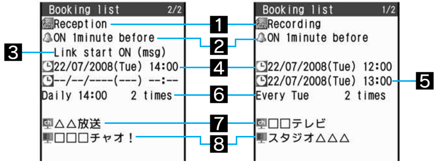
Booking list screen

1 Timer classes

W	Reception	R	Recording

2 Alarm
3 Start time
4 End time
5 Channel name
6 Program name

2 Select the timer ▶ ■.



Booking list 2/2
Reception
ON 1minute before
Link start ON (msg)
22/07/2008(Tue) 14:00
--/--/----(---) --:--
Daily 14:00 2 times
△△放送
□□□チャオ！

Booking list 1/2
Recording
ON 1minute before
22/07/2008(Tue) 12:00
22/07/2008(Tue) 13:00
Every Tue 2 times
□□テレビ
スタジオ△△△

Reception details screen

Recording details screen

1 Timer classes
2 Start announcement setting
3 Linked startup setting
4 Start time
5 End time
6 Repeat setting
7 Channel name
8 Program name

Editing timer for starting or recording programs <Edit>

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list].

2 Select a timer ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit].

3 Edit the timer ▶ ▣.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (☞P. 293).

4 Select the registration method.

- ◆ **Select [Save new].**
- ◆ **Select [Overwrite] ▶ [Yes].**

Managing timer for starting or recording programs

Deleting the timer settings <Delete>

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list].

2 Select a timer ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

- In the timer details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

3 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select the timer ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Delete all past] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
  - Delete all timers that are in the day before specified day.
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

4 Select [Yes].

Sorting the timer settings <Sort>

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Booking list] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Sort].

2 Select the sorting method ▶ ▣.

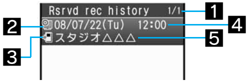
Viewing reservation recording history <Reserve rec hist>

Reservation recordings ended are saved. Check the recordings.

- Up to 50 reservation recording histories are saved.

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Reserve rec hist].

- In stand-by: When [1Seg rec hist] is displayed, press ▣.



Rsrvd rec history 1/1
08/07/22(Tu) 12:00
スタジオ△△△

Reserved recording history list

1 Number of entries/total entries
2 Icons indicating the recordings

✓	Complete	✗	Failed

3 Icon for destination of video to record

▯	Handset	SD	microSD

4 Recording start date and time
5 Program name

Showing reservation recording history details

- The following information is shown.

■ Recording results ■ Destination
■ Start time ■ End time ■ Remote control no.
■ Broadcaster name ■ Program name

1 Select a reservation recording history ▶ ▣.

Related Operations

View recorded video list screen

In the reserved recording history list screen/reserved recording history details screen, press ▯.

Delete reservation recording history <Delete>

1 Select a reservation recording history ▶ 📷.

- In the reserved recording history details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a reservation recording history ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

3 Select [Yes].

Using data broadcasting

Use data broadcasting as well as video, voice and sound for 1Seg. In data broadcasting, use a variety of information including still pictures and movies. For example, connect sites available in programs, submit your opinion, etc.

1 In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Switch].

- Alternatively, press ✉ to switch the operation.
- Data broadcasting mode is set (each time this key is pressed, the mode switches between video mode and data broadcasting mode).
- For details on operation in data broadcasting mode ☞P. 286

2 Select an item ▶ ▣.

- For details on operations while a site is displayed ☞P. 172

Note

- A sound may be played during display of data broadcasting/data broadcasting sites.
- In the viewer position or Multi Window display, it is not possible to switch to data broadcast mode (data broadcast operation is not possible).
- On the data broadcast screen, select [Yes(Always)]. From the next time, the confirmation screen is not displayed and the data for the data broadcasting/data broadcasting site may be automatically updated. In such cases, packet transmission charges may apply.
- To show the confirmation screen for data broadcasting again, perform Reset status display (☞P. 299).
- 1Seg ends when a PC movie is played back from a Full Browser site or a melody or i-motion is played back from an i-mode site.
- A confirmation screen is displayed in the following cases. Select [Yes]/[Yes(Always)] and then execute the operation. Select [Yes(Always)] to subsequently not display the confirmation screen.
  - ■ When deleting the the broadcast storage area
  - ■ When using data in the broadcast storage area
  - ■ When transmitting data to a data broadcast site
  - ■ When connected to an i-mode site
  - ■ When recording acquired data
  - ■ When accessing to a Full Browser site*

  * [Yes(Always)] does not appear.

Related Operations

Reload a data broadcasting site <Reload>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Reload].

Show certificate <Show certificate>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Show certificate].

Return from a data broadcasting site to data broadcasting <Return to data BC>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Return to data BC].

Acquire ToruCa from data broadcasting/data broadcasting site <BC ToruCa setting>

In the 1Seg watching screen, press 📷 ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [BC ToruCa setting] ▶ [ON].

TVlink

Using TVlink

Save memo information and URL in some data broadcasting as TVlink. Use the TVlink list screen to show memo information and a site saved in there.

- Up to 100 entries can be saved as TVlink.

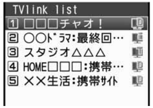
Saving as a TVlink

1 **Select an item that can be saved as TVlink ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].**
  - Procedures for saving TVlinks differ depending on the program.

Showing a saved TVlink <TVlink>

- Expired TVlink cannot be displayed.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [TVlink].**
  - In the 1Seg watching screen: Press 📷 ▶ [TVlink].


TVlink list
1 □□□チャオ！
2 ○○ﾄﾞﾗﾏ:最終回…
3 スタジオ△△△
4 HOME□□□:携帯…
5 ××生活:携帯ｻｲﾄ

TVlink list

Meaning of icons

T	Memo information	▤	i-mode site
D	Data broadcasting site	FB	Full Browser site

2 **Select a TVlink ▶ ■.**
  - When connecting to a site: Select [Yes].

Note

- When using a TVlink to connect to a data broadcasting site from the 1Seg watching screen, 1Seg is terminated.

Related Operations

View detailed information <Show details>

Select a TVlink ▶ 📷 ▶ [Show details].

Delete TVlink <Delete>

1 **Select a TVlink ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**
2 **Select the deletion method.**
  - ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
  - ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a TVlink ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
  - ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**
3 **Select [Yes].**

1Seg settings

Setting 1Seg

Setting the saving destination of video recording <Video recding dest>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [Video recding dest].**

2 **Select a save destination ▶ ■.**

Note

- For details on video recording destination while watching 1Seg ☞P. 290
- Setting [Auto(hndset first)] or [Auto(microSD first)] causes the next recording destination to change automatically, prior to the start of recording.
  - ■ When prioritized memory space is insufficient
  - ■ When the maximum number of items that can be stored is exceeded
  - ■ When microSD Card is not inserted
  - ■ When microSD Card cannot be recognized
- The recorded video cannot be copied between a FOMA terminal and a microSD Card.

Deleting saved data of data broadcasting
<Erase storage area>

Delete the data in the broadcast storage area.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [Erase storage area].**
2. **Select an associated broadcast station ▶ 📷.**
   - To delete individual broadcasters: Select an associated broadcast station ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a broadcaster ▶ 📷.
   - To check the associated broadcasters: Press 📖.
3. **Select the deletion method.**
   - ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
   - ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**
4. **Select [Yes].**

Setting whether to view images in a data broadcasting site <Set image display>

1. **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [Set image display].**
   - In the 1Seg watching screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Set image display].
2. **Select the setting ▶ ⊡.**

Setting whether to enable sound effects of data broadcasting <Sound FX>

1. **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [Sound FX].**
   - In the 1Seg watching screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Sound FX].
2. **Select the setting ▶ ⊡.**

Setting whether to acquire ToruCa automatically from data broadcasting/data broadcasting site
<BC ToruCa setting>

1. **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [BC ToruCa setting].**
2. **Select the setting ▶ ⊡.**

Note

- For details on BC ToruCa setting while watching 1Seg ☞P. 297
- When broadcasting ToruCa is automatically acquired, the stock icon 🎫 (new ToruCa) appears.

Checking the 1Seg settings <1Seg status>

1. **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [1Seg status].**

Re-showing a confirmation screen for data broadcasting <Reset status disp>

Items for which non-display has been set by selecting [Yes(Always)] on the data broadcasting confirmation screen can be re-displayed.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [Reset status disp].**
   - In the 1Seg watching screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Data broadcasting] ▶ [Reset status disp].
2. **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**

Resetting 1Seg settings <Reset 1Seg>

The following items are restored to their default settings.

- ■ Set image display
- ■ Vibrant image mode
- ■ Dolby sound settings
- ■ Sound FX
- ■ Brightness
- ■ BC ToruCa setting
- ■ Startup auto connection of Bluetooth output
- ■ 1Seg settings in the 1Seg watching screen
- ● When resetting 1Seg settings, the Reset status display settings are made at the same time.

1 In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [1Seg settings] ▶ [Reset 1Seg].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

Full Browser/PC Movie

Viewing web pages designed for PC

View Internet web pages that are not supported by i-mode as they appear on PCs with the FOMA terminal using the Full Browser.

- Note that transmitting large amounts of data such as viewing a home page with many images and downloading data will lead to higher transmission charges. For details on transmission charges and payment plans, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

Full Browser menu		Function
Home		To view an Internet web page that is set as a Home (portal site)
Bookmark		To view from bookmarks
Last URL		To view the last viewed Internet web page
Go to location	URL history	To view an Internet web page from the URL history
	Input URL	To view an Internet web page entering URLs
FB Settings		To make various settings about Full Browser

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser].

2 View a site.

- **Select [Home].**
- **Select [Bookmark] ▶ select a bookmark ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Last URL] ▶ [OK].**
- **Select [Go to location] ▶ [URL history] ▶ select a history ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Go to location] ▶ [Input URL] ▶ select a URL input field ▶ ● ▶ input a URL ▶ ● ▶ [OK].**

  - Enter up to 2,033 single-byte characters (including ***http://***, etc.).

Note

- Some Internet web pages with large amounts of information do not appear properly.
- Display up to 1 MB Flash movies per one page.
  - Flash movie which is equivalent to Flash8 (excluding Flash®Video) can be played, but some corresponding Flash movies may not be played depending on the site.
- Screen memos cannot be saved.
- Downloading and saving are not available for Ring tone, i-αppli, ToruCa and i-motion.

■ Confirmation screen for the use of Full Browser

- If Full Browser Access Setting is set to [OFF] when Full Browser is started, the Access Setting screen appears to confirm the use of Full Browser. When [Yes] is selected, Access Setting is changed to [ON] and an Internet web page is shown with Full Browser. This setting remains enabled after Full Browser is closed.

Related Operations

Register a home page (portal site) <Set as Home URL>

While viewing a site, press 📷 ▶ [Display operations] ▶ [Home] ▶ [Set as Home URL] ▶ [Yes].

Register a home page (portal site) entering URLs

In the Full Browser menu, select [FB Settings] ▶ [Home URL] ▶ enter a URL ▶ ●.

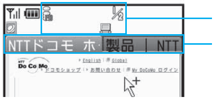
- Enter up to 2,033 single-byte characters (including ***http://***, etc.).

Full Browser display

Basic operations for Full Browser are the same as when accessing sites from the i-mode Go to location menu. Operations that differ are mainly explained here.

- In the Full Browser display, switch to the viewer position to display the horizontal screen in full-screen.

Full Browser screen



Full Browser screen

Icon display position

Tab

- Select the tab on the Optical TOUCH CRUISER and press ■ to switch windows.

Icons that appear during Full Browser

FB	Full Browser open (≣ flashes during transmissions)
FB	Full Browser is accessing the web (<> flashes when data is received)
WFB	Full Browser is accessing an inactive window (<> flashes when data is received)
fFB	Full Browser is accessing a background frame (<> flashes when data is received)
SSL	SSL/TLS page is being viewed
🖥	PC mode
▣	Frame is shown enlarged
½	Window/total number of windows

Operations during Full Browser

Shortcut operation	Operation from Submenu	Action
1/3*1	[Display/set] ▶ [Font size]	To make the font size smaller/ larger
1/3*2	[Display/set] ▶ [Zoom]	To shrink/zoom magnification
2	–	To scroll up the page
4	–	To scroll the page to the left
5	–	To display the layout (entire page)
6	–	To scroll the page to the right
7	[Window] ▶ [Window list]	To switch the windows opened
8	–	To scroll down the page
9	[Window] ▶ [Close Window] ▶ [Yes]	To close the window opened
0	[Paste login info]	To paste the registered login information
*	[Visual history]	To show the history screen of viewed pages ● The reduced Full Browser screen is shown in historical order.
#	[Bookmark] ▶ [Bookmark list]	To display the bookmark folder list ● Viewed on 6-part display.
≣	[Key list]	To view the Key list
✉/📖	[Display operations] ▶ [Back]/[Next]	To display the previous/next page
✣	–	To move the pointer up/down/ left/right*3

*1 In the Keitai mode

*2 In the PC mode

*3 While viewing sites, use the pointer (↖, ☝, etc.) to select items. If Link is set, ☝ appears. Press ■ to move to the linked page. Move the pointer to the edge of the screen to scroll the screen.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- In the viewer position, the following operations are available.
  - To switch windows: Touch a tab at the upper of the screen.
  - To scroll a screen: Touch the touch panel and slide the finger up/down/left/right (The scroll bar shown in the right/bottom of the screen is not available).
  - To jump to the linked site: Touch a link to highlight ▶ touch the link again.
  - To view the control key (☞P. 42): Touch menu.

Changing the display mode

- Set the following display mode.

Keitai mode	Displays at the size to fit the display horizontally. Set a font size.
PC mode	Displays at the screen size for a PC. Set a magnification.

1 While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Display Mode].

- In stand-by: Press ☰ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Display Mode].

2 Select the display mode ▶ ⊡.

Moving to the previous/next page (Cache)

Display pages saved in the cache.

- To move to the previous page: Press ✉.
- To move to the next page: Press 📖.

Note

- If the previous displayed page is i-mode site, the confirmation screen stating that screen is switched to i-mode browser appears when returning to the previous page.

Viewing pages using frames

View Internet web pages consisting of multiple frames. Select a frame in the frame selection screen to show a page per frame.

1 Select a frame ▶ ⊡.

- To return: Press 📷 ▶ [Display operations] ▶ [Ret to frame disp].

Selecting the area to view from the layout (entire page)

When Auto layout display is set to [ON], the layout (entire page) automatically appears while scrolling.

1 Scroll while viewing sites.

- The layout (entire page) appears.

2 Move the cursor to the area to view.

- The selected area appears.

Functions while Full Browser is displayed

- Save ID and password ☞P. 176
- Reload the information ☞P. 174
- View the URL ☞P. 174
- Convert the character code ☞P. 177
- Replay animated GIFs ☞P. 171
- View a site's server certificate ☞P. 171
- Use the Internet ☞P. 177

Related Operations

Search text string of the page <Search page>

While viewing the site, press 📷 ▶ [Search page] ▶ enter a key word ▶ ⊡.

Move to the top of the page <Return to top>

While viewing the site, press 📷 ▶ [Display operation] ▶ [Return to top].

Move to the bottom of the screen <Go to end>

While viewing the site, press 📷 ▶ [Display operation] ▶ [Go to end].

Select area with drag operation and copy <Select area/drag>

While viewing the site, press 📷 ▶ [Select area/drag] ▶ select the starting point ▶ ⊡ ▶ select the ending point ▶ 📖.

Save an image <Save image>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Save image] ▶ select an image ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.

Compose mail with site URL <Compose message>

While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.

Note (Related operations)

Select area/drag

- Copy up to 4,096 single-byte (2,048 double-byte) characters.

Save image

- Save up to 1 MB of GIF images, JPEG images, BMP images and PNG images. BMP images and PNG images can be saved on microSD Cards only.

Saving bookmarks

Save up to 100 bookmarks in total in a maximum of 17 folders.

- Each bookmarked URL can have up to 512 single-byte characters. URLs which exceed 512 characters cannot be saved.
- Basic operations for bookmark of Full Browser are the same as when saving bookmarks from the i-mode bookmark menu. Operations that differ are mainly explained here. The following operations are referred to i-mode bookmark operations (☞P. 178).
  - ■ Create new bookmark folders, Edit folder names, Delete folders
  - ■ Edit bookmark titles, Show bookmark URL, Move bookmarks, Attach bookmarks to mail

1 While viewing the site, press 📷 ▶ [Bookmark] ▶ [Add bookmark] ▶ [OK].

- To edit the title and save: Select the [Title] field ▶ ⊡ ▶ edit the title ▶ ⊡.

2 Select a folder ▶ ⊡.

Related Operations

Delete bookmarks <Delete>

1 Select a bookmark ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a bookmark ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ ⋮.**
- ◆ **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

3 Select [Yes].

Viewing in new windows

View a different site in a separate window while viewing a site with Full Browser.

- Open up to five browser windows simultaneously.

1 While viewing sites, press 📷 ▶ [Window] ▶ [Open New Window] ▶ specify another site.

- ◆ **Select [Link].**
  - • Use the pointer to select an item with links and operate in advance.
- ◆ **Select [Bookmark list] ▶ select a bookmark ▶ ⊡.**
- ◆ **Select [Input URL] ▶ select the URL input field ▶ ⊡ ▶ input a URL ▶ ⊡ ▶ [OK].**
- ◆ **Select [URL history] ▶ select a history ▶ ⊡.**
- ◆ **Select [Home].**

Uploading files

Upload up to 2 MB of still pictures (JPEG images and GIF images) or movies/i-motion saved in the FOMA terminal or the microSD Card.

- Uploading methods differ depending on the site. Operate according to the screen.

Downloading files

- Downloaded files are saved to the microSD Card.
- Download files of up to 1 MB. Files are not split.
- Supported file types (file extension)
  - Microsoft Word (.doc)
  - Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt)
  - XMDF (.zbf)
  - Microsoft Excel (.xls)
  - PDF (.pdf)
  - e-book in Text format (.zbk)

1 Select the file to download ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

2 When finished downloading, select [Save to ext mem].

Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

Switch to Full Browser when a site viewed from i-mode does not appear properly.

1 While viewing a site from i-mode, press 📷 ▶ [Switch to FB] ▶ [Yes].

Setting Full Browser

Setting cookies

Cookies temporarily record information such as user name, date/time and number of accesses in the FOMA terminal when a site is connected. This information is used when the site is accessed again.

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of validating cookies.

■ Validating/Invalidating cookies

1 In stand-by, press ▤ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Cookie Setting].

2 Select the setting.

- ◆ **Select [Valid].**
- ◆ **Select [Valid(notify)] ▶ select the timing to confirm the cookie information ▶ ⊡.**
- ◆ **Select [Invalid].**
- The terminal security code may be required to switch the setting from [Invalid].

Note

- If the FOMA card that was inserted when cookies were set to [Valid] is removed and a different FOMA card is inserted, cookies are set to [Invalid].
- When the setting is changed, a confirmation screen to delete the previous cookie information may appear. Delete the cookie information.

■ Deleting cookies

1 In stand-by, press ▤ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Delete cookie].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

Validating/Invalidating JavaScript

Set whether to run a JavaScript program when it is included in a site.

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Script Setting].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Setting whether to display images
<Set image display>

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Set image display].

- While viewing sites: Press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Set image display].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Setting whether to automatically open new windows <Window Open Guard>

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Window Open Guard].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Configuring settings regarding Referer <Referer Setting>

Set whether to send Referer (URL information of the link source) to the server of the link destination when following links in sites.

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of using Referer.

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Referer Setting].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Note

- Some sites may not appear correctly when Referer is not sent.

Setting whether to automatically display the layout (entire page) while scrolling
<Auto layout disp>

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Auto layout disp].

- While viewing the site: Press 📷 ▶ [Display/set] ▶ [Auto layout disp].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Setting whether to allow the auto network transmission request <Set auto network>

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Set auto network].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

- When Set auto network is set to [Confirm anytime], a confirmation screen appears at every request.

Setting whether to enable Flash movie sound effects <Sound effect>

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Sound effect].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Note

- When Sound effect is set to [ON], it sounds at the volume set in that of i-mode.

Setting whether to use the terminal data during Flash playback <Use phone info>

1 In stand-by, press ☰ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Use phone info].

2 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Setting whether to use the Full Browser function <Access Setting>

- To use the Full Browser function with the settings changed, be sure to read [For more information] in the Access Setting screen.

1 In stand-by, press ☰ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Access Setting].

2 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Resetting the Full Browser settings <Reset full browser>

- Last URL is reset.

1 In stand-by, press ☰ ▶ [Full Browser] ▶ [FB Settings] ▶ [Reset full browser].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

Internet movie player

Play movies for PC (PC movies) provided in portal sites or movie dedicated sites on the Internet with the Internet movie player of the FOMA terminal.

- Internet movie player supports the playback of Windows Media Video.
- A large amount of data may be received. Making a transmission with large-volume data will lead to higher transmission charges. For details on transmission charges and payment plans, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
- The following are the distribution formats and file formats for PC movies that can be played back.

Format	Distribution system	Explanation
Streaming type	Live distribution	A movie is distributed in real time. Pause, Fast forward, Fast rewind and Jump to a specified position are not available.
	On-demand distribution	A PC movie, which is prepared on the server in advance, is distributed.

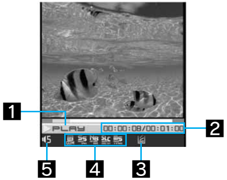
File format		Windows Media file Metafile: WVX, WAX, ASX Media data: WMV, WMA, ASF
Video codec		WMV9 MP@LL
	Maximum bit rate	2 Mbps
	Maximum frame rate	30 fps (QVGA)
	Image size	48 × 48 to 352 × 288
Audio codec		WMA Standard L3 Profile (ver.2 to 9)
	Bit rate	5 to 320 kbps

- PC movies cannot be saved.
- Depending on the site, the operating environment (e.g. Browser type, OS type) is checked, and the playback on the FOMA terminal is not available.

Playing PC movies

1 Select a PC movie ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes] ▶ [Agree].

- Depending on the PC movie, if [Yes] is selected, the playback may be started.



PC movie playback screen

■1 Playback

▶PLAY	During playback	⏩FF	While fast forward
⏸PAUSE	While paused	⏪REW	While fast rewind
■STOP	While stopped		

■2 Play time/Total time

- The total playback time appears only for the on-demand distribution.

■3 Buffering

▤	Appears during buffering

■4 Dolby sound setting

NOR MAL	Normal	DDM	Variety
DDM	News	DDM	Music
DDM	Sports	DDM	Movie
DDM	Drama	ORIG INAL DDM	Original

When Original is selected

SS	Sound Space
NB	Natural Bass
SLC	Sound Level Cnt
MS	Mono-to-Stereo

■5 Volume

◀5	◀0 (Volume 0) to ◀10 (Volume 10)

- When the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position, the Full-screen mode is activated. By returning to the normal position, the Full-screen mode is deactivated. However, when the Submenu or others appear on the screen, the screen mode is not switched.
- The Full Browser screen reappears when playing is completed.

■ Operations during playback

To pause/play	▣
To adjust the volume (volume 0 to 10)*	↕
To fast rewind	← (for 1+ seconds)
To fast forward	→ (for 1+ seconds)
To jump to assigned location	1: Top 2 to 9: Locations divided by one-ninth increments of the total playing time
To switch to the Full-screen mode	▮
To end	📖 ▶ [Yes]

* Keep the key pressed to adjust the volume continuously.

- Operations for ↕ and ↔ are switched in the Full-screen mode. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- In the viewer position, the following operations are available.
  - To adjust the volume (Volume 0 to 10): Touch the touch panel and slide the finger up/down.
  - To view the control key (☞P. 42): Touch the touch panel.

Note

- Some PC movies, such as PC movies of the live distribution, have restrictions on the operations or the location of them to resume playback after the operation may be misplaced.
- Depending on the line speed, line condition or radio wave environment, the playback may be interrupted or the image may be distorted.
- When the battery icon does not indicate ▮▮▮/➡☐, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Also, a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery icon indicates ➡☐.
- When the connection is interrupted due to the signal status, a confirmation screen asking whether to play appears. Select the playback method.
- Playback may stop if a call is received, an alarm is activated or other function is operated during playback. The Full Browser screen reappears when playing is completed.

About the license “WMDRM (Windows Media digital rights management)”

- Play a PC movie that is protected with a license. However, some PC movies cannot be played on the FOMA terminal depending on the license settings.

Related Operations

Set Dolby sound <Dolby Sound Set.>

In the PC movie playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.] ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.

- When Original is selected, set an item and press i.

View detailed information <File property>

In the PC movie playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [File property].

Set the playback light <Backlight time>

In the PC movie playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Backlight time] ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.

Show in the Full-screen mode <Full-screen mode>

In the PC movie playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Full-screen mode].

Note (Related operations)

File property

- The displayed items are title (original), creator, copyright, rights management, play time, file format, video codec, audio codec, display size, description, and quality. Items may appear differently depending on the PC movie.

Data Display/Edit/Management

Using still pictures

Using movies

Using video

Using Chara-den

Using Machi-chara

Using melodies

Using microSD Cards

Using various data

Using Ir exchange

Using iC transmission

Using voice recorder

Using PDF Viewer

Using Document Viewer

Manga&BookReader

Data box and Media tool

Data is stored in different folders according to type.

- After a data type is selected, the last location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Card) used to view that type is displayed.

Data box

■ My picture (☞P. 318)

- Still pictures shot with the FOMA terminal and downloaded images are saved.

My picture(phone)	
→microSD	Change to [My picture(microSD)]
Camera	Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal
i-mode	Folder for images retrieved from sites, i-mode mail, Message R/F, etc.
Decomail picture	Folder for images that can be used when creating a Deco-mail
Decomail pict[*1]	Folder for pictographs that can be used when creating a Deco-mail
Pre-install	Folder for images that be saved previously
Acquired data	Folder for images retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) or IrSS™ exchange
Item	Folder for frames and stamps retrieved from sites, etc.
(User folder)	User-created folder
Search by i-mode	i-mode connection

My picture(microSD)	
→phone	Change to [My picture(phone)]
Camerafolder xxx[*2]	Folder for still pictures shot with the FOMA terminal, DCF-compliant JPEG images, and GIF images (except animated GIFs)
(User folder for Camera folder)	User-created folder
Other still pic	Folder for animated GIFs copied from a FOMA terminal handset, non-DCF-compliant JPEG images, and Flash movies
(User folder for Other still pic)	User-created folder
Decomail pict	Folder for pictographs that can be used when creating a Deco-mail
(User folder for Decomail pict)	User-created folder
Movable contents	Folder for images moved from a FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites, but which cannot be output

*1 Deco-mail pictographs are directly saved in the [Decomail pict] folder. Also, data other than Deco-mail pictographs cannot be saved.

*2 When still pictures shot with the handset are stored, or copied from the FOMA terminal handset, a folder named [Camerafolder 100] is automatically created. When the number of files reaches 400, a folder named [Camerafolder xxx] is automatically created (where “xxx” is a three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999).

■ MUSIC (☞P. 375)

- Chaku-uta full® or WMA files are saved.

MUSIC	
Playlist	Folder for playlists created on a FOMA terminal, PC, etc.
i-mode	Folder for Chaku-uta full® items, retrieved from sites, etc.
WMA	Folder for WMA files transferred from a PC
Search by i-mode	i-mode connection

■ Music&Video Channel (☞P. 369)

- Acquired Music&Video Channel programs are saved.

■ i-motion (☞P. 324)

- Movies shot with the FOMA terminal, recorded audio and downloaded i-motion are saved.

i-motion(phone)	
→microSD	Change to [i-motion (microSD)]
Camera	Folder for movies shot with FOMA terminal
i-mode	Folder for i-motion items retrieved from sites, i-mode mail, Message R/F, etc.
Pre-install	Folder for previously saved i-motion items
Acquired data	Folder for i-motion items retrieved via microSD Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
(User folder)	User-created folder
Search by i-mode	i-mode connection
i-motion (microSD)	
→phone	Change to [i-motion(phone)]
Camerafolder	Folder for movies shot with FOMA terminal
(User folder for Camera folder)	User-created folder
Multimedia*	Folder for voice-only i-motion, and data either recorded with Voice recorder or transferred from a PC
(User folder for Multimedia)	User-created folder
Movable contents	Folder for i-motion items moved from a FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites, but which cannot be output

* The [Multimedia] folder can contain up to 400 items of data. The files are in MP4 format. MP4, ASF, and 3GPP format files can also be transferred from a PC. Files are named MMF0001 to MMF9999. Up to 400 files can be viewed on the FOMA terminal. In the following cases, however, the data may not be displayed.
- ■ When the data cannot be played back
- ■ When 401 or more items of data are stored
- ■ When the file name is other than "MMFxxxx" ("xxxx" is a number)

■ 1Seg (☞P. 329)

- Recorded videos or still pictures with the FOMA terminal are saved.

1Seg(phone)	
→microSD	Change to [1Seg(microSD)]
Substitute image	Folder for still pictures for which 1Seg programs are recorded
Video	Folder for videos for which 1Seg programs are recorded
1Seg(microSD)	
→phone	Change to [1Seg(phone)]
Video	Folder for videos for which 1Seg programs are recorded

Melodies (☞P. 331)

- Melodies are saved.

Melody(phone)	
→microSD	Change to [Melody (microSD)]
i-mode	Folder for melodies retrieved from sites, i-mode mail, Message R/F, etc.
Pre-install	Folder for previously saved melodies
Acquired data	Folder for melodies retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
(User folder)	User-created folder
Search by i-mode	i-mode connection
Melody (microSD)	
→phone	Change to [Melody(phone)]
Melody	Preset melody folder
(User folder)	User-created folder
Movable contents	Folder for melodies moved from a FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites, but which cannot be output

My Documents (☞P. 356)

- PDF data is saved.

My Documents(phone)	
→microSD	Change to [My Documents (SD)]
i-mode	Folder for PDF files retrieved from sites, i-mode mail, Message R/F, etc.
Pre-install	Folder for previously saved PDF files
Acquired data	Folder for PDF files retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
(User folder)	User-created folder
My Documents (SD)	
→phone	Change to [My Documents(phone)]
PDF	Folder for PDF files copied from a FOMA terminal handset, or retrieved from sites, i-mode mail, Message R/F, etc.
(User folder)	User-created folder

Kisekae Tool (☞P. 119)

- Kisekae Tool is saved.

Kisekae Tool(phone)	
→microSD	Change to [Kisekae Tool-microSD]
i-mode	Folder for Kisekae Tools retrieved from sites
Pre-install	Folder for previously saved Kisekae Tools
(User folder)	User-created folder
Search by i-mode	i-mode connection
Kisekae Tool-microSD	
→phone	Change to [Kisekae Tool(phone)]
Movable contents	Folder for Kisekae Tools moved from a FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites, but which cannot be output

Machi-chara (☞P. 331)

- Machi-chara are saved.

Machi-chara	
i-mode	Folder for Machi-chara retrieved from sites, etc.
Pre-install	Folder for previously saved Machi-chara
(User folder)	User-created folder
Search by i-mode	i-mode connection

Chara-den (☞P. 330)

- Chara-den are saved.

Chara-den	
i-mode	Folder for Chara-den retrieved from sites, etc.
Pre-install	Folder for previously saved Chara-den
(User folder)	User-created folder

Media tool

Voice recorder (☞P. 355)

- Voice recordings are saved to the [Multimedia] folder on the microSD Card as [Voice only] (no image) i-motion.

Manga&BookReader (☞P. 359)

- e-books (e-books/e-dictionaries/e-comics) are displayed.

Manga&Book(phone)	
→microSD	Change to [Manga&Book(microSD)]
Manga&BookReader	Folder for e-books retrieved from sites, etc.
i-mode	Folder for e-books retrieved from sites, etc., for which a read limit is set
Pre-install	Folder for previously saved e-books
(User folder)	User-created folder

Manga&Book(microSD)	
→phone	Change to [Manga&Book(phone)]
Manga&BookReader	Folder for e-books retrieved from sites or saved from PCs
Comic	Folder for e-books retrieved from sites, etc., for which a read limit is set
(User folder)	User-created folder

Document Viewer (☞P. 358)

- Microsoft Word files, Microsoft Excel files, and image files are saved on the microSD Card are displayed.

Document Viewer	
Document	Folder for document transferred from PCs
Camerafolder xxx*	The same content as [My picture(microSD)] of Data box is displayed.
(User folder for Camera folder)	
Other still pic	
(User folder for Other still pic)	

* Still pictures cut out using the Document Viewer are also saved.

PDF Viewer (☞P. 356)

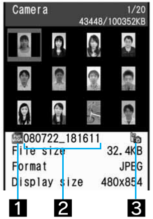
- The [PDF Viewer] folder list displays the same content as [My Documents] of Data box.

Data list screen layout

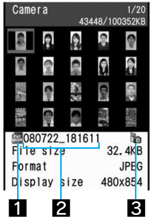
After a folder is selected, the data list screen is displayed. Select a view method from the following four settings.

- [5-part/details] can be set in only My picture and the [Substitute image] folder of 1Seg.

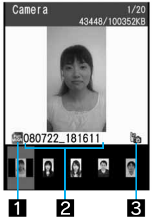
Example: [Camera] folder data list screen



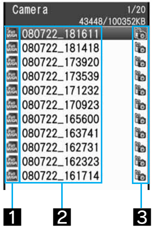
12-part



20-part



5-part/details



Camera 1/20
43448/100352KB
080722_181611
080722_181418
080722_173920
080722_173539
080722_171232
080722_170923
080722_165600
080722_163741
080722_162731
080722_162323
080722_161714

List display

1 File type icon
2 Title name
3 Detailed information icon

Note

- The title can be displayed up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters.
- For i-motion 12-part and 20-part display, the following may be displayed instead of the image.
  - ■ ♪ is displayed
    - Voice-only data
    - Unsupported image size data
    - Unsupported image file format data
  - ■ ▣ is displayed
    - Text-only data
    - Damaged image data that cannot be displayed
    - Data, in the [Movable contents] folder, to which the FOMA card security function is set
  - ■ ⍗ is displayed
    - Data saved during download
- When in the viewer position, My picture, i-motion and 1Seg data are viewed on 15-part display. The JPEG image, whose vertical size is larger than the horizontal one, is displayed rotating 90° counterclockwise in the image display screen.

■ Changing the display method <Switch view mode>

Example: My picture

1 **In the data list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Picture setting] ▶ [Switch view mode].**

2 **Select the display method ▶ ●.**

- To change page while a list is displayed: Press ⬚.
- To change page while 5-part/details is displayed: Press ⬚.

Icon types and explanation

File type icon

Still picture types

JPEG					
76×76	Icon: 152×152	QCIF: 176×144	1Seg: 320×180	QVGA: 240×320	VGA: 480×640
MENU ICON		QCIF	▣	QVGA	VGA

JPEG					
Stand-by: 480×854	1.2M: 960×1280	UXGA: 1200×1600	FullHD: 1080×1920	3M: 1536×2048	5M: 1920×2560
Full WVGA	1.2M	UXGA	Full HD	3M	5M

JPEG		GIF image Animated GIF	Flash movie
Panorama: 1280×320	Other		
PANO RAMA	JPG	GIF	▣

i-motion types

MP4 (Mobile MP4)		ASF
Unlimited	Limited	
MP4	MP4	ASF

Melody types

SMF	MFi	
	No 3D data	3D data
SMF	MFi	MFi 3D

Note

Melody type

- When MFi (3D data) is saved in the [Movable contents] folder, MFi (no 3D data) icon appears. However, 3D data is retained.

Detailed information icon

▣	Files with FOMA card security function applied
✕	Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal
▣	Frames or stamps
DL	Files* downloaded from i-mode, etc.
EX	Files* retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 or IrSS™ exchange
📷	Files shot with the camera
JPG	Picture memos shot during Videophone calls
▯	Still pictures saved from e-book, etc.
JPG PDF	Still pictures cut out from PDF Viewer
⚐	Still pictures with the location information
PDF	Downloaded PDF of all pages
Data	Partially downloaded PDF of individual pages
Data	PDF that failed to download
📺	Still pictures for which 1Seg programs are recorded
JPG GIF ▣	Still pictures to which image sizes are not applied

* Excluding frames and stamps

Image Viewer

Displaying saved images

Display the image saved in My picture of Data box.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture].

2 Select an image ▶ ▣.

- Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.

Note

- Opening may become slower when more images are saved.
- Animated GIFs and Flash movies downloaded from a site, etc. may appear differently from when seen on the site.

■ Operations during display

	Normal position	Viewer position
To switch among 1/1, Zoom↑, Zoom↓, and Full-screen mode	▣	Operate with the control key (☞P. 42)
To show next image	◨	Touch the touch panel (☞P. 40) and slide the finger left
To show previous image	◧	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger right
To rotate 90° (JPEG image)	▤	Operate with the control key
To show in Full-screen mode (other than JPEG image)	▤	Operate with the control key
To show control key	–	Touch the touch panel

Note

- Zoom and Shrink are not available for animated GIFs, Flash movies, frames and stamps.
- When displaying the next/previous image in the viewer position, the image may be distorted, or not displayed.

Related Operations

Change the screen display method <Full-screen mode/Wide mode>

In the image display, press 📷 ▶ [Picture setting] ▶ select the screen mode ▶ ▣.

- To show Full-screen mode in the image list screen: Press ▤.

Use Zoom (JPEG image only) <Zoom>

In the image display, press 📷 ▶ [Zoom].

- Zoom in: Press 📷.
- Zoom out: Press ▤.
- To change the displayed area: Press ✥.
- To end zoom: Press ▣.

Light up <Light Up>

In the image display, press 📷 ▶ [Picture setting] ▶ [Light Up].

- To light up with one-touch: In the image display, press # (for 1+ seconds).
- To turn off light-up: Perform the same steps or display another image.

Set playback light time (Flash movie and animated GIF only) <Backlight time>

In the My picture folder list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Backlight time] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

- For Flash movie: While the movie is stopped (paused), press ▣ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Backlight time] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.
- For animated GIF: While the animation is played back, press 📷 ▶ [Picture setting] ▶ [Backlight time] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

Restart a Flash movie

During a Flash movie playback, press ▣ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Retry].

Adjust volume during a Flash movie playback <Set volume>

In the My picture image list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Picture setting] ▶ [Set volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ✥ ▶ ▣.

Add/Use location information <Location info>

In the image display, press 📷 ▶ [Location info].

- For details on location information ☞P. 280

Note (Related operations)

Full-screen mode/Wide mode

- Full-screen mode displays the image in the size that fits within the display, while Wide mode displays the image in the size without margins.

Zoom

- For images in the [Pre-install] folder, the Zoom is not available.

Viewing slideshows <Slideshow>

Show all images in the folder consecutively.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture].**

2 **Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Slideshow].**

3 **Select [Start slideshow].**

- To set the playback speed: Select [Play interval] ▶ select the speed ▶ ▣.
- To set display effects: Select [Effects settings] ▶ select the effect ▶ ▣.

Attaching still pictures and sending i-mode mail

- For details on file attachments ☞“Attaching a file” on P. 203

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture].**

2 **Select a still picture ▶ ✉ ▶ compose and send a mail.**

Setting an image as stand-by display <Set screen>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture].**

2 **Select a still picture ▶ 📷 ▶ [Set screen].**

- Perform the same operation in the image display screen or while stopping Flash movies, for setting.

3 **Select a screen item ▶ ▣.**

- To set as the stand-by display: Select [Stand-by display] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select the display size ▶ ▣.
  - The display size selection screen does not appear when ***Stand-by: 480×854*** image is set as the stand-by display.

Note

- Frames, stamps and still pictures for which 1Seg programs are recorded are not available.
- Flash movies are available for stand-by, call/receive and send/receive display.
- Some JPEG images, animated GIFs and GIF images cannot be set for animated notices.

Sending still pictures using high-speed Ir exchange (IrSS™ function)

Select a still picture (JPEG image) from My picture, then send it to an IrSS™ function-compatible device.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture].**

2 **Select a still picture ▶ 📖.**

- Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive data.

3 **Select [Yes].**

- To cancel transmission: Press 📷.

Note

- IrSS™ function is a simplex communication function compliant with IrSimple™ 1.0 standard (Home Appliance Profile).
- IrSS™ exchange performs transmission without confirming the response from the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. The sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.

Edit image

Editing still pictures (SPEEDYLAB)

Compare before and after images while editing without interruption.

- For still pictures larger than ***Stand-by: 480×854*** or smaller than ***Icon: 152×152*** (excluding ***128×96***), editing other than trimming, resize image and rotate is not available. In addition, still pictures smaller than ***64×64*** cannot be edited. Also, editing of some images is not possible, depending on their pre-editing size.
- The results of Image effect, Correct image, or Facial treatment differ depending on the still picture.
- Some still pictures downloaded from devices other than the FOMA terminal cannot be edited.
- Image editing may result in a loss of image quality, or an increase/ decrease in the data size.
- Flash movies and animated GIFs cannot be edited.
- Respect personal image rights when editing face images, to avert any legal issues.
- Edited still pictures are compressed when saved and may appear different during editing.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box]▶[My picture].

2 Select a still picture▶📷▶[Edit data]▶[Edit image].

- The same operations can be performed from the image display screen.
- To display an edited still picture in a single screen: Press 📖.

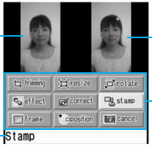


Image editing screen

Editing type icons

Select the editing type icons to access editing menu directly.

trimming	resize	rotate
Trimming (☞P. 321)	Resize image (☞P. 321)	Rotate (☞P. 321)
effect	**correct**	**stamp**
Effect (☞P. 321)	Correct image (☞P. 322)	Stamp (☞P. 322)
frame	**position**	**cancel**
Frame (☞P. 322)	Change face position (☞P. 323)	Undo (☞P. 320)

- Editing type icons differ for functions and screens.
- Perform one of the following to select editing types.
  - ■ In the image editing screen, press ✣ to select the editing type icon▶●.
  - ■ In the image editing screen, press (1 to 9) on the keypad.
    - • The order of the editing type icons corresponds to the keypad layout.
  - ■ In the image editing screen, press 📷▶select the editing type▶●.

Undoing previous operation <Undo>

1 In the image editing screen, select [cancel]▶[Yes].

Note

- Undo one step. Undo again to return to unedited still picture.

Saving an edited still picture

1 In the image editing screen, press ⓘ ▶ [Yes].

- To edit after saving: In the image editing screen, press ✉.

2 Select [OK].

- To edit the title: Select [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ⊡.
  - Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.
- To change the save destination: Select [Change folder] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.
- To save and attach to a mail: Select [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.

Changing the size of still pictures <Trimming>

1 In the image editing screen, select [trimming].

2 Select the size ▶ ⊡.

3 Press ✣ and specify the portion to trim ▶ ⊡.

- Zooming in/out: Press 📷/ⓘ.
  - Zooming in/out is not available for [Icon (9-part)].
- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Note

- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than screen size.

Resizing still pictures <Resize image>

1 In the image editing screen, select [resize].

2 Select the size ▶ ⊡.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Note

- The aspect ratio is maintained when a still picture is resized. For images with differing aspect ratios, use Trimming to use as icons or Videophone substitute images.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom (left and right) if height (width) is less than screen size when changing to ***Icon: 152×152***.

Rotating still pictures <Rotate>

1 In the image editing screen, select [rotate].

2 Select the type ▶ ⊡.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Note

- When the image size is larger than ***1280×960***, a confirmation message to reduce image in size is displayed. Select [Yes] to enable rotation.
- When still pictures which horizontal and vertical size are different are rotated 90°, the aspect ratio changes for sizes.
- Depending on the image, it may not be possible to specify a save folder.

Adding various effects <Image effect>

Change hue or feel of still pictures.

1 In the image editing screen, select [effect] ▶ [Image effect].

2 Select the type ▶ ⊡.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Decorating faces <Face effects>

Add expressive effects to one's face.

1 In the image editing screen, select [effect] ▶ [Face effects].

2 Select the type ▶ ■.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Note

- Effects may vary depending on the position and size of face in still picture. Use forward-facing portraits with large and centered face for Face effects.
- When facial contours are not properly extracted ☞P. 323

Correcting still pictures <Correct image>

Correct sharpness and softness of still pictures.

1 In the image editing screen, select [correct].

2 Select the type ▶ ■.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Pasting Image stamps <Image stamp>

1 In the image editing screen, select [stamp] ▶ [Image stamp].

2 Select a stamp ▶ ▤.

3 Press ✥ to adjust the location ■ (repeatable) ▶ ▤.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Pasting Face stamps <Face stamp>

1 In the image editing screen, select [stamp] ▶ [Face stamp].

2 Select the type ▶ ■.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Note

- Effects may vary depending on the position and size of face in still picture. Use forward-facing portraits with large and centered face for Face stamps.
- When facial contours are not properly extracted ☞P. 323

Pasting character stamps <Character stamp>

1 In the image editing screen, select [stamp] ▶ [Character stamp].

2 Select the type ▶ ■.

- For [Free word]: Input text ▶ ■.
  - Enter up to 22 single-byte (11 double-byte) characters. Text that exceeds the display width is cut.

3 Press ✥ to adjust the location.

- To change the font size: Press ✉/▥.
- To change the font color: Press 📷 ▶ select the font color ▶ ■.

4 Press ■.

- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Adding a frame <Frame>

- Frames for ***QCIF: 176×144***, ***CIF: 352×288***, and ***Stand-by: 480×854*** are preset in the FOMA terminal.

1 In the image editing screen, select [frame].

2 **Select the type ▶ ▤.**

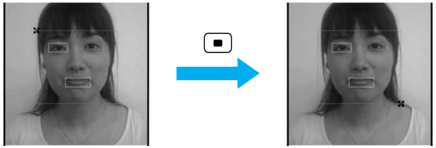
- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Setting contour manually <Change face pos>

Manually set the contour information for each part of the face used in Face effects, Face stamp, and Facial treatment.

1 **In the image editing screen, select [position].**

2 **Specify face contour (red outline) ▶ ■.**



1. Move [+] to upper left of contour with ⁘.
2. Move [+] to lower right of contour with ⁘.

3 **Specify right eye contour (blue outline) ▶ ■.**

- To specify contour: Proceed the same operations of step 2.

4 **Specify left eye contour (green outline) ▶ ■.**

- To specify contour: Proceed the same operations of step 2.

5 **Specify mouth outline (yellow outline) ▶ 📷.**

- To specify contour: Proceed the same operations of step 2.
- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Making up people’s faces <Facial treatment>

Whiten or add natural make up to still pictures of people’s faces.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture].**

2 **Select a still picture ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Facial treatment].**

3 **Select an effect ▶ ■.**

- To select editing types ☞“Editing type icons” on P. 320
- To save a still picture ☞P. 321

Note

- When facial contours are not properly extracted ☞P. 323

Saving images to data storage center <Store in Center>

Save images of 100 KB or less saved in My picture (phone).

- This service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture].**

2 **Select an image ▶ 📷 ▶ [Store in Center].**

3 **Select the number of files to be saved.**

- ◆ **Select [Save one].**
- ◆ **Select [Save selected] ▶ select an image ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
  - Up to ten images can be selected.

4 **Select [Yes] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

Note

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on the use of saved image.

Playing movie/i-motion

Play back an i-motion saved in the i-motion folder of Data box.

- Connect commercially available Bluetooth devices, and play sound of i-motion (☞P. 408).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion].

2 Select an i-motion ▶ ■.

- Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.

Note

- Supported i-motion formats are as follows.

File format		Encoding
MP4 (extensions: .mp4, .3gp, .m4a)	Image	MPEG-4, H.263, H.264
	Audio	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
ASF (extensions: .asf)	Image	MPEG-4
	Audio	AMR, G.726

- ***sQCIF: 128×96*** and ***QCIF: 176×144*** are available for playback for i-motion encoded in H.263 format.
- Only Baseline Profile is available for i-motion encoded in H.264 format.
- An i-motion larger than ***VGA: 640×480*** cannot be played.
- Tickers do not appear even if i-motion have tickers.
- When an i-motion saved in the middle of download is selected, a confirmation screen asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Select [Yes] to download.
- Fixed animation appears for voice only i-motion.
- If a call is received or the alarm activates during i-motion playback, playback is cancelled and the stopped i-motion reappears.
- Playback continues even if FOMA terminal is closed.

Operations during playback

	Normal position	Viewer position
To pause/play	■	Operate with the control key (☞P. 42)
To stop	📖	–
To adjust volume (volume 0 to 10)	↕*1	Touch the touch panel (☞P. 40) and slide the finger up/down
To fast forward	▶ (for 1+ seconds)	–
To fast rewind	◀ (for 1+ seconds)	–
To play the next i-motion	▶*2	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger left
To play the previous i-motion	◀*2	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger right
Frame-by-frame forward (during pause)	▶	–
Frame-by-frame rewind (during pause)	◀	–
To jump to an assigned location*3	1: Beginning 2 to 9: Locations divided by one-ninth increments of the recording time	–
To switch to the Full-screen mode	▮	–
To show control key	–	Touch the touch panel

*1 Keep the key pressed to adjust the volume continuously.

*2 Also available while i-motion is stopped.

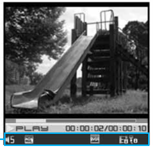
*3 Jump may not be possible when the recording time is short.

- In the normal position, when in Full-screen mode display, operations for ⬍ and ⬌ are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.

Note

- For the data with restrictions, the operation may not be available or the Total time in the playback screen may not appear correctly.

■ Playback icons



Playback icons

i-motion playback screen

Playback	Volume	🔈0 to 🔈10
	Repeat playback	↩
	Dolby sound settings	NORMAL DOM DOM DOM DOM DOM DOM ORIGINAL DOM
	When original is selected	SS NB SLC MS
	Bluetooth outputting	ᛒ
	Image size	S QCIF, QCIF, Q QVGA, H QVGA QVGA, W QVGA, VGA
	Appears while buffering (Normal type/Streaming type)	≦
	Download incomplete	DL

Track type	Voice	♪
	Image	🎞
	Ticker	📄
	No audio	♪✕
	No image	🎞✕

Related Operations

Show in Full-screen mode <Full-screen mode>

In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Full-screen mode].

- To show Full-screen mode in the i-motion image list screen: Press ⓘ.

Set screen mode when activating <Launch screen mode>

In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Launch screen mode] ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Set Dolby sound <Dolby Sound Set.>

In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.] ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡.

- When Original is selected, set an item and press ⓘ.

Select a chapter to playback <Chapter list>

In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chapter list] ▶ select a chapter ▶ ⊡.

Repeat playback <Repeat playback>

In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Repeat playback].

- To return to normal playback: Perform same steps.

Change playback size <Change size>

In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Change size] ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Light up <Light Up>

In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Light Up].

- To light up with one-touch: In the i-motion playback screen, press # (for 1+ seconds).
- To turn off light-up: Perform same steps or play another i-motion.

Set forwarding frame rate <Frame rate>

1 In the i-motion playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Frame rate].

- In the image editing screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Frame rate].

2 Select the frame rate ▶ ▣.

Set playback light <Backlight time>

In the i-motion folder list screen/image list screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Backlight time] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

Adjust playback volume <Set volume>

In the i-motion folder list screen/image list screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Set volume] ▶ adjust volume with ↕ ▶ ▣.

Set resume playback settings <Resume settings>

In the i-motion (microSD) image list screen, press 📷 ▶ [i-motion setting] ▶ [Resume settings] ▶ [ON].

Note (Related operations)

Full-screen mode

- Even in the Full-screen mode, i-motion is not displayed on the whole screen depending on its size.

Repeat playback

- Data with limitations on number of times to play back is not available for repeat playback.

Change size

- When the displayed size is ***less than 480× less than 392***, the display size can be switched to [Zoom].

Frame rate

- For some voice only i-motion, [Fine] is not available and forwarding frame is set to [Rough (hi-speed)].
- In the following cases, the forwarding frame rate is set to [Rough (hi-speed)].
  - ■ In the image editing screen, the image size is ***hQVGA: 240×176*** or ***WQVGA: 400×240***
  - ■ The data being edited exceeds 500 KB

Resume settings

- Set Resume setting to [ON] to resume playback of i-motion saved in the microSD Card that are interrupted by incoming calls.
- Resume playback cannot be set for i-motion in the [Multimedia] or [Movable contents] folders.

Repeating movies/i-motion <Continuous play>

Play all i-motion in a specified folder in succession.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion].

2 Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Continuous play].

3 Select [Start cont play].

- To set Repeat playback: Select [Repeat playback] ▶ [Yes].
- To set maximum playback time for each i-motion: Select [Sample playback] ▶ select playback time ▶ ▣.
- Stop continuous play by pressing 📖, then press ▣ to resume continuous play from the beginning of the stopped i-motion.

Note

- An i-motion with restrictions on the number of replays or expiration date is unable to be played. A confirmation message appears and the next i-motion plays.
- An i-motion that has been saved before being completely downloaded cannot be played back. The following i-motion is played back.

Attaching and sending movie/i-motion

<i-motion mail>

- For details on file attachments ☞"Attaching a file" on P. 203

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion].**

2 **Select i-motion ▶ ✉.**

- When an i-motion exceeds 500 KB: Select file size ▶ ●.
  - To cut out the first approximately 500 KB: Select [For mail (short)].
  - To cut out the first approximately 2 MB: Select [For mail (long)].

3 **Compose and send a mail.**

Setting movie/i-motion as the stand-by display

<AV settings>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion].**

2 **Select i-motion ▶ 📷 ▶ [AV settings].**

3 **Select an item ▶ ●.**

- To set as the stand-by display: Select [Stand-by display] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select the display size ▶ ●.
  - Zoom is not available for image sizes other than ***sQCIF: 128×96*** or ***QCIF: 176×144***.

Note

- An i-motion in the [Movable contents] folder of the microSD Card can be set as stand-by display or ring tone. However, the set i-motion is transferred to the [i-mode] folder in i-motion of Data box of the FOMA terminal handset.
- i-motion with voice only and ASF format i-motion are not available to be set as the stand-by display.

Edit movie

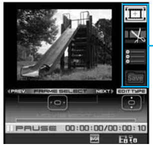
Editing movies (SPEEDYLAB)

Edit shot movies.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion].**

2 **Select a movie ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit movie].**

- The same steps can be performed from the i-motion playback screen.
- Fast forward/Fast rewind: Press ○ (for 1+ seconds)/○ (for 1+ seconds).
- Frame-by-frame forward/rewind: Press ○.
- To jump to the playback start position assigned to a key: Press 1 to 9.
- To play edited movie: Press ▯.



Movie editing screen

Note

- Movie editing may not be available for some data recorded on devices other than the FOMA SH906i.

Editing type icons

Select the editing type icons to access the editing menu directly.

⊞	Capture still (☞P. 328)
✂	Image cutter (☞P. 328)
☰	File property
Save	Save (☞P. 328)
FINISH	End

Continued on next page ▶▶

- Perform one of the following to select the editing type.
  - In the image editing screen, press ⊙ to select the editing type icon ▶ ⊡.
  - In the image editing screen, press 📷 ▶ select editing type ▶ ⊡.

Saving edited movie

1 In the image editing screen, select Save.

- When an edited movie is more than 500 KB: Select file size ▶ ⊡.
  - To cut out the first approximately 500 KB: Select [For mail (short)].
  - To cut out the first approximately 2 MB: Select [For mail (long)].
  - To save as is: Select [None].

2 Select [OK].

- To edit the title: Select [Edit title] ▶ edit title ▶ ⊡.
  - Enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters.
- To change the save destination: Select [Change folder] ▶ select folder ▶ 📷.
- To save and attach to a mail: Select [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message.

Note

- Changing folders may not be available for movies on microSD Cards.

Saving a movie as a still picture <Capture still>

Save a scene from a movie as a still picture.

- Handle saved still picture as those shot with a FOMA terminal.

1 In the image editing screen, display the scene to be saved ▶ 🎞.

- To save a still picture ☞step 2 of “Saving an edited still picture” on P. 321

Cutting movies <Image cutter>

Cut out a portion and save it as a new movie.

For mail (short)	To automatically cut approximately 500 KB from a starting point.
For mail (long)	To automatically cut approximately 2 MB from a starting point.
Cut part	Set start and end points and cut.
Erase prev part	To cut from the starting point to end of file.
Erase all after	To cut from the beginning of a file to the end point.

1 In the image editing screen, select ✂.

2 Select the cutting method.

- **Select [For mail (short)]/[For mail (long)]/[Erase prev part] ▶ select start point ▶ ≣ ▶ [Verify].**
- **Select [Cut part] ▶ select start point ▶ ≣ ▶ select end point ▶ ≣ ▶ [Verify].**
- **Select [Erase all after] ▶ select end point ▶ ≣ ▶ [Verify].**
- To save a movie ☞P. 328

Note

- Not available for movies that are shorter than 3 seconds.
- Cutting out a portion and erasing previous and subsequent parts are not possible for a movie, which is saved on the FOMA terminal handset, of approximately more than 2 MB.
- A movie of approximately less than 500 KB cannot be cut for attaching to mail (long and short).
- The next cutting cannot be performed until the movie is saved.

Playing back videos or still pictures that recorded 1Seg

Play back videos or still pictures saved in 1Seg of Data box. The following explains how to play back videos with video player. For details on operations while displaying still pictures, refer to “Displaying saved images” on P. 318.

- While watching video on Multi Window, use another function. For details on Multi Window, refer to “Using another function while watching 1Seg” on P. 290. However, functions that can be operated simultaneously may differ from the functions that can be operated while watching 1Seg. Refer to “Multi Assistant (Multitask) combinations” on P. 482.
- When a call is received or the alarm is activated while a video is played, Multi Window is displayed and the corresponding function is activated. When a call is received, the video is paused.
- Use commercially available Bluetooth devices, and play sound of videos (☞P. 408).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [1Seg].

2 Select [Video] folder ▶ select the video ▶ ▣.

- To display still pictures: Select [Substitute image] folder ▶ select the still picture ▶ ▣.
- Full-screen display is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.

Note

- When playing the video that was ended during the previous playback, the playback resumes from the spot where the playback stopped last time.
- While a video is played back, the TVlink list screen cannot be displayed.
- When a video edited (split) by other devices is played, the image and the sound may be interrupted.

Data broadcasting display while playing back a video

- When a video is played back, the information for the broadcast station from which that video was recorded is displayed. The information for the broadcast station disappears when the playback ends. However, if a data broadcasting site is being viewed when the playback ends, browsing the data broadcasting site can be continued.
- Data broadcasting is not displayed while a video is paused or while the video is being played back at other than normal speed or ▶▶♪.
- Perform Fast forward/Fast rewind or Jump to the assigned location so that the top page is displayed when the normal playback is resumed for data broadcasting/data broadcasting site.

■ Operations during playback

	Normal position	Viewer position
To fast forward (▶▶♪, ▶▶×1, ▶▶×2, ▶▶×3, ▶▶×4)	☐*1 ● ▶▶♪: Play back at approx. 1.3 times normal speed ● To fast forward at speed of ▶▶×2: Press ☐ (for 1+ seconds).	Touch the touch panel (☞P. 40) and slide the finger right
To fast rewind (◀◀×1, ◀◀×2, ◀◀×3, ◀◀×4)	☐*1 ● To fast rewind at speed of ◀◀×2: Press ☐ (for 1+ seconds).	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger left
To pause/play	☐	Operate with the control key (☞P. 42)

Continued on next page ▶▶

	Normal position	Viewer position
To stop	📖 ● To play back from the beginning: Press [i].	–
To jump to a start location assigned to a key[*2]	[1]: Beginning [2] to [9]: Locations divided by one-ninth increments of the total playing time	–
To skip to a location of approx. 30 seconds after	[#]	–
To return to a location of approx. 10 seconds before	[*]	–
To adjust volume (volume 0 to 10)	[⁚][*3]	Touch the touch panel and slide the finger up/down
To mute/disable	[/]	–
To turn Caption Settings ON/OFF	[/] (for 1+ seconds)	–
To switch between video mode and data broadcasting mode	✉	–
To end video player	[CLR]/☎ ▶ [Yes]	Operate with the control key
To show control key	–	Touch the touch panel

[*1] Each time this key is pressed, the fast-forward/rewind speed increases.
[*2] Jump may not be possible when the recording time is short.
[*3] Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously.

- In the normal position, the operation of Submenu in the video playback screen are used in the same way as those in the Submenu of the 1Seg watching screen.

Chara-den player

What is Chara-den?

During a Videophone call, send a character instead of camera image. A character can be made to perform various actions.

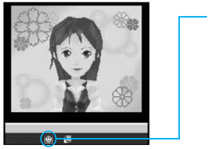
- For details on downloading Chara-den ☞P. 183

Playing Chara-den <Chara-den player>

Play Chara-den saved in Chara-den of the Data box, while enabling their actions.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Chara-den].

2 Select Chara-den ▶ [●].



Action mode icon

☻	Full-action mode
◪	Part-action mode

Note

- While Chara-den is operating, pushing a key does not generate a tone.
- There are Chara-den that automatically perform an action, and others that do not.

■ Key operations during playback

To switch action modes	[i]
To switch between normal size and zoom	📖
To display the action list	✉ ● To execute: Select an action ▶ [●]. ● To display details: Select an action ▶ [i].
To perform actions[*]	[1] to [9]

To cancel an action	0

* Execute the action corresponding to a number on the action list.

Related Operations

Set playback light <Backlight time>

1 In the Chara-den playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Backlight time].

- In the Chara-den list screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Chara-den disp set] ▶ [Backlight time].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

Set Chara-den as the Videophone substitute image <Substitute image>

In the Chara-den playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Save Chara-den] ▶ [Substitute image].

- Alternatively, press ■ to save.
- In the Chara-den list screen: Select Chara-den ▶ 📷 ▶ [Save Chara-den] ▶ [Substitute image].

Set in phonebook <Image for call>

1 In the Chara-den playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Save Chara-den] ▶ [Image for call].

- Alternatively, press ■ to save.
- In the Chara-den list screen: Select Chara-den ▶ 📷 ▶ [Save Chara-den] ▶ [Image for call].

2 Select the saving method ▶ ■ ▶ add to the phonebook.

Call with Chara-den as substitute image <Chara-den call>

1 In the Chara-den playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara-den call].

- In the Chara-den list screen: Select Chara-den ▶ 📷 ▶ [Chara-den call].

2 Select the calling method.

- ◆ **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ☰.**
- ◆ **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ☰.**

Machi-chara

Displaying Machi-chara

- For details on Machi-chara ☞P. 120

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Machi-chara].

2 Select Machi-chara ▶ ■.

- To show Full-screen mode: Press ☰.

Melody player

Playing back melodies

Play back a melody saved to Melody of Data box.

- If Vibration mode (☞P. 111) is set to [Melody ON], vibration is activated while playing back a melody.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Melody].

2 Select a melody ▶ ■.

- To stop: Press ■.

Note

- Some melodies may not be played.

Related Operations

Adjust volume <Set volume>

In the melody list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Melody settings] ▶ [Set volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ↕ ▶ ■.

Set equalizer <Equalizer>

In the melody playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Melody settings] ▶ [Equalizer] ▶ select the type ▶ ■.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Set 3D sound/surround <Stereo effects>

1 **In the melody playback screen, press 📷 ▶ [Melody settings] ▶ [Stereo effects].**
- Alternatively, press ▯ to make the settings.

2 **Select an effect ▶ ▣.**
- For details on effects ☞“Setting the 3D sound/surround” on P. 110

Playing a series of melodies <Continuous play>

Play all melodies in a folder in succession.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Melody].**

2 **Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Continuous play].**
- To play back the next melody: Press □.
- To return to beginning of melody: Press □.
- To play back the previous melody: At the beginning of a melody, press □.

Specifying start position <Start position>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Melody].**

2 **Select a folder ▶ ▣ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Melody settings] ▶ [Start position].**

3 **Select the portion to play back ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The play section of Play portion is specified in advance. The entire melody is played when the start position is not specified, even if the playback method is set to [Play portion].

Attaching melodies and sending i-mode mail

- For details on file attachments ☞“Attaching a file” on P. 203

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Melody].**

2 **Select a melody ▶ ✉ ▶ compose and send a mail.**

Note

- Melody may not be played properly if other party is using a model released prior to FOMA SH900i.
- Some of the following melodies cannot be attached to an i-mode mail.
  - ■ Melodies in MFi format
  - ■ Melodies attached to mail messages
  - ■ Melodies downloaded with i-mode
  - ■ Melody that has been acquired from i-αppli, which is of SMF format, and subject to file restrictions

Setting a melody as a ring tone <Ring tone>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Melody].**

2 **Select a melody ▶ 📷 ▶ [Ring tone].**
- Alternatively, press 📖 to make the sound settings.

3 **Select an item ▶ ▣.**

microSD Cards

Copy phonebook, mail and bookmarks from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Card or copy from microSD to FOMA terminal handset.
microSD Cards are sold separately.
Purchase microSD Cards and adaptors at home electronics shops.

- The FOMA SH906i is compatible with microSD Card of up to 2 GB and microSDHC Card of up to 8 GB (as of April 2008). Refer to the following sites for the latest information such as the manufacturer, available capacity, etc. of the microSD Card. In addition, for microSD Cards that are not provided in the sites, some of them may not operate.
  - ■ Accessing [SH-MODE] from i-mode (as of April 2008)
    [iMenu] ▶ [メニューリスト] ▶ [ケータイ電話メーカー] ▶ [SH-MODE]
  - ■ From a PC:
    http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh906i/

  QR code to connect to the site

  Note that the provided information is the information checked for operation. DoCoMo shall not be liable for all operations.

  ※ The SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.
- Do not insert or remove a microSD Card while the FOMA terminal is on. Data may be damaged and the operation may not work properly.
- The size of a file that can be used is up to 2 GB.
- The size of a file with which 1Seg can be recorded is up to 2 GB.
- Transfer downloaded images, i-motion, Melody, Chaku-uta full®, Kisekae Tool and e-comics with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal to a microSD Card. However, data cannot be saved when the IP (Information Provider) does not provide permission.
- Do not remove the microSD Card or turn off the terminal power immediately after inserting the microSD Card in the terminal (while writing data needed for FOMA terminal operation), or while editing data on a microSD Card. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Format unformatted (uninitialized) microSD Cards on the FOMA terminal before use (☞P. 342). Not all microSD Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal.
- Data saved on microSD Cards from other devices may not be displayed or played on a FOMA terminal. Some data saved on a microSD Card from a FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- When a microSD Card used with another FOMA terminal or PC is inserted, it sometimes cannot be used. Delete any unnecessary data and then insert the card again.
- Back up the data saved in a microSD Card and store in another place. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss or change of the saved data.

Inserting/Removing the microSD Card

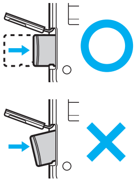
■ Inserting the microSD Card

Turn off the FOMA terminal before inserting the microSD Card.

1 Open the microSD Card slot cover (❶).

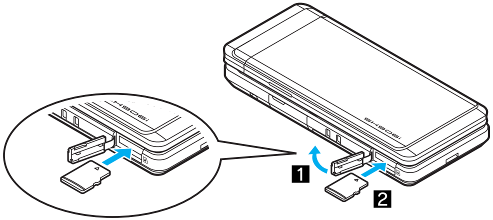
2 Slowly insert the microSD Card with the printed side facing up (❷).

- Do not force the microSD Card in at an angle or with the wrong side up.
  The microSD Card slot may be damaged.
- Push slowly with finger until a click is heard.



Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Close the microSD Card slot cover.



Removing the microSD Card

Turn off the FOMA terminal before removing the microSD Card.

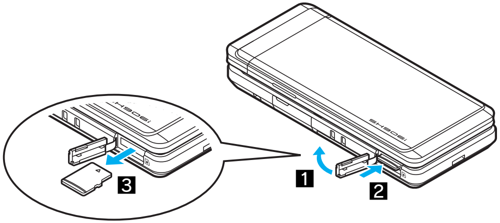
1 Open the microSD Card slot cover (❶).

2 Gently push the microSD Card in (❷).

- Push until a click is heard. The microSD Card springs forward. Excessive force may damage the FOMA terminal or card.

3 Remove the microSD Card (❸).

- Remove the card slowly by pulling it straight out. Close the microSD Card slot cover after removing the card.



Note

- Keep your face away from microSD Card when inserting or removing card. Card may pop out.
- An alert tone sounds if a microSD Card is inserted or removed while the power is on.

Folder configuration of the microSD Card

The following shows the folder configuration of a microSD Card and the file names of the data to be stored in each folder.

- Even when writing data to the microSD Card on the PC and others, it is required to create a folder according to the following folder configurations and file names.
- The rules of folder names and file names are as follows.
  - ■ aaaaaa: Full path of 225 bytes or less in any single-byte alphanumeric characters, any double-byte characters or single-byte symbols*
    - * Excluding ¥ (yen sign), / (slash), : (colon), ∗ (asterisk), ? (question mark), " (double quotation mark), < (brace), > (brace), | (vertical line)
  - ■ bbb: Three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999 (The name can be changed but 000 to 099 are not available)
  - ■ cccc: Four-digit single-byte number between 0001 and 9999
  - ■ ddddd: Five-digit single-byte number between 00001 and 65535
  - ■ eee: Three-digit single-byte alphanumeric characters between 001 and FFF (hexadecimal)
  - ■ fff: Three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999
  - ■ gggggg: 60 bytes or less including double-byte characters (excluding file extensions)
  - ■ HHH: Three-digit or less single-byte alphanumeric characters (upper case)
  - ■ jjjjjjjj: Eight-digit or less single-byte alphanumeric characters
  - ■ kkkkkk: 228 characters or less including double-byte characters (excluding file extensions)
  - ■ mmmmmm: 60 characters or less including double-byte characters (excluding file extensions)
  - ■ xxyyzznn: In single-byte numbers, xx represent year, yy month, zz date, and nn 00 to 99

- BOOK
  Manga&BookReader folder
  - aaaaaa.ZBF/ZBK/TXT/TEXT
  - aaaaaa
    User created folder
    - aaaaaa.ZBF/ZBK/TXT/TEXT
- DCIM
  Still picture folder
  - bbbSHARP
    Shot still picture folder
    - DVC0cccc.JPG/GIF
  - bbbSH_UF
    User created folder
    - DVC0cccc.JPG/GIF
- SD_PIM
  PIM data folder (Phonebook, Schedule, Mail, Text memo and Bookmark)
  - PIMddddd.VCF/VCS/VMG/VNT/VBM
- SD_VIDEO
  Movie folder
  - PRLeee
    Shot movie folder
    - MOLeee.MP4/ASF/3GP/SDV
  - MGR_INFO
    Video manager information folder
  - PRGeee
    Video folder
- PRIVATE
  - DOCOMO
    - DOCUMENT
      - PUDfff
        PDF Viewer folder
        - gggggg.PDF/$DF/DDF
    - MMFILE
      Voice Memo, i-motion (including music data in AAC format*1), WMA file folder
      - MMFcccc.MP4/ASF/3GP/SDV/M4A
      - MUDfff
        - MMFcccc.MP4/ASF/3GP/SDV/M4A
    - RINGER
      Melody file folder
      - RINGcccc.MLD/SMF/MID
      - RUDfff
        - RINGcccc.MLD/SMF/MID
    - STILL
      Other images file folder
      - STILcccc.JPG/GIF/SWF
      - SUDfff
        - STILcccc.JPG/GIF/SWF
    - TORUCA
      ToruCa folder
      - TORUCfff.TRC
      - TRCfff
        - TORUCfff.TRC
    - LCSCLIENT
      Location service client folder
      - LSCDCfff.LSC
      - LSCfff
        - LSCDCfff.LSC

Continued on next page ▶▶

    - 📁 DECOIMG
      Deco-mail pictograph folder
      - DIMGcccc.JPG/GIF
      - 📁 DUDfff
        - DIMGcccc.JPG/GIF
    - 📁 OTHER
      Other files folder
      - OTHERfff.HHH
      - jjjjjjj.HHH
      - 📁 OUDfff
        - OTHERfff.HHH
        - jjjjjjj.HHH
    - 📁 DECO_A_T
      Decome-Anime Template folder
      - DEATcccc.VGT
    - 📁 TABLE
      Manager information folder*2
  - 📁 SHARP
    - 📁 DOCUMENT
      Document Viewer folder
      - aaaaaa.PPT/TXT/TEXT/DOC/XLS/JPEG/JPG/BMP/GIF
    - 📁 IMPORT
      Import folder
      - kkkkkk.VCF/VCS/VMG/VNT/MLD/SMF/MID/JPG/GIF/SWF/MP4/ASF/3GP/M4A
      - mmmmmm.PDF
    - 📁 MOBILE
      - 📁 USERDIC
        User dictionary data folder
        - xxyyzznn.SUJ
- 📁 SD_BIND
  - 📁 SVC00001 to SVC00004*3, 4

*1 For details on data types that can be stored ☞P. 324, P. 370

*2 [TABLE] folder contains folders for [DCIM], [MMFILE], [RINGER], [LCSCLIENT], [STILL], [SD_VIDEO], [DOCUMENT], [TORUCA], [DECOIMG], [OTHER] and [DECO_A_T] information.

*3 When movable contents, i-αppli data, Chaku-uta full®, and e-comics are saved to the microSD Card, folders are created in order, starting from [SVC00001].

*4 The data in the [Movable contents] folder may not be accessed in the following situations. In this case, format the microSD Card with FOMA SH906i (☞P. 342).

■ If data saved in the [Movable contents] folder (in the SD_BIND folder) is deleted, moved, or edited by a PC

■ If the microSD Card or the battery pack is removed while data are being moved, deleted or saved

- If there is no corresponding folder when attempting to save data to the microSD Card on the PC, create a folder according to the folder configuration and then save the data.
  The Import folder is automatically created by inserting the microSD Card in the FOMA terminal or formatting the card on the FOMA terminal.
- Animated GIFs are stored in the [STILL] folder. All other GIF files (excluding Deco-mail pictographs) are stored in the [DCIM] folder.
- Flash movies are stored in the [STILL] folder.
- Data on microSD Card do not appear properly on a FOMA terminal if a folder name is changed or deleted on a PC.
- If using models released prior to SH901iS and PDF files are saved in ***\PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT*** folder in the microSD Card, move files to ***\PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx*** folder. Update the manager information for of microSD Card after moving the files.
- If a model released prior to the FOMA SH902i is used with only sound data of i-motion (including music data in AAC format) saved in the ***\PRIVATE\SHARP\VOICE*** folder of the microSD Card, move the data to the ***\PRIVATE\DOCOMO\MMFILE*** folder. After that, update the manager information of the microSD Card.

Number of files saved to a microSD Card

- The actual figures may be less than the above depending on the size of the data and the capacity of the microSD Card.

Function	Number of files
Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Bookmark, i-mode mail/SMS/Area Mail	Combined maximum of 65,535 items
Still picture	999 folders*/up to 400 items per folder
i-motion	999 folders/up to 400 items per folder
Melody	999 folders/up to 400 items per folder
PDF	999 folders/up to 400 items per folder
ToruCa	999 folders/up to 999 items per folder
Location service client	999 folders/up to 999 items per folder
Decome-Anime Template	Up to 400 items

* Up to 900 Camera folders (still pictures) can be created.

- For details on the number of 1Seg videos that can be saved to a microSD Card ☞P. 292
- For details on the number of music data for MUSIC Player that can be saved to a microSD Card ☞P. 370

Copying data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD Card

- The following types of data can be copied.
  - ■ Phonebook ■ Schedule ■ Text memo ■ Bookmark
  - ■ i-mode mail/SMS/Area Mail ■ Image
  - ■ i-motion ■ Melody ■ PDF ■ ToruCa
  - ■ e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic ■ Location service client
  - ■ Decome-Anime Template

Copying from the FOMA terminal to the microSD Card <Copy to microSD>

Example: Phonebook

1 In stand-by, press 📖.

2 Select the name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy to microSD].

- In the details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy 1 to microSD] ▶ [Yes].

3 Select the copy method.

- ◆ **Select [Copy one].**
- ◆ **Select [All in group] ▶ select a group ▶ ● ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**
- ◆ **Select [Copy all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**
- ◆ **Select [Copy selected] ▶ select a name ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**

4 Select [Yes].

Note

- Manager information is written to the microSD Card when data is copied.
- Data subject to file restrictions cannot be copied.
- Data may not be copied depending on the size of the data and the microSD Card available space.

Phonebook

- The saving destinations for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
- The following data cannot be copied.
  - ■ Memory number
  - ■ Secret settings
  - ■ Ring tone settings
  - ■ Substitute image settings
  - ■ Group settings
  - ■ Secret code
  - ■ Called LED settings
  - ■ Phonebook 2in1 settings

Continued on next page ▶▶

Schedule

- The following data cannot be copied.
  - ■ Alarm information other than alarm time
  - ■ Image settings ■ Contacts ■ Secret settings
  - ■ Reception, Recording ■ Set holiday
- Data with no end date/time set will be copied with start date/time set as end date/time.

Bookmark

- Folder information cannot be copied.

Mail

- A mail message with the total size exceeding 100 KB is copied after the attached files are deleted.
- Folder information cannot be copied.
- Protection cannot be set for copied mail.

Images, i-motion

- Images and i-motion copied to or from microSD Card may deteriorate in image quality.
- JPEG images in FOMA terminal handset may have different file sizes when copied to microSD Card. The size displayed in the microSD Card is the actual file size.
- Frames are not copied to the microSD Card.

PDF

- Copy up to 2 MB of PDF files.
- Some PDF files that failed to download may not be copied.

Copying from the microSD Card to the FOMA terminal <Copy to the phone>

Example: Phonebook

1. **In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [View microSD data].**
2. **Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy to the phone].**
3. **Select the copy method.**
   - ◆ **Select [Copy one].**
   - ◆ **Select [Copy selected] ▶ select a name ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ i.**
   - ◆ **Select [Copy all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**
4. **Select [Yes].**

Note

- Copy up to 100 KB for melodies and Flash movies, 2 MB for JPEG/GIF images and PDF files each, and 10 MB for i-motion on the FOMA terminal handset.
- To copy the backed up data to microSD Card (☞P. 340), read the data (☞P. 341) from microSD Card. However, view the details screen to copy the only backed up data to the handset.

Phonebook

- [No Name] appears when data without name is copied.
- When copying one phonebook entry, the confirmation screen indicating that the entry stores in PushTalk phonebook appears. Select [Yes] to store. When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number. However, the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the confirmation screen does not appear.

Bookmark

- If the maximum number of bookmarks is saved for either i-mode or Full Browser on the FOMA terminal handset, additional bookmarks are not copied when performing Copy selected or Copy all.

Contents transfer compatible

Transferring data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD Card

Transfer downloaded data that have restrictions for output between the FOMA terminal and microSD Card. Also, transfer recorded videos to the microSD Card.

- The following types of data can be moved.
  - ■ Image ■ i-motion ■ Melody ■ Chaku-uta full®
  - ■ Kisekae Tool ■ e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic
  - ■ Video (FOMA terminal → microSD Card only)
- Check transfer availability from [File property] (☞P. 347).

Transferring data in the FOMA terminal to the microSD Card <Move → microSD>

Example: i-motion

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion].

2 Select the i-motion ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Move → microSD].

- To move all items: Press 📷 ▶ [Move → microSD] ▶ [Move all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.
- For video: Select a video file ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move → microSD].

3 Select the transfer method.

- ◆ **Select [Move one].**
- ◆ **Select [Move selected] ▶ select i-motion ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
- To specify the destination folder: Select [Select destination] ▶ select a destination folder ▶ 📷.

Transferring data from the microSD Card to the FOMA terminal <Move to the phone>

Example: i-motion

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion] ▶ [→ microSD] ▶ [Movable contents].

- To move all items: Select the [Movable contents] folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move to the phone] ▶ [Move all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.

2 Select the i-motion ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Move to the phone].

3 Select the transfer method.

- ◆ **Select [Move one].**
- ◆ **Select [Move selected] ▶ select i-motion ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The data transferred to microSD Card can be transferred to the FOMA terminal handset in the following situations:
  - ■ When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is [available], and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval
  - ■ When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is [Yes(Same model only)], and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval

Backup/restore

Backing up/Restoring the FOMA terminal handset data

Backup data from the following functions and dictionary data to a microSD Card.

- Phonebook
- Mail
- Schedule
- Bookmark
- Text memo

Backing up from the FOMA terminal to the microSD Card

- Backup data is given a name including the backup date and time. Set the correct date and time in advance (☞P. 57).
  Example: Backup taken at 1:05 P.M. on July 22, 2008 →
  [datagr080722_1305]

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [Backup/restore] ▶ [Backup to microSD].

2 Select the data type ▶ ▣.

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Back up data when the battery level is sufficient.
- Some backed up data may not be read with other FOMA terminals.
- Dictionary data, which are user dictionaries and dictionaries replaced with download dictionaries, is saved. User dictionaries are saved as one file and dictionaries replaced with Download dictionaries are saved as one file per each dictionary. Data other than dictionary data is saved as one file per function.

Phonebook

- The saving destinations for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
- The phonebook 2in1 settings are also backed up.
- The following data is not backed up.
  - Secret code
  - Called LED settings
  - Phonebook in FOMA card
  - Ring tone settings
  - Substitute image settings
- To back up the phonebook, a confirmation screen for saving owner information appears. Even if the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the owner information of Number A is backed up.
- Phonebook cannot be backed up while Keypad dial lock is set.

Schedule

- The following data is not backed up.
  - Alarm information other than alarm time
  - Image settings
  - Reception, Recording
  - Contacts
  - Set holiday
- Data with no end date/time set will be backed up with start date/time set as end date/time.

Mail

- The following data is not backed up.
  - i-αppli To
  - Non-redistributable attached files
  - SMS in FOMA card
  - Folder information

Dictionary data

- When there is dictionary data which is backed up last time, user dictionaries are saved additionally as a new file. Dictionaries replaced with Download dictionaries are saved after deleting all of the previous backed up data.

Reading backup data from the microSD Card to the FOMA terminal

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [Backup/restore] ▶ [Restore ← microSD].

2 Select the backup data ▶ ▣.

- To check contents: Select the backup data ▶ 📷 ▶ [View data].
- To check data: Select the backup data ▶ 📷 ▶ [File property].

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.

4 Select the read method.

- ◆ **Select [Overwrite] ▶ [Yes].**
- ◆ **Select [Add].**

Note

- Perform restoration when the battery level is sufficient.

Phonebook

- When the phonebook backup data is restored, images set for Picture call is also restored. However, i-motion cannot be restored.
- When the phonebook backup data is overwritten, group names are also overwritten. Group settings which cannot be overwritten are reset to initial settings.
- When the phonebook backup data including the owner information is restored, a confirmation screen asking whether to restore the owner information appears after step 4 is performed.
  Select [Yes] to overwrite other than the phone number registered at time of subscription. If [No] is selected, the owner information is saved as one entry in the phonebook.
- If the number of registered entries in the restored FOMA terminal phonebook reaches 1,000, additional entries are not restored.

Bookmark

- Because folder information is not backed up, restored bookmarks are saved to the [Bookmark] folder.
- When restoring backup data to the terminal, selecting either [i-mode] or [Full Browser] causes both sets of backup data to appear, but only that for the selected function is restored.

Mail

- Because folder information is not backed up, restored received mail is saved to the [Inbox], sent mail is saved to the [Outbox], and unsent mail is saved to [Drafts].
- Mail may take more time to transfer.

Dictionary data

- User dictionaries are updated and dictionaries replaced with Downloaded dictionaries are saved additionally.

Related Operations

Delete backup data <Delete>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [Backup/restore] ▶ [Restore ← microSD] ▶ select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select data ▣ (repeatable) ▶ ⓘ.**
- ◆ **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

- When [Bookmark] is selected, select [i-mode] or [Full Browser]. Both backup data appear even when one of them is selected.

View microSD data

Previewing the microSD Card data

1. **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [View microSD data].**
   - In the screen for each function: Press 📷 ▶ [View microSD data].
2. **Select data ▶ ⊡.**

Managing microSD Cards

Formatting the microSD Card <Format>

- All the data on the microSD Card is deleted when formatted.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [Format].**
2. **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**

Note

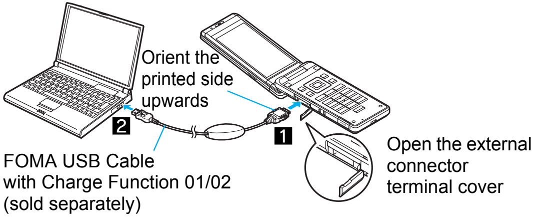
- Perform operation when the battery level is sufficient.
- Do not remove the microSD Card during operation.
- Note that if formatting is aborted, the microSD Card will not be recognized by the FOMA terminal, PCs and other devices. Should this occur, restart the formatting process.
- Some types of microSD Cards do not support copyright protection functions. As such, they cannot be formatted. The microSD Card can be used if inserted again. However, that card is not supported by the FOMA terminal, then the saving/copying of data to the card cannot be guaranteed.
- For details on microSD Card manufacturer, available capacity, etc. ☞P. 333

Using as a microSD reader/writer <USB mode setting>

The following shows the mode for connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately). When using as a microSD reader/writer, set to [microSD mode] and connect.

Communication mode	Mode for packet transmissions, 64K data communications and sending and receiving data (OBEX™ communications) (☞P. 442).
microSD mode	Mode for reading/writing the data saved on microSD Card.
MTP mode	Mode for transferring music data to microSD Card using Windows Media Player 10/11. For details on saving methods ☞P. 371

1. **Insert the FOMA terminal side connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 into the external connector terminal on the FOMA terminal (❶).**
2. **Insert the PC side connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 into the USB connector of the PC (❷).**


Orient the printed side upwards
❷
❶
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately)
Open the external connector terminal cover

3 In stand-by, press ▣ ▶ select the stock icon ⇹ (USB mode setting) ▶ ▣.

- When USB mode setting is set to [microSD mode]/[MTP mode], the stock icon does not appear and the PC is connected in the microSD mode/MTP mode.

4 Select [microSD mode] ▶ [Yes].

To return to the Communication mode

- Press a key other than the side key ▶ [Yes].
  - The USB mode setting is retained even if the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 is disconnected.

■ Setting the mode to use

Set the mode for connecting the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 in advance.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [USB mode setting].

- From [Settings] in the Custom menu: Select [General settings] ▶ [USB mode setting].

2 Select the mode ▶ ▣.

- When the operation is performed while connecting to a PC, the switching confirmation screen appears if [microSD mode]/[MTP mode] is selected.

Note

- The following devices are required to use the FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer.

Item	Explanation
Cable	FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
PC	A PC with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev. 1.1-compliant) is usable with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
Compatible OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese versions)

- If the screen stating that new hardware is searched appears on the PC, click [キャンセル].
- If the FOMA terminal is not properly connected to the PC, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Check the PC power supply as well.
- Do not remove the microSD Card while switching to microSD mode or in microSD mode. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 while reading/writing data. Sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.

Updating the microSD Card manager information

<New manager info>

Update Manager information if microSD Card is used with other devices.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [New manager info].

2 Select an item ▣ (repeatable) ▶ ▤ ▶ [Yes].

Continued on next page ▶▶

- ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected entries.
- To update all: Select [All] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient.
- Manager information may not be updated if there is no available space on the microSD Card.
- The microSD Card may not operate properly if the manager information is not updated on the FOMA terminal.
- Updating may take time depending on the number of files and the amount of data on the microSD Card.
- Updating the manager information deletes titles of GIF images, movies, data in [Other images] and [Multimedia] (However, original titles for i-motion and melodies are not deleted).
- Do not remove microSD Card while updating.
- The following functions cannot be used while updating.
  - ■ i-αppli
  - ■ Shooting still pictures/movies
  - ■ Bar code reader
  - ■ Document Viewer
  - ■ Ir exchange
  - ■ Checking memory of microSD Card
  - ■ Viewing to microSD data from each function

Checking data created with PC and other devices on the FOMA terminal <Import>

Use the DoCoMo keitai datalink (☞P. 446) to copy data created on a PC or other devices to the Import folder of the microSD Card. Use the FOMA terminal to check the data.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [microSD manager] ▶ [Import].**

2 **Select data ▶ ⊡.**

- In the same way as usual, the submenu can be used to delete, copy, and display data.

Note

- Not all still pictures (JPEG/GIF) larger than 3,840 (W) × 3,840 (H) pixels can be viewed. Images from the image list may be displayed for larger images.
- PDF files cannot be displayed when saved in the Import folder. Copy to the handset to display.
- Attached files may be deleted in part or in whole under the following conditions.
  - ■ A file exceeding 2 MB is attached
  - ■ 11 or more files are attached
- The following restrictions regarding file names apply to data in the Import folder. Data that exceed limitations are not displayed and cannot be imported.
  - ■ Up to 228 single/double-byte characters for PIM data, still pictures, i-motion and melodies (excluding file extensions)
  - ■ Up to 60 single/double-byte characters for PDF data (excluding file extensions)
- File names of up to eight lower case alphabets are displayed or imported in upper case alphabets in the Import folder.
- When backup data is put into the Import folder, only the first item is shown.
- When special symbols or katakana are included in a file name, the data may not be copied from the Import folder to the FOMA terminal.

Managing Data box and Media tool

Create/Delete folders and transfer/copy data to manage the data saved in Data box and Media tools.

- Use the following operations to manage each data.

		Manage folders				Manage data						
		New folder	Edit folder name	Folder security	Delete	Edit title	Edit file name	Sort	Move to folder	File property	File restriction	Delete
Data box	My picture	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	i-motion	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	1Seg	×	×	×	×	○	×	○	×	○	×	○
	Melody	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○
	My Documents	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	○
	Kisekae Tool	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	○
	Machi-chara	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	○
	Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	○
Media tool	Manga&BookReader	○	○	×	○	○*1	○*2	○*1	○	○	×	○
	Document Viewer	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	○	×	○
	PDF Viewer	The [PDF Viewer] folder list displays the same content as [My Documents] of Data box.										

○: Operation is supported.

×: Operation is not supported.

*1 Data of the FOMA terminal handset and [Comic] folder in the microSD Card can be operated.

*2 Data of [Manga&BookReader] folder in the microSD Card and the user folder can be operated.

- For details on MUSIC in Data box ☞"Managing folder, playlist and music data" on P. 377
- For details on Music&Video Channel in Data box ☞"Operating Music&Video Channel from Data box" on P. 369

Managing folders

Creating user folders <New folder>

- Create up to 20 user folders in Data box for each data type.
- Create up to 397 user folders in Manga&BookReader. In the [Comic] folder, create up to 999 further folders.

1 In the folder list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [New folder].

2 Enter a folder name ▶ ■.

- When creating a user folder in the microSD Card, select the type of the folder to create.
- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters in Data box.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters in the [Movable contents] folder.
- Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters in the Manga&BookReader. However, the folders in the [Comic] folder can be of up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

Change the name of user folders and folders in the [Movable contents] folder.

1 Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [Edit folder name].

2 Edit a folder name ▶ ■.

Setting the security for user folders <Folder security>

Set the security for user folders in the FOMA terminal.

- When the folder security is set, the folder icon changes to 🔒. Enter the terminal security code to display data in the folder.

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage folders] ▶ [Folder security].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.

3 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Deleting a user folder <Delete>

1 Select a user folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one folder].**
- **Select [Delete sel folders] ▶ select a folder ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
    - For Manga&BookReader: Select [Delete selected] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a folder ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ [Yes].
- **Select [Del all in all fol].**
- **Select [Delete all folders].**

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Folders containing data saved as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions cannot be deleted.
- To use the preset Deco-mail images again after deleting them, download the preset data from the iMenu site, [SH-MODE] (☞P. 413).

Managing data

Editing title <Edit title>

- Title names are names that appear on data lists.

1 Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit title].

- For video, PDF data, Machi-chara and Chara-den: Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title].
- For Kisekae Tool: Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Change name].
- For Manga&BookReader: Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title].
- Depending on data, it may be necessary to select [Direct input] (or [Edit title])/[Back to original] after selecting [Edit title].

2 Edit the title ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters. For an i-motion, enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters, for an e-comic, up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters, and for an e-book/e-dictionary, up to 64 single/double-byte characters.

Editing file names <Edit file name>

- File names are the names used when attaching files to i-mode mail.

1 Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit file name].

- For Manga&BookReader: Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit file name].

2 Edit a file name ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 36 single-byte characters. Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters for the e-book/e-dictionary file name.

Note

- File names of no more than 8 single-byte characters and the alphabetic characters of the extension, may be converted from single-byte lower-case to single-byte upper-case characters.
- Some data, such as those in the [Pre-install] folder, cannot be edited the file name.

■ Sorting data <Sort>

Example: My picture

1 In the data list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Picture setting] ▶ [Sort].

- For data in the [Document] folder of Document Viewer and in the [i-mode]/[Comic] folder of Manga&BookReader: Press 📷 in the data list screen ▶ [Sort].

2 Select the sorting method ▶ ■.

Note

- If the file restriction of the data in the microSD Card is changed, time and date information is updated. As a result, the time and date displayed in the Date/Time saved of File property may be different from a result sorted by Date.

■ Moving data to another folder <Move to folder>

1 Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Move to folder].

- For Kisekae Tool: Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [Move to folder].
- For Machi-chara and Chara-den: Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move to folder].

2 Select the transfer method.

- ◆ **Select [Move one].**
- ◆ **Select [Move selected] ▶ select data ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 Select a destination folder ▶ 📷.

- For Manga&BookReader: Select a destination folder ▶ ■.
- During data move, press CLR or ☎. An abort message appears, but the move processing continues.

Note

- Data in [Pre-install] folder of My picture, Melody and Manga&BookReader cannot be moved.
- Data cannot be moved without user folders.
- For Data box, when moving data from a user folder to the original folder, only individual move is available.
- If the destination folder is full, the exceeded amount cannot be moved. For details on the number of items that can be saved to a microSD Card ☞P. 337
- Data contained in the [Multimedia] folder on the microSD Card cannot be moved to [Camerafolder].

■ Viewing detailed information <File property>

1 Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [File property].

- In the details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [File property].

Note

- The displayed information differs according to the data.
- File properties for Supportbook are not available.

■ Restricting output of still pictures and movies from the FOMA terminal <File restriction>

1 Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [File restriction].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

Note

- Only data created through editing or shot can be set.

■ Deleting data <Delete>

1 Select data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select data ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 Select [Yes].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

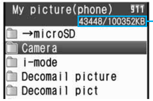
- Cannot delete all in folder for data set as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions.
- Data in the [Pre-install] folder of My picture and Melody, or Supportbook of Manga&BookReader cannot be deleted.
- To use the preset data again after deleting them, download the preset data from the iMenu site, [SH-MODE] (☞P. 413).

Checking available memory <Check memory>

■ Checking the FOMA terminal handset memory usage

In the folder list and data list screens of Data box, the number of FOMA terminal handset memory usage appears at the upper right of the display.

- The number of memory usage does not appear in folder list screen of MUSIC.



My picture(phone)
43448/100352KB
→microSD
Camera
i-mode
Decomail picture
Decomail pict

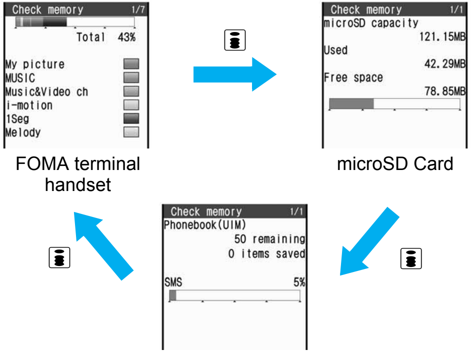
For folder list of My picture

■ Checking memory usage of each item <Check memory>

Show the data capacity or amount of free space on the FOMA terminal handset, microSD Card, and FOMA card.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Check status] ▶ [Check memory].**

- To show the available memory status for other functions while checking available memory on the FOMA terminal handset, press ✣.



Check memory 1/7
Total 43%
My picture
MUSIC
Music&Video ch
i-motion
1Seg
Melody

FOMA terminal handset

Check memory 1/1
microSD capacity
121.15MB
Used
42.29MB
Free space
78.85MB

microSD Card

Check memory 1/1
Phonebook(UIM)
50 remaining
0 items saved
SMS 5%

FOMA card

Note

- The number of phonebook and schedule entries includes secret data.

When memory is low or saved data is full

When the memory space is not enough, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears and the data can be saved by deleting the unnecessary data.

1 **In the confirmation screen for overwriting, select [Yes].**

2 **Select data ● (repeatable) ▶ ≣ ▶ [Yes].**

- ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected entries.
- Select data until the memory allocation status reaches 100%.
- For MUSIC, select data and press 📷 to play music data.

Ir exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support Ir exchange. In addition, use Ir exchange with i-αppli software to operate simultaneously with other devices which support Ir exchange.

- The FOMA terminal Ir exchange function conforms with IrMC™ 1.1 standard. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC™ 1.1 standard.
- The FOMA terminal Ir send and receive functions conform with IrSimple™ 1.0 standard.
- During Ir exchange, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode and data transmission are not available.
- Ir exchange is not available while a call is in progress, All lock or Self mode is set.
- Phonebook data and owner information cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.

Data that can be sent and received with Ir exchange

- Data saved on microSD Cards cannot be sent or received. However, JPEG images on a microSD Card can be sent.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent or received.
- Sort settings for folders are not reflected for bookmarks, i-mode mail, SMS and ToruCa, since their folder information is not sent.
- For i-mode mail with i-αppli To pasted, the pasted information is deleted and is not sent or received.

Data that can be sent from the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All
Phonebook	○	○
Schedule	○	○
Text memo	○	○
i-mode mail, SMS, Area Mail	○	○
Bookmark	○	○
Images, i-motion, melodies, PDF in Data box	○	×
Owner Information	○	–
ToruCa	○	○
Location service client	○	○
Decome-Anime Template	○	×

Note

- Pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones other than the i-mode terminal. Pictographs may not appear properly on i-mode terminal depending on the receiving model.

Phonebook

- The following data is not sent.
  - ■ Secret code ■ Ring tone setting ■ Called LED setting
  - ■ Substitute image settings
- Group information is not sent when sending data items individually.
- Secret phonebook entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to [ON]. When Secret phonebook entries are sent individually, the entries are sent with Set secret [OFF].
- When sending all phonebook data, the owner information and Secret phonebook are also sent.

Schedule

- The following data is not sent.
  - ■ Alarm information other than alarm time ■ Image settings
  - ■ Contacts ■ Reception, Recording ■ Set holiday

Continued on next page

- Data with no end date/time set will be received with start date/time set as end date/time.
- Secret schedules cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to [ON]. When Secret schedule entries are sent individually, the entries are sent with Set secret [OFF].
- When sending all items, data saved as Secret schedule is also sent.

Mail

- Pasted data, attached files, and protected mail can be sent. Data that cannot be attached is not sent.
- Mails exceeding 100 KB may not be sent properly.

Images, i-motion, melodies

- JPEG/GIF images of up to 2 MB, Flash movies of up to 100 KB, i-motion of up to 2 MB, melodies of up to 100 KB, and PDF files of up to 2 MB can be sent.
- Images sent by Ir exchange may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes.
- The following types of data cannot be sent.
  - ■ Received or downloaded data from devices other than the FOMA terminal that have file restrictions
  - ■ Preset data in the FOMA terminal
- Data of Data box may not be sent by Ir exchange.
- JPEG images can be sent with high-speed Ir exchange (☞P. 319).

Owner information

- Saved as phonebook entry by receiver.
- When 2in1 is used, the owner’s information that appears in the 2in1 mode is sent.

ToruCa

- The following types of data cannot be sent.
  - ■ ToruCa exceeding of 1 KB
  - ■ Non-redistributable ToruCa
  - ■ ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB
  - ■ Used ToruCa

Decome-Anime Templates

- The following types of data cannot be sent.
  - ■ Received or downloaded Decome-Anime Templates from devices other than the FOMA terminal that have file restrictions
  - ■ Preset Decome-Anime Templates in the FOMA terminal

■ Data that can be received by the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All	Storage location	Storage order
Phonebook	○	○	Phonebook	When receiving a single data item: Open memory numbers are allocated from 010 to 999, then 000 to 009.
Schedule	○	○	Schedule	Start date/time order
Text memo	○	○	Text memo	Last revision date/time order
i-mode mail, SMS, Area Mail	○	○	i-mode mail, SMS	Received/sent/saved date/time order
Bookmark	○	○	Bookmark	When receiving a single data item: At the top When all items are received: In the order used, starting from the oldest
Images, i-motion, Melody, PDF of Data box	○	×	My picture, i-motion, Melody, My Documents in Data box	At the top of the [Acquired data] folder in the selected folder
Owner Information	○	–	Phonebook	When receiving a single data item: Open memory numbers are allocated from 010 to 999, then 000 to 009.
ToruCa	○	○	ToruCa	–
Location service client	○	○	Notification clients	–

Function	One	All	Storage location	Storage order
Decome-Anime Template	○	×	Decome-Anime Template list	–

Note

- If overwriting of existing data with new data is selected when receiving all the items of a function, all existing data for that function will be deleted.

Phonebook

- The Group setting of data that is received individually is always set to [No groups].
- When receiving all items, all owner information except own number is overwritten.
- [No Name] appears when data without name is received.

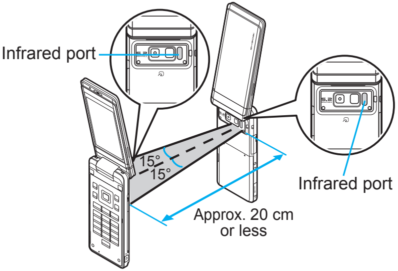
Mail

- May not be able to receive the title completely but a part of it.

Location service client

- The same location service client of phone number cannot be saved more than once.

Precautions for using the Ir exchange function



- Face the Infrared ports of the receiving and sending FOMA terminal each other and set the distance between them to approximately 20 cm or less as shown above.
- While doing Ir exchange, leave the Infrared ports facing each other and do not move.
- Ir exchange may not function properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.
- If either of the infrared ports is dirty, Ir exchange will become difficult. Take care not to scratch the ports, and wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.
- When Ir exchange could not be performed properly, the confirmation screen whether to continue appears. Select [Yes] to try again. Move the FOMA terminals close and try again.
- IrSS™ exchange performs a transmission without confirming the response of the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. For this reason, the sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.

Sending and receiving data individually

Sending a single data item <Send Ir data>

Example: Phonebook

1 **In stand-by, press 📖.**

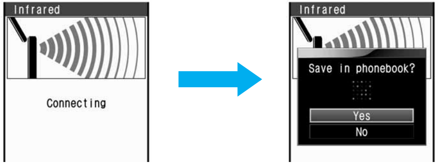
2 **Select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [Send Ir data].**
- In the details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [Send Ir data].
- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to receive a single data item.

3 **Select [Send] ▶ [Yes].**

Receiving a single data item <Receive Ir data>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Receive Ir data] ▶ [Receive] ▶ [Yes].**

Continued on next page ▶▶



Infrared

Connecting

Infrared

Save in phonebook?

Yes

No

When phonebook is received

- Ready the sender's FOMA terminal to send a single data item.
- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Data is automatically received when data is sent from sender's FOMA terminal within 30 seconds.

2 **Select [Yes].**

Note

- When phonebook is received, a confirmation message to store in PushTalk phonebook appears. To store, select [Yes]. When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number. However, if the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the PushTalk phonebook confirmation screen does not appear.
- When received bookmark is identical to existing bookmark, a message appears to confirm whether to overwrite. Select [Yes] to overwrite the existing data.

Sending and receiving all data items

- Terminal security code and authentication password entry are required for sending or receiving all data items. The authentication password is a password exclusively for Ir exchange. Before starting data transfer, the sender and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit password.

Sending all data items <Send Ir data>

Example: Phonebook

1 **In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [Send Ir data] ▶ [Send all].**

- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to receive all data.

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

3 **Enter the authentication password ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].**

- If the entered authentication password matches an authentication password entered by the receiver, data sending begins.

Note

- When sending all schedules, operate from Calendar or Show all schedules.

Receiving all data items <Receive all Ir data>

- Note that when all data items are received, saved data will be overwritten.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Receive Ir data] ▶ [Receive all] ▶ [Yes].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

- Ready the sender's FOMA terminal to send all data.

3 **Enter the same authentication password entered on sender's FOMA terminal ▶ ●.**

- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Ir exchange automatically begins when data is sent from sender's FOMA terminal within 30 seconds.

4 **Select [Yes].**

- To cancel Receive: While receiving data, press 📷.

Using Ir exchange with i-αppli software

Use the Ir exchange function from running software. Activating i-αppli from Ir exchange is also possible.

- For details on activating Ir exchange from i-αppli ☞P. 251

Activating i-αppli from Ir exchange

During Ir exchange, if a signal to activate i-αppli is received from devices supporting Ir exchange, software can be activated.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Receive Ir data] ▶ [Receive] ▶ [Yes].

- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Software is activated when signal to activate i-αppli is received from the sender's FOMA terminal.

Note

- When i-αppli To is set to [No], i-αppli is not activated from Ir exchange.
- Cannot be activated as i-αppli stand-by.

Infrared remote control

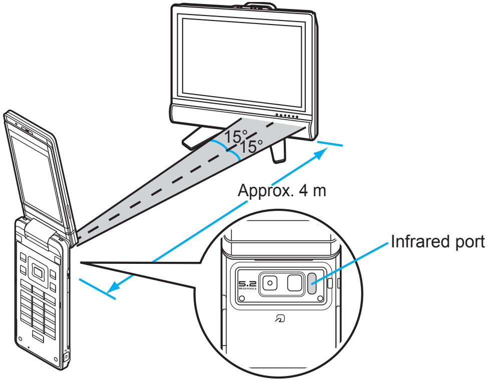
Using the infrared remote control function

Use the FOMA terminal's Infrared port from i-αppli software to operate equipment supporting the infrared remote control such as TVs and VCRs.

- To use the infrared remote control function, download compatible i-αppli software.

Remote control operation

Start i-αppli software that supports Ir remote control functions, point the FOMA terminal's Ir port to the front of the remote control sensor on the TV, VCR or other device to operate, and perform remote control operations.



- Actual operational methods will differ with each i-αppli software application.
- Control devices from a distance of up to approximately 4 m (Distance will vary depending on the device, the ambient brightness and other factors).

Note

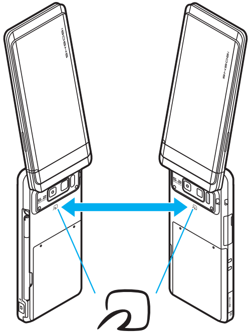
- When in the Self mode, the Ir remote control function cannot be used.
- Depending on the device, operation may not run properly.
- Remote control operation may not run properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.

iC transmission

Use iC transmission to send and receive data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support iC transmission function.

- During iC transmission, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area, such that making/receiving calls, i-mode, and data communications are not possible.
- iC transmission is not available while a call is in progress or the IC card is locked.
- Data that can be sent and received or operations when various lock functions are set are same as for Ir exchange (☞P. 349).
- For details on starting iC transmission from i-αppli ☞P. 251

Precautions for using iC transmission function



- Use while placing FeliCa mark (ᘐ) of receiving side FOMA terminal on that of sending side FOMA terminal as shown above.
- Do not move the FOMA terminal until all data are sent and received.
- Sending and receiving data may be difficult according to other party's FOMA terminal. In such cases, make the clearance between the FeliCa marks (ᘐ) closer or farther, or move them up/down/left/right alternately.
- During iC transmission, FOMA terminal called LED flashes (☞P. 123).

Sending and receiving data individually

Sending a single data item <Send>

Example: Phonebook

1 **In stand-by, press 📖.**

2 **Select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [iC transmission] ▶ [Send] ▶ [Yes].**
   - In the details screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [iC transmission] ▶ [Send] ▶ [Yes].

3 **Place FeliCa mark (ᘐ) on that of the other party's FOMA terminal.**

Receiving a single data item <Receive>

1 **Place FeliCa mark (ᘐ) on that of the other party's FOMA terminal.**

2 **Select [Yes].**

Note

- When receiving phonebook, a confirmation message to store in PushTalk phonebook appears. To store, select [Yes]. When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number. However, if the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], the PushTalk phonebook confirmation screen does not appear.

Sending and receiving all data items

- Terminal security code and authentication password entry are required for sending or receiving all data items. The authentication password is a password exclusively for iC transmission. Before starting data transfer, the sender and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit password.

Sending all data items <Send all>

Example: Phonebook

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [iC transmission] ▶ [Send all].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.

3 Enter the authentication password ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].

4 Place FeliCa mark (⊃) on that of the other party's FOMA terminal.

Receiving all data items <Receive all>

1 In stand-by, place the FeliCa mark (⊃) on that of the other party's FOMA terminal.

2 Select [Yes].

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.

4 Enter the authentication password ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].

- To cancel Receive: While receiving data, press 📷.

Voice recorder

Using the FOMA terminal handset as a voice recorder

Use the FOMA terminal as a voice recorder (microSD Card is required).

- Save up to 400 recordings on the [Multimedia] folder of microSD Card (Actual number varies depending on recording time). Record up to 6 hours per recording.
- When recording is attempted after the 400th recording, the message stating that recording is failed appears and Voice recorder ends.
- Record up to approximately 10 hours when saving to a 64 MB microSD Card.
- Recording within a distance of approximately 1.5 m is recommended.
- Play back recorded voice or audio with i-motion player (☞P. 324).

Recording

- Recording start sound is heard and recording starts. The picture light flashes during recording.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Voice recorder] ▶ ●/▣.

- To pause/play: Press ▯.

2 Press ●/▣ to end recording.

- Recording stops automatically in the following circumstances.
  - ■ When the remaining time goes to 00:00:00
  - ■ When recording time reaches approximately 6 hours
  - ■ When microSD Card has no available space

3 Select [Save].

- Recorded voice is saved.
- To play back recorded voice: Select [Play].
- To cancel recorded voice: Select [Cancel] ▶ [Yes].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Recorded data is saved as the file without file restrictions.
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal is closed during recording.
- When a call is received during recording, recording automatically stops and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears.

Related Operations

Display files in the Data box <Display Data box>

In the Voice recorder screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display Data box].

Minimize audio noise <Noise reduction>

In the Voice recorder screen, press 📷 ▶ [Noise reduction] ▶ [ON].

Set Auto timer <Auto timer>

In the Voice recorder screen, press 📷 ▶ [Auto timer] ▶ select the auto timer duration ▶ ■.

Retain voice recorder settings <Retain settings>

In the Voice recorder screen, press 📷 ▶ [Retain settings] ▶ [ON].

PDF Viewer

Displaying PDF files

- Save files in advance to My document of Data box or ***\PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx*** folder on microSD Card. To save to microSD Card, save the file and update the microSD Card manager information (☞P. 343).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [PDF Viewer].

- Alternatively, select [Data box] ▶ [My Documents].

2 Select the file ▶ ■.

Note

- Some formats and complex designs not compatible with the PDF Viewer may not appear correctly.
- Some files may take more time to display or may not be able to display entire contents.
- PDF files with ～, ‖, –, ¢, £, and ¬ included in the file name are not supported.

■ Key operations during display

Shortcut operation	Operation from Submenu	Action
1	[Zoom] ▶ ▮	Shrink screen[*1]
2	[Rotate view] ▶ select rotation direction ▶ ■	Rotate 90°[*2]
3	[Zoom] ▶ 📷	Zoom screen[*1]
4	[Move page] ▶ [Specified page] ▶ enter page number ▶ ■	Display specified page[*3]
5	[bookmark･mark]	View and add bookmarks[*4]
6	[Search]	Search text[*4]
7	[Display link]	Switch to Display link mode[*5]
8	[Capture screen] ▶ [Yes]	Save as a still picture[*6]
9	[Set screen]	Set the display method[*4]
0	[Save] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷	Save files
✉	–	Display previous page
📖	–	Display next page
▮	–	Full-screen
# (for 1+ seconds)	[Light Up]	Light up
#	[Key list]	Show Key list
■	–	Switch fit to screen/actual size
✥	–	Scroll up/down/left/right

*1 Press key multiple times to zoom/shrink screen in 10% increments/decrements, up to 1,000% and down to 8%.
*2 Rotate only left by the shortcut operation.
*3 [Go to first page]/[Go to last page] can also be selected by the operation from the Submenu.
*4 Refer to the Related Operations for the operation methods.
*5 The screen cannot be scrolled when in the Display link mode.
*6 The still picture is saved as a JPEG image in the size of ***Stand-by: 480×854***. For the PDF files with restrictions, the capture screen operation or output from the FOMA terminal may not be available.

Related Operations

Set page layout <Page layout>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Page layout] ▶ select the page layout ▶ ●.

Set the display method <Display>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [View types] ▶ select the display type ▶ ●.

Display the scroll bar, page numbers and magnification <Scroll bar/Page numbers/Magnification>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set screen] ▶ select display items ▶ ● ▶ [ON].

Add bookmarks <Add bookmark>

1 **In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [bookmark･mark] ▶ [Add bookmark].**
2 **Select [OK].**
- To add a bookmark after editing the title: Select [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ●.
- To add a bookmark after overwriting (when ten bookmarks are already saved): Select [OK] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select a bookmark to overwrite ▶ ●.

Display the bookmark list <Display bookmark>

1 **In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [bookmark･mark] ▶ [Display bookmark].**
2 **Select a bookmark to display ▶ ●.**
- Select a bookmark to jump to the save destination.
- Edit i-mode bookmark title: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit title] ▶ edit the title ▶ ●.
- Display i-mode bookmark properties: Press 📷 ▶ [Properties].

Delete i-mode bookmarks from a list <Delete>

1 **In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [bookmark･mark] ▶ [Display bookmark] ▶ [i-mode bookmark] ▶ select a bookmark ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**
2 **Select the deletion method.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a bookmark ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Add marks <Add mark>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [bookmark･mark] ▶ [Add mark] ▶ [Yes].

Display the mark list <Display mark>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [bookmark･mark] ▶ [Display mark].

Delete marks <Delete>

1 **In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [bookmark･mark] ▶ [Display mark] ▶ select a mark ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**
2 **Select the deletion method.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a mark ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Continued on next page ▶▶

Search for text string <Search>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Search] ▶ enter a text string ▶ ●.

- To search for the next search result: Press 📖 (or 📷 ▶ [Next result]).
- To search for the previous search result: Press ✉ (or 📷 ▶ [Previous result]).
- To search for a new text string: Press 📷 ▶ [New search] ▶ enter a text string ▶ ●.

Set search criteria <Search criteria>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Search criteria] ▶ select the criteria ▶ ● ▶ select the setting ▶ ● ▶ 📷.

View file information <File property>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [File property].

Display text properties <Doc properties>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Doc properties].

Download all PDF data <DL remaining data>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [DL remaining data] ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

Bookmark display

- Select [Bookmark] to display up to 50 bookmark titles already saved in PDF file.
- Select [i-mode bookmark] to display added bookmarks.

Adding bookmarks or marks

- Save up to ten new entries. After that, existing marks are overwritten.
- Added bookmarks or marks may be deleted when moving PDF files from FOMA terminal.

Document Viewer

Displaying Word and Excel files

Display files saved on microSD Card, such as Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel and image files, on the FOMA terminal.

- Supported file types (file extension): Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), Plain Text (.txt), JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp)
- Place file to view in the ***\PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT*** folder of the microSD Card in advance (☞P. 334).

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Document Viewer].**

2 **Select a file ▶ ●.**

Note

- File contents may appear differently from when displayed on a PC depending on the contents.
- Some files may take longer to be displayed depending on file size. Some files may not be able to display entire contents.
- Some fonts may cause file to not be displayed properly.
- Files with names that exceed 231 characters, including the extension, cannot be displayed.
- The number of digits that appears in a cell on a Microsoft Excel worksheet may differ from when displayed on a PC. In addition, Japanese era names are not displayed depending on the version of Microsoft Excel.
- Up to 400 files per folder can be viewed in the file list screen.
- Refer to ***http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh906i/*** for details on files that can be displayed using Document Viewer.

■ Key operations during display

Shortcut operation	Operation from Submenu	Action
1	[Shrink]	Shrink screen
2	[Rotate view]	Rotate 90º left
3	[Zoom]	Zoom screen
4	[Magnifier] ▶ move 🔍 cursor	Enlarge/Shrink with Magnifier*
5	[Move] ▶ [Move w/in screen] ▶ select move direction ▶ ■	Display edges or center of page
	[Move] ▶ [Move Spec page] ▶ enter page number ▶ ■	Display specified page
6	[Capture screen] ▶ [Save image]	Save as a still picture
	[Capture screen] ▶ [Compose message] ▶ compose and send a message	Attach to mail and send
7	[Light Up]	Light up
8	[Key list]	Show Key list
✉	–	Display previous page
📖	–	Display next page
↕	–	Full-screen
■	–	Fit to screen
✥	–	Scroll up/down/left/right

* Enlarge/Shrink Magnified area: Press 📷 ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.

Related Operations

Set display light <Backlight time>

In the file list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Backlight time] ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.

Manga&BookReader

Displaying e-books/e-dictionaries/e-comics

An e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

- e-books, e-comics, etc. can be downloaded from sites (☞P. 183).
- The following e-comics, e-dictionaries, etc. are preset on the FOMA terminal handset.
  - ■ Supportbook
  - ■ DRAGON BALL <ワイド版> 001 (DRAGON BALL <Wide version> 001) (e-comic)
  - ■ 明鏡モバイル国語辞典 (Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary) (e-dictionary)
    Containing approximately 47,100 words centered around frequently used modern language and also explaining proverb and idioms.
  - ■ ジーニアスモバイル英和辞典 (Genius Mobile EJ Dictionary) (e-dictionary)
    A mobile English-Japanese dictionary, which is convenient for English conversation, reading newspapers and novels. Containing approximately 45,700 words.
  - ■ ジーニアスモバイル和英辞典 (Genius Mobile JE Dictionary) (e-dictionary)
    A mobile and full-fledged words Japanese-English dictionary contains approximately 55,800 words centered around modern language.

  (“DRAGON BALL” ©鳥山明・バードスタジオ (©Akira Toriyama・BIRD STUDIO)/集英社 (SHUEISHA Publishers), “明鏡モバイル国語辞典”, “ジーニアスモバイル英和辞典”, “ジーニアスモバイル和英辞典” ©2005-2008 Taishukan)
- When deleting the preset e-dictionary, it can be registered with the accompanying CD-ROM ([内蔵辞書 (for Manga&BookReader)] in the [MANUAL]).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Manga&BookReader].

2 Select data ▶ ■.

- When a password is required: Enter a password ▶ ■.
- The data can be viewed even in the viewer position.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- The following file extensions of e-books, etc. can be viewed.

e-book	.zbf, .zbk, .txt, .text
e-dictionary, e-comic	.zbf

- If data ended by pressing CLR in previous viewing is selected, the page displayed at time of termination appears.
- In previous viewing, if ☎ was pressed to end, the page displayed at time of termination automatically appears when the Manga&BookReader is activated. However, page does not appear when activated from Character reader, or if Supportbook is opened from stand-by.
- Some voice or images included in the e-books, etc. may not be used.
- Some e-book and others may have access restrictions such as the number of accesses, expiration date or access period. When accessing these e-books and others is attempted, a confirmation message appears. Check the content.
- Files can be saved in the microSD Card. For the e-books, etc. in the microSD Card, up to 400 entries can be displayed on the list screen. For the files in the [Comic] folder, up to 999 entries can be displayed.

Key operations during display

To move a line	To go to the next line	◀/▼
	To return to the previous line	▶/▲
To scroll up/down and left/right in the page display screen (e-comic only)		✥
To move between frames up/down and left/right in the frame display screen (e-comic only)	To go to the next frame	◀/▼
	To return to the previous frame	▶/▲
To shrink (e-comic page display screen only)		1
To switch frame/page (e-comic only)		2
To zoom (e-comic page display screen only)		3
To view next page		📖
To view previous page		✉
To jump to first page		📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [To top]
To view previous pages in backward order (when there is a history)		▮
To return to list screen		CLR (or 📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [List])

- The following operations are available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position.
  - To go to the next line/frame: Touch the touch panel and slide the finger right/up.
  - To return to the previous line/frame: Touch the touch panel and slide the finger left/down.
  - To show the control key (☞P. 42): Touch the touch panel.

Related Operations

Switch display folders on the microSD Card <Switch folder>

In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Manga&BookReader] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Switch folder] ▶ select a folder ▶ ●.

Copy characters <Copy text>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Copy text] ▶ select the first character ▶ ● ▶ select the last character ▶ ●.

Insert a bookmark in displayed page <Insert bookmark>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Bookmark] ▶ [Insert bookmark] ▶ select a bookmark ▶ ●.

Move to the previously set bookmark <Move to bookmark>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Bookmark] ▶ [Move to bookmark] ▶ select a bookmark ▶ ●.

Check the current display location <Current location>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Current location].

Display from the table of contents <Table of contents>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [Table of contents] ▶ select an item ▶ ●.

Jump to the last page <To end>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [To end].

Move to a page by specifying a percentage <Set % move>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [Set % move] ▶ enter a percentage ▶ ■.

Set the font size <Font size>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Font size] ▶ set the font size ▶ ■.

Switch between vertical and horizontal view <Text direction>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Text direction] ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.

Show ruby text (reading of kanji) <Ruby text>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Ruby text] ▶ [ON].

Switch the image size <Image size>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Image Size] ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.

Zoom/Shrink the screen in the page display screen of e-comic <Zoom↑/Zoom↓>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Comics setting] ▶ [Zoom↑]/[Zoom↓].

Switch the frame/page display screens of e-comic <Frame/Page>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Comics setting] ▶ [Frame/Page].

Adjust the volume <Set volume>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set volume] ▶ select the volume ▶ ■.

Set the vibrator of e-comic <Vibrator>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Vibrator] ▶ [ON].

Set the display light <Backlight time>

In the details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Backlight time] ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.

Note (Related operations)

Switching display folders

- Display folder with e-book of XMDF format that was used on non-FOMA terminals such as mobile information devices.
- Depending on the mobile information terminals being used, folders may not be displayed.

Copy text

- Up to 20 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters can be copied at once.
- Certain characters cannot be copied.
- Copy text may not be available depending on e-comic.

Bookmarks

- In the page display screen of an e-comic, [Move to bookmark] and [Move] cannot be selected.
- Up to two bookmarks (up to ten books) can be set for one e-book.
- When the 11th bookmark or auto bookmark is set, the oldest bookmark or auto bookmark is automatically deleted.
- When Manga&BookReader ends, the last page displayed is automatically set as [Auto bookmark 1].
  The next time the same e-books, etc. are displayed and ended, the last page viewed is set as [Auto bookmark 1] and the previously set [Auto bookmark 1] is reset to [Auto bookmark 2]. Up to two auto bookmarks can be set for each e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic (up to ten total) and are automatically deleted from the oldest.
- Auto bookmarks does not appear for data with a password set.

Font size setting, text direction, ruby display

- Depending on the data, switching display may not be possible, or the display setting may be specified.
- The texts in the balloons of an e-comic are images. Font size, Text direction, and Ruby text are not reflected to them.
- Supportbook cannot be switched between vertical and horizontal display.
- Ruby text may not be available for some data.

Zoom/shrink, frame/page switching

- In the frame display screen of an e-comic, zoom/shrink is not supported.
- Frame/Page may not be available depending on e-comic.

Searching in e-dictionary

Enter the word to search in an e-dictionary.

- The e-dictionary is available on the following SHARP original website, “Sharp Space Town”.
  http://www.spacetown.ne.jp/

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Manga&BookReader].**

2 **Select the e-dictionary ▶ ▣.**

3 **Select the input field ▶ ▣.**

4 **Enter the word ▶ ▣.**

- Enter up to 255 characters.

5 **Select the word ▶ ▣.**

Related Operations

Use the camera to scan text to search for a word <Character reader>

In the details screen, select an input field ▶ 📷 ▶ [Character reader].

- For details on how to read in text ☞“Reading text” on P. 165

Using information in e-books/ e-dictionaries/e-comics

Using the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, and Web To functions

Use information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs) highlighted in e-book, etc., or images embedded with Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions to easily make calls, send mail, or connect to sites.

1 **In the details screen, select a phone number, mail address, or URL ▶ ▣.**

- Image: Select an image ▶ ▣ ▶ [Move to link].

2 **Select [Yes].**

- For URL, select a connection method to connect to sites.
- For details on making a call, sending mail, or connecting to a site ☞“Using highlighted data” on P. 184

Jumping to the linked site

When the link to another page is set on a text string or image, that page can be displayed.

1 **In the details screen, select a text string or image ▶ ▣.**

- In the viewer position: In the details screen, select a text string or image ▶ double-touch.

Playing back movies/sound

Movies/Sound can be played back when movies/sound information is set in the image.

1 **In the details screen, select an image ▶ ▣ ▶ [Play Movie/Sound].**

Displaying masked text strings or images

1 **In the details screen, select a text string or image.**

- ◆ **Select a text string ▶ ▣.**
- ◆ **Select an image ▶ ▣ ▶ [Switch mask].**

Saving the images in e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic

Save still pictures shown in an e-book, etc. to the [Camera] folder in My picture.

- Save up to 1,000 images. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.

1 **In the details screen, select a still picture ▶ ▣ ▶ [Save to My pic].**

Note

- Some images, such as those in PNG format, cannot be saved.
- All images are saved as having copyrights. Images cannot be saved on microSD Cards, nor attached to mail.

Music&Video Channel/Music Playback

Music&Video Channel

Music playback

Handling the music data

- This manual refers to Chaku-uta full® and WMA (Windows Media Audio) files played back using MUSIC Player as “music data”.
- The FOMA terminal can play back WMA files or Chaku-uta full® which are protected with copyright protection technology.
- When downloading the music data from Internet web pages, check use conditions (license, prohibited acts, etc.) carefully before use.
- WMA files, which are protected with copyright protection technology, are played back using the information unique to the FOMA terminal. When the information unique to the FOMA terminal is changed due to a failure, repair, upgrade and others, WMA files, which are saved before change, may not be able to be played back.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for handling of CCCD (Copy Controlled CD) or even if music data cannot be saved as a WMA file.
- Music data saved on the FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Card can be used for personal use only. Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party’s copyrighted material. Do not copy or transfer music data saved on the FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Card to PC or any other medium.

What is Music&Video Channel?

Music&Video Channel is a service that programs of approximately up to 1 hour are automatically distributed at night if your favorite programs such as music programs are set in advance. In addition, high-quality movie programs of approximately up to 30 minutes can be viewed. The programs are updated on a regular basis and enjoy the distributed programs at any time such as during commuting time to office or school.

■ Using Music&Video Channel

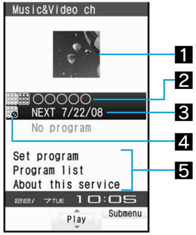
- Music&Video Channel is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode and Pake-hodai/Pake-hodai full subscription is also required).
- Some programs may require a separate fee in addition to Music&Video Channel service charge.
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on Music&Video Channel.
- If the FOMA card is inserted to the FOMA terminal, which does not support Music&Video Channel, after Music&Video Channel is subscribed, Music&Video Channel cannot be used. However, a service usage fee is incurred unless Music&Video Channel subscription is canceled.
- Setting or acquiring programs of Music&Video Channel is not available overseas.* When going abroad, deactivate the distribution of programs in advance. After returning to Japan, resume the distribution of programs. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details.
  * When programs are attempted to be set or acquired during international roaming, packet charges are incurred from connecting to i-mode.

■ Background playback

- For the program with voice only, view mail or i-mode sites while playing the program. Refer to “Multi Assistant (Multitask) combinations” on P. 482 for the combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously.
- For the program with video and voice or the one with Time link distribution applied, it cannot be played in the background.

Activating Music&Video Channel

1 In the Custom menu, select [MUSIC] ▶ [Music&Video ch].



Music&Video Channel menu

1 Program image

2 Program title

Program title display: Program acquired
No program: No program set, before program acquisition
Setting prg: Program set, before program acquisition
Downloading: Acquiring program

3 Next scheduled update date

4 Program type icon

▦ (yellow)	Program successfully acquired
✖	Program failed to be acquired
▦ (blue)	Program that has never been played
▦	Program with Time link distribution applied
▦	Program with replay restriction

5 Service menu

Set program: Program can be set/disabled.
Program list: Connect to the program list site.
About this service: Connect to the explanation site of Music&Video Channel.

Set program

Setting program

Set programs to be viewed so that the program data are automatically acquired at night. Set up to two programs.

Setting/Disabling program

1 In the Music&Video Channel menu, select [Set program] ▶ [Yes] ▶ follow instructions on screen and set/disable a program.

Note

- When setting a program, My menu registration to a site which provides Music&Video Channel program is required.
- My menu registration cannot be deleted even if disabling program setting.

When the program is set

▦ appears in stand-by 12 hours before the program distribution. The acquisition of the program is automatically performed at night. When the acquisition is successfully completed, the stock icon ▦ (download successful) appears in stand-by. When the acquisition is failed, ✖ (download failed) appears. In this case, acquire the program manually.

- When the transmission is interrupted while the program is acquired, the program is automatically re-acquired up to five times at 3-minute intervals.
- When the program cannot be acquired at the start time for acquiring the program due to the reasons that the handset is outside the service area, in the Self mode or turned off, or battery level is low, the program is re-acquired at night of the following day.
- Acquiring programs may take time. If the battery icon does not indicate ▮▮▮, the programs cannot be acquired. Fully charge the battery and acquire the programs under the good signal condition.
- Programs cannot be automatically acquired when the FOMA card different from the one that was used when the programs were set is inserted, or when data are deleted collectively.
- When the program acquisition is interrupted, the program acquired until the interruption is saved. Acquire the remaining data manually.
- If i-mode or Music&Video Channel is canceled or My Menu registration is deleted, the program data in the Delivery program folder may be deleted.

Acquiring programs manually

1 In the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Depending on the acquiring hours, [Unable to download at this hour] appears, and the manual program acquisition may not be available. To confirm the distribution hour, select [About dist hour].

Continued on next page ▶▶

- Programs whose replay restrictions are exceeded cannot be re-acquired. In addition, it cannot be updated until the next distribution date.

Program playback/operation

Playing back program

- Connect commercially available Bluetooth devices, and play sound of programs from the Bluetooth devices (☞P. 408).

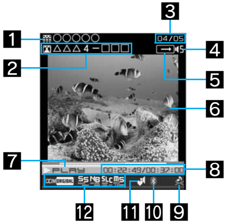
1 In the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program ▶ ●.

- When the stock icon ▦ (download successful) appears, the Music&Video Channel menu appears even if ● is pressed and ▦ (download successful) is selected.
- The chapter previously played resumes from a chapter when stopped.
- When the program failed to be acquired is selected, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to download the program again. Select [Yes] to download. When the update is failed but the original program can be played, select [Play prev music] to play the program.
- When the program acquired until the interruption is selected, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to download the remaining data. Select [Yes] to download. Select [Play] to play the acquired part. However, for the program with Time link distribution applied, [Play] cannot be selected.
- Some programs may have replay restrictions such as the limitation of number of replays, expiration date, or replay period. A program cannot be played back when the replay restrictions are exceeded.

Note

- When the manner mode is set or the battery icon does not indicate ▮▮▮/▶□, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select [Yes] to play. Also, a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery icon indicates ▶□.
- The expiration date may arrive earlier or later than indicated if the FOMA terminal is used outside Japan.

■ Music&Video Channel player screen layout



1 Program title name

2 Chapter title name/Artist name

3 Chapter number

4 Volume

- The volume icon does not appear during Bluetooth output.

◀5	◀0 (Volume 0) to ◀10 (Volume 10)

5 Repeat

ALL⮌	Repeat ON	⟶	Repeat OFF

6 Program image/Chapter image (program with voice only)/ Image (program with video and voice)

7 Playback

▶PLAY	During playback	▶▶FF	While fast forward
⏸PAUSE	While paused	◀◀REW	While fast rewind
■STOP	While stopped		

8 Play time/Total time

9 Availability of playing image/audio

	No image		No audio

10 Bluetooth output

	Bluetooth outputting

11 Manner playback

- When Manner playback is set to [ON], the volume over 6 is changed into 5 (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5).

	ON

12 Dolby sound

NORMAL	Normal	DDM CLASSIC	Classic
DDM ROCK	Rock	DDM JAZZ	Jazz
DDM POPS	Pops	DDM ORIGINAL	Original

When original is selected

SS SOUND SPACE	Sound Space
NB NATURAL BASS	Natural Bass
SLC SOUND LEVEL CNT	Sound Level Cnt
MS MONO ▸STEREO	Mono-to-Stereo

Key operations during playback

To pause/play	
To stop	
To adjust volume (volume 0 to 10)*1	
To play previous chapter/To return to beginning of chapter*2	
To fast rewind	(for 1+ seconds)
To play next chapter	
To fast forward	(for 1+ seconds)
To jump to assigned location	1: Beginning 2 to 9: Locations divided by one-ninth increments of the recording time
To switch to the Full-screen mode (only for program with video and voice)	
To connect to site	 ● Connect to site if the program has URL information.
To end Music&Video Channel player	CLR/ ▶ [Yes]

*1 Keep the key pressed to adjust the volume continuously.

*2 Playback time is less than approximately 2 seconds: The previous chapter is played.
Playback time is approximately 2 seconds or more: The song returns to the beginning.

- When the program with video and voice is played, operations for and are switched during the Full-screen mode in the normal position. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.
- With a flat-plug stereo earphone set (sold separately) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) connected, play/pause alternates each time the switch is pressed.

Note

- Some programs have operation restrictions.
- For the program with video and voice is played, the Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the viewer position. If returning to the normal position, the Full-screen mode is deactivated.

■ Programs with Time link distribution applied

Play the program with Time link distribution applied during the specified hours. It cannot be played depending on the hours. It is activated following the time set with Auto time correction (Even if Auto time correction is set to [OFF] and the time is manually changed, the program cannot be played).

- While the program is played, Pause, the move between chapters, Fast forward, Fast rewind and a jump to the specified position are not available.
- Chapters cannot be selected from the Chapter list.
- Repeat of Playback settings cannot be set.

■ Setting for when Music&Video Channel is played <Playback settings>

1 In the Music&Video Channel player screen, press 📷 ▶ [Playback settings].

2 Select an item ▶ ■.

3 Select the setting ▶ ■.

- Backlight time and Full-screen mode are available only for the program with video and voice.
- Manner playback is not available during Bluetooth output.

■ Setting Dolby sound <Dolby Sound Set.>

1 In the Music&Video Channel player screen, press 📷 ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.].

2 Select the setting ▶ ■.

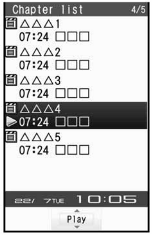
- When Original is selected, set an item and press ≣.

Checking program chapter list <Chapter list>

Display the Chapter list of the program to check the title, artist's name and playback time of each chapter.

1 In the Music&Video Channel menu/program list screen, select a program ▶ 📷 ▶ [Chapter list].

- In the Music&Video Channel player screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Chapter list].



Chapter list 4/5
△△△1
07:24 □□□
△△△2
07:24 □□□
△△△3
07:24 □□□
△△△4
▷07:24 □□□
△△△5
07:24 □□□
22/ 7TUE 10:05
Play

Chapter list

Meaning of icons

🎞	Chapter of the program with video and voice
🎬	Chapter of the program with voice only
⬚	Chapter failed to be acquired
▷	Chapter during playback

- Playback from a selected chapter if the chapter is selected.
- Depending on a program, displaying chapter list or selecting chapter may not be available.

■ Viewing chapter properties <Chapter info>

1 In the Chapter list screen, select a chapter ▶ 📷 ▶ [Chapter info].

- In the Music&Video Channel player screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Chapter info].
- Depending on a program, displaying chapter information may not be available.

Checking program information <Program info>

1 In the Music&Video Channel menu/program list screen, select a program ▶ 📷 ▶ [Program info].

- In the Music&Video Channel player screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Program info].

Saving program <Move program>

Acquired programs are saved in the [Delivery program] folder in Music&Video Channel of Data box. When programs are updated, the saved programs are overwritten and cannot be played. Move the programs, which should not be overwritten, to the [Save program] folder in advance.

- Save up to two programs on the [Delivery program] folder and 20 programs on the [Save program] folder.

1 In the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move program].

Note

- Acquired programs cannot be copied or saved on microSD Cards.
- Programs cannot be moved in the following cases.
  - ■ Program failed to be acquired
  - ■ Program with Time link distribution applied
  - ■ Program with Move restriction applied
  - ■ Program whose replay restrictions are exceeded
  - ■ Program with FOMA card security function applied
  - ■ Setting program

Deleting program <Delete>

1 In the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Program setting cannot be deleted even if disabling programs.

Connecting to site <Connect to URL>

When a program has URL information, an access can be made to the site.

1 In the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program ▶ 📷 ▶ [Connect to URL] ▶ [Yes].

Operating Music&Video Channel from Data box

Play the program currently distributed to the [Delivery program] folder in Music&Video Channel of Data box or the program moved to and saved in [Save program].
For managing program ☞P. 346

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [Music&Video ch].

2 Select a program ▶ ●.

Related Operations

Change the display method for the program list screen <Switch view mode>

In the program list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Switch view mode] ▶ select the display method ▶ ●.

Changing program title <Edit title>

1 In the program list screen, select a program ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title] ▶ [Direct input].

2 Edit the title ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 253 single-byte (126 double-byte) characters.

Playing back music

Play back music on the FOMA terminal with the following methods.

MUSIC Player (☞P. 370)

Play back Chaku-uta full® downloaded from sites and WMA (Windows Media Audio) files and voice only i-motion (including music data in AAC format) saved to microSD Card.

- Mail and browsing of i-mode sites are available while listening to music (Background playback). Refer to “Multi Assistant (Multitask) combinations” on P. 482 for the combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously.

i-motion player (☞P. 324)

i-motion (including music data in AAC format) can be played back using i-motion player.

Note

- A confirmation screen appears when Manner mode is set, the battery icon does not indicate ▮▮▮/🔌 or Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date is contained. Also, a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery icon indicates 🔌.
- Playback may stop if a call is received, alarm is activated or other functions are operated during playback.
- Using other functions during playback may cause music to skip.

MUSIC Player

- The music data that can be played back and maximum playback time are as follows.

Music data type	File format	Audio codec	Maximum playback time
Chaku-uta full®	MP4	MPEG4-AAC, MPEG4-HEAAC (aacPlus), Enhanced aacPlus	Approx. 910 min
WMA file	WMA	WMA9	Approx. 1,000 min
Data in the [Multimedia] folder	MP4	AMR, MPEG4-AAC, MPEG4-HEAAC (aacPlus), Enhanced aacPlus	Approx. 985 min

- The capacity and number of music data that can be saved are as follows.

Music data type	FOMA terminal handset	microSD Card
Chaku-uta full®	Approx. 97.4 MB*1	Up to 400 per folder*2
WMA file	–	Up to 500*2
Data in the [Multimedia] folder	–	Up to 400 per folder*2

*1 When Still picture, Movie, MUSIC, Melody, My Documents, Kisekae Tool, Machi-chara, Chara-den, i-αppli, e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic, Music&Video Channel or Video is saved, the memory capacity of Chaku-uta full® will be small.

*2 Capacity varies depending on the size of music data or the capacity of microSD Card.

Saving music data

Downloading Chaku-uta full®

Save Chaku-uta full® downloaded from sites.

- Download up to 5 MB Chaku-uta full®.
- When music data with copyright is downloaded, it cannot be played back using a different FOMA card.

1 While viewing sites, select Chaku-uta full® ▶ ●.

2 Select the item.

- **Select [Play].**
- **Select [Save] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.**
  - When saving is completed, a confirmation screen asking whether to play Chaku-uta full® appears.
  - To save to microSD Card: Select [→microSD] ▶ select [Movable contents] ▶ 📷.
- **Select [File property].**
- To not save: Select [Back] ▶ [No].

Note

- For downloading Uta-hodai, the “terminal ID and UIM ID” may need to be sent to activate the expiration date.

Saving WMA file

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) and save music data to the microSD Card using Windows Media Player 10/11.

- A playlist can be transferred from a PC.
- Playing back copyrighted music data is only possible with the FOMA terminal used for transfer from a PC.
- Some music data may not be played back due to copyright.
- WMA files saved on devices other than FOMA SH906i cannot be played back even if they are music data without copyright.
- When a microSD Card to which WMA files are saved by devices other than FOMA SH906i is used, a PC may not recognize it even if the MTP mode is set. In such cases, delete all the WMA files (☞P. 380) or format the microSD Card (☞P. 342). Note that all the data including music data are deleted when the microSD Card is formatted.

Windows Media Player 10/11

- Use Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later when using Windows Media Player 10/11 with Windows XP. Use Windows Media Player 11 for Windows Vista.
- Reconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 to the PC when the PC is recovered from standby or sleep mode while using Windows Media Player 10.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 and set [MTP mode] for the USB mode setting (☞P. 342).

2 Activate Windows Media Player 10/11 and select the music data to be saved ▶ transfer the music data to the microSD Card.

3 Press a key other than the side key when transfer is completed ▶ [Yes].

- Switch to the Communication mode automatically.

4 Disconnect FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from the FOMA terminal.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Napster® appli

Save music data using Napster® appli.

- Download Napster® appli in the following web page. ***http://www.napster.jp/*** (As of April 2008)
- Refer to the following web page for further information on Napster® appli. ***http://www.napster.jp/support/*** (As of April 2008)

Note

WMA file transfer playlist

- Up to 59 single/double-byte characters appear as a playlist name on the FOMA terminal.
- The playlist is overwritten if a playlist, whose name is the same in its first to 59th characters, is transferred.

Saving i-motion (including music data in AAC format) created with PC on the FOMA terminal

Use a PC to save music from a purchased CD to the microSD Card and play on the FOMA terminal.

The following explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 and save music data in the [Multimedia] folder in i-motion of Data box to play.

- For methods of playing back with i-motion player ☞P. 324
- For methods of playing back with MUSIC Player ☞P. 375

1 Convert music taken from CDs to MP4 format using commercially available software, and save them on a PC.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 and set [microSD mode] for the USB mode setting (☞P. 342).

3 Copy music data.

- Copy procedure is as follows.

  1. Rename the file created in step 1 to “MMFxxxx.3gp”/“MMFxxxx.mp4”.
  - To rename files, first set the PC to show file extensions.
  - Enter the renamed file name within the range between “MMF0001” and “MMF9999” in single-byte excluding the file extension.

  2. Copy to the *\PRIVATE\DOCOMO\MMFILE* folder in the microSD Card.
  - For details on folder structure in the microSD Card ☞P. 334

4 Press a key other than the side key after copying the music data ▶ [Yes].

- Switch to the Communication mode automatically.

5 Disconnect FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from the FOMA terminal.

6 Update microSD Card Manager information (☞P. 343).

Viewing folder and screen of MUSIC Player

Folder configuration of MUSIC Player

The configuration of the [MUSIC] folder in Data box is as follows.

- Playlist
  - User playlist
  - Transfer playlist
- i-mode
  - microSD
    - Multimedia (voice only i-motion)
    - Movable contents*
      - Music* (Chaku-uta full®)
  - Phone* (Chaku-uta full®)
- WMA (WMA file)
  - Artist
    - Artist's name
      - Album's name
  - Album
    - Album's name
  - Genre
    - Genre's name
  - All songs

* User folders can be created in the folder (☞P. 345).

- This folder configuration is available only for MUSIC Player. This is different from actual one in the microSD Card.
- For the [WMA] folder, the same file appears in multiple folders according to the detailed information of the WMA file.

Types and icons of music data

Music data types

User playlist	**Transfer playlist**	**Chaku-uta full®**		**Chaku-uta full® with replay restrictions**	
		Phone	**microSD**	**Phone**	**microSD**
♪	PC♪	🎧	SD	🎧	SD

Uta-hodai		**Expired Uta-hodai**		**WMA file**
Phone	**microSD**	**Phone**	**microSD**	
🎧	SD	🎧	SD	WMA

Data in the [Multimedia] folder	**Music data saved in the middle of download**
MP4 (Mobile MP4)	
MP4	⬇

Icon types

♪	Music data with FOMA card security function applied
✕	Music data with file restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal
DL	Music data downloaded with i-mode, etc.
EX	Music data retrieved via the microSD Card or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately)
♪	WMA files saved on the microSD Card
▶ DRM	WMA files which have replay restrictions and can be played back
⊘ DRM	WMA files which have replay restrictions and cannot be played back

Note

- Playing back ASF files is not possible with MUSIC Player.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Change the display method for the music data list screen in Chaku-uta full® and the [Multimedia] folder

<Switch view mode>

In the music data list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Switch view mode] ▶ select the display method ▶ ●.

View the list of music data for playback <Play song list>

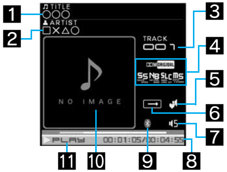
In the MUSIC Player screen, press 📖 (or 📷 ▶ [Play song list]).

Note (Related operations)

Play song list

- If the Play song list is displayed, [not acquired yet] may appear.

MUSIC Player screen layout



1 **Title***

2 **Artist's name***

3 **Track number**

4 **Dolby sound**

NORMAL	Normal	CLASSIC	Classic
ROCK	Rock	JAZZ	Jazz
POPS	Pops	ORIGINAL	Original

When original is selected

SS	Sound Space
NB	Natural Bass
SLC	Sound Level Cnt
MS	Mono-to-Stereo

5 **Manner playback**

When Manner playback is set to [ON], the volume over 6 is changed into 5 (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5).

✋	ON

6 **Playback mode**

→	Normal playback	SHUFFLE	Shuffle
1↩	Repeat one	SHUFFLE↩	Repeat shuffle
ALL↩	Repeat all		

7 **Volume**

- The volume icon does not appear during Bluetooth output.

🔈5	🔈0 (Volume 0) to 🔈10 (Volume 10)

8 **Play time/Total time**

9 **Bluetooth output**

ᛒ	Bluetooth outputting

10 **Jacket image**

11 **Playback**

▶PLAY	During playback	▶▶FF	While fast forward
❚❚PAUSE	While paused	◀◀REW	While fast rewind
■STOP	While stopped		

* For Chaku-uta full® in the FOMA terminal handset, up to 253 single-byte (126 double-byte) characters are available for the title and artist's name. For Chaku-uta full® in the microSD Card, up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters are available for the title name, and up to 253 single-byte (126 double-byte) characters are available for the artist's name. For the WMA file, up to 63 single/double-byte characters are available for the title and artist's name.

MUSIC

Playing back music data with MUSIC Player

- Connect commercially available Bluetooth devices, and play music from the Bluetooth device (☞P. 408).

Playing music data in a folder

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [MUSIC].

- Alternatively, select [MUSIC] ▶ [MUSIC Player].

2 Select the data type ▶ ■.

- The music data previously played resumes from the spot when stopped if [Continue] is selected.

3 Select music data ▶ ■.

Note

- When a call is received during playback, the playback is stopped, the incoming call screen appears, and the call can be answered. When MUSIC Player screen appears after the call is ended, playback resumes from the spot where the playback stopped when the call was received.
- When Chaku-uta full® saved in the middle of download is selected, a confirmation screen asking whether to download the remaining data appears.

Playing a playlist

1 In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [MUSIC] ▶ [Playlist].

- To view Transfer playlist: Select [→Transfer playlist].

2 Select a playlist ▶ ✉.

Key operations during playback

To pause/play	■
To stop	✉
To adjust volume (volume 0 to 10)[*1]	▲▼
To play previous song/To return to beginning of song[*2]	◀
To fast rewind	◀ (for 1+ seconds)
To play next song	▶
To fast forward	▶ (for 1+ seconds)
To jump to assigned location	1: Beginning 2 to 9: Locations divided by one-ninth increments of the recording time
To view a jacket image[*3]	#
To view a lyrics image[*3]	✱
To end MUSIC Player	CLR/☎ ▶ [Yes]

*1 Keep the key pressed to adjust the volume continuously.

*2 Playback time is less than approximately 2 seconds: The previous song is played.
Playback time is approximately 2 seconds or more: The song returns to the beginning.

*3 Not displayed without a jacket image or a lyrics image. For key operations while viewing images ☞P. 380

- With a flat-plug stereo earphone set (sold separately) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) connected, play/pause alternates each time the switch is pressed.

Note

- Some music data have operation restrictions.

Music data with replay restrictions

Some music data may have replay restrictions such as the limitation of number of replays, expiration date, or replay period. The FOMA terminal operates differently depending on the music data types as shown below when the replay restrictions are exceeded.

■ For Chaku-uta full®

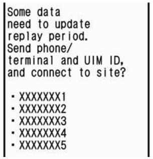
Number of replays		When playback is attempted, [This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.
Expiration date		When playback is attempted, [Replay period has expired. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.
Replay period	Before	When playback is attempted, [Replay period has not yet started] appears.
	After	When playback is attempted, [Replay period has expired. Delete?] appears. Select [Yes] to delete.

■ For Uta-hodai

If Uta-hodai that has reached the expiration date is contained, the confirmation screen for the update of expiration date appears when MUSIC of Data box or MUSIC Player of MUSIC menu is selected or the expired Uta-hodai is played back. Press ▣ to update the expiration date.

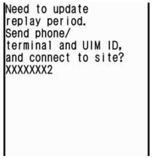
- Packet transmission charges apply for the update of the expiration date.
- Even if no Uta-hodai is saved, the confirmation screen for the update of expiration date may appear, and the expiration date can be updated. However, the playback is not available until new Uta-hodai is saved.
- The expiration date of some Uta-hodai may have an extra replay period for a few days even after the replay period has expired. During this period, files can be played back without updating the replay period information. After the extra replay period, files cannot be played back.
- When the FOMA card of the phone number different from the one used to download Uta-hodai is inserted, the Uta-hodai cannot be played even if the replay period is updated. Moreover, the replay period information of Uta-hodai saved on the FOMA terminal handset cannot be completely deleted. Therefore, the confirmation screen for the update of expiration date may appear. To delete all the replay period information of Uta-hodai, perform Delete user data (☞P. 412).
- The expiration date may arrive earlier or later than indicated if the FOMA terminal is used outside Japan.
- Packet transmission charges for updating the replay period during international roaming are not covered by the Pake-hodai/Pake-hodai full services.
- If there are multiple expired Uta-hodai entries when MUSIC of Data box or MUSIC Player of MUSIC menu is selected and the expiration date is updated, all the expired entries are updated. When updating is completed, the folder list screen appears.
- If the playback of Uta-hodai set as the ring tone or alarm tone becomes unavailable, the preset ring tone or alarm tone sounds when a call or mail is received or the alarm sounds.

Confirmation screens for the update of the expiration date


```
Some data
need to update
replay period.
Send phone/
terminal and UIM ID,
and connect to site?

・XXXXXXX1
・XXXXXXX2
・XXXXXXX3
・XXXXXXX4
・XXXXXXX5
```

When selecting MUSIC in Data box or MUSIC Player in MUSIC menu


```
Need to update
replay period.
Send phone/
terminal and UIM ID,
and connect to site?
XXXXXXX2
```

When selecting Uta-hodai after the expiration date

■ For WMA file

When the replay restriction has been exceeded, [Unable to play. To play this track, sync your phone to your PC] appears. When there is a WMA file that can be updated, connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to update (☞P. 371).

Managing folder, playlist and music data

Managing folders

Create up to 20 user folders in the [i-mode] folder in MUSIC of Data box and manage Chaku-uta full®. In addition, 20 user folders are available in each created folder.

- For details on creating/deleting the folders and editing the folder's name ☞P. 345

Managing music data

- For details on managing data in the [Multimedia] folder of microSD Card ☞P. 346

■ Editing title <Edit title>

1 Select Chaku-uta full® ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit title] ▶ [Direct input].

- To return to the original title: Press 📷 ▶ [Edit title] ▶ [Back to original].

2 Edit the title ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.

■ Sorting music data <Sort>

- WMA files can be sorted in the [All songs] folder.

1 In the music data list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Display settings] ▶ [Sort].

2 Select the sorting method ▶ ■.

■ Moving Chaku-uta full® to another folder <Move to folder>

1 Select Chaku-uta full® ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [Move to folder].

2 Select the transfer method.

- **Select [Move one] ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Move selected] ▶ select data ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ select a folder ▶ 📷.**

Note

- Chaku-uta full® cannot be moved without a user folder.

■ Moving Chaku-uta full® between the FOMA terminal handset and the microSD Card

<Move → microSD/Move to the phone>

1 Select Chaku-uta full® ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move] ▶ [Move → microSD]/[Move to the phone].

- To move all Chaku-uta full® from the microSD Card: Select the [Movable contents] folder ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move to the phone] ▶ [Move all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 Select the transfer method.

- **Select [Move one] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Move selected] ▶ select Chaku-uta full® ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [All in folder] ▶ [Yes] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Select destination] ▶ select a destination folder ▶ 📷.**

Note

- If Chaku-uta full® saved in a playlist is moved, the Chaku-uta full® cannot be played back from the playlist.

Deleting Chaku-uta full® <Delete>

1 Select Chaku-uta full® ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

2 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete sel folders] ▶ select a folder ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Del all in all fol] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Delete all folders] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select data ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [All in folder] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note

- If Chaku-uta full® saved in a playlist is deleted, the Chaku-uta full® cannot be played back from the playlist.

Creating a playlist

User playlist created by the FOMA terminal and Transfer playlist created with a PC are available for playback on the FOMA terminal.

- Up to ten User playlists can be created. Register up to 99 music data per playlist.
- Up to 100 Transfer playlists can be viewed. View 500 music data per playlist. Playlists cannot be created/moved/edited on the FOMA terminal. For details on transferring playlist ☞“Saving WMA file” on P. 371

1 Select music data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add to playlist].

- Alternatively, select music data and press ≣. Proceed to step 3.
- In the MUSIC Player screen: While music is stopped, press 📷 ▶ [Add to playlist] ▶ proceed to step 3.

2 Select the saving method.

- **Select [Add one].**
- **Select [Add selected] ▶ select music data ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Add all] ▶ [Yes].**

3 Save.

- To create a new playlist and save: Press ≣ ▶ enter a playlist name ▶ ● (enter up to 50 single/double-byte characters for a playlist name).
- To add music data: Select a playlist ▶ ●.
- To overwrite music data: Select a playlist ▶ ✉ ▶ [Yes].

Related Operations

Create a new playlist <New playlist>

In the User playlist screen, press ≣ (or 📷 ▶ [Manage playlists] ▶ [New playlist]) ▶ enter a playlist name ▶ ●.

Add music data to a playlist <Add song>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ ● ▶ ≣ (or 📷 ▶ [Add song]) ▶ select music data ▶ ≣.

Move playlist order upward <Move playlist (↑)>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ 📖 (or 📷 ▶ [Move playlist (↑)]).

Delete music data in a playlist <Delete>

1 **In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ ● ▶ select music data ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select music data ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Delete all].**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Delete playlists <Delete>

1 **In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].**

2 **Select the deletion method.**

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a playlist ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷 ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

3 **Select [Yes].**

Edit a playlist name <Edit playlist name>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ 📷 ▶ [Manage playlists] ▶ [Edit playlist name] ▶ edit a playlist name ▶ ●.

Copy a playlist <Copy>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ enter a playlist name ▶ ●.

Shuffle songs in a playlist <Shuffle>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ ● ▶ 📷 ▶ [Shuffle] ▶ select music data to be moved ●, select a destination ● (repeatable) ▶ ⁝.

Update a playlist <Update playlist>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist ▶ ● ▶ 📷 ▶ [Update playlist] ▶ [Yes].

Note (Related operations)

Deleting music data saved in a playlist

- The original music data are not deleted even if music data is deleted from a playlist.

Updating a playlist

- In the following cases, music data are deleted from a playlist when the playlist is updated.
  - When an original music data is deleted
  - When an original music data is moved between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Card
  - When the microSD Card is not inserted although music data in the microSD Card was added to a playlist
- Music data which has reached the limitations of number of replays/expiration date/replay period is not deleted even if a playlist is updated.

Setting Chaku-uta full® as the ring tone <Ring tone>

1 **Select Chaku-uta full® ▶ 📷 ▶ [Ring tone].**

2 **Select a ring tone item ▶ ●.**

3 **Select the setting range.**

- **Select [Full song ring tone].**
  - Set a full song.
- **Select [Point ring tone] ▶ select the range ▶ ⁝.**
- When Chaku-uta full® saved in the [Movable contents] folder in the microSD Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears.

Note

- Some Chaku-uta full® can be set to only [Full song ring tone] or [Point ring tone].
- Some Chaku-uta full® cannot be set as a ring tone (☞P. 109).

Viewing properties of music data <File property>

1 Select music data ▶ 📷 ▶ [File property].

Editing Chaku-uta full® information <Edit info>

Edit the Chaku-uta full® information which includes Title, Artist's name, Album's name, Genre, Year, Comment, Track number and Total.

1 Select Chaku-uta full® ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit info].

2 Select an item to be edited ▶ ⊡ ▶ edit ▶ ⊡.

- To undo: Select [Back to original] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- The title changed in Edit information is reflected to the title name displayed in the MUSIC Player screen. To change the title name displayed in the music data list screen, use Edit title.

Viewing images and lyrics in music data

- For Chaku-uta full®, up to three images, up to seven pages of lyrics and for the WMA file, only one image can be displayed.

1 In the MUSIC Player screen, press 📷 ▶ [Show image] or #.

- To view lyrics: Press 📷 ▶ [Show lyrics] or *.

Key operations while viewing images and lyrics

- To view next images/lyrics: Press ▷.
- To view previous images/lyrics: Press ◁.
- To not view images/lyrics: Press CLR.
- To save images/lyrics: Press ≣.

Note

- Some images or lyrics are not available.
- Images in WMA files cannot be saved.

Deleting all WMA files collectively <Del all>

Delete WMA files and transfer playlist saved in the [WMA] folder (☞P. 373) on the microSD Card collectively.

1 Select the [WMA] folder ▶ ⊡ ▶ 📖.

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- If the operation is suspended while all the WMA files are being deleted collectively, the music data list screen for WMA files cannot be displayed. Try deleting the WMA files collectively again.

Playback settings

Setting MUSIC Player

1 In the MUSIC Player screen, press 📷 ▶ [Playback settings].

2 Select an item ▶ ⊡.

3 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

Note

- The Manner playback setting cannot be done while the Bluetooth output is being performed.

Setting Dolby sound <Dolby Sound Set.>

1 In the MUSIC Player screen, press 📷 ▶ [Dolby Sound Set.].

2 Select the setting ▶ ⊡.

- Set each item and press ≣ if Original is selected.

Convenient Functions

Check settings

Checking settings for various functions

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Check status] ▶ [Check settings].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 **Select a function ▶ ■.**

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Simultaneously use voice calls, i-mode transmission, and data communication with the FOMA terminal.

- For the combinations of transmission functions that can be used simultaneously ☞"Multiaccess combinations" on P. 481

Using other communication during calls

1 **During a voice call, press MULTI.**

2 **Select a function ▶ ■.**

3 **Use communication functions.**

- To return to the voice call screen: Press MULTI ▶ [Voice call] ▶ ■.

Making a voice call during communication

Example: During i-mode transmission

1 **Select a phone number from sites, etc. ▶ ■.**

2 **Press ✆/■ ▶ [Yes].**

- To return to the sites, etc.: Finish the call ▶ ☎.

Multi Assistant (Multitask)

Using Multi Assistant (Multitask)

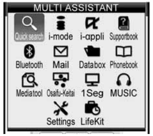
Use Multi Assistant (Multitask) to use multiple functions simultaneously.

- Four or more functions may be used simultaneously when a call and others are received.
- For the combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously ☞"Multi Assistant (Multitask) combinations" on P. 482

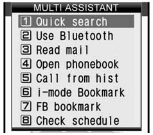
Retrieving a new function

1 **While using a function, press MULTI.**

- In the normal position, press ▮ to activate 1Seg.



Function selection screen



Purpose selection screen

- To display the switching appli screen, press MULTI while multiple functions are in use. Press ▮ to switch from the purpose selection screen → the function selection screen → the switching appli screen. Press ◙ to switch the function selection screen → the purpose selection screen → the switching appli screen.

2 **Select a function ▶ ■.**

- To make a voice call: Press ✆ ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ✆.

Switching between active functions

1 While multiple functions are in use, press MULTI.

2 Select a function ▶ ■.

Note

- The switching appli screen appears if the position is changed to the viewer position while multiple functions are in use. Touch and select the function to use.

Ending a function

Ending the shown function

1 While multiple functions are in use, press ☎.

- The shown function ends and another function in use appears.

Ending the selected function

1 While multiple functions are in use, press MULTI.

2 Select a function ▶ 📖.

- To end all functions: Press ✉ ▶ [Yes].

Auto power ON

Turning power on automatically

Turn FOMA terminal on automatically at a specified time.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞P. 57).
- Auto power ON settings are repeated daily until disabled.
- Disable Auto power ON before turning the handset off when near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals, aboard aircraft, in hospitals or in other locations where the use of mobile phones is prohibited.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Auto power ON/OFF] ▶ [Auto power ON].

2 Select the [Auto power ON] field ▶ ■ ▶ [ON].

- To disable the setting: Select [OFF] ▶ ▤.

3 Select the [Time] field ▶ ■ ▶ enter a time (24-hour format) ▶ ■.

4 Select the [Alarm settings] field ▶ ■ ▶ [ON].

- To disable the alarm: Select [OFF] ▶ ▤.

5 Select the [Alarm tone] field ▶ ■ ▶ select an alarm tone ▶ ▤.

- To check the alarm tone: Select an alarm tone ▶ ■.

6 Select the [Alarm volume] field ▶ ■ ▶ adjust the volume with ↕ ▶ ■.

7 Press ▤ ▶ [Agree].

When the set time arrives

The power turns on automatically, and a confirmation message appears.

- Alarm sounds for approximately 15 seconds if set to [ON]. Press the following keys to stop alarm.
  - ■ When FOMA terminal is open: Press a key (excluding CLR, ▣).
  - ■ When FOMA terminal is closed: Press ▣.
- This message also appears when the power is already on at the set time.
- While engaged in a call or receiving a call, alarm sounds after the call is disconnected.

Note

- If Auto power ON and Alarm (Alarm/Schedule/Reception/Recording) are set for the same time, Auto power ON takes priority. The alarm is activated after the Auto power ON notification.
- Auto power ON may not function when the battery pack is removed and the power is turned off.

Turning the handset on at the alarm time and sounding alarm <Link alarm/power ON>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Auto power ON/OFF] ▶ [Link alarm/power ON].

2 Select [ON] ▶ [Agree].

- To disable the setting: Select [OFF].

Auto power OFF

Turning power off automatically

Turn FOMA terminal off automatically at a specified time.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞P. 57).
- Auto power OFF settings are repeated daily until disabled.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Auto power ON/OFF] ▶ [Auto power OFF].

2 Select the [Auto power OFF] field ▶ ▣ ▶ [ON].

- To disable the setting: Select [OFF] ▶ ⊟.

3 Select the [Time] field ▶ ▣ ▶ enter a time (24-hour format) ▶ ▣ ▶ ⊟.

■ When the set time arrives

The power is automatically turned off.

- If other operations are being performed at the set time, a confirmation screen appears. Select [Yes] or wait for approximately 1 minute without performing any operations to turn off the handset.

Note

- If Auto power OFF and Alarm (Alarm/Schedule/Reception/Recording) are set for the same time, Auto power OFF takes priority.
- The confirmation screen does not appear in the following cases. Upon the end of the call or the operation, the previously displayed screen or the stand-by display is returned, after which the confirmation screen appears.

■ During a call	■ While i-αppli is running
■ During Ir exchange	■ While software is being updated

Timer

Sounding alarm after set time passes

Sound a timer tone, LED, or activate the vibration after the specified length of time passes.

- Press a key (excluding ▯) to stop the timer tone.
- For details on setting the timer tone ☞P. 109
- For details on setting the LED ☞P. 123
- For details on setting the vibrator ☞P. 111

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Timer/Alarm] ▶ [Timer].

2 Enter a time (between 1 second and 99 minutes 59 seconds) ▶ ▣.

- To reset the time to 3 minutes: Press ⊟.
- To stop/resume count: Press ▣.
- To disable the timer: Press ☎.

Note

- Even if a call or a message is received, the timer continues. However, if the time arrives while the timer is not shown such as during a call or when receiving mail, the alarm does not sound.

Related Operations

Use the timer in stand-by <Timer>

In stand-by, enter a time (1 to 99 minutes) ▶ ▣ ▶ [Timer].

Alarm

Sounding alarm at set time

Activate the alarm, LED, or vibrator at the set time/day of week.

- Save up to nine alarms.
- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞P. 57).
- For details on setting the LED ☞P. 123
- For details on setting the vibrator ☞P. 111

Setting alarms

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Timer/Alarm] ▶ [Alarm].

2 Select a number to register ▶ ■.

3 Select [Enter Time] ▶ enter a time (24-hour format) ▶ ■.

4 Select [Set repeat] ▶ select the repeat method ▶ ■.

- Set day of week: Select [Set day of week] ▶ select day of week ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.
  - ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected.
  - If [Exclude holidays] is selected, an alarm is not activated on the dates set for vacations or holidays in Schedule.

5 Select [Message] ▶ enter a message ▶ ■.

- Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.

6 Select [Contacts] ▶ select the entry method.

- **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a name ▶ ■.**
- **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ■.**

7 Select [Alarm tone] ▶ select an alarm tone ▶ ≣.

- To check an alarm tone: Select an alarm tone ▶ ■.
- To not sound an alarm: Select [Alarm tone] ▶ [Not set].

8 Select [Alarm volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ⁝ ▶ ■.

9 Select [Snooze setting] ▶ [ON] ▶ enter the interval ▶ ■ ▶ enter the number of times to ring alarm ▶ ■.

- Set the alarm's interval and the number of times to ring the alarm.

10 Select [Ring duration] ▶ enter the ring duration ▶ ■.

11 Press ≣.

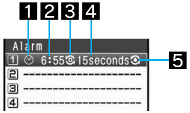
Note

- Contacts cannot be set while Keypad dial lock is set.
- When multiple alarms are set to the same time, they are prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Alarm function	Recording → Reception → Alarm → Schedule

  - If the timer for starting or recording 1Seg programs are set for the same time, Reception reserve alarm is not activated.

■ Setting details screen layout



Alarm
1 ⏲ 6:55 ⏲ 15seconds ⏲
2 -------------------
3 -------------------
4 -------------------

1 Alarm set icon

2 Time

3 Repeat frequency

①	Once only	Ⓦ	Set day of week	Ⓓ	Daily

4 Duration of alarm

5 Snooze set icon

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Set alarm from stand-by <Quick alarm>

In stand-by, enter a time (four digits: 24-hour format) ▶ ■ ▶ [Quick alarm].

Note (Related operations)

- Schedule is registered for the current day (following day if the time has already passed), [No category] for the category, and [Quick alarm] as the message.

When set time arrives

Alarm is activated in accordance with the settings. If a contact is saved, the contact information appears when the alarm is stopped.

- Once the alarm duration has elapsed, the alarm stops and the specified message appears.
- When a contact appears, press ■ to call that number.

Key operation when an alarm sounds

To stop alarm (snooze activated)	1 to 9, 0, *, #, ■, • •, ▮, 📷, ✉, 📖, 📞, CLR, MULTI
To stop alarm (snooze disabled)	☎
To adjust volume (volume 0 to 10)*	:

* Adjusting the volume is not available when volume is set to Step.

- When the FOMA terminal is closed or in the viewer position, press ▮ to stop alarm (snooze activated).

Note

- The alarm is not activated when the set time arrives in the following cases. Upon the end of the call or the operation, the previously displayed screen or the stand-by display is returned, and the alarm is activated.
  - ■ During call
  - ■ While receiving mail
  - ■ During Ir exchange
  - ■ During data transmission
  - ■ While using Infrared remote control
  - ■ While updating software*

  * When the set time arrives while the software is being updated, the alarm may not be activated, even when the updating ends.
- When a call is started during snooze, snooze notification is interrupted. After the call ends, snooze notification resumes.
- During snooze or while the alarm for which snooze is set is sounding, other alarm/schedule alarm do not sound, even when the set times arrive.
- While Manner mode is set with vibration [ON], vibrator operates in [Pattern1] even if vibrator is set to [OFF].

When a phonebook entry for which Picture call is set is set as a contact

- The picture call image appears when the alarm is activated.
- When an i-motion is set for Picture call, the regular alarm screen appears.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set to as alarm tone, the i-motion image takes priority.

When alarm time arrives while 1Seg is being watched

- Multi Window appears for the normal position or the 1Seg watching screen appears in the right side for the viewer position, and the alarm is activated. When alarm ends, the handset returns to the status existing before the alarm was activated.

Disabling/Deleting/Changing alarm settings

Set (Change)/Disable/Delete alarm settings individually. Details are erased when alarm is deleted. Details are retained when disabled. To use the same details, set again.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Timer/Alarm] ▶ [Alarm].

2 Select a number to register ▶ set to disable/delete/change.

- To disable/set again: Press ⓘ.
- To delete: Press 📷 ▶ [Yes].

Schedule

Managing schedules

Manage schedules by saving the time and contents. Alarm settings and messages can be displayed.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞P. 57).
- Save up to 300 schedules.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Displaying calendar <Calendar>

With the schedule function, check saved schedules and the details of timers for starting or recording a program.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule].

- To show previous month/next month: Press ✉/📖.

Specifying date <Go to date>

1 In the Calendar screen, press 📷 ▶ [Show] ▶ [Go to date].

2 Enter a date ▶ ●.

Related Operations

Show calendar by entering date from stand-by

In stand-by, enter a date ▶ ● ▶ [Schedule].

Note (Related operations)

- Entered dates and calendar shown correlate as follows.
  - 01 to 31: Current month (1st to 31st)
  - 0101 to 1231: Specified date (January 1 to December 31)
  - 20000101 to 20991231: Specified date and year (January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2099)

Changing calendar format <Switch view mode>

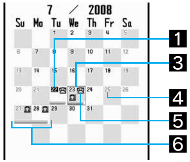
1 In the Calendar screen, press 📷 ▶ [Show] ▶ [Switch view mode].

2 Select the display method ▶ ●.

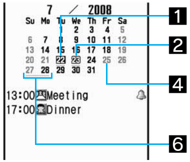
Note

- Calendar display in stand-by is not changed when calendar is changed to Icon display. For details on stand-by calendar display settings ☞P. 115

■ Calendar screen layout



Icon display



Normal display

❶ Today (Highlighted)

❷ Selected day (Shown green)

❸ Selected day (Shown in a black box)

❹ Set vacation/Set holiday (Shown red)

❺ Saved schedule (Icon display by category)

- ▣ appears for timer for starting 1Seg programs and ▣ appears for recording.

❻ Schedule saved (Underlined)

Saving schedules

- Always set start date/time and agenda.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule] ▶ 📷 ▶ [New].

- Alternatively, press ▥ to save a new schedule in the calendar screen when the normal display is set.

2 Select [Date] ▶ enter the start date ▶ enter a time (24-hour format) ▶ ⊡.

- To select a date from the calendar: In the time/date setting screen, press 📷 ▶ select a date with ✥ ▶ ⊡.
- Set the end time in the same way as the start time.
- To reset end date/time: Press ▥.

3 Select the repeat method ▶ ⊡.

- For [Once only]: Select [Once only] ▶ proceed to step 5.
- If an end date and time are set, other than [Once only] cannot be selected.

4 Enter the number of times to repeat ▶ ⊡.

- ***00*** represents unlimited times.

5 Select [Smry] ▶ enter a summary ▶ ⊡.

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

6 Select [Ctgry] ▶ select a category icon ▶ ⊡.

7 Set Alarm.

- For details on settings of Alarm ☞"Setting alarms" on P. 390

8 Select [Image] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select a still picture ▶ ▥.

- To check a still picture: Select the still picture ▶ ⊡.
- Set image appears in the Schedule list and schedule details screen.

9 Select [Cntcts] ▶ select the entry method.

- ◆ **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a name ▶ ⊡.**
- ◆ **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ⊡.**
- Set contact appears in the schedule details screen. A call can be made to that contact.

10 Select [Secret] ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡.

11 Select [Agenda] ▶ enter an agenda ▶ ⊡ ▶ ▥.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

Note

- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.

Set secret

- A secret-saved schedule can only be read when secret mode (☞P. 138) is set to [ON]. Also, the set alarm is activated, but the phone number, message, or image are not displayed.

Related Operations

Save only category icon from icon display calendar

In the icon display calendar screen, select a date with ✣ ▶ ⇕ ▶ select a category icon ▶ ●.

- For details on the calendar icon display ☞"Changing the calendar display method" on P. 387

Save contacts from Redials/Received calls

Select Redials/Received calls ▶ 📷 ▶ [Create schedule] ▶ save the schedule.

Save contents of i-mode mail

Show received/sent messages ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add/Save] ▶ [Create schedule] ▶ save the schedule.

Save contents of a text memo

In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Text memo] ▶ select a text memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [Create] ▶ [Create schedule] ▶ save the schedule.

Save still picture to images

1. **Select still picture from My picture ▶ 📷 ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Set schedule image].**
   - To save a still picture immediately after shooting: In the still picture preview screen, press 📷 ▶ [Set screen] ▶ [Schedule].
2. **Save Schedules.**

Note (Related operations)

Saving category icons

- The following content is saved into a schedule.
  - Date/Time: Day to which cursor is position + Time at which operation was performed
  - Category: Category of selected icon

Saving from Redials/Received calls

- In the displayed schedule save screen, the following content is pre-installed.
  - Date/Time: Called/Received date/time
  - Contact: Phone number

Saving the contents of i-mode mail

- In the displayed schedule save screen, the following content is pre-installed.
  - Date/Time: Received/Sent date/time
  - Contact: First phone number saved in phonebook by sender/contact
  - Agenda: Subject and message (Up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters)

Saving the contents of text memos

- In the displayed schedule save screen, the following content is pre-installed.
  - Category: Category of text memo
  - Agenda: Content of text memo

Saving a still picture

- In the displayed schedule save screen, the following content is pre-installed.
  - Date/Time: Save date and time of still picture
  - Image: Title of still picture
- Still pictures on microSD Card cannot be saved directly into the schedule. Copy to FOMA terminal handset before saving.
- Still picture cannot be saved to Schedule if save destination is set as microSD Card.

Setting alarms

Sound an alarm before the scheduled start time.

- For details on setting the vibrator ☞P. 111

1 In the schedule save screen, select [Alarm] ▶ [ON].

2 Select [Alarm time] ▶ enter the alarm time (number of minutes before the set start time) ▶ ◉.

3 Select [Ring duration] ▶ enter the ring duration ▶ ◉.

4 Select [Alarm tone] ▶ select an alarm tone ▶ ▯.

- To check an alarm tone: Select an alarm tone ▶ ◉.
- To not sound an alarm: Select [Alarm tone] ▶ [Not set].

5 Select [Alarm volume] ▶ adjust the volume with ⁝ ▶ ◉.

6 Press ▯.

Note

- If multiple Schedule alarms are set for the same time, the set alarm sounds for the set number of times.

When alarm time arrives

Alarm is activated in accordance with the settings. If a contact is saved, the contact information appears when the alarm is stopped.

- For details on stopping the alarm or adjusting the volume ☞"Key operation when an alarm sounds" on P. 386

Note

- In the following cases, a picture or video appears on the alarm screen.
  - ■ When a picture is set in the schedule
  - ■ When i-motion with images is set for alarm tone
  - ■ When phonebook entries set as contacts have Picture call (still picture) set
- Pictures and videos are displayed on the alarm screen with the following priority.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	i-motion set as alarm tone → schedule image → phonebook picture call → group picture call → alarm image

Saving/Disabling vacations <Set vacation>

Set dates or days of the week as a vacation. Set vacations can also be disabled.

- Set up to 100 vacations.
- Set vacation appears red.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule].

2 Select a date with ✣ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Set] ▶ [Set vacation].

- Dates do not need to be selected when setting weekly vacations and disabling all vacations.

3 Select the setting/disabling method.

- ◆ **Select [Clear/Set today].**
- ◆ **Select [Set day] ▶ select a day ◉ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
  - • ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected.
- ◆ **Select [Disable all past] ▶ [Yes].**
  - • Disable all past vacations (excluding vacations set to specific day of week) collectively.
- ◆ **Select [Disable all] ▶ [Yes].**

Note

- For Disable all, vacations set to specific days of week return to the default settings.

Saving/Disabling national holidays <Set holiday>

- Save up to 20 holidays in addition to the preset Japanese national holidays.
- Set holiday appears red.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule].

2 Select a date with ✥ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Set] ▶ [Set holiday].

- When disabling a national holiday, the date does not have to be selected.

3 Select the setting/disabling.

- **Select [Save new] ▶ select the setting method ▶ ● ▶ enter a holiday name ▶ ●.**
  - Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
- **Select [Reset] ▶ [Yes].**

Related Operations

Change the details for the set holiday

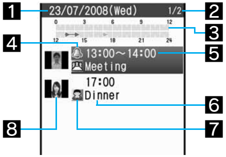
In the Calendar screen, select the holiday to change with ✥ ▶ ● ▶ select the holiday setting ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit] ▶ enter the date ▶ ● ▶ select the setting method ▶ ● ▶ enter a holiday name ▶ ●.

Checking schedules

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule].

2 Select a date with ✥ ▶ ●.

- To display the schedule list screen for the previous/following day: Press ✉/📖.
- To check schedules in microSD Card: Press 📷 ▶ [View microSD data].



23/07/2008(Wed) 1/2

13:00〜14:00 Meeting

17:00 Dinner

Schedule list screen

1 Date

2 Number of saved schedules for the day

3 Time bar

- Schedule start time to end time is indicated in 30 minute intervals.

4 Alarm

5 Start time

6 Summary or agenda

- If summary is saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of the summary appear. If summary is not saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

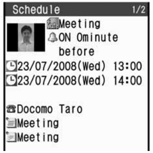
7 Category icon

8 Image

- Image saved in Schedule or image set as Picture call in the contact's phonebook is displayed.

3 Select the schedule ▶ ●.

- To preview saved image: Press ▯.
- To display details for previous and following schedules: Press ▭.
- To display schedule details screen for the previous and following days for which schedules are saved: Press ✉/📖.
- When a contact is set, the contact's phone number appears. Press ● to call that number. When the contact is saved in the phonebook, the contact's name is displayed. Press ● to display the phonebook entry details screen (☞P. 102).



Schedule 1/2

Meeting

ON 0minute before

23/07/2008(Wed) 13:00

23/07/2008(Wed) 14:00

Docomo Taro

Meeting

Meeting

Schedule details screen

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Display by category <Show by category>

In the Calendar screen, press 📷 ▶ [Show] ▶ [Show by category] ▶ select a category ▶ ■.

Display by contact <Show by contact>

In the Calendar screen, press 📷 ▶ [Show] ▶ [Show by contact] ▶ select a contact ▶ ■.

Check all schedules <Show all scheds>

In the Calendar screen, press 📷 ▶ [Show] ▶ [Show all scheds].

- To check a schedule: Select the schedule ▶ ■.

Attach schedules to i-mode mail <Attach to mail>

In the schedule details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Attach to mail] ▶ compose and send a mail.

Copy schedules <Copy>

In the schedule details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy].

Apply Function lock to the Schedule <Function lock>

In the Calendar screen, press 📷 ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [ON].

Note (Related operations)

File attachment

- Schedule for the timer for starting or recording 1Seg cannot be attached.

Copying

- Paste a copied schedule into a text entry screens of the message text or phonebook and others.

Function lock

- For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

Editing a schedule <Edit>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule].

2 Select a date with ✥ ▶ ■.

3 Select a schedule ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit].

4 Edit the schedule ▶ ☰.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (☞P. 388).

5 Select the saving method.

- **Select [Save new].**
- **Select [Overwrite] ▶ [Yes].**

Deleting schedules <Delete>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Schedule] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Show] ▶ [Show all scheds].

2 Select a schedule ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

3 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete all past] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**
  - Delete all entries prior to specified day.
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select a schedule ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
  - ☑ appears for selected items and ☐ appears for disabled items.

4 Select [Yes].

Related Operations

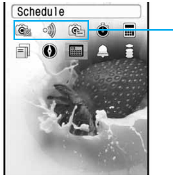
Delete entries from Calendar

In the Calendar screen, press 📷 ▶ [Delete] ▶ select the deletion method ▶ ■ ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

Shortcut menu

Accessing functions quickly

Save frequently used functions as shortcuts for easy access.



Schedule

The function saved to this position is executed from stand-by by pressing 1 to 3 (for 1+ seconds).

- Default setting
  - 1: Bar code reader
  - 2: Receive Ir data
  - 3: Card reader

Saving to shortcut menu

Overwrite a previously saved shortcut with a frequently used function, i-αppli software, or bookmark.

- Save up to ten shortcuts.

1 Press MULTI (for 1+ seconds) in function with to save.

- Save a function for which ⚑ is displayed.

2 Select the destination to save ▶ ▣.

- To overwrite: Select the destination to save ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- When registered i-αppli software itself or URL bookmarks are deleted, they are deleted from the Shortcut menu.

Related Operations

Check the saving method of the shortcut menu

In stand-by, press □ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Reg method].

Running shortcut menu

- If a calendar is shown, press ☎ to hide the calendar.

1 In stand-by, press □.

2 Select a shortcut icon ▶ ▣.

Deleting from shortcut menu

1 In stand-by, press □.

2 Select a shortcut icon ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

3 Select the deletion method.

- ◆ **Select [Delete one].**
- ◆ **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

4 Select [Yes].

Moving shortcut menu icons <Move icon>

1 In stand-by, press □.

2 Select a shortcut icon ▶ 📷 ▶ [Move icon].

3 Select a destination ▶ ▣.

- Positions of shortcuts are switched.

Resetting shortcut menu to default settings <Reset shortcut>

1 In stand-by, press □ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Reset shortcut].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

Quick search

Searching by various methods

Use e-dictionary, i-αppli “Internet dictionary”, search engines and others.

Internal Dictionary	Searches by using an e-dictionary that has been registered or set. Up to five e-dictionaries can be registered and the e-dictionary can be changed when searching.
i-αppli Dictionary	Searches by activating i-αppli “Internet dictionary”.
i-mode Search	Searches sites by accessing i-mode when a keyword is entered.
Search from iMenu	Searches from iMenu by accessing i-mode.
Search by full browser	Connects the set search engines with Full Browser. The search engine can be changed.

Searching using internal dictionary

Registering e-dictionaries to use

- Register preset e-dictionaries (☞P. 359).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Quick search] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Register int dict].

2 Select [Not registered] ▶ 📷.

- To change the registered e-dictionary: Select an e-dictionary ▶ 📷.
- To disable the registered e-dictionary: Select an e-dictionary ▶ 📷 ▶ [Disable] ▶ [Yes].

3 Select [Register] ▶ select an e-dictionary ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

- To set the e-dictionary to search in the internal dictionary: In the internal dictionary list screen, select an e-dictionary ▶ ⊡.

Searching using registered e-dictionaries as internal dictionary

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Quick search].

- In stand-by: Press ⊡.
  - If a calendar is shown, press ↩ to hide the calendar.

2 Select [Internal Dictionary] ▶ input a search string.

- To switch input modes: Press 📖.
- Everytime text is input, the search result appears below the text input field.
- To search after inputting all search strings: Press ≣ (or 📷 ▶ [Key word]) ▶ input a search string ▶ ⊡.
- To change the e-dictionary to search: Press 📷 ▶ [Dict settings] ▶ select an e-dictionary ▶ ⊡.
  - ☑ appears for the set e-dictionary.

3 Select the search result ▶ ⊡.

Searching using i-αppli dictionary or search engines

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Quick search].

2 Select the search method.

- **Select [i-αppli Dictionary] ▶ search.**
- **Select [i-mode Search] ▶ input a search string ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Search from iMenu] ▶ search.**
- **Select [Search by full browser] ▶ [Yes] ▶ search.**
  - To register a search engine: Press 📷 ▶ [Register URL] ▶ enter a URL ▶ ⊡.

Related Operations

Use Quick search in the received message details screen <Quick search>

In the received message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Quick search] ▶ ⊡ at the start point of text string to search ▶ ⊡ at the end point ▶ search in the dictionary.

Use Quick search in the text input screen

Enter hiragana and press ≣ ▶ search in the dictionary.

Set i-αppli dictionary to start from the i-αppli software list screen <Reg i-αppli dict>

In the software list screen, select the software ▶ 📷 ▶ [Reg i-αppli dict] ▶ [Register] ▶ [Agree].

Note (Related operations)

Quick search

- [Search from iMenu] and [Search by full browser] cannot be selected.

Quick search for received messages

- While viewing Decome-Anime, Quick search is not available.

Quick search in a text input screen

- When Guess conversion or Quick conversion is [ON], a conversion candidate can be selected and operation is available.

Owner information

Saving own name and image

- By default, only the phone number of the inserted FOMA card is saved. In addition, save the following items.

Icon	Save item
👤	Name (up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters)
R	Reading (up to 32 single-byte characters)
▤	Own number (cannot be edited)
☎	Phone number (two numbers, each of up to 26 digits)
✉	Mail address (three address, each of up to 50 single-byte characters)
▦	Company/school (up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters)
⊞	Department (up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters)
▭	Title (up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters)
〒	Postal code (up to 7 single-byte digits)
▣	Postal address (up to 100 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters)
🎂	Birthday (single-byte numbers, from January 1, 1900 to December 31, 2099)
📝	Memo (up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters)
🖼	Own image

1 **In the Custom menu, press [0] ▶ [■].**

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], the owner information of Number A appears.
- To switch to owner information of Number B: Press ≣.

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ [■] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit].**

- To save the Number B of 2in1: In the owner information details screen of the Number B, press 📷 ▶ [2in1 reg check] ▶ [Yes].

3 **Save owner information ▶ ≣.**

- Editing procedures are the same as phonebook (☞P. 97).

Note

- Changing for i-mode mail address is not reflected in the owner information details screen. Save mail address manually.
- Copy microSD Card phonebook contents to owner information (☞P. 103).

Showing owner information details

1 **In the Custom menu, press [0] ▶ [■].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ [■].**

- To select displayed item: Press [◂▸].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Copy the saved details of owner information <Copy item>

In the owner information details screen, select an item with ⊡ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy] ▶ [Copy item].

Set whether to transfer own image <Image transfer>

1 In the owner information details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Image transfer].

2 Select the setting.

- **Select [Yes] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [No].**

Note (Related operations)

Copying items

- The following items can be copied.
  - ■ Name
  - ■ Mail address
  - ■ Postal address
  - ■ Own number
  - ■ Company/school, Department, Title
  - ■ Memo
  - ■ Other phone number

Image transfer

- Set whether to transfer own image when sending owner information via Ir exchange, iC transmission or Bluetooth, or copying it to microSD Card.

Voice memo (during call)/Voice memo (stand-by)

Recording other's voice during a call or own voice when in stand-by

Record other party's voice during a call (Voice memo (during call)) or own voice when in stand-by (Voice memo (stand-by)).

- Record up to three Record messages (voice calls) (☞P. 77) and Voice memos of approximately 15 seconds each.
- Voice memos of 3 seconds or less may not be recorded.
- For replaying and deleting voice memos made during a call and in stand-by ☞P. 79

Recording the other party's voice during a call <Voice memo>

1 During a voice call, press 📷 ▶ [Voice memo].

- Alternatively, press 7 (for 1+ seconds).
- To stop recording: Press 📷.
- Recording automatically ends after approximately 15 seconds.

Note

- Own voice is not recorded in Voice memo (during call). However, own voice may be recorded due to line status.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, and others cannot be recorded.

Recording own voice when in stand-by <Voice memo (Stand-by)>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Media tool] ▶ [Voice memo/Rec msg] ▶ [Record].

- In stand-by: Press 7 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ [Record].
- To stop recording: Press ⊡.
- Speak within approximately 10 cm away from the mouthpiece.
- Recording automatically ends after approximately 15 seconds.

Note

- Use recorded Voice memos (stand-by) for On hold tone, Hold tone (☞P. 74), or Reply message (☞P. 78).
- Key/Standby i-motion is silenced while recording a voice memo.
- Recording is stopped if a call is received (Voice is recorded until stopped).

Displaying the call duration/charge

Check previous or total call duration/charge for voice calls, Videophone calls, etc.

- Voice call duration, Videophone call duration and 64K data communication duration appear for call duration. Duration time includes calls made and received.
- Call charge includes only calls made. When calls are made to toll-free numbers, directory assistance (104), etc., [0YEN] or [✱✱✱✱✱✱YEN] appears.
- Call charges for switching between Videophone and voice call appear as [Last call cost ○○YEN] and [V.phone call cost ○○YEN]. Charges for calls switched multiple times appear for each voice/Videophone call in total.
- Call charge is saved on the FOMA card. If a different FOMA card is inserted, the total call charges stored (those calculated since December 2004) on the currently inserted card appear.
    - Total call charges on a FOMA card cannot be viewed on models released prior to the FOMA 901i series (However, total charge is saved on the FOMA card).
- Call duration/charge that appears can be reset.
- Call duration/charge is an estimate and may differ from actual amount. Call charge does not include consumption tax.

Displaying call details

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Talk time/cost].

Note

- While accessing the FOMA card, a message indicating the status appears.
- Transmission duration and charge for PushTalk, i-mode and packet transmissions are not counted. Refer to the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version” for details on checking the i-mode charge, etc.
- If the previous call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- If the total call duration exceeds 999:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- Time used for receiving or making a call is not counted.
- Last call cost is reset to [✱✱✱✱✱✱YEN] when the power is turned off.
- Transmission charges for Chaku-moji are not counted.
- International call charges for WORLD CALL are counted. International call charges for other call services are not counted.
- If subscribed to the 2in1, total call charge is the total of Number A and Number B.

Resetting call duration/call cost

The recorded previous call duration or the total call duration/cost can be reset to *0*.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Talk time/cost] ▶ ⬍.

2 Select the item to reset.

- **Select [Reset total] ▶ enter PIN2 code ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Talk time reset] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

3 Select [Yes].

Note

- When the total call duration is reset, the year, date and time of resetting is saved. When the total call charge is reset, the charges at the time of resetting, as well as the year, date and time of the reset, are saved.

Setting call cost limit notice <Limit settings>

Show a stock icon or sound an alarm in stand-by when the set maximum call cost is exceeded after a call is ended. Also, reset total call cost on the first of the month.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Talk time/cost] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Limit settings].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.**

3 **Select the [Limit settings] field ▶ ■ ▶ [Enable].**

4 **Select the [Limit settings] field ▶ ■ ▶ enter limit ▶ ■.**

5 **Select the [Notice method] field ▶ ■ ▶ select the notification method.**

- **Select [Alarm + stand-by] ▶ set the alarm tone, alarm volume, and ring duration ▶ ≣.**
  - For the setting method ☞steps 3 to 5 of "Setting alarms" on P. 390
- **Select [Stand-by].**

6 **Select the [Auto reset] field ▶ ■ ▶ select the setting ▶ ■ ▶ ≣.**

- When set to [ON], the call charges are reset at 00:00 on the first of each month.

7 **Enter the PIN2 code ▶ ■.**

Note

- When auto-reset is set to [ON], the call charges are also reset if date and time are changed in Date settings (☞P. 57) in the following month or later.
- If set Limit notice again when Limit settings message is displayed, the message is deleted.

Related Operations

Delete Limit settings message in stand-by

In stand-by, press ■ ▶ select the stock icon ¥ (charge limit exceeded) ▶ ■ ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

Note (Related operations)

- When Limit settings message is deleted, the message is not displayed until All calls cost is reset or Limit settings is set again.

Calculator

Using as calculator

- Calculate memories, percentages and consumption tax.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Calculator].**

- In stand-by: Enter number ▶ ■ ▶ [Calculator].

2 **Calculate.**

Key operation with calculator screen

0 to 9	Number input	CLR	C･CE (Delete input number)
*	Decimal point		
#	+/− switching	📖	RM (Recall memory)
◀	+ (Add)	≣	% (Calculate percentage)
▶	− (Subtract)	☎*	TAX (Calculate consumption tax)
▲	× (Multiply)		
▼	÷ (Divide)	📷	M+ (Add memory)
■	= (Calculate)	✉	CM (Clear memory)

* Press twice to show the price without tax.

Note

- When calculating memories, results are retained even after the calculator is ended.

- Numbers after the decimal point are left off when calculating consumption tax.

Related Operations

Change tax rate

In the calculator screen, press ✎ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter tax rate (01 to 99) ▶ ●.

Copy calculation contents

Press ✱ (for 1+ seconds) while viewing number.

Text memo

Entering memos

Save frequently used phrases and use them when composing messages and schedules.

- Save up to ten text memos.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Text memo] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Create] ▶ [New].

- Alternatively, press ≣ to create a new text memo in the text memo list screen.

2 Select [Text] ▶ enter a message ▶ ●.

- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.

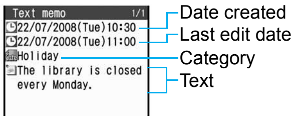
3 Select [Group] ▶ select a category icon ▶ ● ▶ ≣.

Using memos

Use the information in a text memo to compose a mail message or schedule.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Text memo].

2 Select a text memo ▶ ● ▶ 📷 ▶ [Create].



Text memo 1/1
22/07/2008(Tue)10:30
22/07/2008(Tue)11:00
Holiday
The library is closed every Monday.

3 Select a function to use ▶ ● ▶ use each function.

- For [Compose message]: Content of memo is entered in the message in advance.
- For [Create schedule]: Content of memo is entered in Agenda and memo type is entered in the category in advance.

Editing memo

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Text memo].

2 Select a text memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit].

3 Edit the text memo ▶ ≣.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (☞P. 399).

4 Select the saving method.

- **Select [Save new].**
- **Select [Overwrite] ▶ [Yes].**

Deleting memos

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Text memo].

2 Select a text memo ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

3 Select the deletion method.

- **Select [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete selected] ▶ select the text memo ● (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
  - ☑ appears for selected items and ☐ appears for disabled items.
- **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ●.**

4 Select [Yes].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Related Operations

Apply Function lock to the Text memo <Function lock>

In the text memo list screen, press 📷 ▶ [Function lock] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ● ▶ [ON].

Note (Related operations)

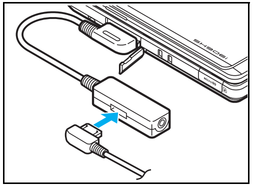
- For details on Function lock ☞P. 134

Earphone/Microphone with switch

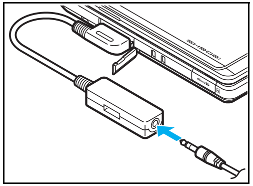
Using earphone/microphone with switch

Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) to an earphone plug adapter for external connector terminal connected to the external connector terminal to call or answer by pushing a switch.

Flat-plug earphone terminal



Round-plug earphone terminal



- Do not forcefully pull the external connector terminal cover. May damage the cover.
- Key/Standby i-motion are output to the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch when connected.
- The volume for the earphone is the same as set in Earpiece volume (☞P. 73).
- Do not press the switch repeatedly. Calls may be placed and received automatically.
- Do not wind the cord of the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around the FOMA terminal. The internal antenna may not work properly.
- Placing the cord of the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch near the internal antenna causes noise.
- Secure plug. Sound may not be audible if not completely inserted.
- A beep sounds when the plug is inserted only halfway during a call. This is not a malfunction.
- A pop may sound when the power is turned on or the handset is operated. This is not a malfunction.
- Connect the round-plug earphone terminal with an earphone plug of 3.5 mm in diameter.

Setting the operation of the earphone/microphone with switch <Headset sw to call>

Set the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to enable voice calls using only the switch. Save phone numbers to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook in advance and specify a memory number.

- When a Bluetooth device is connected, the Headset switch to call is followed.
- Save one entry from memory numbers 000 to 999 from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Headset sw to call] ▶ [Voice call].**

2 **Enter the memory number ▶ ●.**

Making voice calls with switch

- Connect the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch in advance.

Making a call to a memory number specified for headset switch to call

1 In stand-by, press the switch for 2+ seconds.

- When the screen is off due to the screen display time, press a key or the switch to show the screen in advance.

2 Press the switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

Making a call after entering a phone number

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ press the switch for 2+ seconds.

- Call can also be placed from phonebook and Redials/Received calls.

2 Press the switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

Note

- If multiple phone numbers are saved for memory number set for headset switch to call in the phonebook, the first phone number saved is called.
- When a memory number set for headset switch to call is set as Secret, set Secret mode to [ON] before using switch to call.
- Calls may be placed accidentally if the FOMA terminal is carried in a bag with the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch connected. Disconnect when not in use.
- Calls may be placed if an earphone/microphone without switch is rapidly inserted and removed.

Answering calls with switch

Answer voice/Videophone or PushTalk calls.

1 Connect the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

2 When a call is received, press the switch for 2+ seconds.

- Set the location to which the received call is output (☞P. 112).

3 Press the switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

Note

- Calls may be answered accidentally if the earphone/microphone with switch is connected while the terminal is ringing. Disconnect when not in use.

Auto answer setting

Answering calls automatically with earphone

Automatically connect voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls received while flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- When flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is not connected, Auto answer setting is not available even if set to [ON] (excluding PushTalk).

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Incoming settings] ▶ [Auto answer setting].

2 Select the item.

- ◆ **Select [Phone/Videophone] ▶ [ON] ▶ enter a ring time ▶ ⊡.**
- ◆ **Select [PushTalk] ▶ [ON].**

Note

- Calls are answered without ringing or vibrating when the ring time is set to [000 seconds].
- Calls from those set for Reject calls are not answered.
- Set different Auto answer and Record message ring times.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- If both Voice Mail Service and Auto answer are enabled, and the same number of seconds is set for both services, then Voice Mail Service takes priority. To prioritize Auto answer setting, set a shorter ring time than that set for the Voice Mail Service (this also applies to the Call Forwarding Service).

Using Bluetooth function

Connect the FOMA terminal to Bluetooth devices wirelessly.

- Wireless communications with all the Bluetooth devices are not completely guaranteed.

Supported version and supported profiles

■ **Supported version**

Bluetooth specification Ver. 2.0+EDR[1]

■ **Supported profiles[2] (Supported services)**

HSP (Headset Profile)
HFP (Hands Free Profile)
A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile)
AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile)
HID (Human Interface Device Profile)
DUN (Dial-up Networking Profile)
OPP (Object Push Profile)

*1 The FOMA terminal and all Bluetooth function-installed devices have ensured that they conform to the Bluetooth specification according to the rules that the Bluetooth SIG defines, and are all authenticated. However, operating methods might differ, or data might not be exchanged even when they are connected wirelessly, depending on the features or specifications of connecting devices.

*2 Standardizes the connecting procedures of Bluetooth device per feature of a device.

What can be performed using Bluetooth connection

The following services are available with the FOMA terminal.

■ Talking with Headset/Hands-free (HSP/HFP)

Connect commercially available Bluetooth compatible Headset to the FOMA terminal to talk wirelessly.

Connect a commercially available Bluetooth compatible hands-free device such as a car navigation system to the FOMA terminal to talk during hands-free operation using the car navigation system.

■ Playing back on Audio device (A2DP/AVRCP)

Connect Wireless Earphone Set 02 (sold separately) or commercially available Bluetooth compatible audio device to the FOMA terminal to play music or sound of 1Seg wirelessly. Also, remote control operation may be available from Bluetooth devices. However, the device that support sounds of 1Seg or video movies have restrictions.

■ Using Bluetooth compatible keyboard (HID)

Connect commercially available Bluetooth compatible keyboard to the FOMA terminal to enter text in the keyboard. Usual screen operations are available using Cursor key/Enter key/Esc key/Function key/ Numeric key.

■ Making Dial-up connection wirelessly (DUN)

Connect a Bluetooth compatible PC to the FOMA terminal to make packet transmission or 64K data transmission using the FOMA terminal as a modem.

- Refer to “Manual for PC Connection” in the accompanying CD-ROM for details.

■ Sending/Receiving data (File transfer) (OPP)

Send or receive phonebook entries, schedule, messages, text memos, bookmarks, Location notification, or ToruCa with the Bluetooth device.

Note

- The following sounds are output from the Bluetooth device or the FOMA terminal depending on the connected service.

		Connected services		
		HSP	HFP	A2DP
Voice call dial tone		○	○	×
Voice/Videophone call ring tone		○*1, 2	○*2	×
Calling tone at voice/Videophone call		○	○	×
The other party's voice at voice/ Videophone call		○	○	×
Caller's voice from Record message at voice call		○	○	×
Sounds of 1Seg programs		×	×	○*3
i-motion playback tone		×	×	○*4
Video playback tone		×	×	○*3
PC movie playback tone		×	×	×
MUSIC Player playback tone		×	×	○
Music&Video Channel playback tone		×	×	○
Alarm tone		×	×	×
Mail ring tone	Notice first	×	×	×
	Operation first	×*5	×*5	×*5
PushTalk ring tone		×	×	×

○: Output from the Bluetooth device.
×: Play back the FOMA terminal instead of no outputting from the Bluetooth device.
*1 The ring tone sounds from both the Bluetooth device and the FOMA terminal when Headset setting is set to [Headset + speaker].
*2 The ring tone sounds from the FOMA terminal when Forward Ring Tone is set to [OFF].
*3 Play back only on an A2DP compatible Bluetooth device protected by copyright in the SCMS-T.
*4 The tone does not sound for i-motion play back while being retrieved from site.
*5 The mail ring tone does not sound when a screen other than stand-by is shown.

- Some Bluetooth devices may not work as those specified above.
- While the Manner mode is set, the ring tone sounds from the Bluetooth device.
- Some commercially available Bluetooth compatible earphones or headphones may not conform to the Bluetooth specification. In this case, the audio noise may affect earphones or headphones.
- Refer to instruction manual for a Bluetooth device as well.

Precautions for handling the Bluetooth device

Note the following when using the Bluetooth device.

- Note the following to make good connection.
  - ■ The distance between the FOMA terminal and another Bluetooth device keep within approximately 10 m with no obstructions in sight. The distance that can make connection may be shorter when there are obstructions between them or depending on the conditions of the surroundings (such as walls or furniture) and the structure of a building. Especially when there is a wall or floor of reinforced concrete between them, they may be unable to connect with each other. Note the above mentioned distance is not guaranteed.
  - ■ Move the FOMA terminal and another Bluetooth device as far away as possible from home electric appliances, AV devices, OA devices, etc. before connection. The Bluetooth device is liable to be adversely affected by a microwave oven so move as far away as possible from the microwave oven. Otherwise, normal connection cannot be performed when electric devices are powered on or Bluetooth devices may cause noises or reception failure on a TV or radio set (TV images may degrade for specific channels of UHF or satellite broadcasting).
  - ■ Move the Bluetooth device to a place that connection is possible when there is a broadcast station or radio near a Bluetooth device, and the FOMA terminal cannot be connected to the device. Strong radio waves may prevent connection between Bluetooth devices.

Continued on next page ▶▶

- ■ Wireless connection is available with Bluetooth device put in a bag or pocket. However, lowering of communication speed or noise may result when the Bluetooth device and the FOMA terminal are separated by your body.
- ● The Bluetooth device use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz) as wireless LANs (IEEE802.11 b/g). Therefore, using the Bluetooth device near a wireless LAN device may cause the radio interference, lowering of communication speed, noise, or connection fail. In this case, turn off the wireless LAN device or keep the FOMA terminal and the Bluetooth device at least approximately 10 m away from the wireless LAN.
- ● Electromagnetic signals from the Bluetooth device may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment. As some cases may result in accident, turn off the FOMA terminal and another Bluetooth device in the following place.
  - ■ On trains
  - ■ On airplanes
  - ■ In hospitals
  - ■ Nearby automatic doors or fire alarms
  - ■ In places such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated

■ Using Bluetooth devices simultaneously

The following are the combinations of Bluetooth devices that can be simultaneously connected and used.

Services being connected / Services to be connected afterward	Hands-free/ Headset	Audio	Keyboard	Dial-up	File transfer
Hands-free/Headset	×*	△	○	○	△
Audio	△	×	○	○	△
Keyboard	○	○	×	○	△
Dial-up	○	○	○	×	△
File transfer	△	△	△	△	×

○: Can be connected and used simultaneously.

△: Can be connected simultaneously but cannot be used simultaneously. Switch functions with Multi Assistant to use.

×: Cannot be connected.

* Hands-free and Headset services cannot be connected simultaneously. However, they can be simultaneously switched to connection stand-by.

Registering Bluetooth device

Search for the Bluetooth device to connect and register the device to the FOMA terminal. Register up to ten Bluetooth devices.

- ● To register a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth passkey must be entered. Before starting the registration, enter the same user-specified 4- to 16-digit number on the FOMA terminal and the other party's Bluetooth device.
- ● Switch the other party's Bluetooth device to the registration stand-by status in advance.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [List/cnnct/discnnct].

- ● When any Bluetooth devices have already been registered, the device list screen appears. Press ≣ and proceed to step 3.

2 Select [Yes].

- ● Search the Bluetooth device around the FOMA terminal. Searched devices are displayed on the list.

3 Select a Bluetooth device to register ▶ ▣ (or 📷 ▶ [Register Devices]).

- ● To search again: Press ≣.

4 Enter the Bluetooth passkey ▶ ▣.

- ● If a device is the one supported by Audio service, the default connection device setting screen appears. When [Yes] is selected, the device is set to default connection device.

Note

- When ten Bluetooth devices are already registered, the confirmation screen for overwriting appears. When [Yes] is selected, the Bluetooth devices are overwritten starting with the oldest communication date and time.
- For details on the operations of the other party's Bluetooth device, refer to the manuals of the Bluetooth device to be used.

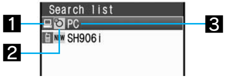
Related Operations

Search only unregistered devices to register

In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Register new device] ▶ register.

- For details on registering ☞steps 3 and 4 of "Registering Bluetooth device" on P. 404

Search list screen layout



1 Device category icon

🖥	Computer	⌨	PC peripheral device
📱	Phone	📷	Imaging device
品	LAN	⌚	Wearable terminal
🎧	Audio device	▭	Other

2 Classification icon

NEW	Unregistered device that has been newly found
○	Already registered device that has been found
☑○	Already registered device that has been found and is set to default connection device
Z	Already registered and connected device that has been found
☑Z	Already registered and connected device that is set to default connection device

3 Device name

Connecting to Bluetooth devices

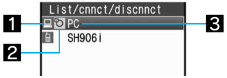
Connect to registered Bluetooth devices.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [List/cnnct/discnnct].

2 Select a Bluetooth device to connect to ▶ ■.

- To select a service and connect: Select a Bluetooth device to connect to ▶ ✉ ▶ select a service ■ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.
- ᛒ flashes at approximately 0.5-second intervals when the connection is completed.
- To disconnect the Bluetooth device: Select a Bluetooth device to disconnect ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

Device list screen layout



1 Device category icon (☞P. 405)

2 Classification icon

☑○	Already registered and unconnected device that is set to default connection device
Z	Already registered device that is being connected
☑Z	Already registered and connected device that is set to default connection device

3 Device name

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- If a Bluetooth device is turned off during the connection or disconnection processing or there is no response from the Bluetooth device, it takes up to approximately 20 seconds for the processing.
- If the FOMA terminal is disconnected from a Bluetooth device while being connected, the connected service is switched to connection stand-by. Also, if the FOMA terminal is turned off while being connected or in connection stand-by, the connection or connected service will be switched to connection stand-by when the power is turned on next time.
- When connection to the registered Bluetooth device is failed, delete the registration once and register the device again. It may be able to connect.

Related Operations

Delete the registered Bluetooth device <Delete>

In the device list screen, select a Bluetooth device ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

Set a device that is automatically connected when a Bluetooth compatible function is activated <Def cnnctn dev>

In the device list screen, select a Bluetooth device ▶ 📷 ▶ [Def cnnctn dev] ▶ select a service ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.

View detailed information of Bluetooth device <Connection info>

In the device list screen, select a Bluetooth device ▶ 📷 ▶ [Connection info].

- To edit the device name: Press 📷 ▶ edit the device name ▶ ▣.
  - Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters for a device name.

Switching to the registration stand-by/connection stand-by <Accept Registered>

Switch to receive a registration request/connection request from other Bluetooth devices in stand-by display.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Accept Registered].

- In stand-by: Press 6 (for 1+ seconds).
- ᛒ flashes at approximately 1-second intervals.
- Register devices within approximately 5 minutes after switching the FOMA terminal to connection stand-by. After approximately 5 minutes, ᛒ becomes illuminating.
- To select the service to switch to the connection stand-by: Select [Accept Registered] ▶ ↕ ▶ select a service ▣ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.
- Turn off the Bluetooth power when disabling the stand-by status.

Note

- Connection does not start when the other party's Bluetooth device finishes activating the connection and already in connection stand-by. In this case, connect from the FOMA terminal.
- If connection stand-by is set when multiple Bluetooth devices are registered, the FOMA terminal may be connected to a Bluetooth device other than the one to be connected.
- While in connection stand-by, even if a connection request from a Bluetooth device is received, connection may not be made depending on the signal strength.

■ When accepting a registration request from the unregistered Bluetooth device

1 Registration request from the other party in stand-by ▶ [Yes] ▶ register.

- For details on registering ☞step 4 of "Registering Bluetooth device" on P. 404

■ When accepting a connection request from the registered Bluetooth device

- Automatically connect and ᛒ becomes flashing at approximately 0.5-second intervals.

Turning off the Bluetooth power on the FOMA terminal <Bluetooth Power OFF>

Suspend services that are connecting, and turn off the Bluetooth power of the FOMA terminal.

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth Power OFF] ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- With the following operations, Bluetooth is turned on.
  - ■ Connection/connection stand-by
  - ■ Search
  - ■ Bluetooth reception/send
  - ■ Bluetooth automatic connection when Bluetooth compatible functions (1Seg, i-motion, Video player, Music&Video Channel and MUSIC Player) are activated

  Also, Bluetooth remains on after the completion of the above processing. While the FOMA terminal is turned off or in the Self mode, Bluetooth power is forcibly turned off. However, when the FOMA terminal is turned on or the Self mode is disabled, the original status (connection stand-by) is recovered.

Using Bluetooth devices

- For operations from a Bluetooth device, refer to the manual for the Bluetooth device.

■ Making a call using Bluetooth devices

1 Connect a Bluetooth device using Headset service or Hands-free service.

2 Make/Receive a call via the Bluetooth device.

- ᛒ appears during a call via the Bluetooth device.
- To switch between call on the Bluetooth device and FOMA terminal: Press ⊡ (for 1+ seconds) during a call (or 📷 ▶ [Sw Bluetooth-main]).
  - When a connection is being made using the Headset service and the call is being made with the FOMA terminal, the connection can be switched only from the Bluetooth device.
  - Alternatively, press ⊡ for 1+ seconds to switch while calling, receiving a call, holding a call, responding to a recorded message/recording message or on hold.

Note

- During a call on the Bluetooth device, adjust the volume on the Bluetooth device.
- During a call on the Bluetooth device, the call continues when the FOMA terminal is closed regardless of Set when folded.
- If the FOMA terminal is disconnected from a Bluetooth device during a call, the call is finished.

■ Playing back audio and music of 1Seg and MUSIC Player using Bluetooth devices

1. **Connect a Bluetooth device using Audio service.**
2. **Activate and watch/play 1Seg, MUSIC Player, etc.**

Note

- During a Bluetooth outputting, adjust the volume on the Bluetooth device.
- Remote control operations are available even while playing MUSIC Player or Music&Video Channel player (program with voice only) in the background. However, remote control operations are not available when the player screen does not appear or when submenu, etc. is displayed even in the player screen.
- Depending on the conditions of Bluetooth device or operations from FOMA terminal, playing sound or music may be interrupted.
- If a voice or music is stopped from a Bluetooth device during the playback, the FOMA terminal may be outside the Bluetooth area or the Bluetooth device is turned off. Check the FOMA terminal and Bluetooth device. In this case, the Audio service may be disconnected depending on the Bluetooth device. To play the voice or music from the Bluetooth device again, reconnect the Audio service.
- When connecting the Wireless Earphone Set 02 (sold separately), connect it from the FOMA terminal.
- Some music data in AMR format may not be played back depending on the car navigation.

Related Operations

Output with voice from a Bluetooth device after each function is activated <Bluetooth output>

While 1Seg, video player, etc. is being activated, press 📷 ▶ [Bluetooth output] ▶ [ON].

Set Auto start of MUSIC Player <Music auto start>

In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth setting] ▶ [Music auto start] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

Automatically connect to a Bluetooth device when each function is activated <Startup auto cnnct>

While 1Seg, video player, etc. is being activated, press 📷 ▶ [Bluetooth output] ▶ [Startup auto cnnct] ▶ select the setting ▶ ▣.

Note (Related operations)

Bluetooth output

- Connect to the Bluetooth device that is set to the default connection device setting.

Music auto start

- When Music auto start is [ON], if an Audio service is connected from a Bluetooth device with the Audio service in connection stand-by, MUSIC Player is automatically activated. However, it is not activated while a screen other than stand-by appears.

Startup auto connection

- When Startup auto connection is [ON] and there are some Bluetooth devices that are set to the default connection device setting, just activate 1Seg or MUSIC Player to automatically make it connect to the Bluetooth devices without connecting to the Audio service in advance.
- Connection is not available when 1Seg is activated by the time for starting or recording and Wakeup TV.
- When there is no Bluetooth device that is set to the default connection device setting, Startup auto connection cannot be set to [ON].
- Startup auto connection cannot be set to i-motion and Music&Video Channel.
- The setting becomes valid from next start.

■ Using Bluetooth compatible keyboard

1. **Connect a Bluetooth compatible keyboard using Keyboard service.**

2 In the text input screen, input text from keyboard.

- Input method is automatically set to [Romaji method] and Quick conversion and Direct conversion are set to [OFF].

Bluetooth compatible keyboard

- Convenient operations in the text input screen are shown below.

To select text	Shift+Cursor key
To copy the selection	Ctrl+C
To cut the selection	Ctrl+X
To paste	Ctrl+V
To cancel operations (UNDO function)	Ctrl+Z

- Keys of the Bluetooth compatible keyboard correspond to the operation keys of the FOMA terminal as below. Corresponding keys can be operated same as the FOMA terminal.
  - • Selecting and determining the touch menu are not available. Open the menu by pressing the keys which are corresponding to in the stand-by display.

FOMA terminal	Bluetooth compatible keyboard
CLR	Esc
ⓘ	F1[*1]
📷	F2
✉	F3
📖	F4
1 to 9, 0	1 to 9, 0
✱	∗ “Shift+: (colon)”
#	# “Shift+3”
↑, ↓, ←, →	↑, ↓, ←, →
■	Enter[*2, 3] (Text input screen: Ctrl+Enter)

[*1] Press in the compose message screen to send.

[*2] When in the viewer position, press in the stand-by display to display the touch menu. However, when the stock icon is displayed, the stock icon message appears.

[*3] Press in the text input screen to insert [↲] (line breaks).

Note

- Some keys, such as numeric keypad, cannot be inputted.
- When in the viewer position, the display is set horizontally, and a menu corresponding to the function keys of the Bluetooth compatible keyboard appears on the bottom of the screen. Perform the same operations as those of the FOMA terminal such as the text input mode switching, Kana/English conversion, and 1 kanji conversion.
- Text input is not available with the FOMA terminal handset during the operation with Bluetooth compatible keyboard. Switch the Input method (☞P. 424) to [5-touch]/[2-touch] for inputting the text with FOMA terminal handset. In this case, the operation with Bluetooth compatible keyboard is not available.
- The following text strings cannot be entered with Bluetooth compatible keyboard.
  - ■ Terminal security code
  - ■ Search strings in the internal dictionary of Quick search
- If the text box is selected in the Full Browser display, the text input screen appears and text can be entered.

Sending and receiving data

Connect a Bluetooth device to the FOMA terminal with the File transfer service to send and receive data.

- During Bluetooth communication, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area, such that making/receiving calls, i-mode, and data communications are not possible.
- Bluetooth communication is not available during a call.
- Images, i-motion, Melody and PDF of Data box or Decome-Anime template cannot be sent or received. Other data that can be sent and received or operations for when various lock functions are set are same as for Ir exchange (☞P. 349).

Continued on next page ▶▶

- If Session number setting is set to [ON], the terminal security code and authentication password entry are required to send all data. Authentication password is a password exclusively for Bluetooth. Before starting data transfer, the sender must enter the same user-specified four-digit password.

■ Sending a single data item <Send>

Example: Phonebook

1 In stand-by, press 📖.

2 Select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [Send via Bluetooth] ▶ [Send] ▶ [Yes].

- Alternatively, this operation can be performed from the details screen.
- Set the receiving Bluetooth device to receive data.

3 Select a Bluetooth device to connect to ▶ ▣.

■ Receiving a single data item <Receive Bluetooth>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Receive Bluetooth] ▶ [Yes].

- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Data is automatically received when data is sent from sender's Bluetooth device.

2 Select [Yes].

■ Sending all data items <Send all>

Example: Phonebook

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ 📷 ▶ [Send data] ▶ [Send via Bluetooth] ▶ [Send all].

- Set the receiving Bluetooth device to receive data.

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.

3 Select [Yes].

4 Select a Bluetooth device to connect to ▶ ▣.

■ Receiving all data items <Receive Bluetooth>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Receive Bluetooth] ▶ [Yes].

- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Communication automatically begins when data is sent from sender's Bluetooth device.

2 Select [Yes] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].

- To cancel Receive: While receiving data, press 📷.

Setting the Bluetooth function <Bluetooth setting>

■ Checking the Bluetooth information <Bluetooth Info>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth setting] ▶ [Bluetooth Info].

- To edit the device name: Press 📷 ▶ edit the device name ▶ ▣.
  - • Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters for a device name.

Note

- Pictographs in the device name may not appear correctly for the other party's Bluetooth device.

■ Setting the time of search Bluetooth device <Time-out To Search>

1 In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth setting] ▶ [Time-out To Search].

2 Enter the search time ▶ ▣.

Setting whether to perform the Bluetooth authentication <Set Authentications>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth setting] ▶ [Set Authentications].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The setting cannot be made when ᛒ appears.

Setting whether to perform Encryptions <Set Encryptions>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth setting] ▶ [Set Encryptions].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Note

- The setting cannot be made when Set Authentications is set to [No].
- The setting cannot be made when ᛒ appears.

Setting whether to forward the ring tone to Bluetooth devices <Forward Ring Tone>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth setting] ▶ [Forward Ring Tone].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Setting whether to enter the authentication password <Session no. setting>

When sending all data via Bluetooth communication, set whether to enter the authentication password.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [LifeKit] ▶ [Bluetooth] ▶ [Bluetooth setting] ▶ [Session no. setting].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ▣.**

Reset settings

Returning all functions to their default settings

Restore all user-settable items to their default settings.

- For the default settings ☞“Custom menu/Basic menu list” on P. 458 to P. 475
- For the items to which Kisekae Tool can be set, [White] (for the handset color White) in the [Pre-install] folder can be set regardless of the handset color.
  For the items to which Kisekae Tool can be set ☞“Changing the Custom menu design” on P. 119

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Reset settings].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**

- When the 2in1 is used, the message stating that 2in1 function is turned OFF appears. Select [Agree].

3 **Select [Yes] ▶ [Agree].**

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- The following are not reset (deleted/changed). Refer to the respective pages to reset.
  - ■ Recordings such as Record message (☞P. 79)
  - ■ Phonebook entries (☞P. 104)
  - ■ Select language (☞P. 56)
  - ■ Terminal security code (☞P. 129)
  - ■ Accept calls list (☞P. 138)
  - ■ Reject calls list (☞P. 138)
  - ■ Screen memo (☞P. 180)
  - ■ Mail (☞P. 215)
  - ■ Saved signature (☞P. 219)
  - ■ microSD Card data (☞P. 347)
  - ■ Data box data (☞P. 347)
  - ■ Alarm (☞P. 387)
  - ■ Schedule (☞P. 392)
  - ■ Owner information (☞P. 395)
  - ■ Text memo (☞P. 399)
  - ■ User dictionary (☞P. 422)
  - ■ Download dictionary (☞P. 423)
  - ■ Network service settings (☞P. 426 to P. 440)
- For details on resetting i-mode ☞P. 187
- For details on resetting mail settings ☞P. 221
- For details on resetting 1Seg settings ☞P. 300
- When Reset settings are performed, the i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel ticker appears automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- When Reset settings is performed, 2in1 function OFF is applied. In addition, the following settings are reset.
  - ■ Mode switching
  - ■ Display call/receive No.
  - ■ Stand-by display
  - ■ Number B Ring tone
- Reset settings is not available when the Bluetooth power is ON.

Delete user data

Deleting all saved data

Delete all saved data and return all functions to default settings.

- Protected data in a FOMA terminal is also deleted.
- For the default settings ☞"Custom menu/Basic menu list" on P. 458 to P. 475

Deleted data	Phonebook (including phonebook 2in1 set), PushTalk phonebook, Still picture/Chaku-uta full®/Music&Video Channel/Movie/1Seg data/Melody/PDF files/Kisekae Tool/Machi-chara/Chara-den of Data box, i-αppli, Mail (including "Welcome✨SH906i😊✋" in Inbox), Message R/F, Bookmarks, Screen memo, Download dictionary, Voice memo, Text memo, Alarm settings, Redials, Received calls, Sent messages, Sent mail history, Received mail history, URL history, Signature, User dictionary, Manga&BookReader bookmarks, Folders, SMS, i-αppli mail data, Decome-Templates, Decome-Anime Templates, Record messages (including recorded voice guidance), Data read by Bar code reader, Schedule (including saved/changed holidays), ToruCa, Last URL, Phonebook transmission history, Message (Chaku-moji), Location history, Location service client, Software update-related information (reservation information, update notification stock icon, rewrite notification stock icon, downloaded update file), History of timer recording, Saved data of writing authentication, Replay period information of Uta-hodai

Data returning to default settings	Settings that can be reset (☞P. 411), Set screen, Ring tone, Record message reply message, Phrases, Memory term item, Settings, Terminal security code, Date settings, Custom menu, Basic menu, Shortcut menu, Call duration, Themes, Reply message, USSD, Owner information (excluding own number), PushTalk group, Set PushTalk, Mail member, Entered URL, International prefix, Operation settings for My picture, i-motion, Melody and My Documents of Data box, Mail setting (excluding SMS center, SMS expiry and SMS input character), i-mode setting, i-αppli setting, GPS setting, Operator name display, Network search mode, Data in the broadcast storage area, TVlink, Channel list
Pre-installed data that is also deleted	Decome-Templates, Decome-Anime Templates
Pre-installed data that is not deleted	Melody, My picture, i-motion, Kisekae Tool, Machi-chara, PDF files, Chara-den, i-αppli, Folders

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Delete all data] ▶ [Delete user data].

2 Select [Agree] ▶ enter the terminal security code ■ ▶ [Yes].

- When the 2in1 is used, the message indicating 2in1 function is disabled appears. Select [Agree].
- After the deletion of the user data, the message indicating that the handset will be restarted appears.
- It may take approximately 20 minutes to delete the user data.

Note

- Other functions are not available while collectively deleting data. Receiving voice call/Videophone call/mail, as well as alarms and 1Seg reservation recording are also not available while deleting.
- Delete all data with the battery level ▮▮ or higher. If battery level is low, data may not be completely deleted.
- Do not turn off the handset while deleting.
- Data saved/registered/set in a FOMA card or microSD Card is not deleted.
- Deleting data collectively is not available while other functions are being used.
- While deleting data collectively, the display may become garbled. Do not close the FOMA terminal.
- While Delete user data is being performed, the i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel ticker appears automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.

Using SH-MODE

Default data can be downloaded from the [SH-MODE] site in iMenu.

Select [iMenu] ▶ [メニューリスト] ▶ [ケータイ電話メーカー] ▶ [SH-MODE].

※ The SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.

- Packet transmission charges apply when downloading.

QR code to connect to the site

Deleting secret data collectively <Del secret data>

Delete secret phonebooks and schedule collectively.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Security] ▶ [Delete all data] ▶ [Del secret data].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].**

Character Entry

Refer to “Kuten Code List” in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM or in DoCoMo website for details on “Kuten Code List”. Adobe® Reader® is required to view “Kuten Code List” in PDF format. Install it from the accompanying CD-ROM to your PC if not installed. Refer to “Adobe Reader Help” for details on how to use the software.

Input

Inputting text

Input text for various functions on the FOMA terminal, such as phonebook and mail.

- Connect commercially available Bluetooth compatible keyboard and input text (☞P. 408). Refer to “Bluetooth compatible keyboard” on P. 409 for details on Bluetooth compatible keyboard.

■ Text input methods

Input methods	5-touch	Each key is assigned multiple characters. Character switches each time key is pressed.
	2-touch	Use two-digit combinations to enter character.
	Romaji method	Use the alphabet key on Bluetooth compatible keyboard and enter character in romaji. Only when being connected to the Bluetooth compatible keyboard, it can be selected.
Types of characters	Double-byte	Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols, pictographs
	Single-byte	Katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols
Conversion methods	Quick conversion	For every one to five hiragana characters entered, conversion candidate words starting with those characters appear.
	Guess conversion	After characters are confirmed, the next word is predicted from previous input/ conversion records, appearing as following candidate characters.

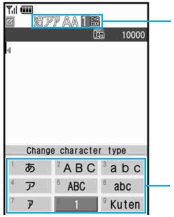
5-touch

5-touch input method text entry

Switching input modes (5-touch input)

Switch input modes to enter various types of text.

1 In the text input screen, press 📖.



■ Input mode layout

Switch input mode palette	Input mode display	Available characters
あ	漢	Kanji/Hiragana
ア	ア	Double-byte katakana
ｱ	ｱ	Single-byte katakana
ＡＢＣ	Ａ	Double-byte alphanumeric characters (upper case)
ａｂｃ	ａ	Double-byte alphanumeric characters (lower case)
ABC	A	Single-byte alphanumeric characters (upper case)
abc	a	Single-byte alphanumeric characters (lower case)
1	1	Single-byte numbers
Kuten	CHR CODE	Kuten code

- Perform one of the following to select input modes of the switch input mode palette.
  - ■ Dial key (1 to 9)
    - • The order of the switch input mode palette corresponds to the keypad layout.
  - ■ Press ✣ to select the input mode ▶ ■.
- When the Input method is Romaji method, "ローマ" appears in the input mode display.

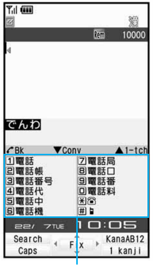
Inputting text

- For details on key assignment ☞P. 477

Example: When entering 電話

1 In the text input screen, enter でんわ.

- でんわ: Press 4 (four times) ▶ ＊ (once) ▶ 0 (three times) ▶ □ ▶ 0 (once).
- To change characters: Press □.



Conversion candidates field

2 Press □ to move the cursor to the conversion candidate field.

- To show the next list: Press 📖.
- To show the previous list: Press ✉.
- To switch between Normal conversion and Quick conversion: Press 📷.
- To change characters (only during Normal conversion): Press ⅰ/📷.

3 Select 電話 ▶ ■.

Note

- In the mode other than the Kanji/Hiragana input mode, the conversion candidate field does not appear, so steps 2 and 3 are not required.

Related Operations

Add dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜)

Enter a character ▶ ＊ (゛) ▶ ＊ (゜) ▶ ＊ (unmarked character) ▶ ＊ (゛)...

- When entering a single-byte katakana: Enter the character ▶ ＊ (゛) ▶ ＊ (゜) ▶ ＊ (ー) ▶ ＊ (↲) ▶ ＊ (゛)...

Add a space at the end of the message

Press □ at the end.

Enter multiple characters assigned to the same key

Enter a character ▶ □.

- Alternatively, press the same key for 1+ seconds.

Switch upper/lower case

Enter a character ▶ ✉.

Convert hiragana to katakana or alphanumeric characters <Kana/English>

Enter hiragana ▶ 📷 ▶ select a conversion candidate ▶ ■.

Scroll backwards through characters

Enter a character ▶ /.

Undo the previous operation <Undo>

Press /.

View the Key list <Key list>

In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Key list].

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note (Related operations)

Entering a space

- A single-byte space will be entered regardless of the input mode. Each space is counted as one character.

Switch upper/lower case

- For alphabet, the input mode is also switched.

Kana/English conversion

- Conversion candidates appear for the katakana, number or alphabet assigned to the key and predicted date and time in both double- and single-byte characters.

Canceling operations (UNDO function)

- Up to 10 previous operations can be canceled. When a message is entered, undo is available only once.
- Undo may not be available depending on the entry screen.

■ 1-character memory conversion <1 chara mem conv>

Set whether to display a kanji or text string that has been entered once as a conversion candidate next time when the first character is entered with conversion.

1 **In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion].**

2 **Select [1 chara mem conv] ▶ select the setting ▶ ■.**

■ When a kanji cannot be found <1 kanji conversion>

Enter a single kanji by its on or kun reading.

1 **In the text input screen, enter hiragana ▶ 📖.**

2 **Select a kanji ▶ ■.**

Note

- There are 6,355 kanji available from JIS level-1/level-2 kanji sets.
- Complex kanji are changed in part or are excluded.

■ Converting multiple hiragana by one-touch key operation <One-touch Conv>

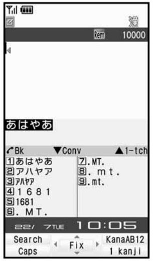
From all the hiragana combinations assigned to each key, conversion candidates appear.

- One-touch conversion works best with nouns.

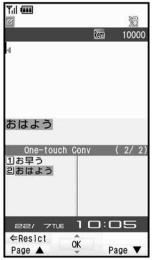
Example: When entering おはよう

1 **In the text input screen, press 1 6 8 1.**

- To enter dakuten/handakuten: Press ＊.
  Example: To enter 会議, press 2 1 2 ＊.



2 **Press ○ to move the cursor to the conversion candidate field.**



3 **Select おはよう ▶ ■.**

Note

Predictive headword conversion

- In One-touch conversion, words that start with the characters assigned to the pressed key (words starting with あ, い, う, え, お when あ is entered) appear according to the time of day. Words shown are already registered and grouped into the following times: 5:00 to 10:59, 11:00 to 16:59, 17:00 to 22:59, and 23:00 to 4:59.

■ Selecting conversion candidates with dial keys <Direct conversion>

When the list number appears in the conversion candidate field when texts are input, press 1 to 9, 0, * or # corresponding to the list number to select a conversion candidate.

1 **In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/ dict] ▶ [Direct conversion].**

2 **Select the setting ▶ ●.**

Note

- When Direct conversion is set to [OFF], the list number does not appear. Input the next text when the cursor is in the conversion candidate field.

Editing text

■ Adding characters

1 **Move the cursor to the location to add characters.**

2 **Enter characters ▶ ●.**

■ Deleting one character

1 **In the text input screen, press CLR.**

- The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.
- When the cursor is on a character, the character at the location is deleted.

■ Deleting characters collectively

1 **In the text input screen, press CLR (for 1+ seconds).**

- When characters are after the cursor, all characters on and after the cursor are deleted.
- If the cursor is at the end of the message, all characters before the cursor are deleted.

Using preset phrases <Insert phrase>

Enter preset phrases (☞P. 480), original phrases (☞P. 420) and mail addresses easily.

1 **In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Insert phrase].**

- Alternatively, press 📖 (for 1+ seconds).
- To switch between Show by category and Show all: Press ≣.

2 **Select a phrase ▶ ● ▶ confirm the phrase ▶ ●.**

Entering pictographs/symbols

- For details on the Pictograph list ☞P. 479
- For details on the Symbols/Special character list ☞P. 478

1 **In the text input screen, press ≣.**

2 **Select a type.**

- To switch between Pictograph and Deco-mail pictograph: Press ≣.
- To switch between single- and double-byte symbols: Press 📷.

3 **Select a pictograph/symbol ▶ ●.**

Note

- Deco-mail pictographs can only be entered for a mail message/ signature. Enter Deco-mail pictographs while composing mail to create Deco-mail.
- Convert keywords “keyword (reading)” to pictographs (☞P. 479).

Continued on next page ▶▶

- For PictographD (Deco-mail pictographs), only Deco-mail pictographs saved in the [Decomail pict] folder in My picture of Data box appear in the conversion candidates field.
- The ten pictographs or symbols used most recently appear on the first line of the list.
- Use the same operation for 2-touch input.

Entering emoticons <Emoticon>

- For details on the Emoticon list ☞P. 480

1 In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Emoticon].

- Alternatively, press ✉ (for 1+ seconds).

2 Select an emoticon ▶ ■.

Note

- Enter かお in hiragana to display emoticons in the kanji conversion candidates list. The contents displayed as candidates differ from those of the Emoticon list.

Using the Bar code reader to enter characters

Input text read from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) into the text input screen while i-mode is connected.

1 In the text input screen of sites, press 📷 ▶ [Quote] ▶ [Bar code reader].

2 Scan data.

- For details on the Bar code reader usage ☞P. 164

Save phrase

Editing/Saving phrases

Register frequently used original phrases and edit preset phrases.

- For details on preset phrases ☞P. 480
- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters for each phrase.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Edit phrase].

2 Select a new registration number/phrase to be edited.

- To save a new phrase: Select [Original phrase] ▶ select a number to register ▶ ↕.
- To edit a phrase: Select a phrase ▶ ↕.

3 Edit the phrase ▶ ■.

Resetting phrases to the default settings <Reset>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Edit phrase].

- To reset all: Press 📷 ▶ [Yes].

2 Select a phrase ▶ 📷.

- To check and reset phrases: Select a phrase ▶ ■ ▶ 📷 ▶ [Yes].

3 Select the reset method ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].

Copy text

Cutting/Copying/Pasting text

- Cut and copy up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters at once.

Copying/Cutting text

1 **In the text input screen, move the cursor to the start point ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy]/[Cut] ▶ ▣.**

- Alternatively, press # (for 1+ seconds) to cut.

2 **Move the cursor to the end point ▶ ▣.**

- To move the cursor to the beginning of a sentence: Press ◧ (for 1+ seconds).
- To move the cursor to the end of a sentence: Press ◨ (for 1+ seconds).
- The highlighted text string is copied or cut.

Copying the contents of mail, etc.

1 **In the message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Move/Copy] ▶ [Copy].**

2 **Select an item to copy ▶ ▣.**

- The address is copied, and the operation ends.

3 **Move the cursor to the start point ▶ ▣.**

4 **Move the cursor to the end point ▶ ▣.**

Pasting text

1 **In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Paste].**

2 **Move the cursor to the paste location ▶ ▣.**

- Alternatively, press * (for 1+ seconds) in the text input screen to paste.

Note

- Cannot paste to a screen in which the Submenu is not displayed.
- The copied/cut text is discarded when the power is turned off.
- In the fields that accept only single-byte characters such as the “Reading” field in the phonebook, only single-byte characters in memory are pasted. Depending on the location, only the allowed number of characters is pasted.

Kuten code input

Inputting kuten code

Use four-digit kuten codes assigned to every single character to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Refer to “Kuten code list” in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on Kuten code list.

1 **Switch the input mode to the kuten code (☞P. 416).**

2 **Enter the kuten code.**

- After the fourth digit is entered, the character appears.

Register words (User dictionary)

Registering frequently used words

Register up to 250 frequently used words with a short keyword. When a keyword is entered, the registered word appears in the candidate list.

- The same keyword can be registered up to five times.

Registering a new word

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary] ▶ [Save new].**

2 **Enter a word ▶ ⊡.**

- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters.
- [↲] (line breaks) cannot be entered.

3 **Enter a keyword ▶ ⊡.**

- Enter up to eight hiragana characters.

Editing registered words

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary].**

- To switch between the word list and the keyword list: Press ≣.

2 **Select a word ▶ ⊡.**

3 **Edit the word ▶ ⊡.**

4 **Edit the keyword ▶ ⊡.**

5 **Select the saving method ▶ ⊡.**

Deleting registered words

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary].**

2 **Select a word ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes].**

Clear memory terms

Resetting memorized conversion candidates

All conversion candidates memorized through functions such as Quick conversion and Guess conversion can be reset.

- Pictograph and symbol conversion candidates are also reset.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Clear memory terms].**

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**

Dwnld dictionary

Using a downloaded dictionary

Download dictionaries from sites, etc. When downloaded dictionaries are set, the terms saved in the dictionaries appear as the conversion candidates.

- Save up to ten dictionaries for Japanese conversion downloaded. Use five of these dictionaries for kanji conversion.
- For details on downloading dictionaries ☞P. 183

Setting/Clearing a dictionary

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary].

- In the text input screen: Press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary] ▶ select a dictionary ● (repeatable).
  - Everytime the dictionary is selected and ● is pressed, set/clear is switched.

2 Select a dictionary ▶ 📷 ▶ [Set dictionary]/[Clear dictionary].

- 📖 appears when the dictionary is set.
- To check the dictionary information: Press 📷 ▶ [Properties].

Checking dictionary contents

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary].

2 Select a dictionary ▶ ●.

- To show the word details: Press ●.
- To switch between the word list and the keyword list: Press ≡.

Note

- If a FOMA card security function mark appears next to the downloaded dictionary, dictionary contents cannot be checked.

Deleting a dictionary

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary].

2 Select a dictionary ▶ 📷 ▶ [Delete].

3 Select the deletion method ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].

Replacing the User dictionary with a download dictionary <Dwld dictionary>

Replace the User dictionary with a download dictionary.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [User dictionary] ▶ 📷 ▶ [Dwld dictionary].

2 Select a save destination ▶ ●.

- In the Set dictionary confirmation screen, select [Yes] to set dictionary.

Note

- The User dictionary is deleted when replaced with a download dictionary.

Related Operations

Edit the title of dictionary replaced with a download dictionary <Change name>

In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary] ▶ select a dictionary ▶ 📷 ▶ [Change name] ▶ edit the title ▶ ●.

Edit the contents of dictionary replaced with a download dictionary <Edit>

In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Text input setting] ▶ [Dwnld dictionary] ▶ select a dictionary ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit].

- For details on how to edit the User dictionary ☞"Registering frequently used words" on P. 422

Guess conversion

Selecting the conversion method

Set to enable/disable Quick conversion and Guess conversion.

1 In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion] ▶ [Quick conversion]/[Guess conversion].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

Setting the priority for conversion candidates

<1st choice genre>

Prioritize the names of entertainers, stations, spots, brands and the emoticons in the conversion candidate list.

1 In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion] ▶ [1st choice genre].

2 Select an item ▣ (repeatable) ▶ ▤.

- ☑ indicates high priority and ☐ low priority.

Including emoticons as conversion candidates

<With emoticon conv>

Set whether to include pictographs/emoticons in the conversion candidates list. If pictographs/emoticons are included, they appear as candidates of characters that may follow emotional adjectives such as “happy”.

1 In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Guess conversion] ▶ [With emoticon conv].

2 Select the setting ▶ ▣.

2-touch

2-touch input method text entry

Setting 2-touch input

1 In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Input method] ▶ [2-touch].

Note

- Katakana/Alphanumeric conversion is not available in 2-touch input.

Related Operations

Return to 5-touch input

In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Chara entry/dict] ▶ [Input method] ▶ [5-touch].

Switching input modes (2-touch input)

1 In the text input screen, press 📖.

2 Press 📖/▭ to select the input mode.

Input mode display	Character to be entered
Full	Double-byte upper case letters
Half	Single-byte upper case letters
CHR CODE	Kuten code

Inputting text

- For details on the key assignment ☞P. 478

1 In the text input screen, enter two digits number.

Example: Press 2 2 ➡ [き].

Network Services

Available network services

- Use the following network services on the FOMA terminal.

Service name	Subscription	Monthly fee	Service name	Subscription	Monthly fee	Service name	Subscription	Monthly fee
Voice Mail Service	Necessary	Fees apply	Public mode (Drive mode)	Not necessary	Free	Multi Number	Necessary	Fees apply
Call Waiting	Necessary	Fees apply	Public mode (Power OFF)	Not necessary	Free	2in1	Necessary	Fees apply
Call Forwarding Service	Necessary	Free	Caller ID Request Service	Not necessary	Free	OFFICEED	Necessary	Fees apply
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not necessary	Free	Dual Network Service	Necessary	Fees apply	Melody Call	Necessary	Fees apply
Notify Caller ID Service	Not necessary	Free	English Guidance	Not necessary	Free			

- “Deactivate” does not mean that the Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or other subscriptions are canceled.
- Network services are not available outside the service area or in a place with no signal.
- “OFFICEED” is a service that requires subscription. Refer to the DoCoMo website for corporations (***http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/***) for further information.
- Add services to the menu when new network services become available from DoCoMo (☞P. 440).
- This manual explains the outline of each network service based on the operation using the FOMA terminal menu. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]” for details.
- For subscription and inquiries, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a service for answering incoming voice/Videophone calls with Replay message and recording callers' messages when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls cannot be answered.

- To prioritize Voice Mail Service when Record message (☞P. 77) is also set, set the ringing time for Voice Mail Service shorter than the answering duration for Record message.
- If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the call is saved as "Missed calls" in "Received calls" and the stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears in stand-by.

Note

- Record up to 20 messages respectively for voice and Videophone calls with approximately 3 minutes of recording time per message. Messages are saved for up to approximately 72 hours.
- Ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed: ☞P. 427) when a call is received while Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate". Answering during the set ringing time connects calls. Calls are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center after set time. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and Received calls. However, when ringing time is set to [0 seconds], calls are not saved in Received calls.
- If a Videophone call is received when Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the call is connected to Voice Mail Service and recording message is activated after the set ringing time passes. Answering during the set ringing time connects calls without connecting to Voice Mail Service.
- Make a voice call to ***1412*** to change the Videophone call settings of Voice Mail Service.
- When a call is connected to Voice Mail Service with Chara-den, the DTMF operations become unavailable. Switch the DTMF mode to [ON] from the Submenu (☞P. 67).
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], select [Number A] or [Number B] to activate/deactivate Voice Mail Service, play messages or set Voice Mail Service.
- Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", Voice Mail Service is stopped automatically.

Basic flow

STEP 1 Activate Voice Mail Service.
STEP 2 Voice/Videophone call is received.
STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.
STEP 4 Caller records a message.
STEP 5 Play back message.

Using the service

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail].

2 Select the service.

- **Select [Check messages].**
- **Select [Play Messages] ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to the voice guidance.**
- **Select [Activate VoiceMail] ▶ [Activate VoiceMail] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Activate VoiceMail] ▶ [Ring time+start] ▶ enter the ringing time ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**
  - Set the ringing time before activating Voice Mail Service.
- **Select [Set ring time] ▶ enter the ringing time ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Deactivate VoiceMail] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Check setting].**
- **Select [Voice Mail setting] ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to the voice guidance.**
- **Select [Notification setting] ▶ [Voice Mail alarm] ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡.**
  - Set the alarm to sound when a new message is stored.
- **Select [Notification setting] ▶ [Delete display] ▶ [Yes].**
  - Stock icons disappear. Alternatively, select the stock icon and press CLR (for 1+ seconds) to delete them.
- **Select [Notification] ▶ [Start notification] ▶ select the setting of call without caller ID ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Notification] ▶ [Stop notification] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Notification] ▶ [Status(Notification)].**

Note

Checking messages

- If there are new messages of voice call, the stock icon ⌂ (voice mail) appears.
- When a Videophone message is received, an SMS informing that a new message is recorded is received.

Playing back messages

- While a stock icon appears, select the stock icon to play back messages.
- Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.
- Videophone messages can be played back by making a Videophone call to ***1417***.

Starting Voice Mail Service

- When 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], [Ring time+start] cannot be selected. Set the ringing time in [Set ring time].
- When 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] and [Ring time+start] is selected, the confirmation screen stating that the ringing time is set with Number A.

Checking the Voice Mail Service setting

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] or [B mode], select which settings of [Number A] or [Number B] to check.

Missed call notification

- SMS notifies missed calls received while the handset is outside the service area, in the Self mode or turned off.
- Missed calls are notified even if Reject all SMS is set.

Call Waiting

Using Call Waiting

Call Waiting is a service for placing the current call on hold and answer a new incoming call when the handset beeps during a call to notify you of another call. In addition, place the current call on hold and make a new call.

- To use Call Waiting, set “Arrival call action” (☞P. 433) to [Answer] in advance. If set differently, answering a new incoming voice call during a voice call is not available even if Call Waiting is activated.

Using the service

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call waiting].**

2 **Select the service.**

- **Select [Activate] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Check setting].**

Note

- Charges are incurred by a caller even when the call is on hold.
- Placing the current voice call on hold and making a voice call to another party is possible even when Call Waiting is deactivated.

Answering a voice call during a call

Place the current call on hold and answer a voice call.

1 **When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press 📞.**

- The original call is automatically placed on hold and an incoming call is connected.
- To switch between callers: Press 📞.
- To disconnect the current call: Press 📷 ▶ [Disconnect].

Note

- When a Videophone call is received during a voice call, the in-call ring tone is not heard and the incoming call cannot be answered. The stock icon appears when a call is ended and the stand-by display reappears.

Disconnecting a call to answer an incoming call

Disconnect a call and answer an incoming call.

1 **When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press ☎.**

- The ring tone for an incoming call sounds.

2 **Press 📞.**

- The incoming call is connected.

Making a separate call during a call

Place the current call on hold and make a separate call.

1 **Dial another party’s phone number during a call and press 📞.**

- The original call is automatically placed on hold.
- To switch between callers: Press 📞.

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service is a service for forwarding voice/ Videophone calls to designated phone numbers when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls are not answered within set ringing time.

- To prioritize Call Forwarding Service when Record message (☞P. 77) is also set, set the ringing time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than the answering duration for Record message.
- If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Call Forwarding Service is set to “Activate”, the call is saved as “Missed call” in “Received calls” and the stock icon ☎ (missed call) appears in stand-by.

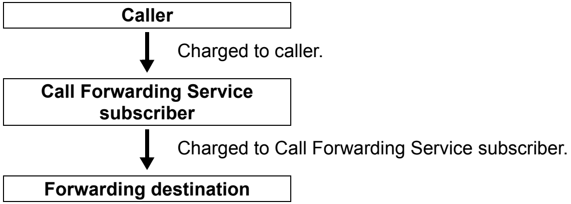
Note

- For Videophone calls, the forwarding guidance is not played. The caller sees a message that the call is being forwarded.
- The ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed: ☞P. 430) when Call Forwarding Service is set to “Activate”. Answering during the set ringing time connects calls. Calls are automatically forwarded to the set destination after the set time passes. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and Received calls. However, when ringing time is set to [0 seconds], calls are not saved in Received calls.
- Collect calls (receiver accepts charges) are not connected when Call Forwarding Service is set to “Activate”.
- Calls received while engaged in a call can be automatically forwarded.
- Call Forwarding is automatically deactivated if Voice Mail Service is set to “Activate”.
- Setting Call Forwarding Service from the FOMA terminal is not available from outside the service area. In such cases, access Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone landline phones and payphones using network security code. Remote control must be set to “Activate” in advance.
- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], select [Number A] or [Number B] to activate/deactivate Call Forwarding Service.

Basic flow

STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.
STEP 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service.
STEP 3 Voice/Videophone call is received.
STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

Call Forwarding Service fees


Caller
Charged to caller.
Call Forwarding Service subscriber
Charged to Call Forwarding Service subscriber.
Forwarding destination

- Operations for setting destination, activating and deactivating are not charged.

Using the service

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call forwarding].

2 Select the service.

- **Select [Activate] ▶ [Forwarding number] ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ⊡.**
  - Register a forwarding number.
- **Select [Activate] ▶ [Set ring time] ▶ enter a ringing time ▶ ⊡.**
  - Set a ring time.
- **Select [Activate] ▶ [Activate] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Register number] ▶ change the phone number ▶ ⊡ ▶ select an item ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Forwarding No. busy] ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Check setting].**

Note

Activating Call Forwarding Service

- When 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], [Forwarding number] or [Set ring time] cannot be selected.
- Calls are automatically forwarded without sounding the ring tone while the handset is outside the service area, in the Self mode or turned off.
- Answer while the ring tone is ringing to connect a call.

Changing the forwarding destination

- When 2in1 mode is set to [B mode], [Change+activate] cannot be selected.
- When 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] and [Change+activate] is selected, the confirmation screen stating that the forwarding destination is changed with Number A.

Checking the Call Forwarding Service settings

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode] or [B mode], select which settings of [Number A] or [Number B] to check.

Setting Call Forwarding guidance

1 In stand-by, press 1 4 2 9 ▶ ☎.

- Set according to the voice guidance.

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Register phone numbers for “nuisance calls” such as prank calls. When numbers are registered for the Nuisance Call Blocking Service, calls are automatically rejected and a guidance answers them.

- A ring tone does not sound when calls are received from registered numbers. In addition, the calls are not saved in Received calls.
- Reject callers with no ID.
- International calls may not be rejected.

■ Responses when other services are active

The following actions are taken when various services are activated.

Service	Response
Voice Mail Service	Rejection message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Rejection message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting	Rejection message is played.
Caller ID Request Service	Rejection message is played.

- When a PushTalk call is received, a guidance message is not played to the other party and the call is disconnected.

Using the service

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Bar nuisance calls].

2 Select the service.

- **Select [Register caller] ▶ [Yes].**
  - Register the last caller.
- **Select [Register selected No] ▶ select the saving method ▶ ▣ ▶ select a phone number ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**
  - Select a phone number to register.
- **Select [Delete all entries] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Delete last entry] ▶ [Yes].**
  - The last saved number is deleted. Repeat this operation to delete numbers individually from the last saved number.
- **Select [Check No of entries].**

Note

- Use Delete all entries or Delete last entry to delete phone numbers. Deleting only specified numbers cannot be performed.

Caller ID request

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request Service is a service for playing Caller ID Request for voice/Videophone calls without caller ID and disconnecting the calls automatically.

- When calls are not received with the Caller ID Request Service, the calls are not saved in “Received calls” and the stock icon ☎ (missed call) does not appear.
- When PushTalk is received without caller ID, a message is not played and the call is disconnected.

■ Responses when other services are active

The following actions are taken when Caller ID Request Service is set to “Activate” along with the various services.

Service	Response
Voice Mail Service	Caller ID request message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Caller ID request message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting	Caller ID request message is played.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Rejection message is played when called by a rejected nuisance number.

Using the service

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Caller ID request].

2 Select the service.

- **Select [Activate] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].**
- **Select [Check setting].**

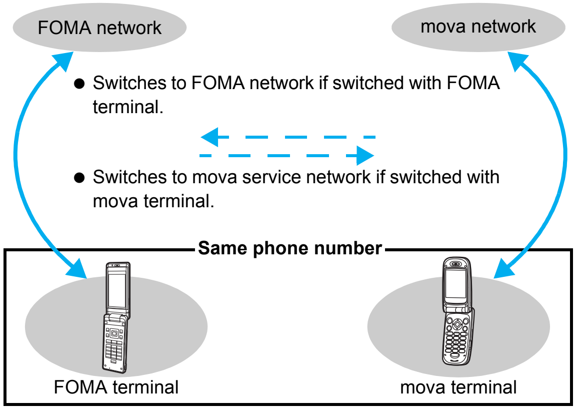
Dual Network Service

Using Dual Network Service

A mova terminal is available with a phone number registered for the FOMA terminal. FOMA and mova can be switched depending on the service area.

- FOMA and mova terminals cannot be used simultaneously.
- Enter a four-digit number for the network security code (☞P. 128).

■ Switching Dual Network Service


FOMA network
mova network
● Switches to FOMA network if switched with FOMA terminal.
● Switches to mova service network if switched with mova terminal.
Same phone number
FOMA terminal
mova terminal

- Certain services are restricted.
- Switch using unavailable terminals for the Dual Network Service.

Using the service

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Dual network].**

2 **Select the service.**

- ◆ **Select [Switching] ▶ enter the network security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**
- ◆ **Select [Status request].**

English guidance

Switching the guidance language

Change into English the guidance language for network service settings such as "Voice Mail Service" and the voice guidance notifying that the handset is outside the service area.

- If caller subscribes to this service, caller's settings are prioritized.

■ Available guidances

	Menu item	Details
Outgoing (Played when setting network services)	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
	English	All guidances are in English.
Incoming (Played when called)	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
	Japanese+ English	English guidance follows Japanese guidance.
	English+ Japanese	Japanese guidance follows English guidance.

Using the service

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [English guidance].**

2 **Select the service.**

- **Select [Guidance setting] ▶ select the guidance type ▶ ⊡ ▶ select the language ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Check setting].**

Service number

Using Service numbers

Calls can be made to Repair inquiries and General inquiries.

- Items may appear differently or may not appear depending on the FOMA card to be used.

ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair inquiries)	Calls can be made to Repair inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内･受付 (General inquiries)	Calls can be made to General inquiries.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Service number].**

2 **Select an item ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**

Note

- When the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode], select [Number A]/[Number B] in the selection screen before calling.

Arrival Call Act

Selecting actions for incoming calls during a call

Select actions for voice calls received during a voice call if "Voice Mail Service", "Call Forwarding Service", or "Call Waiting" is subscribed.

- If "Voice Mail Service", "Call Forwarding Service", or "Call Waiting" is not subscribed, calls cannot be answered during a call.
- Set arrival actions to "Activate" to use Arrival call action.

■ Available actions

Voice Mail	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to the Voice Mail Service center. Messages are stored regardless of Voice Mail Service settings.
Call forwarding	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to the Call Forwarding Service center. Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call Forwarding Service settings.
Call Rejection	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically rejected.
Answer	Follows Call Waiting settings if set to "Activate". If set to "Deactivate", one of the following applies. ● Disconnect the current call and answer an incoming call. ● Manually connect incoming calls to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or reject. ● Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service settings are used if set to "Activate".

- To use Call Waiting, set Arrival Call Act to [Answer].
- No matter the Arrival call action setting, if a call is received while engaged in another call, it is saved in Received calls.

Using the service

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [In-call arrival act] ▶ [Arrival Call Act].**
2. **Select an arrival action ▶ ▣.**

Set arrival act

Activating/Deactivating arrival actions

Set arrival actions to “Activate” to receive another voice call according to Arrival Call Action (☞P. 433) during a call.

Using the service

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [In-call arrival act] ▶ [Set arrival act].**
2. **Select the service.**
   - **Select [Activate] ▶ [Yes].**
   - **Select [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].**
   - **Select [Check setting].**

Remote control

Setting remote control

Set “Voice Mail Service” or “Call Forwarding Service” remotely from touch-tone landline phones, payphones and DoCoMo mobile phones.

- Remote control is also available from outside the FOMA service area.
- To perform remote operations, set Remote control to “Activate” in advance.
- To use network service overseas, set Remote control to “Activate”.

Using the service

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Remote control].**
2. **Select the service.**
   - **Select [Activate] ▶ [Yes].**
   - **Select [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes].**
   - **Select [Check setting].**

■ Accessing network services from other phones

- For details on operating Network services from a payphone and others, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

Multi Number

Using Multi Number

Multi Number is a service for using up to two phone numbers, Additional Number1 and Additional Number2, besides Basic Number on the FOMA terminal.

- Multi Number settings (name, phone number, etc.) registered in the FOMA terminal may be deleted when a FOMA card is removed or replaced. In such cases, register again.
- A registered name appears according to each Multi Number (Basic Number/Additional Number1/Additional Number2) on the screen when a call is being made/received.
- When making a call from Redial or Received calls, the previously used Multi Number is displayed and dialed.
- The registered name appears in the Multi Number selection screen when calling or the incoming call screen.

Using the service

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Multi number].**

2 Select the service.

- **Select [Set multi number] ▶ select a phone number to use ▶ ■ ▶ [Yes].**
  - Set a phone number to use.
- **Select [Check setting].**
- **Select [Number setting] ▶ [Additional No1]/[Additional No2] ▶ enter a name ▶ ■ ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ■ ▶ select a ring tone ▶ ≣.**
  - Register Multi Numbers.
  - Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters for a name, and 26 digits for a phone number.

Calling from the selected phone number

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ 📷 ▶ [Sel Multi number].

2 Select a phone number to use ▶ ■ ▶ ☎ (Phone)/ ≣ (V.phone).

Note

- ● Even if the submenu is displayed in the phonebook, Redial, or Received calls details screen, the phone number can be selected.
- ● When the 2in1 is used, Multi Number cannot be used.

Editing/Deleting Multi Number

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Multi number] ▶ [Number setting].

2 Select a number ▶ ■ ▶ select an item.

- **Select [Edit] ▶ edit a Multi Number.**
  - Editing procedures are the same as when saving (☞P. 435).
- **Select [Delete] ▶ [Yes].**

2in1

Using 2in1

2in1 is a service that two phone numbers and two mail addresses can be used on one mobile phone with dedicated mode function as if two different mobile phones are used.

A mode	Available operations are calling from your phone number (Number A), sending/receiving i-mode mail (Address A) and viewing related information.
B mode	Available operations are calling from the 2in1 phone number (Number B), accessing to sites for which WEB mail (Address B) can be used and viewing related information.
Dual mode	Available operations are those of both the A and B modes.

- ● Use Address B to exchange mail at the dedicated WEB mail site.
- ● Packet transmission is available even in the B mode if i-mode is subscribed.
- ● For details on using functions in each mode ☞P. 438
- ● Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [2in1]” for details on 2in1.

Starting to use 2in1 <2in1 setting>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

- ● In stand-by: Press 8 (for 1+ seconds).
  - When the 2in1 is used, the 2in1 mode is switched.

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ■.

- ● When the 2in1 has already been used, the 2in1 setting menu screen appears.

3 Select [Yes].

Switching modes <Mode switching>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

- In stand-by: Press 8 (for 1+ seconds).

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.

3 Select [Mode switching] ▶ select the mode ▶ ⊡.

■ Selecting a phone number to call when the Dual mode is set

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ 📷 ▶ [Select 2in1].

2 Select a phone number to call ▶ ⊡ ▶ 📞 (Phone)/ ☰ (V.phone).

Note

- Even if the submenu is displayed in the phonebook, Redial, or Received calls details screen, the phone number can be selected.

Setting the mode to be registered in the phonebook <Phonebook 2in1 set>

Available phonebook is automatically switched depending on the mode of the 2in1. In the mode of 2in1 when entries are saved to a phonebook, the Phonebook 2in1 setting is saved and can be changed in the following way.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Phonebook 2in1 set].

3 Select the setting method.

- **Select [Selection setting] ▶ select a name ⊡ (repeatable) ▶ 📷.**
- **Select [Collective grp set] ▶ select a group ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Set to all].**

4 Select the setting to register ▶ ⊡.

- If [B] is set to a phone number saved in the PushTalk phonebook, a message stating that PushTalk transmission cannot be sent appears.

Note

- When saving to FOMA card phonebook, the mode is set to [Common] and cannot be changed even if saving with any modes.

Setting the stand-by display for each mode <Stand-by display>

Set the stand-by displays of [Dual mode] and [B mode].

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Stand-by display].

3 Select an item ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Settings].

4 Select an image ▶ ☰ ▶ [Yes].

Note

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIF, and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. i-motion and i-αppli are not available.
- Even if i-αppli stand-by is set when the mode of 2in1 is set to [B mode] or [Dual mode], it cannot be set to the stand-by display of [B mode] or [Dual mode]. It is set to the stand-by display of [A mode].

Setting the color scheme of the call/receive display of Number B <Disp. Call/Rcv No.>

In order to differentiate the calling/receiving of Number B, the phone number, the name saved in the phonebook or the reason of non-disclosure can be displayed in gray on the call/receive screen or voice call screen regardless of Color theme setting.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Set call/ receive No.] ▶ [Disp. Call/Rcv No.] ▶ [ID display ON].

Changing the ring tone of Number B <Number B Ring tone>

Set the ring tone for when a call is received with Number B or mail is received with Address B.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Set call/ receive No.] ▶ [Number B Ring tone].

3 Select an item ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Settings].

4 Select a ring tone ▶ ≣.

- For details on selecting Number B ring tone ☞step 3 of "Changing the ring tone" on P. 108

Note

- For User unset calls, the normal Select ring tone is followed regardless of Number B Ring tone.

Deactivating 2in1 <2in1 function OFF>

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [2in1 function OFF] ▶ [Yes].

Note

- When a change for the Number B of 2in1 or a FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 subscriber) is performed, use any of the following methods to obtain the correct Number B.
  - ■ Set 2in1 function OFF and then perform 2in1 setting again to set 2in1 function ON
  - ■ Check the 2in1 subscription
- When a FOMA card exchange (2in1 subscriber → 2in1 nonsubscriber) is performed, set 2in1 function OFF.

Restricting calls <Receive avoidance>

Restrict calls of Number A and Number B. In conjunction with the mode of 2in1, set to accept only calls of Number A in the A mode and only calls of Number B in the B mode, and calls of both Number A and B in the Dual mode. Also, set Receive avoidance from abroad.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [2in1 setting].

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Receive avoidance].

3 Set the receive avoidance.

- ◆ **Select [Change rcv. avoid] ▶ select the number field to avoid ▶ ⊡ ▶ select the setting ▶ ⊡ ▶ ≣ ▶ [Agree].**
- ◆ **Select [Check rcv. avoid] ▶ [Yes] ▶ [Agree].**
- ◆ **Select [Mode link setting] ▶ [Yes] ▶ [Agree].**
  - • Set Mode link to "Activate"/"Deactivate".
- ◆ **Select [Rcv. avoid. (abroad)] ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to the voice guidance.**
  - • Set Receive avoidance overseas.

Note

Mode link setting

- Mode link setting is set to "Activate", the modes cannot be switched outside the service area.

Using functions in each mode

The following functions operate differently depending on the mode used (Functions that operate in the same way as the A mode are excluded).

Service		A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Voice/ Videophone call	Making a call	Number A	Number B	Selectable when making a call*1
	Receiving a call	All (Can be restricted with Receive avoidance)*2, 3, 4		
Phonebook*5	Display	[A] and [Common]	[B] and [Common]	All
	Converting a name*6	[A] and [Common]	[B] and [Common]	All
	Phonebook 2in1 setting when saving a new entry	[A]	[B]	[A]
	Receiving all entries from Ir exchange/iC transmission/Bluetooth communication	Copy the Phonebook 2in1 setting of the sender*7		
	Receiving one entry from Ir exchange/iC transmission/Bluetooth communication	[A]	[B]	[A]
	Copy to microSD Card	Copy single entry/all entries in a group/all entries/selected entries: [Common] for the Phonebook 2in1 setting.		
	Copy from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card	[Common] for the Phonebook 2in1 setting		
	Copy from FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset	[A]	[B]	[A]
Redial	Display	Number A outgoing call	Number B outgoing call	All outgoing call
Received calls	Display	Number A incoming call	Number B incoming call	All incoming call
Mail/SMS	Display	●Mail sent or received with Address A. ●SMS sent or received with Number A.	FOMA terminal ●Mail that is received with Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal (mail for which [端末に保存] is selected on the WEB mail site). Also displays a new mail notice and alarm notice. ●SMS received with Number B. WEB mail site ●Mail sent or received with Address B.	FOMA terminal ●Mail sent or received with Address A and mail that is received with Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also displays a new mail notice and alarm notice. ●SMS sent or received with Number A. ●SMS received with Number B. WEB mail site ●Mail sent or received with Address B.
	Send	FOMA terminal ●Mail from Address A. ●SMS from Number A.	FOMA terminal ●Mail/SMS cannot be sent. WEB mail site ●Mail from Address B.	FOMA terminal ●Mail from Address A.*8 ●SMS from Number A. WEB mail site ●Mail from Address B.

Service		A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Mail/SMS	Receive	● Receives mail that is addressed to Address A/SMS that is addressed to Number A (The terminal rings). ● Receives mail, a new mail notice and alarm notice that is addressed to Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also receives SMS that is addressed to Number B (The terminal does not ring).	● Receives mail that is addressed to Address A/SMS that is addressed to Number A (The terminal does not ring). ● Receives mail, a new mail notice and alarm notice that is addressed to Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also receives SMS that is addressed to Number B (The terminal rings).	● Receives mail that is addressed to Address A/SMS that is addressed to Number A (The terminal rings). ● Receives mail, a new mail notice and alarm notice that is addressed to Address B and saved in the FOMA terminal. Also receives SMS that is addressed to Number B (The terminal rings).
	Receiving all entries from Ir exchange/iC transmission/Bluetooth communication	Copy the status of the sender*9		
	Receiving one entry from Ir exchange/iC transmission/Bluetooth communication	A		
	Copy to microSD Card	Copy all entries/single entry/selected entries/all entries in a folder: A		
	Copy from the FOMA terminal handset to the FOMA card (SMS only)	A		
	Copy from the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal handset (SMS only)	A		
PushTalk	Send	Number A	Not available	Number A
	Receive	Available with Number A		
	PushTalk phonebook	Can be displayed	Cannot be displayed	Can be displayed
i-αppli		All available	Partially available*10	Partially available*11
Own number		Number A and Address A	Number B and Address B	Number A and Address A/ Number B and Address B

*1 At default, calls are made from Number A when the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [A] and [Common] is used. Calls are made from Number B when the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B].

*2 In the setting of Accept calls, phone numbers of the phonebook, which is displayed in the used mode, are received (phone numbers of the phonebook saved in other modes and not displayed are rejected).

*3 In the setting of Reject calls, phone numbers of the phonebook, which is displayed in the used mode, are rejected (phone numbers of the phonebook saved in other modes and not displayed are received).

*4 In the setting of Reject unknown, phone numbers of the phonebook other than the one, which is displayed in the used mode, are rejected (phone numbers of the phonebook saved in other modes and not displayed are rejected).

*5 Set secret is available regardless of Phonebook 2in1 set.

*6 This is a function that compares the items (caller's/receiver's number (voice/Videophone call), sender's/receiver's number (SMS), sender's/receiver's address (Mail)) with the phonebook in which the items are saved, and converts the items to the names of the phonebook and displays the names.

*7 [A] in Phonebook 2in1 set is made valid if the sender's terminal does not support the 2in1 setting.

*8 In the Dual mode, a destination address for new mail can be selected from the phonebook whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] as well. However, the new mail is sent from Address A.

*9 A is made valid if the sender's terminal does not support the 2in1 setting.

*10 Message applications, mail applications and applications set to the stand-by are excluded.

*11 Applications set to the stand-by are excluded.

OFFICEED

Using OFFICEED

“OFFICEED” is the in-group flat-rate service offered with a specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). Using this service requires a separate subscription. Refer to the DoCoMo website for corporations (*http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/*) for further information.

※ The OFFICEED is only available in Japanese.

Additional services (USSD)

Using additional services

Save and use new DoCoMo network services when they are added.

- Save these new service special numbers or codes on the FOMA terminal.
- When there is a service code, it is saved as a “USSD” on the FOMA terminal.

Using the service

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Additional service] ▶ [USSD].**
2. **Select the service.**
   - **Select a number to save ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit] ▶ enter a service name ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the special number/service code ▶ ▣.**
     - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a service name.
   - **Select a service ▶ ▣.**

Note

- Save up to ten new DoCoMo network services.

Deleting registered services

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Additional service] ▶ [USSD].**
2. **Select a service ▶ 📷.**
3. **Select the deletion method.**
   - **Select [Delete one].**
   - **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣.**
4. **Select [Yes].**

Changing the receive display for saved service <Reply message>

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Additional service] ▶ [Reply message].**
2. **Select the receive display ▶ 📷.**
3. **Edit.**
   - **Select [Edit] ▶ enter a receive display name ▶ ▣ ▶ enter the special number/service code ▶ ▣.**
   - **Select [Delete one] ▶ [Yes].**
   - **Select [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ▣ ▶ [Yes].**

PC Connection

Refer to “Manual for PC Connection” in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM* or in DoCoMo website for details on data communication.
Adobe® Reader® is required to view “Manual for PC Connection” in PDF format. Install it from the accompanying CD-ROM to your PC if not installed. Refer to “Adobe Reader Help” for details on how to use the software.

* Place the accompanying CD-ROM in the PC and the initial screen appears. Click [取扱説明書] (User’s Manual) ▶ [パソコン接続マニュアル(PDFファイル)] (Manual for PC Connection (PDF file)).
If the initial screen does not appear, click [マイコンピュータ] (My Computer) ▶ select and right-click [FOMA_SH906i], click [エクスプローラ] (Explorer), double-click [manual] and double-click [SH906i_E_Manual.pdf].

Data communication

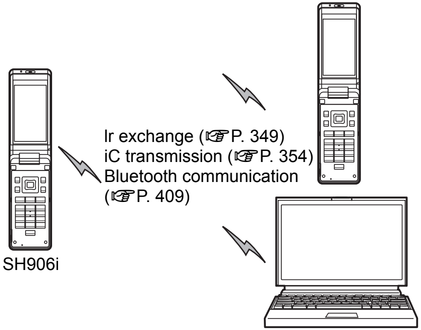
Data communication available from the FOMA terminal

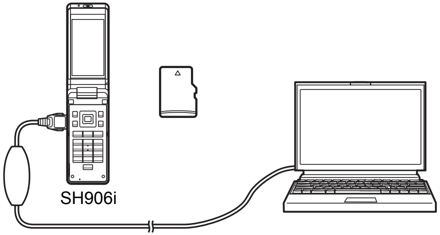
The FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- The FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarionⅡ and sigmarionⅢ. However, the data is sent/received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps. The high-speed communication for HIGH-SPEED area is not supported. Update musea and sigmarionⅡ before using.
  Refer to the DoCoMo website for details on how to update.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- Unable to use 64K data communication by connecting a PC, etc. overseas.
- To use packet transmission overseas, communicate with IP connection (PPP connection is not available for packet transmission).

Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

Send or receive data such as images, music, phonebook entries, and messages between the FOMA terminal and another FOMA terminal or PC, etc.




SH906i
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
(sold separately)
microSD Card (☞P. 332)
DoCoMo keitai datalink (☞P. 446)

Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary.

Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection services “mopera U” and “mopera”, and performs the data transmission (A best-effort system is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions).

- For the packet transmission using mopera U, the data can be sent and received at speeds up to 384 kbps and 3.6 Mbps respectively.
- The data is sent and received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps outside the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area or when the packet transmission is performed using mopera.

For a packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) or Bluetooth function and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for when sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds.

Note that sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible (☞P. 382).

■ 64K data communication

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communication, such as the DoCoMo Internet communication services “mopera U” and “mopera”, or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point.

For 64K data communication, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 or Bluetooth function and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents.

Note that a long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

Things to keep in mind

■ Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet connection services “mopera U” and “mopera”. Subscription to “mopera U” requires a charge.

■ Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for a packet transmission and 64K data communication differ. For a packet transmission, use a host that supports the FOMA packet transmission, and for a 64K data communication, use a host that supports the FOMA 64K data communication or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.

■ User authentication

Depending on the host, a user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using a communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

■ Packet transmission and 64K data communication conditions

The following conditions are necessary for a data transmission (packet transmission/64K data communication) using the FOMA terminal in Japan.

- The PC must support the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.
- When using Bluetooth function, PC must be compatible with Bluetooth specification ver. 2.0+EDR (Dial-up Networking Profile).
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For a packet transmission, the access point must be compatible with the FOMA packet transmission.
- For a 64K data communication, the host must support the FOMA 64K data communication or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

Note

- When performing a packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

Before use

Operating environment

The following lists the operating requirements for using data communications.

Item	System requirements	
	FOMA communication setting file FOMA PC setup software	FirstPass PC software
PC	PC/AT compatible When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately): A USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) When using Bluetooth function: Bluetooth specification ver. 2.0+EDR-compliant (Dial-up Networking Profile)	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese versions)	
Required memory*	Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB	Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB
Hard disk*	At least 5 MB free space	At least 10 MB free space
Browser	–	Windows 2000, Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 or later Windows Vista: Internet Explorer 7.0 or later

* Required memory and hard disk are for the “FOMA PC setup software” and “FirstPass PC software” operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
- Depending on the operating environment, the use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

Required equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately)* or FOMA USB Cable (sold separately)*
- CD-ROM “FOMA SH906i CD-ROM” (accessory)

* For USB connection

Note

- Use a dedicated USB cable “FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02” or “FOMA USB Cable”. USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.
- The use of USB HUB may not work correctly.

General flow to prepare for data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) is required to install the FOMA communication setting file.

Download and install the FOMA communication setting file

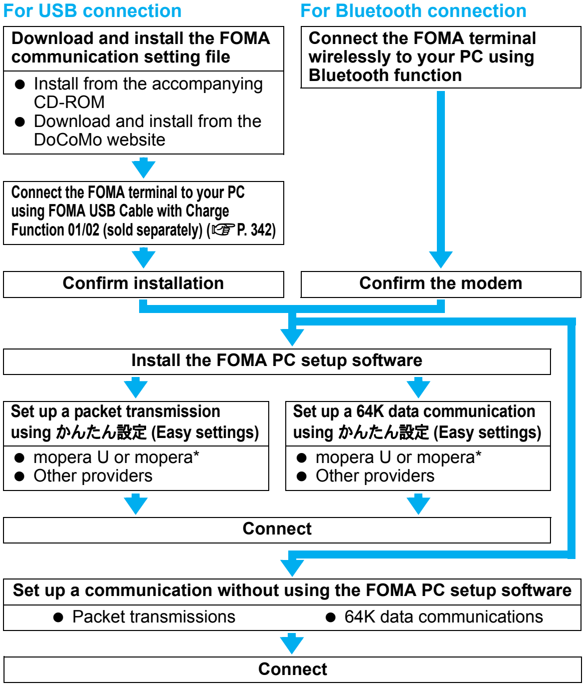
- Install from the accompanying CD-ROM
- Download and install from the DoCoMo website

↓

Data transfer

General flow to prepare for data communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use a packet transmission and 64K data communication. The general flow is as shown below.



For USB connection

Download and install the FOMA communication setting file
- Install from the accompanying CD-ROM
- Download and install from the DoCoMo website

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) (☞P. 342)

Confirm installation

For Bluetooth connection

Connect the FOMA terminal wirelessly to your PC using Bluetooth function

Confirm the modem

Install the FOMA PC setup software

Set up a packet transmission using かんたん設定 (Easy settings)
- mopera U or mopera*
- Other providers

Set up a 64K data communication using かんたん設定 (Easy settings)
- mopera U or mopera*
- Other providers

Connect

Set up a communication without using the FOMA PC setup software
- Packet transmissions
- 64K data communications

Connect

* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for broadband Internet connection, etc. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

FOMA communication setting file

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 for a data communication, installation of the FOMA communication setting file from the accompanying CD-ROM is required.

Preparing Bluetooth connection

Make data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal wirelessly to a Bluetooth communication compatible PC.

- For details on Bluetooth connection ☞P. 402

FOMA PC setup software/FirstPass PC software

Install the FOMA PC setup software from the accompanying CD-ROM to a PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform a packet transmission and 64K data communication connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC.

The FirstPass PC software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal.

Refer to FirstPassManual on the CD-ROM for details. Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format).

AT commands

AT commands are commands used to set the FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations.
Refer to “Manual for PC Connection” in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on AT commands.

CD-ROM

The accompanying CD-ROM in this manual contains the software for data transmissions on the FOMA terminal and the manuals (in PDF format) such as “Manual for PC Connection” and “Kuten Code List”. Refer to the accompanying CD-ROM for details.

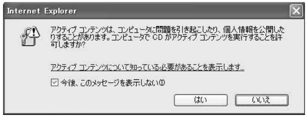
■ Contained software and PDF

- FOMA通信設定ファイル
- FOMA PC設定ソフト
- FOMAバイトカウンタ
- ドコモケータイdatalinkのご案内
- ｉモード.net 新着確認ツールのご案内
- FirstPass PCソフト
- mopera Uのご案内 (mopera Uかんたんスタート/U かんたん接続設定ソフト/FOMAバイトカウンタ/U オリジナルデータ取得ソフト)
- ナップスター®のご案内
- パソコン接続マニュアル and “Manual for PC Connection” in PDF format
- 区点コード一覧 and “Kuten Code List” in PDF format
- Adobe® Reader®
- 内蔵辞書 (for Manga&BookReader)

The following warning message may appear when a CD-ROM is set in a PC. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

Click [はい] (Yes).

- The following screen is an example for Windows XP. The screen depends on your PC.



アクティブ コンテンツは、コンピュータに問題を引き起こしたり、個人情報を公開したりすることがあります。コンピュータで CD がアクティブ コンテンツを実行することを許可しますか?

アクティブ コンテンツについて知っている必要があることを表示します...

☑ 今後、このメッセージを表示しない(D)

DoCoMo keitai datalink

Use the DoCoMo keitai datalink software to back up the data such as “phonebook” and “mail” from the user’s mobile phone to a PC and edit them. The software can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website. Refer to the following URL for details and downloading. Alternatively, access the following page using the accompanying CD-ROM.
http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/
※ The DoCoMo keitai datalink is only available in Japanese.

Refer to the web page above for details on downloading, transferable data, operating environment such as compatible OS, installing and operating instructions, restrictions, etc.
Refer to the software’s help feature for the operation procedure after installation.
A FOMA USB Cable (sold separately) is required to use the DoCoMo keitai datalink.

Overseas Use

Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that enables you, using overseas telecommunications carrier's networks, to make calls and use i-mode.

Use this FOMA terminal for voice/Videophone calls, i-mode and SMS with the phone number and mail address used in Japan. Network services such as Voice Mail and Call Forwarding Services can also be used.

- This service is available in the 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service areas. Refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website" for details on the area.
- By default, the FOMA terminal is set to automatically switch networks (☞P. 454).

Country codes of major countries

The following shows "Country code" used when making international calls (☞P. 68) or setting International dial assist (☞P. 68).

- For other country codes and details, refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website".

(As of April 2008)

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Australia	61	Maldives	960
Austria	43	Netherlands	31
Belgium	32	New Caledonia	687
Brazil	55	New Zealand	64
Canada	1	Norway	47
China	86	Peru	51
Czech	420	Philippines	63
Egypt	20	Russia	7
Fiji	679	Singapore	65
Finland	358	South Korea	82
France	33	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Hong Kong	852	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hungary	36		
India	91	Taiwan	886
Indonesia	62	Thailand	66
Italy	39	Turkey	90
Japan	81	U.K.	44
Macau	853	U.S.A.	1
Malaysia	60	Vietnam	84

Services available overseas

The communication services available overseas are as follows.

Communication service	Explanation	3G	GSM	GPRS
Voice call	Make or receive calls in your country of stay or make international calls to Japan or to other countries with the same phone number as used in Japan while abroad.	○	○	○
Videophone	Make international Videophone calls to users of the specified 3G telecommunications carriers overseas and FOMA users in Japan.	○	×	×
i-mode mail	Send or receive i-mode mail overseas with the same address as used in Japan.	○	×	○
i-mode	Use i-mode overseas.	○	×	○
i-Channel	Use i-Channel overseas.	○	×	○
SMS	Send or receive SMS overseas with the same phone number as used in Japan.	○	○	○
Data communication (packet transmission)	Use packet transmission overseas.	○	×	○

- Some communication services are not available depending on the network/carrier. Refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website" for details.
- Communication charges are incurred for every reception of i-Channel overseas (the domestic talk-free service does not apply). In addition, communication charges for automatically updating "ベーシックチャネル (Basic channel)" are incurred.
- Unable to use 64K data communication by connecting a PC, etc. overseas.
- 日英版/日中版しゃべって翻訳 for SH (J-E/J-C Speech Translation for SH) is available overseas (☞P. 240).
- GPS function is not available overseas. An error screen appears and charges are incurred when the site of GPS Service settings is accessed overseas.
- When the 2in1 is used, calling from Number B is not available overseas.
- When Multi Number is used, calling from Additional Number is not available overseas.

Before using overseas

The following items must be checked before departure, at your country of stay, and after homecoming.

Preparation before departure

Prepare below in Japan before using the FOMA terminal overseas.

■ About contract

- If subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, a subscription for "WORLD WING" is not required. However, if a subscription for "WORLD WING" is canceled at or after a subscription for the FOMA service, a subscription for "WORLD WING" is required again.
- If subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but not subscribed to "WORLD WING", a subscription for "WORLD WING" is required. Some payment plans are not available.
- Insert the WORLD WING compatible FOMA card (other than blue) to the FOMA terminal (☞P. 47).

About charging batteries

- Precautions for handling the AC adapter ☞"Handling the adapters (chargers)" on P. 18
- Methods for charging the AC adapter ☞"Charging" on P. 51

About browsing i-mode sites

To browse i-mode site overseas, the settings for overseas use must be made from iMenu in advance.

i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [English] ▶ [Options] ▶ [International Settings] ▶ [i-mode services Settings].

- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version" for details.

About setting network service

If subscribed to network services, Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or other services can be used overseas.

- Some network services may not be set or checked depending on overseas telecommunications carrier. In addition, some network services are available only in Japan. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" before departure.
- To use network services overseas, set Remote control (☞P. 434, P. 456) to "Activate".

About inquiries overseas

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of the FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" on the back of this manual. Note that any call or transmission charges incurred after the FOMA terminal is lost or stolen are charged to the subscriber.

- Add the "International call access code" or "International prefix number for the universal number" that is assigned to your country of stay, to the head of your phone number for inquiries.
- For the latest information of the international call access code and the international prefix number for the universal number, refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website".

International call access codes of major countries (Table 1)

The following shows the International call access codes of major countries (As of March 2008).

- Communication charges to Japan will apply.

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Australia	0011	Monaco	00
Belgium	00	Netherlands	00
Brazil	0021/ 0014	New Zealand	00
		Norway	00
Canada	011	Philippines	00
China	00	Poland	00
Czech	00	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Russia	810
Finland	00	Singapore	001
France	00	South Korea	001
Germany	00	Spain	00
Greece	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	U.A.E.	00
Italy	00	U.K.	00
Luxemburg	00	U.S.A.	011
Macau	00	Vietnam	00
Malaysia	00		

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2)

The following shows the International prefix number for the universal number of each country (As of March 2008).

- Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.
- Communication charges to your country of stay will apply when calling from the mobile phone.

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Argentina	00	Luxemburg	00
Australia	0011	Malaysia	00
Austria	00	Netherlands	00
Belgium	00	New Zealand	00
Brazil	0021	Norway	00
Bulgaria	00	Peru	00
Canada	011	Philippines	00
China	00	Portugal	00
Columbia	009	Singapore	001
Denmark	00	South Africa	09
Finland	990	South Korea	001
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	00
Ireland	00	Thailand	001
Israel	014	U.K.	00
Italy	00	U.S.A.	011

- Some codes may not be used.
- Note that the universal number may not be used for calls from a mobile phone, payphone or hotel.
- The universal number can be used only for countries listed above.
- Calling from a hotel may cost you extra call charges requested by the hotel (You are responsible for the call charges). Confirm with the hotel before making calls.

Using at your country of stay

The service is available in the 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service areas.

The FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network when the power is turned on, and to be connected to the available telecommunications carrier in your country of stay.

- If the connected telecommunications carrier is changed when Auto time correction (☞P. 57) is set to [ON], a screen notifying that time difference is adjusted may appear.
- When Operator name display (☞P. 455) is set to [Display on], the telecommunications carrier connected appears in stand-by.
- When Clock display (☞P. 115) is set to [ON(Large)], Japan time appears above the local time (excluding regions keeping the same standard time as Japan time).
- Talk time or stand-by time may be reduced to half the normal time depending on the network condition of your country of stay.

Setting after homecoming

By default, the FOMA terminal is set to automatically search for the network and to be connected to the FOMA network when the power is turned on after homecoming.

Reset the Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo).

- If the Network search mode is set to [Manual], switch to the FOMA network (DoCoMo) manually or change to [Auto].
- Set the 3G/GSM setting to [AUTO] or [3G].

Making calls at your country of stay

Make a call from overseas using the international roaming service.

Making a call outside your country of stay (including Japan)

Make a call from your country of stay to Japan or other countries.

1 In stand-by, enter [+] (press 0 for 1+ seconds), country code, area code (city code) and other party’s phone number.

- When the area code (city code) begins with *0*, omit the *0* when dialing (However, include *0* when making a call to landline phones in some countries or regions such as Italy).

2 Press ☎ (Phone)/ⓘ (V.phone).

■ Making an international call outside your country of stay using Country code conversion

Set Country code conversion (☞P. 68) to [ON] and set the country code frequently called to easily make an international call.

- *0* at the beginning of a phone number is automatically converted to the country code set in Country code conversion.

Example: Make a call from phonebook

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select the other party.

2 Press ☎ (Phone)/ⓘ (V.phone).

3 Select [Call].

- To dial a phone number as stored in the phonebook: Select [Original number].

■ Making a call to the phone in the country saved in Set country code

Save a country code using Set country code (☞P. 69) to select a country code before making an international call.

- The following operation is available overseas only.

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add prefix setting] ▶ [International Call].

2 Select the country code ▶ ■.

3 Press ☎ (Phone)/ⓘ (V.phone).

Making a call in your country of stay

Make a domestic call at your country of stay in the same way as you do in Japan.

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number.

2 Press ☎ (Phone)/ⓘ (V.phone).

- Always dial the area code (city code), even when the number is in the same area.
- When making a domestic call at your country of stay using the phonebook, select [Original number] in step 3 of “Making an international call outside your country of stay using Country code conversion”.

Note

- Refer to the DoCoMo “International Services website” for details on available countries, country codes and telecommunications carriers.
- Even when Notify caller ID of the network service (☞P. 58) is set to “Send ID”, [Unavailable] or [User unset] appears depending on the telecommunications carrier, and the caller ID may not be displayed correctly.

Making a call to a WORLD WING subscriber overseas

When making a call to a “WORLD WING” subscriber overseas, make an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

1. **In stand-by, enter [+] (press 0 for 1+ seconds), country code *81* (Japan), the other party’s mobile phone number excluding *0*.**
2. **Press ☎ (Phone)/☰ (V.phone).**

Answering calls

Answer a call overseas in the same way as you do in Japan.

1. **Press ☎ to answer an incoming call.**
   - Speak to the caller.

Note

- Even when a caller tried to notify of caller ID, it might not be notified depending on the used telecommunications carrier.
- When a call is received while in international roaming, the call is forwarded from Japan. Call charges to Japan are incurred by the caller and international forwarding charges by the receiver.

Having calls to your FOMA terminal

■ Having calls made to your FOMA terminal from Japan

To receive an international call from Japan, have your phone number dialed just as a domestic call in Japan.

090-XXXX-XXXX or ***080-XXXX-XXXX***

- Calling from Received calls may not be available since the phone number may not be displayed correctly.

■ Having calls made to your FOMA terminal from countries other than Japan

Have the international access code and ***81*** (Japan) added to the beginning of your phone number, and ***0*** excluded as an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

International access code of the country of the caller-81-90-XXXX-XXXX or ***International access code of the country of the caller-81-80-XXXX-XXXX***

3G/GSM setting

Setting network communication system

Set the communication system supporting your area and telecommunications carrier.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [3G/GSM setting].**
2. **Select the communication method ▶ ■.**

Network search mode

Setting a search method of telecommunications carrier

- Set to manually select a telecommunications carrier.
- Re-search a network to set another telecommunications carrier.
- Check that the Network search mode is set to [Auto] if the FOMA terminal is indicated to be outside the service area even after homecoming.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Network search mode].

2 Select the setting.

- **Select [Auto] ▶ [Yes].**
  - When [Auto] is already set: Select [Auto].
- **Select [Manual] ▶ select a telecommunications carrier ▶ ⊡.**
  - The telecommunications carrier is changed.
- **Select [Network re-search].**
  - The host network is changed automatically if the Network search mode is set to [Auto]. If set to [Manual], select a telecommunications carrier and press ⊡.

Checking the communication services available

<In-area status>

Check the status whether making a call, data transmission or packet transmission is available.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [In-area status] ▶ [Agree].

PLMN setting

Setting a telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to

Specify the priority order of telecommunications carriers connected to when the Network search mode is set to [Auto]. Save up to 20.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Network search mode] ▶ [PLMN setting].

- To check the saved telecommunications carrier's detailed information: Select the telecommunications carrier ▶ ⊡.

2 Select the number of the priority order ▶ 📷.

3 Select the saving method.

- **Select [PLMN manual select] ▶ enter a country code (MCC) ▶ ⊡ ▶ enter a network code (MNC) ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a communication method ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [UPLMN by list] ▶ select a telecommunications carrier ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a communication method ▶ ⊡.**
  - To search a telecommunications carrier from country name: Select [UPLMN by list] ▶ 📷 ▶ select a country name ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a telecommunications carrier ▶ ⊡ ▶ select a communication method ▶ ⊡.
- **Select [Set VPLMN to PLMN].**
  - Save the telecommunications carrier currently connected to.
- **Select [Change priority] ▶ select a destination ▶ ⊡.**
- **Select [Delete] ▶ [Delete one].**
- **Select [Delete] ▶ [Delete all] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡.**

4 Select [Yes].

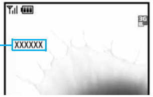
Operator name disp

Displaying a telecommunications carrier while in roaming

Set whether to display a telecommunications carrier name currently connected to in stand-by while in international roaming.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Operator name disp].**
2. **Select the setting ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].**

■ When displaying a telecommunications carrier



Roaming guidance

Activating the roaming guidance

When a call is received during international roaming, the caller hears the guidance indicating that international roaming is activated.

- Make this setting while still in Japan.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Roaming guidance].**
2. **Select an item ▶ ⊡.**
3. **Select [Yes].**

Call barring

Rejecting calls during roaming

Set the FOMA terminal to reject calls during roaming. Select whether to bar all incoming calls or only the Videophone and 64K data transmission calls.

- Depending on the overseas telecommunications carrier, the setting cannot be made.
- Unable to use 64K data communication overseas.

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Call barring].**
2. **Select an item.**
   - **Select [Activate] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select the barring method ▶ ⊡ ▶ enter the network security code ▶ ⊡.**
   - **Select [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes] ▶ enter the network security code ▶ ⊡.**
   - **Select [Status request].**

Int’l services

Using network services during roaming

Use network services such as Voice Mail and Call Forwarding from overseas.

- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding subscription are required to use Voice Mail (Int.) and Call Forward (Int.).
- To use network services overseas, set Remote control (☞P. 434) to “Activate”.
- If operated from overseas, international call charges for your country of stay are incurred.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.].

2 Select an item.

- **Select [Voice Mail(Int.)] ▶ select an item of Voice Mail Service ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Call Forward (Int.)] ▶ select an item of Call Forwarding Service ▶ ▣.**
- **Select [Remote access(Int.)].**
- **Select [Caller ID req (Int.)].**
- **Select [Roam. guidance(Int.)].**

3 Select [Yes] ▶ operate according to the voice guidance.

Note

Caller ID request (International)

- Even when the Caller ID Request Service is used, [Unavailable] may appear before a call is received.

Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

Menu list

Custom menu/Basic menu list

- The menu item numbers correspond to the numbers on the keypad. Press the corresponding key to select that menu.
- The menu item numbers may differ depending on the menu. Also, depending on the Custom menu, the menu item numbers may not be displayed or, when they are, they may not correspond to the keypad keys.
- In the Basic menu, enter the function number, which is assigned to each function, to quickly retrieve the function to be used.

Assigned function number

■ Snd/Vibrator/Manner: 1	■ Initial setting: 8
■ Disp/LED/Power saver: 2	■ Data box: 91
■ General settings: 3	■ LifeKit: 92
■ NW Services: 4	■ Media tool: 93
■ Other NW Services: 5	■ MUSIC: 94
■ Phone settings: 6	■ Osaifu-Keitai: 95
■ Security: 7	■ 1Seg: 96

- Depending on the Kisekae Tools set in the Custom menu, the function names may differ from those described.
- The function names in the Custom menu set by default vary depending on the handset color (written in the following order: the handset color “White” and “Blue”/the handset color “Black” and “Pink”).
- When the settings are reset (☞P. 411), functions return to default settings (marked with ☆).

i-mode menu

i-mode					
Function menu				**Default setting**	**Page**
1 iMenu				–	P. 170
2 Bookmark				[Bookmark] folder	P. 178
3 Screen Memo				–	P. 179
4 Full Browser					
	1 Home			–	P. 302
	2 Bookmark			[Bookmark] folder	P. 302
	3 Last URL			–	P. 302
	4 Go to location				
		1 URL history		–	P. 302
		2 Input URL		http://	P. 302
	5 FB Settings				
		1 Home URL		http://www.google.co.jp	P. 302
		2 Cookie Setting		Valid☆	P. 306
		3 Delete cookie		–	P. 306
		4 Script Setting		Valid☆	P. 307
		5 Display Mode		PC mode☆	P. 304
		6 Set image display		ON☆	P. 307
		7 Window Open Guard		Invalid☆	P. 307
		8 Referer Setting		Send☆	P. 307
		9 Auto layout disp		ON☆	P. 307
		0 Set auto network		Confirm anytime☆	P. 307
		* Sound effect		ON☆	P. 307
		# Use phone info		Yes☆	P. 308
		□ 1 Access Setting		OFF☆	P. 308
		□ 2 Reset full browser		–	P. 308
5 Last URL				–	P. 172

i-mode		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
6 Go to location		
1 URL history	–	P. 177
2 Input URL	http://	P. 177
7 i-Channel		
1 Run i-Channel list	–	P. 192
2 i-Channel ticker	ON (Ticker font size: Large(default), Ticker color: Pattern1 (Font color: blue, Background color: white), Ticker speed: Normal)☆	P. 193
3 Reset i-Channel	–	P. 193
8 MessageR/F		
1 MessageR	–	P. 222
2 MessageF	–	P. 222
9 Check new message	–	P. 207
* i-mode setting		
1 Host selection	i-mode (UIM)☆	P. 185
2 Save login info	–	P. 176
3 Set image display	ON☆	P. 186
4 Font size	Normal☆	P. 172
5 Certificates	All enabled☆	P. 187
6 i-motion auto replay	Yes☆	P. 191
7 Secure setting	Cert Operation: – DoCoMo CA Host: DoCoMo☆	P. 188 P. 190
8 Use phone info	Yes☆	P. 186
9 Sound effect	Volume 5☆	P. 172
0 i-mode arrival act	PushTalk preferred☆	P. 187
* Reset i-mode	–	P. 187
# Function lock	OFF☆	P. 171

■ i-αppli menu

i-αppli		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 Software list	Sort: By usage☆	P. 231
2 i-αppli volume	Volume 5☆	P. 232
3 Software info	OFF☆	P. 231
4 Auto start	OFF☆	P. 244
5 Used by i-αppli	–	P. 249
6 Error display	–	P. 248
7 Trace info	–	P. 248
8 Battery icon	OFF☆	P. 232
9 Power saver set	OFF☆	P. 233
* Function lock	OFF☆	P. 248

Mail menu

Mail		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 Inbox	“Welcome✧SH906i☺✋” Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Mail list Display settings (Preview: ON☆, List display: Two lines, Sort: Date(new→old))	P. 210 to P. 215
2 Outbox	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Mail list Display settings (Preview: ON☆, List display: Two lines, Sort: Date(new→old))	P. 210 to P. 215
3 Unsent messages		
4 Compose message	–	P. 196
5 Compose Decome-Anime	–	P. 200
6 Compose SMS	–	P. 226
7 Template		
1 Decome-Template	–	P. 201
2 Decome-Anime Template	–	P. 200
8 Check new message	–	P. 207
9 Check new SMS	–	P. 227
✕ Receive option		
1 Receive option	–	P. 206
2 Receive opt. setting	OFF☆	P. 219
0 WEB Mail	–	P. 196

Mail		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
# Mail setting		
1 Quick reply mail	–	P. 220
2 Rcv attached file	All attachments☆	P. 220
3 Melody Auto replay	Auto replay☆	P. 220
4 Font size	Display, Text input: Normal☆	P. 217
5 Rcv/Auto send disp	Notice first☆	P. 220
6 Check new message	Mail, MessageR, MessageF: ON☆	P. 219
7 Auto message display	Msg R preferred☆	P. 222
8 Receive opt. setting	OFF☆	P. 219
9 Mail member	Member 1 to Member 10	P. 219
0 Save signature	ON☆	P. 219
✕ Mail ticker setting	Only notice☆	P. 206
# SMS setting		
1 SMS center	DoCoMo	P. 227
2 Report request	Do not request☆	P. 228
3 SMS expiry	3 days	P. 228
4 SMS input character	Japanese(70Chara)	P. 228
▭ 1 Area Mail setting		
1 Receive setting	OFF☆	P. 225
2 Receive entry	–	P. 226
3 Beep time	10 seconds☆	P. 226
▭ 2 Check mail settings	–	P. 220
▭ 3 Reset mail settings	–	P. 221
▭ 4 Function lock	OFF☆	P. 221

■ Settings menu

- Those default settings that depend on the handset color and which can be set with the Kisekae Tools (☞P. 119) are indicated by [White], [Black], [Pink], or [Blue]. The title name of a Kisekae Tool appears when the Kisekae Tool settings are changed.

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1Snd/Vibrator/Manner		
1Select volume		
1phone ring vol	Phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Volume 5☆	P. 109
2Mail ring vol	Mail ring tone, MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Volume 5☆	P. 109
3PushTalk tone vol	Volume 5☆	P. 109
4Key/Standby i-motion	Volume 5☆	P. 110
5Charge start sound	Volume 5☆	P. 110
6Charge end sound	Volume 5☆	P. 110
7Timer sound	Volume 5☆	P. 110
8GPS volume	Pos location sound, Pos location notice, Loc provision/accept, Loc provision/notify: Volume 5☆	P. 109
1Snd/Vibrator/Manner		
2Select sound		
1Select ring tone	Phone ring tone: 着信音1☆ V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Phone ring tone☆	P. 108
2Select mail tone	Mail ring tone: 着信音2☆ MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Mail ring tone☆	P. 108
3PushTalk tone	着信音1☆	P. 108
4Shutter sound	Default tone☆	P. 109
5Timer sound	TI (標準音)/Ring time setting: 15 seconds☆	P. 109
6GPS tone	Pos location sound: OFF☆ Pos location notice: 着信音4☆ Loc provision/accept: 着信音5☆ Loc provision/notify: 着信音6☆	P. 109
3Vibrator		
1Vibration mode	OFF☆	P. 111
2Mail vibration	OFF☆	P. 111
3GPS vibrator	Position location, Location notification, Loc provision/accept, Loc provision/notify: OFF☆	P. 111
4Touch panel vib	ON☆	P. 111

Continued on next page ▶▶

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1Snd/Vibrator/Manner		
4Manner mode		
1Normal	–	P. 113
2Silent	–	P. 113
3Original	Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up: ON☆ Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion, Low battery alarm: OFF☆ Ring tone, Mail ring tone: Silent☆	P. 114
5Headset setting	Headset + speaker☆	P. 112
6Ring time setting		
1Mail ring time set	ON/3 seconds☆	P. 112
2PT ring time set	30 seconds☆	P. 112
3GPS ring time set	Pos location sound, Pos location notice, Loc provision/accept, Loc provision/notify: ON/5 seconds☆	P. 112
7Set mute ring time	OFF☆	P. 140
8Hold/On hold tone		
1Set on hold tone	On hold tone 1☆	P. 74
2Set hold tone	Hold melody 1☆	P. 74
9Snd playbck (melody)		
1Stereo effects	Stereo/3D sound☆	P. 110
2Equalizer	Normal☆	P. 111

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
2Disp/LED/Power saver		
1Set screen		
1Stand-by display	待受画面1 (Handset color: White), 待受画面2 (Handset color: Black), 待受画面3 (Handset color: Pink), 待受画面4 (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 114
2Clock display	Clock display: ON(Large)☆ Set clock style: 待受時計1 (Handset color: White), 待受時計2 (Handset color: Black), 待受時計3 (Handset color: Pink), 待受時計4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Set disp position: Down☆	P. 115
3Calendar display	OFF☆	P. 115
4Stand-by memo disp	OFF☆	P. 115
5Desktop clock	2 hours☆	P. 116
2Font style		
1Font style setting	LC Gothic☆	P. 124
2Font size		
1Collective setting	Standard☆	P. 124
2Individual setting	i-mode, Full Browser, Mail/Message, Input: Normal☆	P. 124
3Themes		
1Kisekae Tool	–	P. 119

*1 When Delete all data or Reset settings is performed, the setting will be for the White handset.

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
2 Disp/LED/Power saver		
3 Themes		
2 Call/Rcv display	Picture call set: ON☆ Outgoing voice calls, V-phone sending scrn: 電話発信1 (Handset color: White), 電話発信2 (Handset color: Black), 電話発信3 (Handset color: Pink), 電話発信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Incoming voice calls, Incoming video phone: 電話着信1 (Handset color: White), 電話着信2 (Handset color: Black), 電話着信3 (Handset color: Pink), 電話着信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Payphone, User unset, Unavailable: 電話着信1☆	P. 116
3 Send/Rcv display	Send display: メール送信1 (Handset color: White), メール送信2 (Handset color: Black), メール送信3 (Handset color: Pink), メール送信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Receive display: メール受信1 (Handset color: White), メール受信2 (Handset color: Black), メール受信3 (Handset color: Pink), メール受信4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Mail rcvd screen: メール受信結果1 (Handset color: White), メール受信結果2 (Handset color: Black), メール受信結果3 (Handset color: Pink), メール受信結果4 (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 116

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
2 Disp/LED/Power saver		
3 Themes		
4 Submenu image	メニュー枠1(上)/(下) (Handset color: White), メニュー枠2(上)/(下) (Handset color: Black), メニュー枠3(上)/(下) (Handset color: Pink), メニュー枠4(上)/(下) (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 121
5 Dial image set	Dial image 1☆	P. 121
6 Animate notices	お知らせアニメ1 (Handset color: White), お知らせアニメ2 (Handset color: Black), お知らせアニメ3 (Handset color: Pink), お知らせアニメ4 (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 121
7 Signal/batt/s clock	Signal icon: 電波マーク1 (Handset color: White), 電波マーク2 (Handset color: Black), 電波マーク3 (Handset color: Pink), 電波マーク4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Battery icon: 電池残量1 (Handset color: White), 電池残量2 (Handset color: Black), 電池残量3 (Handset color: Pink), 電池残量4 (Handset color: Blue)*1 Small clock: 時計表示1 (Handset color: White), 時計表示2 (Handset color: Black), 時計表示3 (Handset color: Pink), 時計表示4 (Handset color: Blue)*1	P. 121

*1 When Delete all data or Reset settings is performed, the setting will be for the White handset.

Continued on next page

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
2Disp/LED/Power saver		
3Themes		
8Color theme setting	MilkWhite (Handset color: White), OrbBlack (Handset color: Black), RipplePink (Handset color: Pink), LavenderBlue (Handset color: Blue)[*1]	P. 121
4LED settings		
1Called LED		
1Phone	LED color settings: Leaf☆ LED pattern settings: Stream☆	P. 123
2Video-phone	LED color settings: Leaf☆ LED pattern settings: Stream☆	P. 123
3PushTalk	LED color settings: Sun set☆ LED pattern settings: Stream☆	P. 123
2Mail LED		
1Mail/Message LED	LED color settings: Sunshine☆ LED pattern settings: Splash☆	P. 123
2Mail send/rcv LED	ON (LED color settings: Sky LED pattern settings: Splash)☆	P. 123
3Notice LED	Missed call notice, New unrd mail noti: ON☆	P. 123
4In-call LED	OFF☆	P. 123
5Alarm/Timer LED	ON (LED color settings: Rainbow LED pattern settings: Ripple)☆	P. 123
6IC card LED	ON☆	P. 123
7Open/close LED	ON (LED color settings: Aurora LED pattern settings: Stream)☆	P. 123
8GPS LED	Position location, Location notification, Loc provision/accept, Loc provision/notify: Sky☆	P. 123
2Disp/LED/Power saver		
5Display img quality		
1Vibrant image mode	Stand-by, Data Box(Music&Vch), Data Box(i-motion), Internet movie plyr: Dynamic☆ Camera, Data Box(My picture): Normal☆ 1Seg/Data Box(1Seg): Link genres☆ i-αppli: Game☆	P. 124
2Control by scene	ON☆	P. 124
6Light/Power saver[*2]		
1Norm (auto bright)	–	P. 117
2Norm (fixed bright)	–	P. 117
3Eco mode (Pwr saver)	–	P. 117
4Original Eco mode		
1Display light time	Normal: 10 seconds☆ Charging, Internet: Same as normal☆ Video-phone: Always ON☆ i-αppli: Software☆	P. 117
2Screen dsp time	1 minute☆	P. 118
3Brightness	Automatic☆	P. 118
4Keypad light setting	Light☆	P. 119

[*1] When Delete all data or Reset settings is performed, the setting will be for the Blue handset.

[*2] Default setting is [Norm (auto bright)].

Settings

Function menu	Default setting	Page
2Disp/LED/Power saver		
7VeilView		
1Dis temp in stdby	ON☆	P. 126
2Pattern	Docomodake☆	P. 126
8Menu priority	Custom menu☆	P. 44
3General settings		
1Check status		
1Owner Information	Image transfer: Yes	P. 395
2Check memory	–	P. 348
3Battery level	–	P. 54
4Check settings	–	P. 382
2Text input setting		
1User dictionary	–	P. 422
2Dwnld dictionary	No dictionaries registered	P. 422
3Edit phrase	–	P. 420
4Clear memory terms	–	P. 422
3Auto power ON/OFF		
1Auto power ON	OFF☆	P. 383
2Auto power OFF	OFF☆	P. 384
3Link alarm/power ON	OFF☆	P. 384
4Date settings	Auto time correction: ON☆	P. 57
5Select language	日本語	P. 56
6TOUCH CRUISER set		
1Usage settings	ON☆	P. 40
2Pointer speed	Normal☆	P. 40
3Scroll speed	Normal☆	P. 40

Settings

Function menu	Default setting	Page
3General settings		
7USB mode setting	Communication mode☆	P. 342
8Scanning function		
1Update	–	P. 510
2Set auto-update	–	P. 510
3Set scan	Scan, Scan message: Enable☆	P. 509
4Version	–	P. 512
9Software update	Set auto-update: auto-update (Day: Default, Time: 03:00)	P. 504
0Reset settings	–	P. 411
4NW Services		
1Voice Mail		
1Check messages	–	P. 427
2Play Messages	–	P. 427
3Activate VoiceMail	–	P. 427
4Set ring time	–	P. 427
5Deactivate VoiceMail	–	P. 427
6Check setting	–	P. 427
7Voice Mail setting	–	P. 427
8Notification setting	Voice Mail alarm: ON☆	P. 427
9Notification	–	P. 427

Continued on next page ▶▶

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
4 NW Services		
2 Call waiting		
1 Activate	–	P. 428
2 Deactivate	–	P. 428
3 Check setting	–	P. 428
3 Call forwarding		
1 Activate	–	P. 430
2 Deactivate	–	P. 430
3 Register number	–	P. 430
4 Forwarding No. busy	–	P. 430
5 Check setting	–	P. 430
4 Bar nuisance calls		
1 Register caller	–	P. 431
2 Register selected No	–	P. 431
3 Delete all entries	–	P. 431
4 Delete last entry	–	P. 431
5 Check No of entries	–	P. 431
5 Notify caller ID		
1 Check setting	–	P. 58
2 Notify caller ID	–	P. 58
6 Caller ID request		
1 Activate	–	P. 431
2 Deactivate	–	P. 431
3 Check setting	–	P. 431

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
4 NW Services		
7 Talk time/cost	Limit settings: Disable☆ (Notice method: Alarm + stand-by, Auto reset: OFF when set to Enable)	P. 397
8 2in1 setting		
1 Mode switching	Dual mode	P. 436
2 Phonebook 2in1 set	–	P. 436
3 Stand-by display		
1 Dual mode	待受画面6	P. 436
2 B mode	待受画面7	P. 436
4 Set call/receive No.		
1 Disp. Call/Rcv No.	ID display ON	P. 436
2 Number B Ring tone	Phone ring tone: 着信音3 V.phone ring tone: Phone ring tone Mail ring tone: 着信音4 SMS ring tone: Mail ring tone	P. 437
5 2in1 function OFF	–	P. 437
6 Receive avoidance		
1 Change rcv. avoid	Receive (Number A), Receive (Number B): Unchange☆	P. 437
2 Check rcv. avoid	–	P. 437
3 Mode link setting	OFF☆	P. 437
4 Rcv. avoid. (abroad)	–	P. 437

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
4 NW Services		
9 In-call arrival act		
1 Set arrival act		
1 Activate	–	P. 434
2 Deactivate	–	P. 434
3 Check setting	–	P. 434
2 Arrival Call Act	Answer☆	P. 433
5 Other NW Services		
1 Remote control		
1 Activate	–	P. 434
2 Deactivate	–	P. 434
3 Check setting	–	P. 434
2 Dual network		
1 Switching	–	P. 432
2 Status request	–	P. 432
3 English guidance		
1 Guidance setting	–	P. 433
2 Check setting	–	P. 433
4 Service number		
1 ドコモ故障問合せ	–	P. 433
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	–	P. 433
5 Additional service		
1 USSD	–	P. 440
2 Reply message	–	P. 440

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
5 Other NW Services		
6 Multi number		
1 Set multi number	–	P. 435
2 Check setting	–	P. 435
3 Number setting	–	P. 435
7 Chaku-moji		
1 Create message	–	P. 65
2 Message display	With caller ID☆	P. 66
8 Roaming guidance		
1 Activate	–	P. 455
2 Deactivate	–	P. 455
3 Status request	–	P. 455
6 Phone settings		
1 In-call settings		
1 Noise reduction	ON☆	P. 70
2 Reconnect signal	No alarm☆	P. 70
3 Quality alarm	No alarm☆	P. 112
2 Headset sw to call	OFF☆	P. 400
3 Incoming settings		
1 Any key answer	ON☆	P. 72
2 Auto answer setting	Phone/Videophone, PushTalk: OFF☆	P. 401
3 Melody Call setting	–	P. 111

Continued on next page ▶▶

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
6 Phone settings		
4 Videophone set		
1 Redial voice call	OFF☆	P. 83
2 Set sending image	Substitute image: キャラ(女性)*3☆ On hold image, Hold image: テレビ電話代替☆	P. 82
3 Display setting	Show me small☆	P. 83
4 Subscreen position	Upper left☆	P. 83
5 Visual preference	Normal☆	P. 82
6 Notify switch mode	–	P. 84
7 Hands-free V.phone	ON☆	P. 82
8 V-phone while packet	V-phone priority☆	P. 84
5 Record message		
1 Record message	OFF☆	P. 77
2 Answering duration	13 seconds☆	P. 78
3 Reply message	Reply message 1☆	P. 78
4 V.phone reply image	テレビ電話代替☆	P. 78
6 Set PushTalk		
1 Set PT arrival act	Answer☆	P. 94
2 Hands-free PT	ON☆	P. 94
7 Set when folded		
1 Phone/Videophone	Finish call☆	P. 73
2 PushTalk	Speaker phone☆	P. 73

*3 [テレビ電話代替] is set when Reset settings (☞P. 411) is performed after [キャラ(女性)] is deleted from Chara-den.

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
6 Phone settings		
8 Self mode	OFF☆	P. 134
9 Other settings		
1 Int’l prefix	First entry: 009130-010☆	P. 69
2 Sub address	ON☆	P. 70
3 Int’l dial assist		
1 Auto conversion	Int’l prefix conv: ON☆ Country code conv: ON (Country (code): Japan(+81))☆	P. 68
2 IDD prefix setting	WORLD CALL 009130-010☆	P. 69
3 Set country code	22 country codes saved	P. 69
4 International Roam.		
1 Network search mode	Auto	P. 454
2 Operator name disp	Display on☆	P. 455
3 Voice Mail(Int.)	–	P. 456
4 Call Forward (Int.)	–	P. 456
5 Remote access(Int.)	–	P. 456
6 Caller ID req (Int.)	–	P. 456

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
6 Phone settings		
9 Other settings		
4 International Roam.		
7 Roam. guidance(Int.)	–	P. 456
8 Call barring	–	P. 455
9 3G/GSM setting	AUTO	P. 453
5 In-area status	–	P. 454
7 Security		
1 Secret mode	OFF☆	P. 138
2 UIM Settings		
1 PIN1 code input set	OFF	P. 131
2 Change PIN1 code	0000	P. 131
3 Change PIN2 code	0000	P. 131
3 Accept/Reject calls		
1 Accept calls	OFF☆	P. 138
2 Reject calls	OFF☆	P. 138
3 Reject unknown	Accept☆	P. 140
4 User unset	Accept☆	P. 139
5 Reject payphone	Accept☆	P. 139
6 Reject not support	Accept☆	P. 139
4 Show call/received		
1 Show rcvd calls	ON☆	P. 137
2 Show redial	ON☆	P. 137
5 Show sent/received		
1 Show sent messages	ON☆	P. 137
2 Show rcvd messages	ON☆	P. 137

Settings		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
7 Security		
6 Lock settings		
1 All lock	Disabled	P. 132
2 Keypad dial lock	OFF☆	P. 136
3 Function lock	OFF☆	P. 134
4 IC card lock	IC lock(power-on): OFF☆ IC lock(power-off): Follow power ON☆	P. 263
5 Multi easy lock set	All lock☆	P. 136
6 Multi lock auto-set	OFF☆	P. 137
7 Change security code	0000	P. 129
8 Writing authentic	OFF☆	P. 130
9 Delete all data		
1 Delete user data	–	P. 412
2 Del secret data	–	P. 414
8 Initial setting	–	P. 56

■ LifeKit menu

LifeKit		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 Bar code reader	Switch AF mode: Closeup	P. 164
2 Receive Ir data		
1 Receive	–	P. 351
2 Receive all	–	P. 352
3 microSD manager		
1 View microSD data	–	P. 342
2 Backup/restore	–	P. 340
3 Import	–	P. 344
4 New manager info	–	P. 343

Continued on next page ▶▶

LifeKit		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
3 microSD manager		
5 Format	–	P. 342
6 USB mode setting	Communication mode☆	P. 342
4 Bluetooth		
1 Accept Registered	–	P. 406
2 Receive Bluetooth	–	P. 409
3 List/cnnct/discnnct	–	P. 405
4 Register new device	–	P. 404
5 Bluetooth Power OFF	–	P. 407
6 Bluetooth setting		
1 Bluetooth Info	–	P. 410
2 Time-out To Search	5 seconds☆	P. 410
3 Music auto start	ON☆	P. 408
4 Set Authentications	No☆	P. 411
5 Set Encryptions	No☆	P. 411
6 Forward Ring Tone	ON☆	P. 411
7 Session no. setting	OFF☆	P. 411
5 Card reader	AF mode: Closeup	P. 167
6 Text memo	–	P. 399
7 Schedule	Show (Switch view mode: Normal display) Set (Set vacation: Saturday and Sunday) New (Alarm time: 0 minutes, Ring duration: 15 seconds, Alarm tone: 着信音1, Alarm volume: Volume 5 when Alarm set to ON)	P. 387

LifeKit		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
8 Timer/Alarm		
1 Timer	3 minutes	P. 384
2 Alarm	Set repeat: Once only Alarm tone: 着信音1 Alarm volume: Volume5 Snooze setting: OFF Ring duration: 15seconds	P. 385
3 Wakeup TV	Start ann: ON (Alarm time: 1minutes, Alarm tone: Silent, Alarm volume: Volume5, Linked startup: ON (Do not notify))	P. 294
9 Character reader	Select subject: Auto Switch AF mode: Closeup Inverse mode: Automatic	P. 165
* Calculator	Tax rate: 5%	P. 398
0 Data Sec. Service	Send phonebook img: OFF☆	P. 105 P. 141
# GPS menu		
1 Position location	–	P. 266
2 i-αppli	–	P. 267
3 Location history	–	P. 278
4 Set position loc.	GPS button setting: Read a Map☆ Positioning mode: Standard mode☆	P. 267
5 Loc.notification/set	Positioning mode: Standard mode☆	P. 277

LifeKit		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
# GPS menu		
6 Loc. request menu	Loc. prov. ON/OFF: Loc. provision:OFF☆ Positioning mode: Standard mode☆ Host setting: Default☆	P. 273

Osaifu-Keitai menu

Osaifu-Keitai		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 IC card content	–	P. 255
2 DCMX	–	P. 242
3 ToruCa	ToruCa list Sort: Date(new→old)☆ ToruCa display Display/set (Sound effect: Volume 5)☆	P. 258
4 IC card lock		
1 IC lock(power-on)	OFF☆	P. 263
2 IC lock(power-off)	Follow power ON☆	P. 263
5 Check IC owner	–	P. 256
6 Change IC owner	–	P. 256
7 Search by i-mode	–	P. 170
8 Setting		
1 ToruCa from IC	ON☆	P. 262
2 BC ToruCa setting	ON☆	P. 262
3 ToruCa duple check	ON☆	P. 262
4 ToruCa auto read	ON☆	P. 262
5 ToruCa auto disp	ON☆	P. 262
6 ToruCa sound fx	Volume 5☆	P. 262

1Seg menu

1Seg		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 Activate 1Seg	Display settings (Display mode (L): Video+data, Display mode (W): Vid (full-screen), Mark display (W): Full-time display, App area (L): Full-time display) Caption Settings (Caption: OFF, Caption(hori wide): Down, Startup settings: Linked manner) Image quality (Vibrant image mode: Link genres, Brightness: Automatic) Dolby Sound Set.: Link genres Bluetooth output (Startup auto cnnct: OFF) Recording end time (only for recording): Unrestricted Data broadcasting (Set image display: ON, Sound FX: ON, BC ToruCa setting: ON) Disp program guide: Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) 1Seg settings (Main/Sub language: Main, Change language: Main language, Set when folded: Continue, Video recding dest: Auto(microSD first), Switch auto area: ON)	P. 285
2 Program guide	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)☆	P. 291
3 Booking list	Timer setting screen Start ann (Reception): ON (Alarm time: 1minutes, Alarm tone: 着信音1, Alarm volume: Volume5, Linked startup: ON (Notify)) Start ann (Recording): ON fixed (Alarm tone: 着信音1, Alarm volume: Volume5) Booking list Sort: Air date(old→new)	P. 293

Continued on next page

1Seg		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
4 Reserve rec hist	–	P. 296
5 TVlink	–	P. 298
6 Channel setting	–	P. 284
7 1Seg settings		
1 Video recding dest	Auto(microSD first)☆	P. 298
2 Erase storage area	–	P. 299
3 Set image display	ON☆	P. 299
4 Sound FX	ON☆	P. 299
5 BC ToruCa setting	ON☆	P. 299
6 1Seg status	–	P. 299
7 Reset status disp	–	P. 299
8 Reset 1Seg	–	P. 300

Camera menu

Camera		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 Shoot still pic	Full-screen mode: OFF Shooting menu (Picture light: OFF, AF mode: Def (people first), Image quality: NORMAL, Brightness: 0, Continuous mode: OFF, Shoot by scene: Auto, Effect shot: OFF, Shoot with frame: OFF, White balance: Auto, Auto timer: OFF)☆ Select size: “std-by: 480×854”☆ Camera settings (Fix camera shake: Auto, Auto save mode: OFF, Save camera set: ON)☆ Switch phone⇔SD: phone☆	P. 153
2 Shoot movie	Shooting menu (Picture light: OFF, AF mode: Standard, Image quality: SUPER FINE, Common replay mode: OFF, Brightness: 0, File size limit: For mail (long), Switch img/voice: Image + voice, Effect shot: OFF, Shoot by scene: Auto, White balance: Auto, Auto timer: OFF)☆ Select size: “QVGA: 320×240”☆ Camera settings (Fix camera shake: ON, Noise reduction: ON, Display light time: As light setting, Save camera set: ON)☆ Switch phone⇔SD: phone☆	P. 155
3 Character reader	Select subject: Auto Switch AF mode: Closeup Inverse mode: Automatic	P. 165
4 Bar code reader	Switch AF mode: Closeup	P. 164
5 Card reader	AF mode: Closeup	P. 167
6 Cameraloupe	Magnification ratio: Approx. 3.0× Shooting menu (AF mode: Closeup) Select size: “std-by: 480×854” Full-screen mode: ON	P. 168
7 Shotdeco	Resize: Picture(L)(240×92)☆	P. 168

Phonebook menu

Phonebook		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
Phonebook	Search by: Reading? Switch view mode: Show business card Group settings: No groups, グループ１ (Group 1) to グループ１９ (Group 19) (FOMA terminal handset phonebook), No groups, グループ１ (Group 1) to グループ１０ (Group 10) (FOMA card phonebook) Image transfer: Yes	P. 101

Data box menu

Data box		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1My picture	Folder list Slideshow (Play interval: Normal, Effects settings: Random)☆ Backlight time: As light setting☆ Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Image list Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) Slideshow (Play interval: Normal, Effects settings: Random)☆ Picture setting (Switch view mode: 5-part/details, Sort: Date (new→ old), Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5)☆ <Image viewer (excluding Flash movies)> Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) Picture setting (Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5)☆ <Image viewer (Flash movies)> Backlight time: As light setting☆	P. 318
2MUSIC	Music data list in Chaku-uta full® Display settings (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old))☆ <MUSIC Player> Playback settings (Set playback mode: Normal playback, Manner playback: OFF)☆ Dolby Sound Set.: Normal☆ Bluetooth output (Startup auto cnnct: OFF)☆	P. 375
3Music&Video ch	Program list Switch view mode: 12-part Sort: Date (new→ old) <Music&Video Channel player (program with voice only)> Playback settings (Repeat: OFF, Manner playback: OFF)☆ Dolby Sound Set.: Normal☆ <Music&Video Channel player (program with video and voice)> Playback settings (Repeat: OFF, Manner playback: OFF, Backlight time: As light setting)☆ Dolby Sound Set.: Normal☆	P. 369

Continued on next page

Data box		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
4 i-motion	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Continuous play (Repeat playback: No, Sample playback: No)☆ i-motion setting (Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5)☆ Movie list Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) Continuous play (Repeat playback: No, Sample playback: No)☆ i-motion setting (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old), Backlight time: As light setting, Set volume: Volume 5, Resume settings: ON)☆ <i-motion player> Edit data (File restriction: Not restricted) Dolby Sound Set.: Normal☆ i-motion setting (Change size: Zoom, Backlight time: As light setting, Resume settings: ON, Frame rate: Rough (hi-speed), Launch screen mode: Normal Play)☆	P. 324
5 1Seg	Video list 1Seg data settings (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→old))☆ <Video player> Display settings (Display mode (L): Video+data, Display mode (W): Vid (full-screen)☆, Mark display (W): Full-time display☆, App area (L): Full-time display☆) Caption Settings (Caption: OFF, Caption(hori wide): Down☆, Startup settings: Linked manner☆) Image quality (Vibrant image mode: Link genres, Brightness: Automatic)☆ Dolby Sound Set.: Link genres☆ Bluetooth output (Startup auto cnnct: OFF)☆ Data broadcasting (Set image display: ON, Sound FX: ON)☆ 1Seg settings (Main/Sub language: Main, Change language: Main language)	P. 329
6 Melody	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Set volume: Volume 5☆ Melody list Melody settings (Start position: Play all, Sort: Date (new→ old)☆, Set volume: Volume 5☆) <Melody player> Melody settings (Equalizer: Normal, Stereo effects: Stereo/3D sound)☆	P. 331

Data box		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
7 My Documents	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) My Documents list My documents set (Sort: Date (new→ old))☆	P. 356
8 Kisekae Tool	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Kisekae Tool list Kisekae Tool (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old))☆ Data in Kisekae Tool Set volume: Volume 5☆	P. 119
9 Machi-chara	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Machi-chara list Machi-chara setting: ON (シロイルカ)[*4]☆ Machi-chara display (Switch view mode: 12-part, Sort: Date (new→ old))☆	P. 120
⧆ Chara-den	Folder list Manage folders (Folder security: OFF) Backlight time: As light setting☆ Chara-den list Chara-den disp set (Sort: Date (new→ old), Backlight time: As light setting)☆ <Chara-den player> Backlight time: As light setting☆ Screen size: Zoom↑☆	P. 330

[*4] [OFF] is set when Reset settings (☞P. 411) is performed after [シロイルカ] is deleted from Machi-chara.

■ Media tool menu

Media tool		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 Manga&Book Reader	File list Sort (e-comic only): Date (new→old)☆ Backlight time: As light setting☆ Details screen Display settings (Font size: Normal, Text direction: Vertical, Ruby text: OFF, Image Size: Double Size)☆ Comics setting: Flame/Page Set volume: Medium☆ Vibrator: ON☆ Backlight time: As light setting☆	P. 359
2 Document Viewer	Sort: By title name☆ Backlight time: As light setting☆	P. 358
3 PDF Viewer	Set screen (Page layout: Single page, View types: Fit page, Scroll bar: ON☆, Page numbers: ON☆, Magnification: ON☆)	P. 356
4 Voice recorder	Noise reduction: ON☆ Auto timer: OFF Retain settings: ON☆	P. 355
5 Voice memo/ Rec msg	–	P. 396
6 Quick search	–	P. 394

■ MUSIC menu

MUSIC		
Function menu	**Default setting**	**Page**
1 MUSIC Player	Refer to MUSIC of Data box	P. 375
2 Music&Video ch	Refer to Music&Video ch of Data box	P. 364

Touch menu list

Function menu		Displayed screen	Page
Full Browser			
	Home	View an Internet web page that is set as a Home	P. 302
	Bookmark	Bookmark folder list screen	P. 302
1Seg		1Seg watching screen	P. 286
Camera			
	Shoot still pic	Still picture shooting screen	P. 153
	Shoot movie	Movie shooting screen	P. 155
Mail			
	Inbox	Inbox	P. 209
	Outbox	Outbox	P. 209
	Unsent messages	Unsent messages	P. 209
	Compose message	Compose message screen	P. 196
Manga&Book Reader		Folder list screen	P. 315
Data box			
	My picture	Folder list screen	P. 312
	i-motion	Folder list screen	P. 313
	1Seg	Folder list screen	P. 313

Other functions

Function menu		Default setting	Page
Earpiece volume		Volume 5	P. 73 P. 110
Videophone		Change send img: キャラ(女性) Brightness (when sending a camera image): ±0 Videophone (Display setting: Show me small☆, Subscreen disp: Upper left☆, Visual preference: Normal, Lighting: Always ON☆) DTMF mode: OFF	P. 80 P. 83
PushTalk		Edit group name: グループ１ to グループ９ Set PushTalk (Set auto answer: OFF, Set PT arrival act: Answer, Ring time setting: 30 seconds, Set when folded: Speaker phone, Hands-free PT: ON)☆	P. 94
Manner mode		OFF (Normal when set to ON)	P. 113
Omakase Lock		Disabled	P. 133
Side key guard		Disabled☆	P. 137
Shortcut menu		Bar code reader, Receive Ir data, Card reader, Timer, Calculator, Manga&BookReader, 地図アプリ, Schedule, Alarm, Bookmark	P. 393
Character Entry			
	Chara entry/dict	Input method: 5-touch, Direct conversion: ON Guess conversion (Quick conversion: ON, Guess conversion: ON, 1 chara mem conv: ON, With emoticon conv: ON, 1st choice genre: Celebrity)	P. 416

Dial key assignments (5-touch)

Use dial keys to input text. Each key has multiple characters assigned to it.

■ Double-byte characters

Key	漢 Kanji (hiragana) input mode	ｱ Double-byte katakana input mode	Double-byte alphanumeric input mode		区 Kuten code mode
			A Upper and lower case	a Lower case	
1	あいうえお ぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオ ァィゥェォ	．／＿＠１ □ (Space)	．／＿＠１ □ (Space)	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ＡＢＣ ａｂｃ２	ａｂｃ２	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	ＤＥＦ ｄｅｆ３	ｄｅｆ３	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	ＧＨＩ ｇｈｉ４	ｇｈｉ４	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	ＪＫＬ ｊｋｌ５	ｊｋｌ５	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	ＭＮＯ ｍｎｏ６	ｍｎｏ６	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	ＰＱＲＳ ｐｑｒｓ７	ｐｑｒｓ７	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	ＴＵＶ ｔｕｖ８	ｔｕｖ８	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	ＷＸＹＺ ｗｘｙｚ９	ｗｘｙｚ９	9
0	わをんゎ □ (Space)	ワヲンヮ □ (Space)	０ □ (Space)	０ □ (Space)	0
0 to 9 (for 1+ seconds)	*1				0 to 9
✳	゛ ゜ ↲ *2		↲ *2		↲
#	ー～、。！？・				n/a

■ Single-byte characters

Key	ｱ Single-byte katakana mode	Single-byte alphanumeric input mode		1 Single-byte numeric mode
		A Upper and lower case	a Lower case	
1	ｱｲｳｴｵｧｨｩｪｫ	. /_@1 □ (Space)	. /_@1 □ (Space)	1
2	ｶｷｸｹｺ	ABCabc2	abc2	2
3	ｻｼｽｾｿ	DEFdef3	def3	3
4	ﾀﾁﾂﾃﾄｯ	GHIghi4	ghi4	4
5	ﾅﾆﾇﾈﾉ	JKLjkl5	jkl5	5
6	ﾊﾋﾌﾍﾎ	MNOmno6	mno6	6
7	ﾏﾐﾑﾒﾓ	PQRSpqrs7	pqrs7	7
8	ﾔﾕﾖｬｭｮ	TUVtuv8	tuv8	8
9	ﾗﾘﾙﾚﾛ	WXYZwxyz9	wxyz9	9
0	ﾜｦﾝ □ (Space)	0 □ (Space)	0 □ (Space)	0
0 to 9 (for 1+ seconds)	*1			*3
✳	ﾞ ﾟ - ↲	↲*2		✳
#	- ~ ､｡! ?･( ) ’ " , : ; ¥&			#

*1 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.

*2 Press to enter [↲] (line breaks). [↲] appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/Delete new line mark like any other character.

*3 Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter “+”.

- One double-byte character is counted as 2 single-byte characters.
- A single-byte dakuten/handakuten mark is counted as a single character.

Dial key assignments (2-touch)

Double-byte

Upper case mode

1st digit (first key to enter)	2nd digit (next key to enter)									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	ー	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		☎	
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	＊	#		♥	*
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte

Upper case mode

1st digit (first key to enter)	2nd digit (next key to enter)									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	-	/
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		☎	
8	ﾔ	(	ﾕ	)	ﾖ	＊	#		♥	*
9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	ﾞ	ﾟ	6	7	8	9	0

* Press 8 ➡ 0 to switch between upper case mode and lower case mode.

- For ▨, characters can be entered in lower case when in lower case mode.
- In double-byte lower-case mode, press 0 ➡ 4 to enter "、" and 0 ➡ 5 to enter "。".
- In single-byte lower-case mode, press 0 ➡ 4 to enter "," and 0 ➡ 5 to enter ".".
- In single-byte upper-case mode, ☎ and ♥ are counted as 2 single-byte characters.

Note

- Empty boxes in the above charts indicate spaces.
- For ▨, after inputting text, press ✉ to convert between upper case and lower case.

Symbols/Special character list

Double-byte symbols/Special characters

、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？	！	゛
゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ	ヾ	ゝ
ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―	‐	／
＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	‘	’	“	”
（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝	〈	〉
《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】	＋	－
±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦	≧	∞
∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥	＄	￠
￡	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆	★	○
●	◎	◇	◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼
※	〒	→	←	↑	↓	〓	∈	∋	⊆
⊇	⊂	⊃	∪	∩	∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔
∀	∃	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪
≫	√	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬	Å	‰	♯
♭	♪	†	‡	¶	◯	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ヮ
ヰ	ヱ	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ	Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε
Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο
Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω	α
β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η	θ	ι	κ	λ
μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ	σ	τ	υ	φ

χ	ψ	ω	А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё
Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П
Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ
Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	Ю	Я	а	б	в	г
д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м
н	о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц
ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э	ю	я	─
│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤	┴	┼
━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳	┫	┻
╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰	┥	┸
╂	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
Ⅹ	㍉	㌔	㌢	㍍	㌘	㌧	㌃	㌶	㍑
㍗	㌍	㌦	㌣	㌫	㍊	㌻	㎜	㎝	㎞
㎎	㎏	㏄	㎡	㍻	〝	〟	№	㏍	℡
㊤	㊥	㊦	㊧	㊨	㈱	㈲	㈹	㍾	㍽
㍼	≒	≡	∫	∮	∑	√	⊥	∠	∟
⊿	∵	∩	∪						

Special symbols

- Special symbols may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones that do not support i-mode.

Single-byte symbols

!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*
+	,	-	.	/	:	;	<	=	>
?	@	[	¥	]	^	_	`	{	|
}	‾	｡	｢	｣	､	･	ｰ	ﾞ	ﾟ

Pictograph/Emoticon list

Pictograph list

Enter reading to convert to pictograph.

Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph	Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph	Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph	Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph
はーと、はあと	❤	かお、うまい	😋	かたつむり	🐌	だっしゅ	💨
はーと、はあと	💓	かお	😁	ひよこ	🐤	ー	〰
しつれん、はーと、はあと	💔	かお、げっそり、さけび	😱	ぺんぎん	🐧	ー	➰
はーと、はあと	💕	やじるし、ぐっど	⤴	さかな	🐟	おーけー	OK
かお、にこ	😃	やじるし、ばっど	⤵	うま	🐴	えぬじー	NG
かお、むか	😠	でんわ	☎	ぶた	🐷	め	👀
かお、かなしい	😞	でんわ、けいたい	📱	おんぷ	🎵	みみ	👂
かお、かなしい	😖	めーる	✉	おんぷ	🎶	ぐー	✊
かお、ふらふら	😵	らぶれたー	💌	おんせん	♨	ちょき、ぶい	✌
かお	😣	めも	📝	かわいい	💠	ぱー	✋
かお、にこ	😊	でんわ	📲	きす	💋	おーけー、ぐっど、ないす	👍
かお、あせ	😅	めーる	📩	ぴかぴか、きらきら	✨	あし	👣
かお、あせ	😓	ふぁっくす	FAX	ひらめき	💡	はしる、ひと	🏃
かお、むか	😤	はれ	☀	むか、いかり	💢	じてんしゃ	🚲
かお、ぼけ	😑	くもり	☁	ぱんち	👊	でんしゃ	🚃
はーと	😍	あめ、かさ	☂	ばくだん	💣	ちかてつ	M
かお、べー	😜	ゆき	⛄	ねる、ねむい	zzz	しんかんせん	🚄
かお、ういんく	😉	かみなり	⚡	びっくり	❗	くるま	🚗
かお、にこ、うれしい	😆	うずまき、たいふう	🌀	びっくり	⁉	くるま	🚙
かお、がまん、かなしい	😣	きり	🌁	びっくり	‼	ばす	🚌
ねこ	😺	こさめ	🌂	しょうげき、いらいら	💥	ふね	🚢
かお、かなしい	😫	いぬ	🐶	あせ	💦	ひこうき	✈
かお、なみだ、かなしい	😢	ねこ	🐱	あせ	💧	よっと、りぞーと	⛵

Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph	Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph	Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph	Keyword (Reading)	Picto-graph
くりすます	🎄	め	🌱	きんえん	🚭	おひつじざ	♈
いえ	🏠	もみじ	🍁	かめら	📷	おうしざ	♉
びる	🏢	さくら	🌸	かばん	👜	ふたござ	♊
ゆうびんきょく	🏣	おにぎり、おむすび	🍙	ほん	📖	かにざ	♋
びょういん	🏥	けーき	🍰	りぼん	🎀	ししざ	♌
ぎんこう	BK	らーめん、どんぶり	🍜	ぷれぜんと	🎁	おとめざ	♍
ぎんこう、えーてぃーえむ	ATM	ぱん、しょくぱん	🍞	ばーすでー	🎂	てんびんざ	♎
ほてる	🏨	ぶてぃっく	👠	てれび	📺	さそりざ	♏
こんびに	CVS	はさみ、びよういん	✂	げーむ	🎮	いてざ	♐
がそりん、すたんど	GS	からおけ	🎤	しーでぃー	💿	やぎざ	♑
ちゅうしゃじょう	Ⓟ	えいが	🎥	べる、ちゃぺる	🔔	みずがめざ	♒
がっこう	🏫	ゆうえんち	🎠	どあ	🚪	うおざ	♓
なみ	🌊	おんがく	🎧	おかね、どるぶくろ	💰	しんげつ、つき	●
ふじさん、やま	🗻	あーと	🎨	ぱそこん	💻	つき	◔
しんごう	🚥	えんげき	🎩	れんち、こうぐ	🔧	はんげつ、つき	◑
といれ	🚻	いべんと	🎪	えんぴつ	✏	みかづき、つき	🌙
れすとらん	🍴	ちけっと	🎫	おうかん	👑	まんげつ、つき	○
きっさてん	☕	すぽーつ	🎽	ゆびわ	💍	あいもーど	i
ばー	🍸	やきゅう	⚾	すなどけい、とけい	⌛	あいもーど	ⓘ
びーる、さけ	🍺	ごるふ	⛳	おちゃ、ゆのみ	🍵	あいあぷり	α
とっくり、さけ	🍶	てにす	🎾	うでどけい、とけい	⌚	あいあぷり	α
わいん、さけ	🍷	さっかー	⚽	くつ	👟	どこも	D
はんばーがー	🍔	すきー	🎿	てぃーしゃつ、しゃつ	👕	どこも	Ⓓ
くろーばー	🍀	ばすけっと、ばすけ	🏀	さいふ	👛	ゆうりょう	¥
さくらんぼ、ちぇりー	🍒	はた	🏁	くちべに、けしょう	💄	ふりー、むりょう	FREE
ちゅーりっぷ、はな	🌷	すのぼ	🏂	じーんず、じーぱん、ずぼん	👖	あいでぃー	ID
ばなな	🍌	ぽけっとべる、ぽけべる	📟	めがね	👓	かぎ、しーくれっと、ぱすわーど	🔑
りんご	🍎	たばこ、きつえん	🚬	くるまいす	♿	りたーん	↵

Continued on next page ▶▶

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph
くりあ	CL	まるあーる、しょうひょう	®	なな、しち	7️⃣	やじるし、さゆう	↔
むしめがね、るーぺ、さーち	🔍	きけん、けいこく	⚠	はち	8️⃣	やじるし、じょうげ	↕
にゅー	NEW	きんし	🈲	きゅー、く	9️⃣	かちんこ	🎬
はた	⚐	あき、くうしつ、くうせき、くうしゃ	🈳	ぜろ	0️⃣	ふくろ	👝
ふりーだいやる	OO	ごうかく	🈴	はーと、はあと	♥	ぺん	✒
しゃーぷだいやる	#	まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ	🈵	すぺーど	♠	ひとかげ	👤
もばきゅー	Ⓠ	いち	1️⃣	だいや	♦	いす	🪑
くりっぷ	📎	に	2️⃣	くろーばー、くらぶ	♣	よる、つき	🌙
こぴーらいと	©	さん	3️⃣	やじるし、みぎうえ	↗	すーん	🔜
てぃーえむ、とれーどまーく、しょうひょう	™	よん、し	4️⃣	やじるし、みぎした	↘	おん	🔛
まるひ	㊙	ご	5️⃣	やじるし、ひだりうえ	↖	えんど	🔚
りさいくる	♻	ろく	6️⃣	やじるし、ひだりした	↙	とけい	🕒

- The pictographs may not appear properly depending on the model of the receiving terminal. In addition, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones that do not support i-mode. Pictographs other than ♥, 💔, ☎ appear as spaces in SMS.

Emoticon list

(^0^)	(+_+)	(^^ゞ	φ(..)	(^^)Y☆Y(^^)
o(^-^)o	(-_-)	(☆_☆)	(^人^)	o(^-^o)(o^-^)o
(^0^)/	(v_v)	(ノ><)ノ	<(__)>	(ノ°0°)ノ
p(^^)q	(T_T)	(ー_ー#)	(´Д`)	(° 0°)＼(-_-)
(>_<)	(¥_¥)	(¨ ;)	＼(^^;;)	(∪o∪)。。。
(*_*)	(@_@)	(ー_ーメ)	(#^.^#)	(^ ^)＼(° °)
m(__)m	(?_?)	(° ▽°)	(^0)=3	＼^o^／
f^_^;	(;_;)	!(^ ^)!	(;´・`)	(┬┬_┬┬)
(:_;)	(0_0)	o(><)o	(´～`;)	??(° Q。)??
(-.-;)	(^_^)	(。。;)	(￣▽￣;)	(^_-)-☆

Phrase list

Internet	1	.ne.jp	Private	1	遊びに行こう
	2	.co.jp		2	飲みに行きませんか？
	3	.ac.jp		3	遅れます
	4	.or.jp		4	変更します
	5	.go.jp		5	中止です
	6	.com		6	先に行きます
	7	@docomo.ne.jp		7	先に帰ります
	8	http://		8	時間です
	9	www.		9	何してるの？
Greetings	1	おはようございます	Reply	1	OKです
	2	おやすみなさい		2	NGです
	3	昨日は、どうもありがとうございました		3	ありがとう
	4	行ってきます		4	ごめんなさい
	5	いってらっしゃい		5	待ってて
	6	お疲れ様でした		6	今忙しい
	7	お世話になっております		7	後で連絡入れます
	8	こんにちは		8	保留です
	9	こんばんは		9	キャンセルです
Business	1	直行します	Original Phrases	1	--------------------
	2	直帰します		2	--------------------
	3	休暇をとります		3	--------------------
	4	半休します		4	--------------------
	5	電車遅延のため、遅れます		5	--------------------
	6	本日の会議は中止となりました		6	--------------------
	7	出欠をご連絡ください		7	--------------------
	8	次の指示を待ってください		8	--------------------
	9	携帯の電源を切ります		9	--------------------

- Original phrases are not registered in the handset at the time of purchase.

Multiaccess combinations

The following are the main combinations of transmission functions that can operate simultaneously.

Current transmission \ Transmission type	Voice call		Videophone		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		Data trans. (packet)		Data trans. (64K)		PushTalk		PushTalkPlus	Positioning location	1Seg
	Make	Receive	Make	Receive		Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Make	Receive	Network connection		
Phone	△*1	△*1	×	×*4	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×*4	×	×*4	×	○	○
Videophone	×	×*4	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	×
i-mode	○	○	△*6	△*2	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×*4	△*3	△*7	×	○	○
i-αppli transmission	△*3	△*3	△*3	△*2	×	△*3	○	△*3	○	×	×	×	×*4	△*3	△*7	×	△*3	×
Transmitting data (packet)	○	○	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	○
Transmitting data (64K)	×	×*4	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	×
PushTalk transmission	×	△*5	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×*4	×*8	×*4	×	×	×
PushTalkPlus (Network connection)	○	○	×	×*4	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×*4	○	○	×	×	×
1Seg	○	○	×	△*9	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×

○ : Current transmission is retained and new transmission is processed.

× : Current transmission is retained (Cannot process new transmission).

△ : New transmission is processed depending on the condition.

*1 Available when subscribed to Call Waiting (☞P. 428).

*2 Receive a Videophone call or continue packet transmission (☞P. 84).

*3 i-mode/i-αppli transmission is disconnected and new transmission is processed.

*4 The call is saved in Received calls (excluding PushTalk reconnected call).

*5 When Set PushTalk arrival action is set to [Call Rejection] (Default setting: [Answer]), the current PushTalk call is continued. Change Set PushTalk arrival action to a setting other than [Call Rejection] to answer a voice call during a PushTalk call (☞P. 94). After the setting is changed, PushTalk transmission is terminated if voice call is received and answered. If the voice call is ignored, the PushTalk is not terminated.

*6 Videophone call is transmitted after disconnecting i-mode connection.

*7 When i-mode arrival action is set to [PushTalk preferred] (default setting), i-mode and i-αppli transmissions are disconnected and a new transmission is processed (☞P. 187).

*8 Sending a transmission to add a member is possible only when the PushTalk sender is Myself (PushTalk is not saved in Redial).

*9 When an incoming call is answered, 1Seg is terminated.

Multi Assistant (Multitask) combinations

The following are the main combinations of functions operable simultaneously.

Current function \ Additional function	Multi Assistant screen/Call from history	Mail/Read mail	Dial input/Voice calling	PushTalk calling	Videophone calling	Schedule/View schedule	Calculator	Text memo	Open phonebook	Phonebook	Manner mode/Light&Power saver set	Supportbook	ToruCa	GPS	Full Browser/i-mode Bookmark/Full Browser Bookmark	i-mode	Document Viewer	Data box (list screen)	1Seg menu	i-αppli/IC card contents/DCMX	MUSIC Player	i-Channel	Manga&BookReader	Music&Video Channel	Bluetooth/Use Bluetooth	Quick search/Perform Quick search
Custom menu, Basic menu	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-αppli	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○
PDF Viewer, My Documents	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○
Activate 1Seg	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	○	○
Phonebook, PushTalk phonebook	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Text memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Schedule	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Data box (list screen), My picture, i-motion*, Melody*, Machi-chara, Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	○	○
Video player	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	○	○
MUSIC Player	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	○	○
Voice call	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○
Manga&BookReader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○

Additional function / Current function	Multi Assistant screen/Call from history	Mail/Read mail	Dial input/Voice calling	PushTalk calling	Videophone calling	Schedule/View schedule	Calculator	Text memo	Open phonebook	Phonebook	Manner mode/Light&Power saver set	Supportbook	ToruCa	GPS	Full Browser/i-mode Bookmark/ Full Browser Bookmark	i-mode	Document Viewer	Data box (list screen)	1Seg menu	i-αppli/IC card contents/DCMX	MUSIC Player	i-Channel	Manga&BookReader	Music&Video Channel	Bluetooth/Use Bluetooth	Quick search/Perform Quick search
ToruCa	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Full Browser	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○
Mail/Compose message	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
GPS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Music&Video Channel	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	○	○
Data transmission (packet)	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	×
IC card contents, DCMX	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○
Document Viewer	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○
i-mode, i-Channel	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○
Bluetooth function	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○
Quick search	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

○: Available function

×: Unavailable function. Displayed in gray.

* Background playback is not available for i-motion player or Melody player.

- Multi Assistant may not be available when using a function not listed under “Current function” in the table.
- Combinations shown in the table may not be entirely correct depending on the status of the application.
- Multi Assistant is sometimes not available as shown above when memory is running low.
- Document Viewer may not be available when operating i-mode/Full Browser.
- Press ☎ in the Multi Assistant screen to retrieve “Dial input”.

Services available from the FOMA terminal

Services available from the FOMA terminal	Phone number
Directory assistance service (fees apply: assistance fee + call fee) ● Phone numbers of customers who decline being listed are not available.	(No area code) 104
Telegrams (fees apply: telegram fee)	(No area code) 115
Time tone service (fees apply)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (fees apply)	Area code of region + 177
Police emergencies	(No area code) 110
Fire department/Medical assistance	(No area code) 119
Emergencies and accidents at sea	(No area code) 118
Disaster message (fees apply)	(No area code) 171
Collect call (fees apply: assistance fee + call fee)	(No area code) 106

Note

- An additional 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) handling fee is charged to the recipient for each call when collect calls (106) are made (as of April 2008).
- An additional 100 yen (105 yen including tax) directory fee is charged when using directory assistance (104). People with disabilities in vision or upper limbs can receive this service free of charge. For details, call 116 (NTT sales counter) from a landline phone (as of April 2008).
- If landline phones subscribed to “Call forwarding” are set to forward calls to mobile phones, callers may hear the phone ringing even if the mobile phone is busy, outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off depending on the settings for the landline phones/mobile phones.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales counter), Dial Q2, message service and credit card calls are not available (Automatic credit card calls to a FOMA terminal can be made from a landline telephone or payphone).
- This FOMA terminal supports “Location notification of emergency call”.

  When dialing an emergency number such as 110, 118, and 119, the information of your location (location information) is automatically notified to the agency that receive the emergency call (e.g. the police station). Depending on your location and the reception status of the signal, the agency that received the emergency call may not be able to confirm the exact location.

  If the location information is notified, the name of the agency that received the emergency call is displayed in the stand-by display.

  If you are not sending your caller ID by calling with ***184*** added or other means, your location information and phone number are not notified. However, if the agency that received the emergency call considers your location information and phone number necessary for important purposes, such as life saving, the agency can retrieve them regardless of your settings.

  In addition, the area/timing to introduce “Location notification of emergency call” depends on the state of preparation in each agency that receives emergency calls.
- When calling 110, 119, and 118 from your FOMA terminal, the police or fire stations may return your call for verification purposes. State that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and exact location.

  Remain stationary to ensure that you are not disconnected while making an emergency call, and keep handset turned on to receive calls for approximately 10 minutes afterwards.
- Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station may not be connected. In such cases, use the nearest payphone or landline phone.

Options and accessories

Combine the FOMA terminal with various optional accessories (sold separately) for expanded personal and business use.
Some products may not be available in certain areas.
Contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer for details.
Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02*1
- Battery Pack SH17
- Back Cover SH21
- Desktop Holder SH19
- Earphone Terminal P001*2
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01*3
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01*3/P02*3
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*2
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*2/P002*2
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001*3
- Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01
- FOMA USB Cable*4
- Wireless Earphone Set 02
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna*5
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*6
- FOMA In-Car Hands-free Cable 01
- In-Car Holder 01*7
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case L 01
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 01/02
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01*4/02*4
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)*5

*1 Refer to P. 51 and P. 52 for details on charging with an AC adapter.

*2 Connect Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 and Earphone Plug Adapter to use these options and accessories.

*3 Connect Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 to use these options and accessories.

*4 The use of USB HUB may not work correctly.

*5 For use only in Japan.

*6 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to charge and connect with the USB cable.

*7 Activate Side key guard settings to use the In-Car Holder 01.

Using with external devices

Using supported external devices, play back movies saved on microSD Cards on the FOMA terminal.*
microSD Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Cards at home electronics shops (☞P. 332).
For details on compatible devices, refer to *http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh906i/*. Or, contact the number below.

- Play i-motion created on external devices (including music data in AAC format) on the FOMA terminal (☞P. 372).

* Some movies cannot be played back depending on the file format or the type of external device.

Sharp Data Communication Support Center
TEL: 03-5396-2351
Hours: 10:00 A.M. to 12:00 noon, 1:00 P.M. to 5:00 P.M., Monday through Friday
(Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

About movie player software

QuickTime™ Player (Free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) provided by Apple Computer, Inc. is required to play back movies on a PC. QuickTime™ Player can be downloaded from the following web page.

http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required. Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- Refer to the Apple Computer, Inc. web page for details on the operating environment, downloading, and usage instructions.

Troubleshooting

First, check whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software (Updating software ☞P. 504).

Problem	Explanation	Page
Does not function	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Is the battery pack inserted properly?	P. 55 P. 55 P. 50
Power turns off	● Is the IC portion of the FOMA card dirty? ● Is the battery pack connector terminal side or connector terminal for the battery pack (charger terminal) on the FOMA terminal dirty?	P. 47 P. 50
Does not recharge	● Is the battery pack inserted properly? ● Is the temperature of the FOMA terminal or battery high? ● Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean terminal with a cotton swab. ● Is the AC adapter connector properly connected to the FOMA terminal and Desktop holder? ● Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder?	P. 50 P. 51 – P. 52 P. 53 P. 53
Keys do not respond	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is All lock or Side key guard active?	P. 55 P. 132 P. 137
Optical TOUCH CRUISER does not function properly	● Move the pointer or cursor just as covering the whole operating range of the Optical TOUCH CRUISER with finger. ● Turn the FOMA terminal off, and then turn it on again.	P. 40 P. 55
圏外 appears and calls cannot be made	● Is the handset outside the service area or in a place with a weak signal?	P. 34
Calls cannot be made from the phonebook	● Is Function lock applied to the Phonebook? ● Is All lock enabled?	P. 134 P. 132
Calls cannot be made with the dial keys	● Is Keypad dial lock set? ● Is All lock enabled?	P. 136 P. 132

Problem	Explanation	Page
Busy signal sounds after dialing	● Was ***090***, ***080***, ***070*** or the area code dialed? ● Does 圏外 appear? ● If the other party’s signal is weak, the call may not connect.	P. 61 P. 34 –
When a message is received, set ring tone does not sound	● Is Receive/Auto send display set to [Operation first]?	P. 220
Ring tone does not sound	● Is the phone ring volume set to [Silent]? ● Is the Voice Mail Service active and is the ringing time set to [0 seconds]? ● Is Public mode (Drive mode) active? ● Is Manner mode active?	P. 109 P. 427 P. 74 P. 113
When a message is received, a different ring tone sounds	● When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular group, that mail ring tone sounds. ● When different mail ring tones are set for both individual and group, the mail ring tone for the individual sounds. ● When multiple messages are received, the specific mail ring tone of the last person sounds.	P. 101 P. 108 –
When a call or mail is received, LED flashes in another way than settings	● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which group called LED/ group mail LED is set, LED flashes according to the LED settings that are made for the group. ● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which both phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED and group called LED/group mail LED are set, LED flashes according to the LED settings made with phonebook called LED/ phonebook mail LED. ● When multiple messages are received, LED flashes according to the LED settings made for the last received mail address.	P. 101 P. 123 –
[Service not registered] appears	● Subscription is required to use i-mode. ● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off the FOMA terminal power and restart.	– –
Display is blank	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off? ● Is the battery level sufficient? ● Is Power saver mode active? ● Is Auto power OFF set?	P. 55 P. 55 P. 118 P. 384
Screen is washed out or patterns appear	● Is VeilView set to enabled?	P. 125
IC card (for FeliCa functions) is unusable	● Is IC card lock or Omakase Lock enabled? ● Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 133 P. 263 P. 55

Continued on next page ▶▶

Problem	Explanation	Page
Total calls cost does not increase	● Total calls cost for FOMA card does not increase when maximum limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen) has been reached. Reset total calls cost to 0 yen.	P. 397
Data is not transferred	● Is USB HUB used? The use of USB HUB may not work correctly.	–
Cannot watch 1Seg	● Is the handset outside the area of a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service or in a place with a weak signal? ● Is the FOMA card properly inserted? ● Is Channel setting set?	P. 282 P. 47 P. 284
Cannot position the present location	● i-mode subscription is required to use the service.	–
Cannot use location notification/ location provision	● Is the location service client set correctly? ● Is Location provision ON/OFF set to [Loc. provision:OFF]? ● Is the settings required for location provision made with Service settings?	P. 277 P. 273 P. 276

List of error messages

Major error messages displayed on the FOMA terminal are shown in alphanumeric order.

- Numbers in brackets ( ) appearing in i-mode error messages are sent from the i-mode center as a code to distinguish between errors.

[A Network error has occurred.]

- Appears when an error occurs in the system at Position location, Location notification and Location provision or the service is not subscribed to.

[Already downloaded]

- The same version of the software has been already downloaded. ☞P. 247

[An attached file will be deleted]

- File with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded or replied to with Reply with quote.
  After the message appears, the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode message editing screen. ☞P. 203

[An error has occurred Viewer will close]

- Appears when Document Viewer is activated and an error has occurred in analyzing while loading the next page. Appears when file data is corrupted.

[Area mail received]

- When Area Mail is set to be received and is received, this message may appear. The screen before reception reappears after a short while. ☞P. 225

[Attachable size exceeded. Unable to attach]

- File exceeds size limit and cannot be attached.
  Delete some of message text or send message without attaching the file. ☞P. 203

[Authentication canceled]

- Appears when [Cancel] is selected or CLR is pressed in the authentication screen.

[Authentication type is not supported (401)]

- Appears when authentication is not possible.
  Previous screen reappears.

[B number dialing is not available when using abroad. A number dialing will be performed]

- Appears if calling is attempted with Number B when the 2in1 is used overseas. Select [Call] to call with Number A. Select [No ID dialing] to call without sending ID. ☞P. 435

[Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation]

- Appears if battery starts to run out. Charge the battery. ☞P. 51, P. 55

[Battery low]

- Battery level is low. Camera mode cannot be activated. Use after fully charging the battery. ☞P. 51

[Battery low. Unable to record anymore]

- Appears when the battery level is low while recording is in progress.

[Battery too low. Please recharge and retry]

- Appears when battery level is ▮▮ or ▯ while updating software. Recharge battery to ▮▮▮. ☞P. 51

[Bluetooth connection failed]
[Unable to connect to (service name)]

- Appears when the connection to Bluetooth devices has failed. ☞P. 405

[Camera function is not available now]

- Appears when activating camera while camera portion becomes hot from being stored in a hot place. Use the camera after letting it cool down.
- May appear and end the camera due to functional limitations when a call is received and others are performed while the camera shooting screen is shown. In such cases, activate camera again.
- May appear when the FOMA terminal is opened if the terminal is closed immediately after the camera is activated from phonebook or mail. Activate the camera again.

[Capacity exceeded. Some data may be lost. End editing?]

- Appears when message text alone exceeds 10,000 bytes. Select [Yes] to open the compose message screen. Excess data is deleted and ✉ appears. Depending on mail content (text, images, etc.), excess data may not be deleted. To re-edit, select [No] and the message entry screen reappears. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.

[Certificate is rejected (tampered)]

- Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page. ☞P. 171

[Connection failed]

- Appears when host is set incorrectly.
  Properly reset [Host selection] in i-mode settings. ☞P. 185
- Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later. ☞P. 170
- Appears when software could not be updated. Perform software update again. ☞P. 504

[Connection failed (403)]

- Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later. ☞P. 170

[Connection interrupted]

- i-mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal.
  Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal. ☞P. 34
- When this message appears in spite of a signal is strong and 📶, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.

Continued on next page ▶▶

(During Ir exchange or Bluetooth communication) [Connection suspended]
[No response. Retry?]
[Authentication failed. Retry?]

- Appears when canceling Ir exchange or Bluetooth communication. ☞P. 351, P. 403
- Appears when the other party could not be recognized. Select [Yes] to try again. ☞P. 351, P. 403
- Appears when Ir exchange or Bluetooth communication was not properly performed. Select [Yes] to try again. ☞P. 351, P. 403

[Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion]

- Appears when the file of Standard type i-motion that can be split-downloaded or Streaming type i-motion exceeds 10 MB and cannot be downloaded. ☞P. 190

[Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion]

- Appears when Standard type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and cannot be downloaded. ☞P. 190

[Continue using i-αppli and transmit data?]

- When [No] is selected for [Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?], this message appears when i-αppli once again attempts transmission.
- To transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select [Yes]. To not transmit and continue the use of i-αppli, select [No]. Select [Terminate] to end i-αppli.

[Copy-protected program]

- Appears when the 1Seg program cannot be recorded.

[Copy-protected program. End recording]

- Appears when the 1Seg program that program cannot be recorded starts during recording.

[Copyright information is incorrect. Delete all from the WMA folder]

- Appears when WMA files in microSD Card that have been played back with a FOMA terminal is attempted to be played back with other FOMA terminals. ☞P. 371
- Appears when the database of WMA files is damaged.

[Current UIM is not registered as IC owner. Unable to download/update/run]

- Appears when the information of an inserted FOMA card (UIM) is different from that mapped to FeliCa. Insert UIM registered as IC owner to use this function. ☞P. 256

[Data in B mode phonebook is unavailable]

- Appears if sending PushTalk is attempted to a person whose Phonebook 2in1 set is set to [B] when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode]. ☞P. 92

[Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?]

- Appears when space of IC card is not enough to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. Select [Yes] to display the already registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli list and the capacity (bytes) in the IC card. After checking how much capacity is lacking, select the services to be deleted and start i-αppli to delete them. Depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, however, only the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli list appears after selecting [Yes]. In this case, select the i-αppli to be deleted from the list.

[Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?]

- Appears when data transmission is noticeably frequent during i-αppli use.
- To transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select [Yes]. To not transmit and continue the use of i-αppli, select [No]. Select [Terminate] to end i-αppli.

[Database recovery will be performed]

- Restoration for the database in Data box is performed. The following information or others in Data box may not be restored.
  - ■ Damaged data
  - ■ Folders created by users
    However, data in the folders is not deleted and remain in the source folders.
  - ■ i-motion and music data with file restrictions
  - ■ PDF files that are not pre-installed
  - ■ Some data saved in Data box, which is used by i-αppli

[Disable accept calls]

- Accept calls is set. Disable and try again. ☞P. 138

[Document may not be fully displayed]

- File size is too large to be displayed in Document Viewer. ☞P. 358
- Appears when file contains functions unsupported by Document Viewer. ☞P. 358
- Appears when memory is low and Document Viewer does not start properly.
- Appears when connection times out while starting Document Viewer. Occurs when file requires an extended period of time for analysis.
- Appears when an attempt to display file properties failed.

[Download canceled]

- Appears when downloading is canceled during download.

[Download failed]
[Invalid content Download failed]

- Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.
- Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.

[Duplicate address deleted]

- A duplicate address is deleted when the same mail address is set as address or broadcast for i-mode mail. ☞P. 198

[End pic shooting. Use camera later]

- Appears when FOMA terminal or camera portion becomes hot from being used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down.

[Enter correct network security code]

- Appears when an incorrect network security code is entered. Enter correct network security code.
  FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal and identification (a driver’s license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten network security code. ☞P. 128

[Entered value is invalid]

- Appears when a domain (From) is selected in Sort rules of Received mail if @ is included in the entered domain. ☞P. 218
- Appears when Receive entry of Area Mail is set if the MessageID is not correct. ☞P. 226

[Error in image. Does not work correctly]

- Flash movie has an error.

[Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls]

- Appears when PushTalk transmissions are sent to five members or more from the PushTalk phonebook. Set four members or less. ☞P. 92

[Folder is full]

- If i-mode mail is received when there is no available space in memory and no unprotected read mail, [Folder is full] appears.[0] appears for the number of messages in the receive complete screen.

Continued on next page

[Function is already running End and restart?]

- Appears when a function that is already running is selected. Quit the function and run again or switch to the screen for the running function.

[Function is locked]

- Function lock is set.
- Disable and try again. ☞P. 134

[Handset/UIM is full. Unable to receive anymore]
[Handset memory is full. Unable to receive anymore]
[UIM is full. Unable to receive anymore]

- Appears when the FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card memory are full and new SMS cannot be received. Check the unread i-mode mail/SMS (☞P. 205, P. 227), disable the protect (☞P. 215), and delete the unnecessary i-mode mail/SMS (☞P. 215, P. 228) on the FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card.

[“i-αppli To” function is not set]

- Appears when attempting to start software, unauthorized to be linked, from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, or i-mode mail. The software could not be started. ☞P. 245

[Incompatible function running. Unable to start Please end the function pushing the Multi button]

- Function that cannot be used simultaneously is running.
  Quit the function and try again.

[Input error (205)]

- Appears when server is about to reset contents after sending text entered in a site or Internet web page.
  All text and settings entered on the screen are deleted (Content sent before the error message appeared has already been sent).

[Insert UIM]

- Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted. ☞P. 47

[Invalid data. Connection cannot be established (400)]

- Connection cannot be established due to errors in sites/Internet web pages. Check whether the URL is correct. ☞P. 174

[Invalid data is included. Unable to send part of data]

- Appears when images with FOMA card security function are deleted before transmission, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset or to save selected mails.

[Invalid file contents. Unable to display]

- The manager information file of microSD Card is incorrect. The available space of microSD Card is insufficient, and the manager information may not be updated correctly. Delete unnecessary files, increase available memory space and perform “New manager info”. ☞P. 343

[Invalid UIM. Requested service not available]

- Appears when attempting to view screen memo or Message R/F protected by FOMA card security functions. ☞P. 48
- Appears when attempting to activate i-αppli from the software list.
- Appears when attempting to activate i-αppli from sites, Internet web pages, or i-mode mail. ☞P. 48

[Keypad dial lock]

- Disable Keypad dial lock when calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding microSD Card phonebook) and Redial. ☞P. 136

[Link set for data in folder. Unable to delete part of data]

- Appears when attempting to delete folders containing data that cannot be deleted, such as data set for stand-by, ring tone, etc., by performing Delete all folders. ☞P. 346
- Appears when folders exist in folders such as ***xxxSHARP/xxxSH_UF/PRLxxx***. Delete applicable folder with a PC or other devices, or format a microSD Card. ☞P. 342

[May be unable to fully acquire all data. Acquire data?]

- Appears when downloading Standard type i-motion with unknown file size. ☞P. 190

[Memory is almost full]

- Appears when the memory space in the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient and the still picture mode/movie mode is activated.
- FOMA terminal handset memory is low. Delete other pictures to save image with current settings.

[Memory is full]

- Appears when the FOMA terminal handset phonebook already has 1,000 entries saved and a new party is about to be added without entering the memory number. ☞P. 96

[Memory is full. Cannot overwrite]

- Appears when memory is full and data cannot be overwritten.

[Memory is full. Unable to save anymore]

- Appears when maximum number of entries is exceeded during copying. Delete unnecessary data and copy data again.

[Memory is full. Unable to update]

- Appears when memory is full and data cannot be updated.

[Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite?]

- Appears when there is no available memory for saving data or when the maximum number of data are saved. Save after deleting unnecessary data and files and start again. ☞P. 348

[Memory low]

- Software cannot be run due to lack of available memory.
- Processing suspended due to lack of available memory. When this message appears frequently, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.

[Memory low. Could not record]

- Appears when 1Seg programs cannot be recorded with insufficient space of the FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Card.

[Memory low. End recording]

- Appears when available space on the FOMA terminal handset or the microSD Card becomes insufficient while recording a program.

[Memory low. Unable to receive picture call image]

- Appears when memory space in the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient to store an image, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset.

[Memory shortage. Return to Full Browser Menu]

- Appears if available memory space is lacking while viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser. In this case, select [Agree]. All the open windows are closed.

[microSD is in use. Could not record]

- Appears when microSD Card is used at start of recording if Video recording destination is set to [microSD].

[microSD is not inserted. Could not record]

- Appears when microSD Card is not inserted at start of recording if Video recording destination is set to [microSD]. ☞P. 333

[Music&Video Channel denied]
[Music&Video Channel denied. Program deleted]

- Music&Video Channel service is not subscribed.
  Subscription is required to use Music&Video Channel.

[No content is available (204)]

- Appears when there is no data to display at the connected site or Internet web page.

Continued on next page ▶▶

[No more space Overwrite?]

- Appears when screen memo memory is full. Select [Yes] and select a screen memo to overwrite. Proceed to the save confirmation screen. Select [No] and the site or Internet web page reappears.

[No requested software]

- Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-αppli software from i-mode mail or Ir exchange function. ☞P. 245

(During iC transmission) [No response]

- Appears when the other party could not be recognized.

[No response (408)]

- Transmission disconnected due to no reply from the site or Internet web page. Try again later. ☞P. 170

[Not enough space. Continue to overwrite?]

- Appears when the screen memo is larger than the available memory space. Select [Yes] and select a screen memo to overwrite. The screen memo is deleted upon selection. Select [No] and the site or Internet web page reappears.

[Omakase Lock activated]

- Appears when Omakase Lock is set. ☞P. 133

[Other functions running. Unable to activate]

- Software could not be updated at the set time because other functions are running. Update immediately or set another date and time. ☞P. 504

[Out of Digital TV service area. Unable to record]

- Appears when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. Move to a location where 📺📶 appears to use. ☞P. 287

[Out of service area]

- Appears when making a Videophone call or network service such as i-mode, etc. is attempted but handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal.
  Retry after moving to a location where 📶 appears. ☞P. 34

[Page is not found (404)]

- Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web page may not exist.

[Password is not correct (401)]

- Appears when authentication is not possible on the authentication screen.

[Phone/Terminal and UIM ID will be sent]

- May appear while viewing sites or Internet web pages. Select [Yes] to send “Terminal ID and UIM ID”. To abandon sending and return to the previous screen, select [Return] or press CLR. ☞P. 171
- “Terminal ID and UIM ID” are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.
- “Terminal ID and UIM ID” are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer’s phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.

[PIN1 code blocked]

- Appears when power is turned on while PIN1 code is locked. Enter correct PUK when prompt appears to disable PIN lock. ☞P. 131

[Please enter security code]

- Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while Function lock is set. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock and continue operation. ☞P. 134

[Please wait]

- The audio line or the packet transmission system is not in service, or the audio line network or the packet transmission network is extremely congested. Try again later. Press a dial key to erase the message.
- Calls to 110, 119 and 118 are available.
  However, a call may not be connected depending on phone line conditions.

[Please wait for a while (packet)]

- The packet transmission system is not in service, or the packet transmission network is extremely congested. Try again later.

[PUK blocked]

- Appears when power is turned on or a FOMA card operation is used while PUK is blocked.
  Contact a DoCoMo Shop. ☞P. 129

[Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion]

- Appears when the file of Standard type i-motion that can be split-downloaded or Streaming type i-motion exceeds 10 MB and download is not completed. ☞P. 190

[Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion]

- Appears when Standard type i-motion exceeds 500 KB and download is not completed. ☞P. 190

[Record error]

- Appears when recording is attempted after 400 items are recorded and Voice recorder ends. Delete unnecessary data before recording. ☞P. 355

[Recording failed]

- Appears when shooting is started with the save destination set to the microSD Card and there is no available space, Camera mode ends and the stand-by display reappears.

[Replay period has expired]
[Replay period has expired. Delete?]
[View period has expired. Delete?]

- Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic or Music&Video Channels after the allowable replay period has expired. ☞P. 191, P. 360, P. 366, P. 376

[Replay period has not yet started]
[View period has not yet started]

- Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic or Music&Video Channels before set replay/view period. ☞P. 191, P. 360, P. 366, P. 376

[Requested software unavailable]

- Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started. ☞P. 245
- Appears when an attempt is made to start a mail-type i-αppli when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode]. ☞P. 436

[Root certificate has expired. Connect?]

- Appears when a server certificate whose signature has expired is received. To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No].
  Set date and time. ☞P. 171

[Root certificate is not valid]

- Appears when a certificate set to Disable is received.
  Confirm why the certificate was set to Disable. When the certificate has no security problems, set it to Enable, and then reconnect to the site. ☞P. 187
- Appears when Root certificate is not set to valid when updating software. Set certificates 1 to 13 in [Certificates] to valid. ☞P. 187

[Save aborted]

- Appears when data cannot be saved during the download of i-αppli.

Continued on next page ▶▶

[Secret data saved]

- Appears when Secret mode is not active and secret data is about to be sent by 2-touch dialing. ☞P. 98, P. 138

**[Security code is wrong]
[Please enter 4-8 digits]**

- Appears when an incorrect terminal security code is entered. Enter the correct terminal security code.
  FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten terminal security code. ☞P. 128

[Self mode]

- Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while in Self mode. ☞P. 134

[Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download/update/run. Delete a service?]

- When the same service has already been downloaded, a new service cannot be downloaded/updated/run unless the already registered service is deleted. Select [Yes] to display the service to be deleted. Delete the registered service.

[Service not registered]

- i-mode is not subscribed to. Subscription is required to use i-mode. ☞P. 170
- If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off the FOMA terminal power and restart.

[Services are full. MUSIC of overwritten service is unable to play. Overwrite?]

- Appears when the maximum number of available MUSIC (subscription) services has been exceeded (50 services). When [Yes] is selected, the MUSIC (subscription) service is overwritten with the oldest expiration date first. In addition, Uta-hodai, which is downloaded from the overwritten MUSIC (subscription) service, becomes unavailable.

**[Set the clock to play data]
[Set date/time to view this data]**

- Appears if date and time are not set correctly when attempting to play/display i-motion with replay restrictions or an e-comic with view restrictions in [Movable contents] folder.

[Size of this page is not supported]

- Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed. ☞P. 177
- Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.

[SMS is full Unable to copy anymore]

- Appears when the maximum number of SMS are saved in the FOMA terminal handset or the FOMA card and no further SMS could be copied. ☞P. 228

[Software already updated]

- The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded. ☞P. 247

[Software terminated due to security error]

- Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli. ☞P. 247
- Appears when use of a function not permitted by the software is attempted. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error. ☞P. 247

[Some items cannot be copied. Copy anyway?]

- Since capacity of FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook differ, only the first phone number/mail address is copied to FOMA card. Characters and character limits also differ. Appears if some data cannot be copied. Select [Yes] to copy the first phone number/mail address.

[SSL Session cannot be established]

- Appears when an attempt to connect to a site or Internet web page supporting SSL session failed. Try again later. ☞P. 171

[SSL session failed]

- Appears when an error occurs during SSL authentication and the SSL session is disconnected. ☞P. 171

[SSL session was terminated]

- Appears when FOMA terminal date is not set correctly when updating software. Set the FOMA terminal date. ☞P. 57

[There is no image. Unable to save]

- Appears when a still picture is attempted to be recorded if Display mode (L) is set to [Data broadcasting] in the normal position. ☞P. 292

[This certificate has expired. Connect?]

- Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.
  To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No]. ☞P. 171

[This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?]

- Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No]. ☞P. 171

[This data can no longer be replayed]
[This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?]
[This data can no longer be viewed. Delete?]

- Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic or Music&Video Channels after the allowable number of replays/views is exceeded. ☞P. 191, P. 360, P. 366, P. 376

[This data cannot be replayed. Delete?]
[This data cannot be viewed. Delete?]

- Appears when attempting to play/display i-motion, Chaku-uta full® or an e-comic with replay/view restrictions after resetting the time setting.
- Appears when attempting to play back Uta-hodai in the FOMA terminal handset without the license of the corresponding MUSIC (subscription) service.

[This data may not be replayed. Download?]

- Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded. ☞P. 317

[This site is not certified. Connect?]

- Appears when a server certificate that cannot be verified on the FOMA terminal is received.
  To connect without safety assured, select [Yes]. To not connect, select [No]. ☞P. 171

[This software contains an error]
[This software contains an error. Unable to download]

- i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.

[This software is not supported by this phone]

- Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.

[This UIM cannot be recognized]

- Appears when a FOMA card not usable by the terminal may have been inserted.
- Appears when FOMA card may be damaged or not properly inserted.
  Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted. ☞P. 47

[Time out]

- i-mode center is congested. Try again later.

Continued on next page ▶▶

[To play this data, activate auto time adjust and adjust clock]

- Appears if date and time are not set correctly when attempting to play/display Chaku-uta full®, a WMA file or Music&Video Channels with replay restrictions in the [Movable contents] folder. ☞P. 366, P. 376

[Too many devices registered. Overwrite?]

- Appears when the maximum number of available Bluetooth devices has been exceeded (ten devices). When [Yes] is selected, the Bluetooth devices is overwritten with the oldest communication date and time. ☞P. 404

[Too many unsent messages. Unable to activate]

- Unsent messages are full. New mail cannot be composed.
  Send or delete unsent messages and compose again. ☞P. 204, P. 215

[Too much data was entered]

- Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.
  Retry after erasing some text.

[Transmission failed]

- Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When [Address is not valid] appears as well, resend after editing the address.
  When this message appears with [i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later], try sending again later. When [Target server is full] appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.

[TVlink is expired]

- Appears when expired TVlink is selected. ☞P. 298

[Unable to activate]

- Appears when Document Viewer is activated but memory is too low to activate functions such as Magnifier or Zoom at selected area.

[Unable to authenticate. Register symbol again if error continues]

- Appears when writing authentication has failed. If errors persist, perform Register symbol again. ☞P. 130

[Unable to connect to Bluetooth device.]

- Appears if the connection to Bluetooth devices is failed when Bluetooth output is performed. Sound is output from the FOMA terminal handset. ☞P. 405

[Unable to connect to Bluetooth device. Try again?]

- Appears if the connection to Bluetooth devices is failed when Bluetooth output is performed or the connection is interrupted during output. Select [Reconnect]/[Output (handset)]. ☞P. 405

[Unable to copy part of data]

- Appears when there are files or folders on the microSD Card that were created on a PC or a handset other than the FOMA SH906i.

[Unable to Format]

- Appears when some microSD Cards do not support the copyright protection functions. microSD Card may be used if inserted again. However, there is no guarantee for the save and copy of data since the microSD Card is unsupported by FOMA terminal. ☞P. 342

[Unable to open any more window]

- Appears if a new window cannot be opened when the number of frames which can be viewed is exceeded or the memory is low.

[Unable to play. microSD memory is full]

- Appears if the free space of microSD Card is 64 KB or less when attempting to play a WMA file. ☞P. 371

[(IPs (Information Providers)) Unable to play data. This service needs to be signed up. Connect to site?]

- Appears when the service offered by the IP (Information Provider) is not subscribed to while expired Uta-hodai is updated. Select [Yes] to go to the IP’s site. ☞P. 376

[Unable to play this data]

- Appears when attempting to play back Uta-hodai in microSD Card without the license of the corresponding MUSIC (subscription) service.

[Unable to protect anymore]

- Number of protected messages for Message R/F exceeds maximum. Disable protection. ☞P. 224

[Unable to receive part of PushTalk group]

- Appears when a PushTalk group cannot be registered any more for the reason that PushTalk groups downloaded from the service center exceed 19 entries or the phone number has already been registered, while attempting to update the service center and the phonebook of the FOMA terminal.

[Unable to record any more]

- Three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded.
  Delete unnecessary messages and start again. ☞P. 79

[Unable to renew memory number xxx]

- Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores secret data when Secret mode is not active. ☞P. 98
- Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores an entry for Accept/Reject call. ☞P. 138
- Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that is not displayed by the mode in use while the 2in1 is used. ☞P. 436

[Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)]

- Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later. ☞P. 170

[Unable to save BC ToruCa]

- Appears when there is no available memory for saving ToruCa or when BC ToruCa cannot be saved because the maximum number of ToruCa are saved.

[Unable to save part of data. OK to save?]

- Appears when invalid data is included to save the characters scanned by Character reader to Phonebook. Select [Yes] to save.

[Unable to start any more]
[Unable to start any more Please end the function pushing the Multi button]

- Appears when the maximum number of functions are running. Quit unused functions and try again.

[(IPs (Information Providers)) Unable to update.]

- Appears when the update of expired Uta-hodai has failed. ☞P. 376

[(IPs (Information Providers)) Unable to update due to connection failure.]

- Appears when a connection cannot be made to the site for an unspecified reason, causing the update of the expiration date to fail while expired Uta-hodai is updated. Try again later. ☞P. 376

[Unable to use PushTalk from call logs of Number B]

- Appears if sending PushTalk is attempted from Redial or Received calls of Number B when the 2in1 mode is set to [Dual mode]. ☞P. 63

[Unable to use PushTalk in B mode]

- Appears if sending PushTalk or retrieving PushTalk phonebook is attempted when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode]. ☞P. 87, P. 92

Continued on next page ▶▶

[Unable to use this function]

- Appears if composing i-mode mail is attempted from a phonebook when the 2in1 mode is set to [B mode]. ☞P. 435

[Unavailable channel]

- Appears when the 1Seg program stops and broadcast waves cannot be received.
- The message may appear even if the 1Seg program is available depending on the reception status of broadcast waves.
- Appears when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. Move to a location where 📶 appears to use. ☞P. 287

[Unavailable Channel]

- Appears when the specified channel is not detected or when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received.

[Unsupported. Cannot edit]

- Image data is invalid and image cannot be edited.

[Update replay period or sign up when you play next time]

- Appears when attempting to play back Uta-hodai that is in the valid period for updating the expiration date. ☞P. 376

[URL address changed (301)]

- Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If an old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered. ☞P. 178

[URL address is not valid (301)]
[URL address is not valid (302)]

- Data received contains error and cannot be displayed. Received data is discarded.

[URL has been changed. Connect to site?]

- Appears when the URL is changed while expired Uta-hodai is updated. Select [Yes] to connect to the new address. ☞P. 376

[(IPs (Information Providers)) URL has been changed. Unable to update replay period.]

- Appears when the update of the expiration date has failed because the address of the site was changed while expired Uta-hodai is updated. ☞P. 376

[URL is too long to register]

- URL exceeds maximum number of characters and cannot be registered as a bookmark. ☞P. 178

[Usage is currently restricted. Try again later]

- Appears when excessive amounts of data is downloaded during a certain time span for users of the flat-rate i-mode packet transmission service. Connection will be restricted for a certain amount of time. Try i-mode again later. ☞P. 170

[Use the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone through the reader/writer?]

- Appears when ToruCa auto read is set to [OFF] and the automatic reading function is attempted to use with the scanning device. Select [Yes] to set ToruCa auto read to [ON] and make the automatic reading function available. ☞P. 262

[You already have 3 voice memos saved]

- Three Record messages (voice call) and less than two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded.
  Delete unnecessary messages and start again. ☞P. 79

[You already have two messages saved]

- Less than three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded.
  Delete unnecessary messages and start again. ☞P. 79

[以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした(561) Mails could not be sent to following address. (561) ○○@△△△.ne.jp]
※ The mail address depends on the recipient address.

- Appears when mail could not be properly sent to a displayed address.

[“○△□.ne.jp”宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません(555) Unable to send. “○△□.ne.jp” is not available temporarily.]
※ The domain name depends on the recipient address.

- Appears when the line system is not in service, or when the line is extremely congested. Try again later.

Warranty and after-sales services

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card. Be sure to keep it in a safe place. Contact the retailer if any necessary details on the warranty card are not completed.
  The warranty period without charge is 1 year from the date of purchase.
- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Information registered in your FOMA terminal, such as phonebook entries, may be lost or damaged if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. It is recommended that a memo be kept of all data stored in the FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode and i-αppli cannot be transferred (excluding some cases) to a repaired handset due to copyright law.

※ For this FOMA terminal, phonebook entries, i-motion and data available for i-αppli can be saved to the microSD Card.

※ For this FOMA terminal, data such as phonebook entries, etc. can be stored in the Data Storage Center by using the Data Security Service (a paid service that requires subscription).

※ If you own a PC, you can transfer and store registered information such as phonebook entries using DoCoMo keitai datalink (☞P. 446) and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) or the FOMA USB Cable (sold separately).

After-sales services

■ If you have problems with your FOMA

Refer to “Troubleshooting” before requesting repairs.

Contact a number listed in Repairs Inquiries on the back of this manual if problems persist.

■ If your FOMA needs repairs after contacting DoCoMo

Bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies. However, the repair shop is only open during business hours. Make sure to bring your warranty card with you.

During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired without charge in accordance with the terms of the warranty.
- When bringing the FOMA terminal in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty card. Even during the warranty period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by improper handling by the customer, or when no warranty certificate is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and accessories other than those specified by DoCoMo will also incur a fee, even during the warranty period.
- Repair for damages of the LCD or connector and others after purchase will incur a fee.

Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances.

- When a repair counter considered water exposure (Example: When the moisture detection seal has reacted)
- As a result of a inspection, when damage from water exposure, condensation, sweat, or other liquids are found, or when the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed (Repairs may not be possible when external connector terminal (earphone/microphone terminal), LCD, etc. is damaged, or when a housing is cracked)

※ Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because the warranty does not cover such damage.

After the warranty period has expired

Charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

Replacement parts

Replacement parts (required to maintain the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock basically for 6 years following termination of production. However, note that there may be a case when repair is not possible for the shortage of replacement parts depending on the faulty part. Repairs may be possible even after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact number listed in Repairs Inquiries on the back of this manual for details.

■ IMPORTANT!

- Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - ■ May cause fire, injury, or malfunction.
  - ■ If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously, it will only be accepted for the repair as long as you agree that we restore the FOMA terminal to its original state. However, repairs may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
    The following cases may be considered as a modification.
    - Stickers are applied to the LCD or keys.
    - Decorations are made to the FOMA terminal with adhesive agent.
    - Exterior parts are replaced with those which are not standard DoCoMo product.
  - ■ Repairs for any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications will incur fees, even during the warranty period.
- Do not peel off the model nameplate attached to the FOMA terminal.
  - ■ The nameplate seal functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the nameplate is removed or is replaced, repairs may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.

技術基準適合認証品

- Information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as the settings of various functions and the total call duration, may be cleared or reset if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled.
  - ■ If this occurs, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.
- The following sections of the FOMA terminal contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep ATM cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the FOMA terminal. Cards may become unusable.
  - ■ Sections: speaker, mouthpiece
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or has been in a humid location, turn off the power, take out the battery immediately, and bring it to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies as soon as possible. However, depending on the condition, repairs may not be possible.

■ Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information

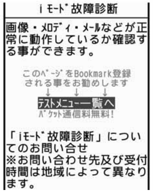
- It is recommended that you keep a separate memo of the information you register on your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for data that may be modified or lost.
- Created, imported, or downloaded data may be modified or deleted when upgrading or repairing the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any modification or deletion of content. DoCoMo may, at our convenience, exchange your FOMA terminal for a substitute in lieu of repairs. For this FOMA terminal, only data including downloaded images or melodies or data created by the user will be transferred at the time of repair (Some contents cannot be transferred. Also, contents may not be transferred depending on the degree of malfunction).

※ Transferring may take long or be even unavailable depending on the size of data saved in the FOMA terminal.

ｉモード故障診断サイト (i-mode fault diagnosis site)

Check whether the FOMA terminal can normally send and receive mail, download images or melodies or perform other operations.

※ The i-mode fault diagnosis site is only available in Japanese.



ｉﾓｰﾄﾞ故障診断

画像・ﾒﾛﾃﾞｨ・ﾒｰﾙなどが正常に動作しているか確認する事ができます。

このﾍﾟｰｼﾞをBookmark登録される事をお勧めします

↓ ↓ ↓

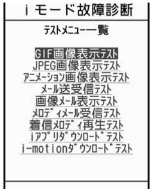
ﾃｽﾄﾒﾆｭｰ一覧へ

ﾊﾟｹｯﾄ通信料無料!

「iﾓｰﾄﾞ故障診断」についてのお問い合せ

※お問い合わせ先及び受付時間は地域によって異なります。

TOP screen



ｉモード故障診断

ﾃｽﾄﾒﾆｭｰ一覧

GIF画像表示ﾃｽﾄ
JPEG画像表示ﾃｽﾄ
ｱﾆﾒｰｼｮﾝ画像表示ﾃｽﾄ
ﾒｰﾙ送受信ﾃｽﾄ
画像ﾒｰﾙ表示ﾃｽﾄ
ﾒﾛﾃﾞｨﾒｰﾙ受信ﾃｽﾄ
着信ﾒﾛﾃﾞｨ再生ﾃｽﾄ
iｱﾌﾟﾘﾀﾞｳﾝﾛｰﾄﾞﾃｽﾄ
i-motionﾀﾞｳﾝﾛｰﾄﾞﾃｽﾄ

Test menu list

Accessing the “i-mode fault diagnosis site”

i-mode site: Select [iMenu] ▶ [お知らせ] ▶ [サービス･機能] ▶ [ｉモード] ▶ [ｉモード故障診断].

QR code to connect to the site

- Packet transmission charges do not apply for the i-mode fault diagnosis.
  - • Access from abroad is charged.
- The test items differ depending on the FOMA terminal model. In addition, the test items may be changed.
- Before checking the operation with the test items, read precautions in the site carefully to execute the test.
- For accessing the i-mode fault diagnosis site and testing mail transmission, information about your FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode fault diagnosis server). Sent information is only used for i-mode fault diagnosis.
- When a malfunction is found after checking, contact the number listed in “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

Updating software

Software update

Connect the FOMA terminal to the network and check for software updates. If necessary, use packet transmission* to download software and update.

* There is no packet transmission charge for updating software.
Check the DoCoMo website or “お知らせ” (News) on iMenu for updates.

When updating, select “Auto-update”, “Now update” or “Reserve”.

Auto-update : New software can be updated automatically and rewritten on set time in advance.
Now update : Update immediately.
Reserve : Software updates automatically on set date and time.

Note

- Do not remove the battery pack while the software is updating. Failure to update software may occur.
- Software can be updated even if handset contains phonebook, camera image or download data. However, DoCoMo cannot protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water exposure and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up before updating. Note that some data, such as downloaded data, cannot be backed up.

Using software update

- Software is updated even when host for i-mode is changed to a custom host.
- Recharge battery before updating software.
- Software cannot be updated during the following conditions.
  - ■ While in Self mode
  - ■ During a call/Outside the service area
  - ■ Connected to an external device
  - ■ Omakase Lock is set
  - ■ Date and time are set incorrectly
  - ■ Battery level is below the necessary level to update software
- Updating (downloading and rewriting) software may take time.
- Making/Receiving calls, transmission functions and other functions cannot be used while software is being updated (Receiving voice calls is possible during download).
- During software update, the handset makes an SSL connection with the server (DoCoMo site). Set the SSL certificate to valid (The default setting is [Enable] ☞P. 187).
- It is recommended to update software at a location with a strong signal (three bars for the antenna icon) and you are not moving.
  ※ If signal status becomes weak or download is interrupted when downloading software, update software again in a location with good signal conditions.
- If software has already been uploaded, [No update is needed. Please continue to use as before] appears when software update is checked.
- While updating software, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- If i-mode mail or Message R/F is held at i-mode center, ✉/R/F appears but will disappear when software is reloaded after update. In addition, even if Receive option is set to [ON] and mail is received during software update, notices may not appear on the display after update is completed. Mail and messages are held at i-mode center.

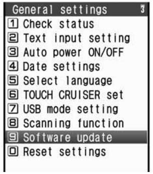
- When updating software, information about the FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- If software update fails, [Rewrite failed] appears and all operations are not available. In this case, bring the FOMA terminal to a repair center that DoCoMo specifies.
- Updating of software is not available overseas.
- During software update, Reception reserve alarm and Recording reserve alarm are not activated. In addition, watching or recording does not start.

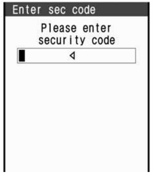
Updating software automatically <Set auto-update>

The new version of software is automatically downloaded, and the software is updated on the time set in advance.
When the software becomes ready to be rewritten, the stock icon ↻ (Update required) appears to confirm the time when the rewrite starts, the time to rewrite can be changed, and whether to rewrite now can be selected.

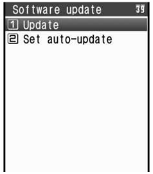
■ Setting auto-update date and time

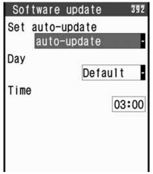
1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Software update] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Set auto-update].





Please enter security code





Set auto-update: auto-update
Day: Default
Time: 03:00

Continued on next page ▶▶

2 **Select the [Set auto-update] field ▶ ◉ ▶ [auto-update].**

- To not set: Select [disable] ▶ ⓘ ▶ [Yes].
- If the notification icon appears in stand-by when software must be updated: Select [only notification] ▶ ⓘ.

3 **Select the [Day] field ▶ ◉ ▶ select the day of week ▶ ◉.**

4 **Select the [Time] field ▶ ◉ ▶ enter the time ▶ ◉ ▶ ⓘ.**

Note

- If software update cannot be activated at the automatic update time, the stock icon ⟳ (Update required) appears in stand-by.
- When [only notification] is selected, new software is not downloaded. For details on downloading and rewriting, refer to “Starting software update” on P. 506.

■ When the stock icon appears

When the software is automatically downloaded, the stock icon ⟳ (Update required) appears in stand-by.

1 **In stand-by, press ◉ ▶ select the stock icon ⟳ (Update required) ▶ ◉.**

2 **Select the rewrite method.**

- **Select [OK].**
  - The stand-by display reappears. Rewrite starts when the set time arrives.
- **Select [Change].**
  - Set the day of week and time.
- **Select [Now rewrite].**
  - Rewrite starts.
  - Upon the completion of rewriting, the stock icon ⟳ (Update completed) appears.
- The stock icon disappears when it is confirmed once.

Starting software update

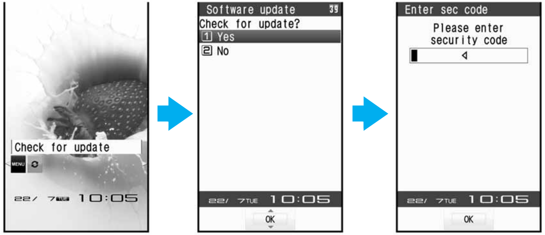
To start software update, press the key when the stock icon is displayed on the screen, or perform it from the menu screen.

- The stock icon appears in the following cases.
  - When a notification is received from DoCoMo on setting auto-update to [only notification]
  - When Reserve is failed or canceled
  - When update is required after the interruption of software update

■ Starting from the stock icon

1 **In stand-by, press ◉ ▶ select the stock icon ⟳ (Check for update) ▶ ◉ ▶ [Yes].**

- To not update the software: Select [No].



Check for update

Software update

Check for update?

1 Yes

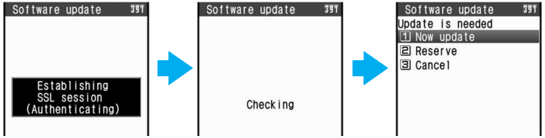
2 No

Enter sec code

Please enter security code

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ ◉.**

- Numbers are masked with [✱]. The default setting is [0000].



Software update

Establishing SSL session (Authenticating)

Software update

Checking

Software update

Update is needed

1 Now update

2 Reserve

3 Cancel

3 Select the update method.

- When software update is necessary, [Update is needed] appears.
- ◆ **Select [Now update] ▶ "Updating the software immediately" on P. 507.**
- ◆ **Select [Reserve] ▶ "Setting a time at which update will be performed" on P. 508.**
- ◆ **Select [Cancel] ▶ [Yes] ▶ stand-by display is returned.**
- When software update is not necessary, [No update is needed. Please continue to use as before] appears.
- When updating software, information about FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). <u>Sent information is only used for software update.</u>

Starting from menu

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Software update].

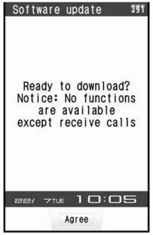
2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Update].

- Start check of whether software update is necessary.
- For subsequent operations ☞step 3 of "Starting from the stock icon" on P. 506

Updating the software immediately <Now update>

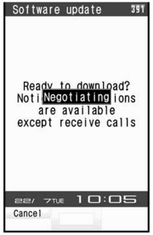
1 Select [Now update] ▶ ⊡ ▶ start download.

- Approximately 5 seconds after [Now update] is selected, download will start automatically.
- Once the download starts, software is automatically updated without selecting menus.
- If the download is canceled in mid-course, data downloaded up to that point is deleted.


Software update

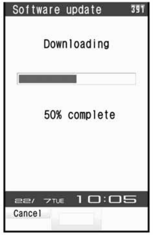
Ready to download?
Notice: No functions
are available
except receive calls

22/ 7TUE 10:05


Software update

Ready to download?
Noti Negotiating ions
are available
except receive calls

22/ 7TUE 10:05


Software update

Downloading

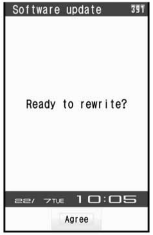
50% complete

22/ 7TUE 10:05

- For Reserve, [Establishing SSL session (Authenticating)] → [Negotiating] appears.

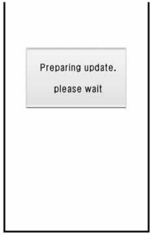
2 Upon the completion of download, [Ready to rewrite?] appears ▶ ⊡.

- Approximately 5 seconds after [Ready to rewrite?] appears, rewriting starts automatically.
- During rewriting, all of the keys are disabled. It is not possible to cancel rewriting. Also, calls cannot be received while rewriting is being performed.
- Upon the completion of rewriting, the power is automatically turned off, and then back on again.


Software update

Ready to rewrite?

22/ 7TUE 10:05


Preparing update.
please wait

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 When power is turned on, software update starts automatically.

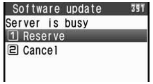
- During update, all of the keys are disabled. It is not possible to cancel update. Also, calls cannot be received while update is being performed.
- Approximately 5 seconds after the completion of updating, the power is automatically turned off, and then back on again.

4 [Your update is complete] appears ▶ ⊡.

- Software update ends and the stand-by display appears.

■ When the server is congested

When [Server is busy] appears, select [Reserve] and set a date on which updating will be performed (☞P. 508).



Software update

Server is busy

1 Reserve

2 Cancel

■ Post-update display

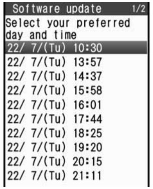
When the stock icon ↻ (Update completed) or ↻ (Check update) appears in stand-by, press ⊡. If the terminal security code is entered when software update is incomplete, a message stating so appears. Press ⊡ and retry update.

Setting a time at which update will be performed <Reserve>

Set date and time to update software when downloading takes too much time or the server is extremely congested.

1 Select [Reserve].

- Schedule selection screen appears.
- The time and date are the same as the server time.



Software update 1/2

Select your preferred day and time

22/ 7/(Tu) 10:30

22/ 7/(Tu) 13:57

22/ 7/(Tu) 14:37

22/ 7/(Tu) 15:58

22/ 7/(Tu) 16:01

22/ 7/(Tu) 17:44

22/ 7/(Tu) 18:25

22/ 7/(Tu) 19:20

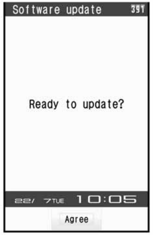
22/ 7/(Tu) 20:15

22/ 7/(Tu) 21:11

2 Select the preferred date/time ▶ ⊡ ▶ [Yes].

- Alternatively, select the date and time after selecting [Other date/time] and accessing the server. In the screen for selecting times, the schedule status appears as [○:Avail] or [△:Limited] for each time slot. Select a time to reconnect to the server and show schedule candidates. Select a schedule.

■ When the reserved date and time arrives



Software update

Ready to update?

22/ 7 TUE 10:05

Agree

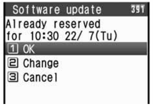
1 [Ready to update?] appears ▶ ⊡.

- Approximately 5 seconds after [Ready to update?] appears, software update automatically starts.
- Before software updates, make sure that the stand-by display is displayed and the handset is in a place with a strong signal. Software is not updated if the battery level is below the necessary level to update software at the reserved date and time.
- Software is not updated if the handset at the reserved date and time is performing functions such as a call in progress, sending mail, receiving mail, i-mode, i-αppli, or using menus. Software update starts when the stand-by display reappears after the operation.
- Software is not updated if the handset at the reserved date and time is being connected to an external device, in Self mode, or in Omakase Lock.

- If the alarm or another function takes place at the same time when the reserved date and time arrives, alarm or the function is prioritized and software is not updated. Software is updated if stand-by reappears after Alarm operation ends.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off at the reserved date and time for software update or when the FOMA terminal is turned off right after the update starts, the update will be canceled.
- If “Delete all data (Delete user data)” (☞P. 412) is performed after reservation is completed, the software update is not activated. Reserve the software update again.

■ Confirming/Changing/Canceling Reservation

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Software update] ▶ enter the terminal security code ▶ ■ ▶ [Update].


Software update
Already reserved
for 10:30 22/ 7(Tu)

2 Select the item.

- To confirm: Select [OK].
- To change: Select [Change] ▶ select a preferred date (☞P. 508).
- To cancel: Select [Cancel] ▶ [Yes].

Scanning function

Protecting your FOMA terminal from harmful files

First, update pattern definitions to bring them up-to-date.

Stop activating or delete any data or applications that could cause operational malfunctions. These types of data include data or programs that are attached to i-mode mail, or downloaded from sites or external devices.

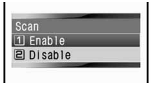
- Pattern definitions are used for checking. When new problems are discovered, pattern definitions are immediately upgraded. Update the pattern definitions.
- The scan function helps to protect the handset from damage caused by data such as data received from web pages or mail. If the pattern definition corresponding to a particular harmful file is not downloaded or saved, the scan function will not be able to protect the FOMA terminal.
- Pattern definitions vary depending on the phone model. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern definitions for a particular model 3 years after the release date.

Setting scan functions <Set scan>

When Scan function is set to [Enable], data and programs are automatically checked when running.
Set whether to apply Scan function to SMS.

- Scan message can be set only when Scan function is set to [Enable].
- When Scan function is set to [Disable], Scan message is set to [Disable] regardless of current settings.

Continued on next page ▶▶



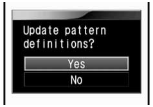
1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Set scan] ▶ [Scan].**

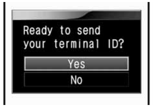
2 **Select [Enable] ▶ [Yes] ▶ [Scan message] ▶ [Enable] ▶ [Yes].**

- When Scan function is set and malicious data is detected, security warning appears in five levels (☞P. 511).

Updating pattern definitions <Update>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Update] ▶ [Yes].**


Update pattern definitions?


Ready to send your terminal ID?

- To not send the terminal ID, select [No].

2 **Select [Yes].**

- Downloading starts.
- When updating is not necessary, [Pattern definitions are up-to-date] appears. Press ■ and resume operations.

3 **Press ■ when updating is completed.**

Note

- When updating pattern definitions, information about the FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.

- Correctly set the FOMA terminal date (year/month/day) beforehand.
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

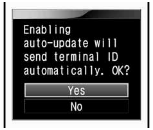
Updating pattern definitions automatically

<Set auto-update>

Set auto-update to [Enable] to automatically update pattern definitions when a new version becomes available.

When auto-update is successful, a message stating so appears.

Auto-update is not performed depending on the status of the FOMA terminal. In such cases, a message stating that pattern definitions have been updated appears.


Enabling auto-update will send terminal ID automatically. OK?

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Set auto-update] ▶ [Enable].**

2 **Select [Yes] ▶ [Yes] ▶ [Agree].**

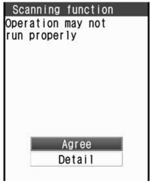
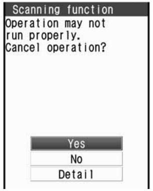
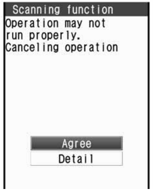
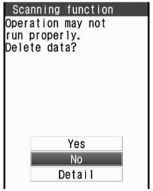
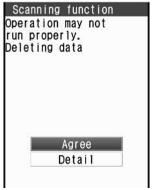
Note

- Information regarding Enable/Disable for Set auto-update is saved on the network. Therefore, [Enable] is always selected on the FOMA terminal when setting.
- When setting auto-update, information about the FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Set auto-update may be interrupted if signal is weak.

Displaying scanned results

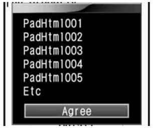
When data that can cause malfunctions are detected, a warning screen appears.

■ Displaying scanned results

Level 0	 Scanning function Operation may not run properly Agree Detail	Displaying, activating, or calling is available. Appears when there was an error previously, but there is no error presently. Select [Agree] to display, activate, or call.
Level 1	 Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Cancel operation? Yes No Detail	Select [No] to display, activate, or call. Select [Yes] to cancel the operation.
Level 2	 Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation Agree Detail	Displaying, activating, or calling is not available. Select [Agree] to end.
Level 3	 Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Delete data? Yes No Detail	Displaying, activating, or calling is not available. Select [Yes] and select [Yes] in the delete confirmation screen to delete the data. Select [No] to end without deleting.
Level 4	 Scanning function Operation may not run properly. Deleting data Agree Detail	Displaying, activating, or calling is not available. Select [Agree] to delete the data.

- Warning screens other than the above may appear depending on the contents of pattern definitions.

■ Displaying detected errors



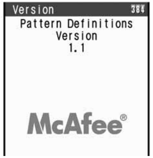
PadHtml001
PadHtml002
PadHtml003
PadHtml004
PadHtml005
Etc
Agree

- In the warning screen, select [Detail] to show error names. When no error name exists for the contents of the pattern data, [Detail] does not appear.
- Up to five error names appear. [Etc] appears below the fifth error name when six or more are detected. If same error is detected more than once, it is only listed once.

Checking the version of the pattern definitions

<Version>

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Scanning function] ▶ [Version].**


Version
Pattern Definitions
Version
1.1

Main specifications

Package

Product name			FOMA SH906i
Size			112 (H) × 49 (W) × 18.6 (D) mm (when folded)
Weight			Approx. 135 g (with battery pack installed)
Continuous talk time *1, 2	FOMA/3G		Voice call: Approx. 215 min
			Videophone: Approx. 100 min
	GSM		Voice call: Approx. 195 min
Continuous stand-by time*2, 3	FOMA/3G	3G/GSM setting: 3G	When mobile: Approx. 395 hr*4
		3G/GSM setting: AUTO	When mobile: Approx. 365 hr*4
			At rest: Approx. 565 hr*5
	GSM	3G/GSM setting: AUTO	At rest: Approx. 290 hr*5
1Seg watching time			Approx. 250 min
Charge time			AC adaptor: Approx. 120 min
			DC adaptor: Approx. 120 min
LCD	Type		New Mobile ASV LCD (16,777,216 colors)
	Size		Approx. 3.0 inches
	Pixels		409,920 pixels (480 × 854 dots)
Image pickup device	Type		CMOS*6
	Size		1/3.2 inch
Camera	Effective pixels		Approx. 5.2 million pixels
	Recorded pixels (Max.)		Approx. 4.9 million pixels
	Zoom (Digital)		Up to approx. 21.9×

Recording	Number of still pictures recorded	Approx. 1,000 shots (when saved into the handset)[7]
	Continuous shooting of still pictures	25 shots/9 shots/6 shots/4 shots
	File format for still picture	JPEG
	Recording time for movies	Approx. 434 sec per recording (when saved into the handset)[8]
		Approx. 60 min per recording (when saved into microSD Card (64 MB))[9]
	File format for movie	MP4
Music playback	Continuous playback time	i-motion (Compatible with background playback[10]): Approx. 985 min[11]
		Chaku-uta full® (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 910 min[11]
		WMA file (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 1,000 min[12]
		Music&Video Channel (voice) (Compatible with background playback): Approx. 985 min
		Music&Video Channel (movie): Approx. 320 min
Memory capacity	Chaku-uta®	Approx. 97.4 MB[13]
	Chaku-uta full®	

---

*1 Continuous talk time is an estimate of the time when talking in a location where the signal is normal.

*2 The above mentioned talk time and stand-by time are shortened with the use of data communications, Multiaccess, and the camera.

*3 Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the time when FOMA terminal is folded and in a status where signals are received. Talk/stand-by time may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, functions used, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission)/stand-by time. In addition, watching 1Seg, composing i-mode mail, using Bluetooth function and activating downloaded i-αppli or the i-αppli stand-by will also shorten talk (transmission)/stand-by time even if calls or i-mode transmission are not made.

*4 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and in At rest, When mobile or Outside the service area status.

*5 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded when you are not moving and in a status where signals are received.

*6 A CMOS (Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor) is an image devices equivalent to the film of silver salt cameras.

*7 Image size: QCIF (176 × 144 dots)/Image quality: NORMAL/File size: 10 KB

*8 Image size: sQCIF (128 × 96 dots)/Image quality: NORMAL/File size limit: For mail (long)/Type: Image + voice

*9 Image size: sQCIF (128 × 96 dots)/Image quality: NORMAL/File size limit: Not restricted/Type: Image + voice

*10 When played back with MUSIC Player

*11 File format: AAC format

*12 File format: WMA format

*13 When Still picture, Movie, MUSIC, Melody, My Documents, Kisekae Tool, Machi-chara, Chara-den, i-αppli, e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic, Music&Video Channel or Video is saved, the memory capacity of Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta full® will be small.

Battery pack

Product name	Battery Pack SH17
Battery	Lithium-ion
Nominal voltage	3.7 VDC
Nominal capacity	800 mAh

Number of saved/registered/protected entries in the FOMA terminal

Data type			Number of applicable entries to be saved/registered	Number of applicable entries to be protected
Phonebook			1,000[*1]	–
1Seg	TVlink		100	–
	Reception/Recording		50[*2]	–
Schedule	Schedule		300	–
	Vacation		100	–
	Holiday		20[*3]	–
Text memo			10	–
Mail (The total number of SMS and i-mode mail)	Received mail		1,000[*4, 5, 6]	1,000
		User folder	20	–
	Sent mail		500[*4, 5]	500
		User folder	20	–
	Unsent mail		500[*5]	500
		User folder	20	–
Deco-mail templates			100[*6]	–
Decome-Anime Templates			100[*6]	–
Message	Message R		50[*5]	25
	Message F		50[*5]	25
Bookmark			100	–
	Bookmark folder		20	–
Screen memo			400[*5]	400[*5]
Download dictionary			10[*7]	–

Data type		Number of applicable entries to be saved/registered	Number of applicable entries to be protected
i-αppli		100[*5]	–
	Mail-type i-αppli	5	–
Still picture		1,000[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
Movie/i-motion		100[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
Kisekae Tool		50[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
Machi-chara		50[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
Chara-den		50[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
Melody		500[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
PDF data		50[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
ToruCa		200[*5]	–
	User folder	20	–
e-book/e-dictionary/e-comic		1,000[*5, 6]	–
	User folder	400[*8]	–

*1 Up to 50 entries can be saved in the FOMA card.

*2 Total number of the timers for starting and recording programs.

*3 Save a national holiday besides holidays already saved.

*4 For SMS, up to 20 received and sent messages can be saved in the FOMA card (☞P. 228).

*5 Capacity may decrease depending on the available memory (☞P. 348).

*6 Pre-installed data is included.

*7 Set up to five dictionaries.

*8 Pre-installed folder is included.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

This model phone FOMA SH906i meets the MIC's[*] technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)[**] averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP[***].

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.457 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO)
http://www.who.int/peh-emf/

ICNIRP
http://www.icnirp.de/

MIC
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm

Continued on next page ▶▶

TELEC
http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/

SHARP Corporation
http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/phone/cellular/sar/index.html

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

** The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

***International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.813 W/kg*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head.

---

* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that this FOMA SH906i is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
A copy of the original declaration of conformity can be found at the following Internet address:
http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.615 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.442 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on FCC ID APYHRO00066.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

Export Control Regulations

The Japan Export Control Regulations ("Foreign Exchange and International Trade Law" and its related laws) will be applied to this product and its accessories under certain conditions. The Export Administration Regulations are also applied. To export or reexport this terminal and its accessories, conduct all legally required procedures at your own risk and expense. For details on the procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry or the US Department of Commerce.

▶MEMO◀

Index/Quick Manual

Index

How to Use Index

This index lists function names, words, and key words in alphanumeric order. If you cannot remember a function name, search with key words.

<Example: When searching “Omakase Lock”>

To search with function names

OFFICEED 440
Omakase Lock 133
On hold 73
One-touch conversion 418
Operation guidance 34
Optical TOUCH CRUISER 39

To search with key words

Lock function 132
  All lock 132
  Function lock 134
  Keypad dial lock 136
  Multi easy lock 136
  Omakase Lock 133
  Self mode 134

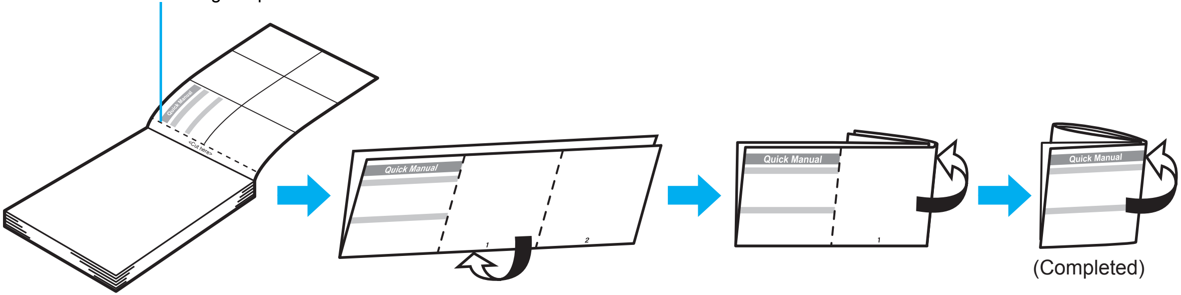
Quick Manual

How to use the Quick Manual

Remove the Quick Manual attached to the end of this manual by cutting along the perforations and fold it as shown below.
Carry the Quick Manual “Overseas Use” when the mobile phone is used with the International Roaming (WORLD WING) overseas.

■ Folding the Quick Manual

- Be careful of injuries when cutting out the Quick Manual.



Cut along the perforations.

(Completed)

This manual is produced using recyclable material. Please recycle when no longer needed.

FOMA SH906i

Quick Manual

Registration/Contacts

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>
(In English)

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
(In Japanese only)

📱 (No prefix) 151 (toll free)

※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones.
- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

If you have problems with your FOMA

(In Japanese only)

📱 (No prefix) 113 (toll free)

※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones.
(In Japanese only)

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

<Cut here>

Adding to the phonebook (Phone)

1 In stand-by, press 📖 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ [Phone].

2 Enter a name ▶ ● ▶ ☎ ▶ enter a phone number ▶ ● ▶ select a phone type icon ▶ ● ▶ ✉ ▶ enter a mail address ▶ ● ▶ select a mail address type icon ▶ ● ▶ i ▶ ● ▶ select Add to PushTalk PB ▶ ●.

Other save items

- Group
- Company/school
- Department
- Title
- Postal code
- Postal address
- Location information
- Birthday
- Memo
- Secret
- Secret code
- Select ring tone
- Mail ring tone
- Called LED color
- Called LED pattern
- Mail/Message LED color
- Mail LED pattern
- Picture call set
- Substitute image

Adding to the phonebook from Redials/ Received calls

1 In stand-by, press ◻ (⧉)/◻ (➔⧉) ▶ select a phone number ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add to phonebook] ▶ [Save new to phone] ▶ add to the phonebook.

Editing phonebook entries

1 In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select a name ▶ 📷 ▶ [Edit data] ▶ [Edit] ▶ select an item ▶ ● ▶ edit.

Text input

Changing the input mode

1 In the text input screen, press 📖 ▶ select the input mode ▶ ●.

Switching upper/lower case

1 In the text input screen, press ✉.

Deleting text

1 Move the cursor to the text and press CLR.

- To delete all text: At the end of the message, press CLR (for 1+ seconds).

Using phrases

1 In the text input screen, press 📖 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ select a phrase ▶ ● ▶ ●.

Entering pictographs/symbols

1 In the text input screen, press i.

- To switch between Pictograph and Deco-mail pictograph: Press i.
- To switch between single- and double-byte symbols: Press 📷.

Entering emoticons

1 In the text input screen, press ✉ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ select an emoticon ▶ ●.

Cutting/Copying/Pasting text

1 In the text input screen, move the cursor to the start point ▶ 📷 ▶ [Copy]/[Cut] ▶ ●.

2 Move the cursor to the end point ▶ ●.

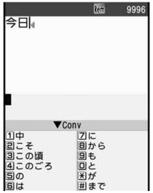
3 Move the cursor to the paste location ▶ ✱ (for 1+ seconds).

Text input example

Ex.) 今日のテニス3時🎾

1 In the text input screen, press 2 (twice) ▶ ◻ ▶ [今日].

- As each hiragana character is entered, conversion candidates appear and they can be selected.



今日

1 中
2 こそ
3 この頃
4 このごろ
5 の
6 は
7 に
8 から
9 も
0 と
✱ が
まで

2 **Press □ ▶ [の].**

3 **Press 4 5 3 ▶ □ ▶ [テニス].**

- Use □ for One-touch conversion.

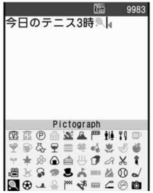
4 **Press 📖 (five times) ▶ ● ▶ 3.**

- Press 📖 (five times) for single-byte alphanumeric mode.

5 **Press 📖 (twice) ▶ ● ▶ 3 (twice) ▶ ✱ ▶ □ ▶ [時].**

- Use ✱ for dakuten mark.

6 **Press ▯ ▶ 🎾.**


Rem 9983
今日のテニス3時

Changing the font (font style)

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Font style] ▶ [Font style setting] ▶ select the font ▶ ●.**

Changing the font size

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Disp/LED/Power saver] ▶ [Font style] ▶ [Font size] ▶ [Individual setting] ▶ select the [Input] field ▶ ● ▶ select the font size ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].**

- To change collectively: In stand-by, press 5 (for 1+ seconds).

Camera

Shooting still pictures

1 **In stand-by, press 📷 ▶ ● ▶ ●.**

■ Shooting panoramic pictures

1 **In the still picture shooting screen, press ✉ ▶ ● ▶ move the FOMA terminal to either direction of left or right ▶ ● ▶ ●.**

Shooting movies

1 **In the still picture shooting screen, press 📷 ▶ [Switch camera-mode] ▶ [Movie] ▶ ● ▶ ● ▶ [Save].**

Displaying still pictures

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [My picture] ▶ select a still picture ▶ ●.**

Playing back movies

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [i-motion] ▶ select a movie ▶ ●.**

Watching 1Seg

Performing the Automatic channel setting

1 **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Channel setting].**

2 **Select the number to save ▶ 📷 ▶ [Auto channel set] ▶ [Yes].**

3 **Select a prefecture/district ▶ ● ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].**

Selecting a channel list

1 **In the Custom menu, select [1Seg] ▶ [Channel setting] ▶ select a channel list ▶ ●.**

Watching 1Seg

1 **In stand-by, press 📷 (for 1+ seconds).**

- To record a movie of 1Seg programs: While watching 1Seg, press ▯ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ (record) ▶ ▯.
- To record 1Seg programs as a still picture: While watching 1Seg, press ▯.

Watching videos

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [1Seg] ▶ select a video ▶ ●.**

Music playback

Using the MUSIC Player

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Data box] ▶ [MUSIC] ▶ select the data type ▶ ● ▶ select music data ▶ ●.**

Key operations during playback

To pause/play	●
To stop	✉
To adjust the volume	◌

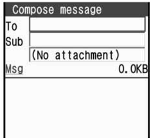
To play previous song/return to the beginning of song	□
To play next song	□
To end MUSIC Player	CLR/☎ ▶ [Yes]

Mail

Composing and sending i-mode mail

1 **In stand-by, press ✉ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ select the [To] field ▶ ● ▶ select the input method.**

- **Select [Search phonebook] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Direct input] ▶ enter an address ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Sent messages] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ● ▶ ●.**
- **Select [Rcvd messages] ▶ select a recipient ▶ ● ▶ ●.**


Compose message
To
Sub
(No attachment)
Msg 0.0KB

<Cut here>

- Select [Mail members] ▶ select a mail member ▶ ●.

2 Select the [Sub] field ▶ ● ▶ enter a subject ▶ ● ▶ [Msg] ▶ enter the message text ▶ ● ▶ ≣.

Sending Deco-mail

1 In the text input screen, press 📷 ▶ [Decorate mail] ▶ select a decoration type ▶ ● ▶ specify decoration ▶ ● ▶ input text ▶ ● ▶ ≣.

Attaching a file

1 In stand-by, press ✉ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ select the attachment field (No attachment) ▶ ● ▶ select the file to attach.

- Select [Image] ▶ select an image ▶ ≣.
- Select [Melody] ▶ select a melody ▶ ≣.
- Select [i-motion] ▶ select an i-motion ▶ ≣.
- Select [ToruCa] ▶ select a ToruCa ▶ ≣.
- Select [PDF] ▶ select a PDF ▶ ≣.

- Select [Phonebook] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ● ▶ select a name ▶ ●.
- Select [Schedule] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ● ▶ (select a day ▶ ≣)* ▶ select a schedule ▶ ●.

  * No operation is needed if [microSD] is selected as the save destination
- Select [Bookmark] ▶ select a save destination ▶ ● ▶ select a bookmark ▶ ●.
- Select [Document] ▶ select a file ▶ ≣.
- Select [Other] ▶ select a file ▶ ●.
- Select [Start cam (still)] ▶ ● ▶ ●.
- Select [Start cam (movie)] ▶ ● ▶ ● ▶ [Save].

Composing and sending SMS

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Compose SMS] ▶ select the [To] field ▶ ● ▶ [Direct input] ▶ enter an address ▶ ● ▶ [Msg] ▶ enter the message ▶ ● ▶ ≣.

Receiving mail automatically

1 Mail is automatically received.

2 Select [Mail] ▶ select mail ▶ ●.

Checking for new i-mode mail

1 In stand-by, press ✉ ▶ [Check new message].

- SMS: Press ✉ ▶ [Check new SMS].

Replying to i-mode mail

1 In the received message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Reply/Forward].

2 Select the reply method ▶ ●.

3 Compose and send a mail.

Forwarding i-mode mail

1 In the received message details screen, press 📷 ▶ [Reply/Forward] ▶ [Forward].

2 Enter an address and send a mail.

<Cut here>

Menu list

Switching between the Custom menu/Basic menu

1 In the Custom menu/Basic menu, press 📖.

Recalling a function number

1 In the Basic menu, enter a function number.

1 Snd/Vibrator/Manner	
1 Select volume	phone ring vol, Mail ring vol, PushTalk tone vol, Key/Standby i-motion, Charge start sound, Charge end sound, Timer sound, GPS volume
2 Select sound	Select ring tone, Select mail tone, PushTalk tone, Shutter sound, Timer sound, GPS tone
3 Vibrator	Vibration mode, Mail vibration, GPS vibrator, Touch panel vib
4 Manner mode	ON (Normal, Silent, Original), OFF
5 Headset setting	

1 Snd/Vibrator/Manner	
6 Ring time setting	Mail ring time set, PT ring time set, GPS ring time set
7 Set mute ring time	
8 Hold/On hold tone	Set on hold tone, Set hold tone
9 Snd playbck (melody)	Stereo effects, Equalizer

2 Disp/LED/Power saver	
1 Set screen	Stand-by display, Clock display, Calendar display, Stand-by memo disp, Desktop clock
2 Font style	Font style setting, Font size
3 Themes	Kisekae Tool, Call/Rcv display, Send/Rcv display, Submenu image, Dial image set, Animate notices, Signal/batt/s clock, Color theme setting

2 Disp/LED/Power saver	
4 LED settings	Called LED, Mail LED, Notice LED, In-call LED, Alarm/Timer LED, IC card LED, Open/close LED, GPS LED
5 Display img quality	Vibrant image mode, Control by scene
6 Light/Power saver	Norm (auto bright), Norm (fixed bright), Eco mode (Pwr saver), Original Eco mode
7 VeilView	Dis temp in stdby, Pattern
8 Menu priority	

3 General settings	
1 Check status	Owner Information, Check memory, Battery level, Check settings
2 Text input setting	User dictionary, Dwnld dictionary, Edit phrase, Clear memory terms
3 Auto power ON/OFF	Auto power ON, Auto power OFF, Link alarm/power ON
4 Date settings	
5 Select language	
6 TOUCH CRUISER set	Usage settings, Pointer speed, Scroll speed
7 USB mode setting	
8 Scanning function	Update, Set auto-update, Set scan, Version
9 Software update	
0 Reset settings	

4 NW Services	
1 Voice Mail	Check messages, Play Messages, Activate VoiceMail, Set ring time, Deactivate VoiceMail, Check setting, Voice Mail setting, Notification setting, Notification
2 Call waiting	Activate, Deactivate, Check setting
3 Call forwarding	Activate, Deactivate, Register number, Forwarding No. busy, Check setting
4 Bar nuisance calls	Register caller, Register selected No, Delete all entries, Delete last entry, Check No of entries
5 Notify caller ID	Check setting, Notify caller ID
6 Caller ID request	Activate, Deactivate, Check setting
7 Talk time/cost	
8 2in1 setting	Mode switching, Phonebook 2in1 set, Stand-by display, Set call/receive No., 2in1 function OFF, Receive avoidance

4 NW Services	
9 In-call arrival act	Set arrival act, Arrival Call Act

5 Other NW Services	
1 Remote control	Activate, Deactivate, Check setting
2 Dual network	Switching, Status request
3 English guidance	Guidance setting, Check setting
4 Service number	ドコモ故障問合せ, ドコモ総合案内・受付
5 Additional service	USSD, Reply message
6 Multi number	Set multi number, Check setting, Number setting
7 Chaku-moji	Create message, Message display
8 Roaming guidance	Activate, Deactivate, Status request

6 Phone settings	
1 In-call settings	Noise reduction, Reconnect signal, Quality alarm
2 Headset sw to call	
3 Incoming settings	Any key answer, Auto answer setting, Melody Call setting
4 Videophone set	Redial voice call, Set sending image, Display setting, Subscreen position, Visual preference, Notify switch mode, Hands-free V.phone, V-phone while packet
5 Record message	Record message, Answering duration, Reply message, V.phone reply image
6 Set PushTalk	Set PT arrival act, Hands-free PT
7 Set when folded	Phone/Videophone, PushTalk
8 Self mode	
9 Other settings	Int'l prefix, Sub address, Int'l dial assist, International Roam., In-area status

7 Security	
1 Secret mode	
2 UIM Settings	PIN1 code input set, Change PIN1 code, Change PIN2 code
3 Accept/Reject calls	Accept calls, Reject calls, Reject unknown, User unset, Reject payphone, Reject not support
4 Show call/ received	Show rcvd calls, Show redial
5 Show sent/ received	Show sent messages, Show rcvd messages
6 Lock settings	All lock, Keypad dial lock, Function lock, IC card lock, Multi easy lock set, Multi lock auto-set
7 Change security code	
8 Writing authentic	
9 Delete all data	Delete user data, Del secret data

Other settings
8 Initial setting
0 Own number

<Cut here>

9 1 Data box
1 My picture
2 MUSIC
3 Music&Video ch
4 i-motion
5 1Seg
6 Melody
7 My Documents
8 Kisekae Tool
9 Machi-chara
0 Chara-den

9 2 LifeKit	
1 Bar code reader	
2 Receive Ir data	
3 microSD manager	View microSD data, Backup/restore, Import, New manager info, Format, USB mode setting
4 Bluetooth	Accept Registered, Receive Bluetooth, List/cnnct/discnnct, Register new device, Bluetooth Power OFF, Bluetooth setting
5 Card reader	
6 Text memo	
7 Character reader	
8 Schedule	
9 Timer/Alarm	Timer, Alarm, Wakeup TV
0 Calculator	
* Data Sec. Service	
# GPS menu	Position location, i-αppli, Location history, Set position loc., Loc.notification/set, Loc. request menu

9 3 Media tool
1 Manga&BookReader
2 Document Viewer
3 PDF Viewer
4 Voice recorder
5 Voice memo/Rec msg
6 Quick search

Other menus
9 4 MUSIC
9 5 Osaifu-Keitai
9 6 1Seg

<Cut here>

Other functions

Manner mode enable/disable	# (for 1+ seconds)
Public mode (Drive mode) activate/deactivate	* (for 1+ seconds)
Multi easy lock activate/deactivate	■ (for 1+ seconds)
Show i-Channel list	CLR (ch)
Activate Quick search	☐
Show i-mode menu	i
Show i-αppli software list screen	i (α) (for 1+ seconds)
Supportbook	MULTI
Activate Multi Assistant (Multitask)	MULTI while using a function
Display Shortcut menu	☐
Register Shortcut menu	MULTI (for 1+ seconds) when ⬈ appears
Side Key Guard Set/Disable	☐ (for 1+ seconds)
VeilView ON/OFF	📷 (for 1+ seconds) in the screen other than stand-by

Network services

※ In the confirmation screen, select [Yes].

Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Voice Mail].**

2 **Select [Activate VoiceMail] ▶ [Activate VoiceMail].**

- To deactivate: Select [Deactivate VoiceMail].
- To play messages: Select [Play Messages].
- To check messages: Select [Check messages].

Call Waiting

Call Waiting is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call waiting].**

2 **Select [Activate].**

- To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
- To check settings: Select [Check setting].

Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service is a free option (no monthly fees) that requires subscription.

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Call forwarding].**

2 **Select [Activate] ▶ [Activate].**

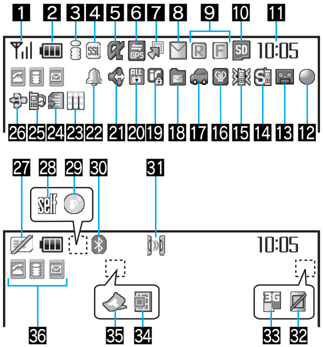
- To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
- To check settings: Select [Check setting].

Caller ID Request Service

Subscription is not required (no monthly fees).

1. **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [NW Services] ▶ [Caller ID request].**
2. **Select [Activate].**
   - To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
   - To check settings: Select [Check setting].

Icon list



1		Signal status
2		Battery level
		Charging
3		i-mode/Full Browser
4		SSL
5		i-αppli
6		GPS
7		Shortcut menu
8		i-mode mail/SMS/Area Mail received
9		Message R/F
10	(gray)	microSD Card is inserted
	(pink)	microSD Card is being used
11	Clock display	
12		1Seg being recorded
13	to	Record message
14		Silent

15		Vibrator
16		Manner mode
17		Public mode (Drive mode)
18		Storage status of i-mode center
19		IC card lock
20		Restriction indicator
21		Hands-free
		Mute
		Bluetooth hands-free
22		Alarm
23		Music&Video Channel program reservation
24		i-mode mail send reservation
25		Earphone/Microphone connection
26		USB mode
27		FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted
		Non-FOMA card is inserted
28		Self mode

29		PushTalk
30		Bluetooth
31		Ir exchange/Bluetooth communication/External device
32		VeilView
33		3G/GSM
34		Status of Comics setting
35		ToruCa
36	Multitask	

※ Refer to P. 34 to P. 38 of the manual for detailed explanations of displayed icons.

<Emergency contacts in case of loss or other accidents>

Omakase Lock

※ Omakase Lock is a paid service.
If Omakase Lock is subscribed while or at the same time as when the use of the FOMA terminal is suspended, the usage fee of Omakase Lock is not charged.

Enable/Disable Omakase Lock

☎ 0120-524-360
Office hours: 24hours

Other contacts

<Contacts: >

<Contacts: >

<Contacts: >

※ Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

<Cut here>

FOMA SH906i

Quick Manual “Overseas Use”

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <DoCoMo Information Center> (24-hour service)

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1)	-81-3-5366-3114*(toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

※ If you use the SH906i, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial “+”, press the “0” key for 1+ seconds).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2)	-800-0120-0151*

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

※ See P.19 to P.20 and P.21 to P.22 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

<Cut here>

Failures encountered overseas <Network Technical Operation Center> (24-hour service)

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1)	-81-3-6718-1414*(toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

※ If you use the SH906i, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial “+”, press the “0” key for 1+ seconds).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2)	-800-5931-8600*

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

※ See P.19 to P.20 and P.21 to P.22 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

Preparing for overseas use

Setting i-mode

Setting in Japan

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [iMenu] ▶ [English] ▶ [Options] ▶ [International Settings] ▶ [i-mode services Settings] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select the [Enter i-mode Password] field ▶ ● ▶ enter the i-mode password ▶ ● ▶ [OK].

Setting in overseas

1 In stand-by, press ⓘ ▶ [iMenu] ▶ [English] ▶ [International Settings] ▶ [i-mode services Settings] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select the [Enter i-mode Password] field ▶ ● ▶ enter the i-mode password ▶ ● ▶ [OK].

Setting the remote access

Setting in Japan

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Remote control] ▶ [Activate] ▶ [Yes].

Setting in overseas

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Remote access(Int.)] ▶ [Yes] ▶ operate according to the voice guidance.

Correcting the date and time automatically

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Date settings] ▶ select the [Auto time correction] field ▶ ● ▶ [ON] ▶ ⓘ.

Setting the time zone manually

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [General settings] ▶ [Date settings] ▶ select the [Auto time correction] field ▶ ● ▶ [OFF].

2 Press 📷 ▶ select a time zone ▶ ● ▶ select a city ▶ ● ▶ ⓘ.

Available network

3G network	Available
GSM network	Available
GPRS network	Available

Setting network communication system

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [3G/GSM setting] ▶ select the communication method ▶ ●.

Services available overseas

Communication service	3G	GSM	GPRS
Voice call	○	○	○
Videophone	○	×	×
i-mode mail	○	×	○
i-mode	○	×	○
i-Channel	○	×	○
SMS	○	○	○
Data communication (packet transmission)	○	×	○

- Unable to use 64K data communication by connecting a PC, etc. overseas.

Setting a search method of telecommunications carrier

Network search mode

Default setting: Auto (Automatically switches telecommunications carriers)

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Network search mode].**

2 **Select [Auto] ▶ [Yes].**

- To manually switch telecommunications carriers: Select [Manual] ▶ select a telecommunications carrier ▶ ●.
- To re-search for the host network: Select [Network re-search].

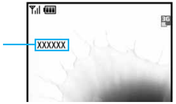
Setting a telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Network search mode] ▶ [PLMN setting] ▶ select the number of the priority order ▶ 📷.**

2 **Select [PLMN manual select] ▶ enter a country code (MCC) ▶ ● ▶ enter a network code (MNC) ▶ ● ▶ select a communication method ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].**

- To save from a telecommunications carrier list: Select [UPLMN by list] ▶ select a telecommunications carrier ▶ ● ▶ select a communication method ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].
- To save the telecommunications carrier currently connected to: Select [Set VPLMN to PLMN] ▶ [Yes].
- To change the priority: Select [Change priority] ▶ select a destination ▶ ● ▶ [Yes].

Displaying a telecommunications carrier name in stand-by



1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Operator name disp] ▶ [Display on] ▶ [Yes].**

Setting after homecoming

If Network search mode is set to [Auto], reset Network search mode to the FOMA network (DoCoMo) automatically when the power is turned on after homecoming.

■ Setting to the FOMA network (DoCoMo) manually

1 **In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Network search mode] ▶ [Manual] ▶ [DoCoMo].**

Making calls

Making a call outside your country of stay (including Japan)

■ Using + to make an international call

1 **In stand-by, press 0 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter the country code, area code (city code) and other party's phone number ▶ ☎ (Phone)/📱 (V.phone).**

- When the area code (city code) begins with *0*, omit the *0* when dialing. However, include *0* when making a call to landline phones in some countries or regions such as Italy.

■ Making an international call outside your country of stay using country code conversion

0 at the beginning of a phone number is automatically converted to the country code set in Country code conversion.
Example: Make a call from the phonebook

1 **In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select the other party ▶ ☎ (Phone)/📱 (V.phone) ▶ [Call].**

■ Making an international call

Save a country number using Set country code to select a country code before making an international call.
The following operation is available overseas only.

1 **In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ 📷 ▶ [Add prefix setting] ▶ [International Call] ▶ select the country code ▶ ● ▶ ☎ (Phone)/📱 (V.phone).**

Making a call in your country of stay

1 **In stand-by, enter a phone number ▶ ☎ (Phone)/📱 (V.phone).**

■ Making a call to the phone in your country of stay using the phonebook

1 **In stand-by, press 📖 ▶ select the other party ▶ ☎ (Phone)/📱 (V.phone) ▶ [Original number].**

■ Making a call to a WORLD WING subscriber overseas

Even when making a call to the phone in your country of stay, make an international call to Japan if the call recipient is a "WORLD WING" subscriber overseas.

<Cut here>

<Cut here>

1 In stand-by, press 0 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ 8 1 ▶ enter the other party's mobile phone number excluding the first *0* ▶ ☎ (Phone)/▮ (V.phone).

Receiving calls

1 Press ☎ to answer an incoming call.

■ Having calls made to your FOMA terminal from Japan

Enter the phone number in the same way as it is entered in Japan and make a call.

■ Having calls made to your FOMA terminal from countries other than Japan

Enter ***international access code of the country of the caller-81-user's phone number*** excluding the first ***0*** and make a call.

Setting the roaming guidance

Make this setting while still in Japan

※ In the confirmation screen, select [Yes].

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Other NW Services] ▶ [Roaming guidance].

2 Select [Activate].

- To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
- To check settings: Select [Status request].

Call barring

- Depending on the overseas telecommunications carrier, the setting cannot be made.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Call barring].

2 Select [Activate] ▶ [Yes] ▶ select the barring method ▶ ● ▶ enter the network security code ▶ ●.

- To deactivate: Select [Deactivate] ▶ [Yes] ▶ enter the network security code ▶ ●.
- To check settings: Select [Status request].

Using network service

- To use network service overseas, set Remote control to "Activate".

※ In the confirmation screen, select [Yes].

※ Operate according to the voice guidance.

Voice Mail (Int.)

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Voice Mail(Int.)].

2 Select [Activate Voice Mail].

- To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
- To play messages: Select [Play Messages].
- To set the service: Select [Voice Mail settings].

Call Forward (Int.)

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Call Forward (Int.)].

2 Select [Activate].

- To deactivate: Select [Deactivate].
- To set the service: Select [Settings].

Roaming guidance (Int.)

1 In the Custom menu, select [Settings] ▶ [Phone settings] ▶ [Other settings] ▶ [International Roam.] ▶ [Roam. guidance(Int.)].

Country codes of major countries

The following shows "Country code" used when making international calls or setting International dial assist.

(As of April 2008)

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Australia	61	Hong Kong	852
Austria	43	Hungary	36
Belgium	32	India	91
Brazil	55	Indonesia	62
Canada	1	Italy	39
China	86	Japan	81
Czech	420	Macau	853
Egypt	20	Malaysia	60
Fiji	679	Maldives	960
Finland	358	Netherlands	31
France	33	New Caledonia	687
Germany	49	New Zealand	64
Greece	30	Norway	47

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Peru	51	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Philippines	63		
Russia	7	Taiwan	886
Singapore	65	Thailand	66
South Korea	82	Turkey	90
Spain	34	U.K.	44
Sweden	46	U.S.A.	1
Switzerland	41	Vietnam	84

※ For other country codes and details, refer to the DoCoMo "International Services website".

International call access codes of major countries (Table 1)

The following shows the International call access codes of major countries.

(As of March 2008)

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Australia	0011	Hungary	00
Belgium	00	India	00
Brazil	0021/ 0014	Indonesia	001
		Ireland	00
Canada	011	Italy	00
China	00	Luxemburg	00
Czech	00	Macau	00
Denmark	00	Malaysia	00
Finland	00	Monaco	00
France	00	Netherlands	00
Germany	00	New Zealand	00
Greece	00	Norway	00
Hong Kong	001	Philippines	00

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Poland	00	Taiwan	002
Portugal	00	Thailand	001
Russia	810	Turkey	00
Singapore	001	U.A.E.	00
South Korea	001	U.K.	00
Spain	00	U.S.A.	011
Sweden	00	Vietnam	00
Switzerland	00		

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2)

The following shows the International prefix number for the universal number of each country.

(As of March 2008)

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Argentina	00	Hong Kong	001
Australia	0011	Hungary	00
Austria	00	Ireland	00
Belgium	00	Israel	014
Brazil	0021	Italy	00
Bulgaria	00	Luxemburg	00
Canada	011	Malaysia	00
China	00	Netherlands	00
Columbia	009	New Zealand	00
Denmark	00	Norway	00
Finland	990	Peru	00
France	00	Philippines	00
Germany	00	Portugal	00

Country/Region	Code	Country/Region	Code
Singapore	001	Switzerland	00
South Africa	09	Taiwan	00
South Korea	001	Thailand	001
Spain	00	U.K.	00
Sweden	00	U.S.A.	011

About inquiries overseas

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of the FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" on the cover of Quick Manual "Overseas Use" or "Failures encountered overseas" on P.1.

- Add the "International call access code" or "International prefix number for the universal number" that is assigned to your country of stay, to the head of your phone number for inquiries.

<Cut here>

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode	**iMenu ▶ 料金＆お申込･設定 (Charges & Applications/Setting) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))** **Packet communication charges free**
From a PC	**My DoCoMo (*http://www.mydocomo.com/*) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))**

※ You will need your “Network Security Code” to access e-site from i-mode.
※ No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
※ You will need your “DoCoMo ID/Password” to access e-site from PC.
※ If you do not have or you have forgotten your “Network Security Code” or “DoCoMo ID/Password”, contact the number listed in General Inquiries on the back of this manual.
※ DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
※ You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

Please follow proper etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, please be considerate of those around you.

Turn off your FOMA terminal in the following places

■ When in an area where use is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Be sure to turn off your FOMA terminal in the following places.

★On an aircraft ★In a hospital

※ There are people outside hospital wards who also use electric medical equipment. Please make sure that your FOMA terminal is turned off in the lobby and waiting room.

■ While driving

Using a mobile phone in hand while driving is regarded as a punishable act.

※ If there is no choice but to receive a call, use Hands-free and tell the caller that you will “call back”, and then pull over to a safe place to make a call.

■ When in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator

Your FOMA terminal may affect the operation of such equipment.

■ When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters, or museums

Use of your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will annoy others.

Be careful of where you use your FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and the ring tone

■ When using your FOMA terminal in a restaurant or a hotel lobby, lower your voice.

■ In crowded places, be careful not to obstruct other pedestrians.

Be considerate of the privacy of the individuals around you

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using a camera-enabled mobile phones.

The following functions will help you to keep your manners in public

There are useful functions you can use to set your FOMA terminal not to answer incoming calls, and to silence all sounds.

- **Manner mode (☞P. 113)/Original manner mode (☞P. 114)**
  Silences the Key/Standby i-motion sound and all the sounds from the FOMA terminal, and Record message is set (Manner mode). When in the Manner mode, automatically set functions (Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up, Ring tone, Mail ring tone, alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion sound and Low battery alarm) can be set to ON (enable)/OFF (disable) (Original manner mode).
- **Public mode (Drive mode) (☞P. 74)**
  The caller hears a guidance message that informs the receiver is driving and unable to answer. The call then disconnects. Your FOMA terminal does not sound even when it receives calls, so you can drive safely.
- **Vibration mode (☞P. 111)**
  Notifies incoming calls by vibration.
- **Record message (☞P. 77)**
  When you are unable to take a call, the Record message function records the caller’s message.

※ You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service (☞P. 426) and Call Forwarding Service (☞P. 429).

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

☎0120-005-250 (toll free)

※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

📱(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

📱(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

※ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones.

(In Japanese only)

☎0120-800-000 (toll free)

※ Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

● For various registration procedures, malfunctions or after-sales services, call the above numbers or contact a DoCoMo shop or retailer from the DoCoMo website or i-mode site.

DoCoMo website ***http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/***

i-mode site **Select iMenu ▶お知らせ (News) ▶ドコモショップ (DoCoMo Shop)**

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <DoCoMo Information Center> (24-hour service)

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1) -81-3-5366-3114* (toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

※ If you use the SH906i, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) -800-0120-0151*

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

※ See P.450, P.451 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

Failures encountered overseas <Network Technical Operation Center> (24-hour service)

For DoCoMo mobile phones

International call access code of your country of stay (Table 1) -81-3-6718-1414* (toll free)

* Communication charges to Japan will apply when you make a call from a fixed-line telephone.

※ If you use the SH906i, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial "+", press the "0" key for over a second).

For fixed-line telephones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) -800-5931-8600*

* Communication charges or other charges to your country of stay will apply.

※ See P.450, P.451 for international call access codes of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2).

● **When your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, be sure to immediately contact DoCoMo to suspend your services.**

● **When you have a trouble with your FOMA terminal, bring it to a repair counter specified by DoCoMo after returning to Japan.**

Don't forget your mobile phone… or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. **NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.**
NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc. **NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.** **NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.**

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation

Li-ion 00

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK™

Trademark of American Soybean Association

This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

This manual is printed on recycled paper.

'08.5 (1st Edition)
TINSEA160AFZZ
08E 2.42 DS SM548①

FOMA® SH906i
Manual for PC Connection

Manual for PC Connection
This manual explains the necessary items to perform the data communication with FOMA SH906i and the installation methods of “FOMA communication setting file” and “FOMA PC setup software” in the CD-ROM.
The operation procedure and screens may be partly different depending on the use environment.

’08.4 (1st Edition)

Data communication

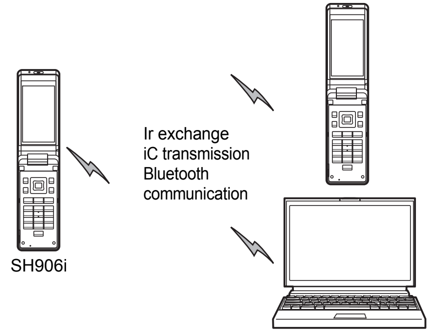
Data communication available from the FOMA terminal

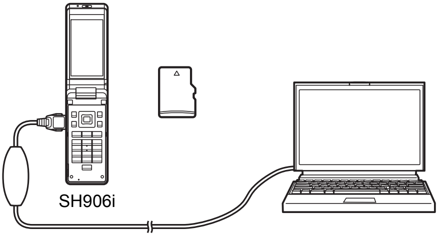
The FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- The FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarionⅡ and sigmarionⅢ. However, the data is sent/received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps. The high-speed communication for FOMA HIGH-SPEED area is not supported. Update musea and sigmarionⅡ before using.
  Refer to the DoCoMo website for details on how to update.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- Unable to use 64K data communication by connecting a PC overseas.
- To use packet transmission overseas, communicate with IP connection (PPP connection is not available for packet transmission).

Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

Send or receive data such as images, music, phonebook entries, and messages between the FOMA terminal and another FOMA terminal or PC, etc.





Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary.

Uses access points that are compatible with the FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection services “mopera U” and “mopera”, and performs the data transmission (A best-effort system is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions).

- For the packet transmission using mopera U, the data can be sent and received at speeds up to 384 kbps and 3.6 Mbps respectively.
- The data is sent and received at the maximum speed of 384 kbps outside the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area or when the packet transmission is performed using mopera.

For a packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) or Bluetooth function and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds.

Note that sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible.

64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection services “mopera U” and “mopera”, or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point.

Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) or Bluetooth function and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents.

Note that a long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

Things to keep in mind

Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet connection services “mopera U” and “mopera”. Subscription to “mopera U” requires a charge.

Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for a packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For a packet transmission, use a host that supports the FOMA packet transmission, and for a 64K data communications, use a host that supports the FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.

User authentication

Depending on the host, a user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using a communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for a data transmission (packet transmission/64K data communication) using the FOMA terminal in Japan.

- The PC must support the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.
- When using Bluetooth function, PC must be compatible with Bluetooth specification ver. 2.0+EDR (Dial-up Networking Profile).
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For a packet transmission, the access point must be compatible with the FOMA packet transmission.
- For a 64K data communications, the host must support the FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

Note

- When performing a packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

Before use

Operating environment

The following lists the operating requirements for using data communications.

Item	System requirements	
	FOMA communication setting file FOMA PC setup software	**FirstPass PC software**
PC	PC/AT compatible When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately): A USB port (USB specification 1.1/ 2.0-compliant) When using Bluetooth function: Bluetooth specification ver. 2.0+EDR-compliant (Dial-up Networking Profile)	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista (all Japanese versions)	
Required memory*	Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB	Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB Windows Vista: At least 512 MB
Hard disk*	At least 5 MB free space	At least 10 MB free space
Browser	—	Windows 2000, Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 or later Windows Vista: Internet Explorer 7.0 or later

* Required memory and hard disk are for the “FOMA PC setup software” and “FirstPass PC software” operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later is recommended for activating menus.
  Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later is recommended for Windows Vista.
- Take the steps below when menus do not appear even if the CD-ROM is set.

For Windows XP and Windows 2000

In the [スタート] (Start) menu of Windows, click [ファイル名を指定して実行] (Run), specify [<CD-ROM drivename>: index.html] and click [OK].

For Windows Vista

In the [スタート] (Start) menu of Windows, specify [<CD-ROM drivename>: index.html] in the [検索の開始] (Start search) field and click [index.html] displayed in the search result field.

- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.

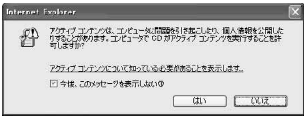
Continued on next page ▶▶

- Depending on the operating environment, the use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

The following warning message may appear when a CD-ROM is set in a PC. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

Click [はい] (Yes).

※ The following screen is an example for Windows XP. The screen depends on your PC.



アクティブ コンテンツは、コンピュータに問題を引き起こしたり、個人情報を公開したりすることがあります。コンピュータで CD がアクティブ コンテンツを実行することを許可しますか?

アクティブ コンテンツについて知っている必要があることを表示します...

☑ 今後、このメッセージを表示しない(D)

Required equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately)* or FOMA USB Cable (sold separately)*
- CD-ROM “FOMA SH906i CD-ROM” (accessory)

* For USB connection

Note

- Use a dedicated USB cable “FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02” or “FOMA USB Cable”. USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.
- The use of a USB HUB may not work correctly.

General flow to prepare for data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) is required to install the FOMA communication setting file.

Download and install the FOMA communication setting file

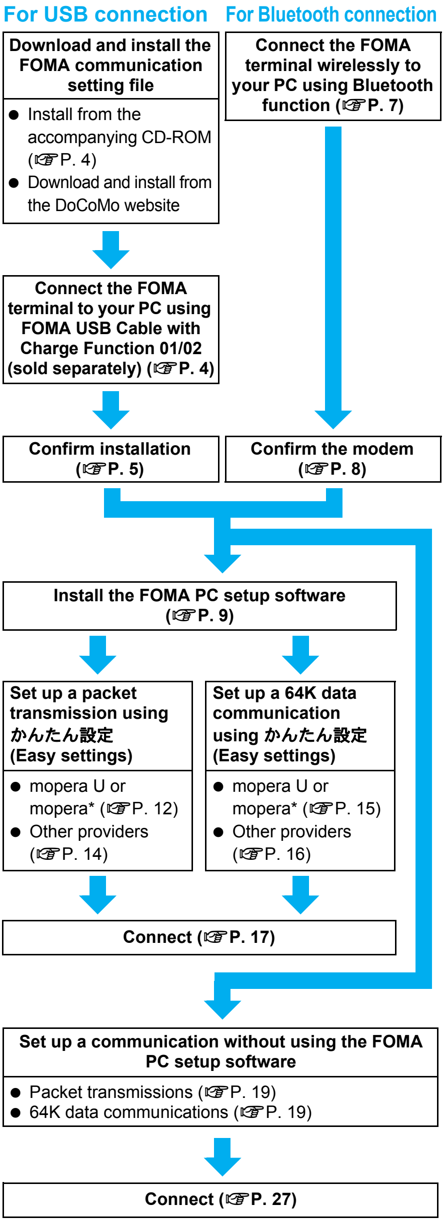
- Install from the accompanying CD-ROM (☞P. 4)
- Download and install from the DoCoMo website

↓

Data transfer

General flow to prepare for data communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use a packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.


For USB connection
Download and install the FOMA communication setting file
Install from the accompanying CD-ROM (☞P. 4)
Download and install from the DoCoMo website
Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) (☞P. 4)
Confirm installation (☞P. 5)
For Bluetooth connection
Connect the FOMA terminal wirelessly to your PC using Bluetooth function (☞P. 7)
Confirm the modem (☞P. 8)
Install the FOMA PC setup software (☞P. 9)
Set up a packet transmission using かんたん設定 (Easy settings)
mopera U or mopera* (☞P. 12)
Other providers (☞P. 14)
Set up a 64K data communication using かんたん設定 (Easy settings)
mopera U or mopera* (☞P. 15)
Other providers (☞P. 16)
Connect (☞P. 17)
Set up a communication without using the FOMA PC setup software
Packet transmissions (☞P. 19)
64K data communications (☞P. 19)
Connect (☞P. 27)

* Use “mopera U” (subscription necessary) for the broadband Internet connection, etc. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is “mopera”, a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

FOMA communication setting file

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 for a data communication, installation of the FOMA communication setting file from the accompanying CD-ROM is required (☞P. 4 to P. 7).

Note

- If installation fails and [FOMA SH906i] is not listed in the screens of step 3 of “Confirming the installed FOMA communication setting file (Driver)” on P. 5, uninstall the FOMA communication setting file (☞P. 6) and install it again.
- If, for some reason, the PC is unable to recognize the FOMA terminal, uninstall the FOMA communication setting file (☞P. 6) and install it again.

Preparing Bluetooth connection

Make data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal wirelessly to a Bluetooth communication compatible PC.

- For details on Bluetooth connection ☞P. 7

FOMA PC setup software/FirstPass PC software

Install the FOMA PC setup software from the accompanying CD-ROM to a PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform a packet transmission and 64K data communication connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC (☞P. 8).

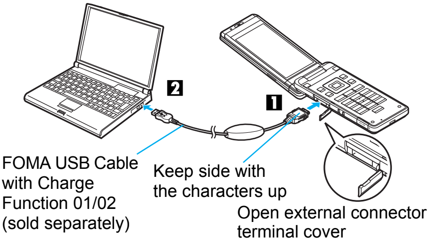
The FirstPass PC software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal. Refer to “FirstPassManual” on the accompanying CD-ROM for details. Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required to view “FirstPassManual” (PDF format).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with both devices turned on. If the FOMA communication setting file is already installed, appears on the FOMA terminal screen.

- Refer to P. 7 for details on connecting the FOMA terminal wirelessly to your PC using Bluetooth function.

Connecting using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02

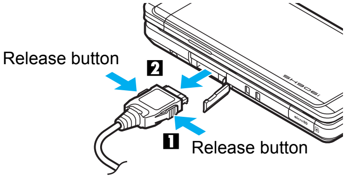

❷
❶
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately)
Keep side with the characters up
Open external connector terminal cover

1 **Insert the FOMA side of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) into the external connector terminal on the FOMA terminal (❶).**

2 **Insert the PC side of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 into the PC USB connector (❷).**

How to remove

1 Hold the release button on the FOMA terminal side of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (❶), and pull out from the FOMA terminal (❷). Pull by force may cause a malfunction.



2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 out from the PC.

Note

- Set USB mode setting of the FOMA terminal handset to [Communication mode] and connect.
- Connecting the FOMA terminal while charging in the desktop holder is also possible.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 during data transmission. Otherwise, transmission disconnection or data loss may occur.

Installing the FOMA communication setting file

To make data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately), the FOMA communication setting file is required. Install the file before connecting the FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.

- For Bluetooth connection, installing the FOMA communication setting file is not required.

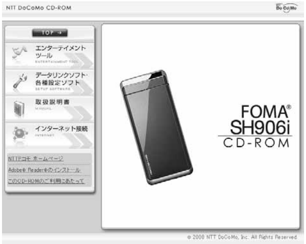
Installing the FOMA communication setting file (Driver)

- Install on the PC using a user with administrator rights.
- Perform steps 1 to 3 first, and then connect the FOMA terminal to the PC.

Continued on next page ▶▶

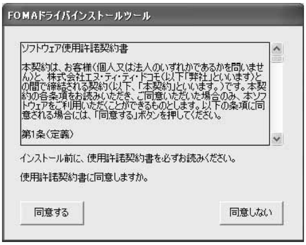
1 Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

- The initial screen appears.



2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] (Data link software/Setting software) → [インストール] (Install) in the [FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ)] (FOMA communication setting file (USB driver)) field, and then double-click [FOMAinst.exe].

3 Read the licensing agreement and click [同意する] (Agree) to agree.



ソフトウェア使用許諾契約書

本契約は、お客様(個人又は法人のいずれかであるかを問いません)と、株式会社エヌ・ティ・ティ・ドコモ(以下「弊社」といいます)との間で締結される契約(以下、「本契約」といいます。)です。本契約の各条項をお読みいただき、ご同意いただいた場合のみ、本ソフトウェアをご利用いただくことができるものとします。以下の条項に同意される場合には、「同意する」ボタンを押してください。

第1条(定義)

インストール前に、使用許諾契約書を必ずお読みください。

使用許諾契約書に同意しますか。

- This is the user licensing agreement for the FOMA driver installation tool. Clicking [同意しない] (Disagree) cancels the installation.

4 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 when [FOMAとパソコンを接続してください。] (Connect FOMA to PC.) appears.

- The installation in progress screen appears and installation automatically begins.
- Connect the FOMA terminal while the power is on.

5 When [FOMA通信設定ファイル (ドライバ) のインストールが完了しました。] (Installation of the FOMA communication setting file (Driver) is completed.) appears.

- Installation of the FOMA communication setting file finishes.

6 For install FOMA byte counter, click [インストールする (推奨)] (Install (recommended)).

- A set up screen appears, follow the instruction and install FOMA byte counter.

7 Click [完了] (Finish) on the [InstallShield Wizardの完了] (InstallShield Wizard is completed) screen.

- FOMA byte counter software restarts.

Note

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When a message prompting to restart the PC appears, follow the instruction and restart.
- If a PC and the FOMA terminal are connected before the FOMA communication setting file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the screen and install the FOMA communication setting file.

Confirming the installed FOMA communication setting file (Driver)

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, setup and communications are not possible.
Example: Confirming Windows XP drivers

- The screens are different for Windows Vista and Windows 2000.

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel), and then click the [パフォーマンスとメンテナンス] (Performance and maintenance) icon → [システム] (System) icon.

- System properties screen appears.

For Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel), and then click the [システムとメンテナンス] (System and maintenance) icon → [システム] (System) icon.

For Windows 2000

- Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [設定] (Settings) → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel), and then double-click the [システム] (System) icon.

2 Click the [ハードウェア] (Hardware) tab and then click [デバイスマネージャ] (Device manager).

- The device manager screen appears.

For Windows Vista

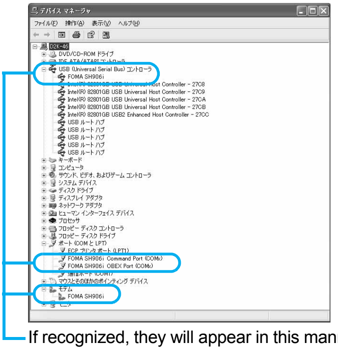
- Click [デバイスマネージャ] (Device manager) in the [タスク] (Task).

Continued on next page ▶▶

3

Click on each device, and confirm the name of the installed device.

Confirm that the names of all the installed devices are displayed for [USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ] (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers), [ポート (COMとLPT)] (Ports (COM and LPT)) and [モデム] (Modems).


デバイス マネージャ
ファイル(F) 操作(A) 表示(V) ヘルプ(H)
D2K-46
DVD/CD-ROM ドライブ
IDE ATA/ATAPI コントローラ
USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ
FOMA SH906i
Intel(R) 82801GB USB Universal Host Controller - 27C8
Intel(R) 82801GB USB Universal Host Controller - 27C9
Intel(R) 82801GB USB Universal Host Controller - 27CA
Intel(R) 82801GB USB Universal Host Controller - 27CB
Intel(R) 82801GB USB2 Enhanced Host Controller - 27CC
USB ルート ハブ
USB ルート ハブ
USB ルート ハブ
USB ルート ハブ
USB ルート ハブ
キーボード
コンピュータ
サウンド、ビデオ、およびゲーム コントローラ
システム デバイス
ディスク ドライブ
ディスプレイ アダプタ
ネットワーク アダプタ
ヒューマン インターフェイス デバイス
プロセッサ
フロッピー ディスク コントローラ
フロッピー ディスク ドライブ
ポート (COM と LPT)
ECP プリンタ ポート (LPT1)
FOMA SH906i Command Port (COMx)
FOMA SH906i OBEX Port (COMx)
通信ポート (COM1)
マウスとそのほかのポインティング デバイス
モデム
FOMA SH906i

If recognized, they will appear in this manner.

- The following drivers are installed when the FOMA communication setting file is installed.

Device type	Device name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers **For Windows Vista** Universal Serial Bus controllers	● FOMA SH906i
Ports (COM and LPT)	● FOMA SH906i Command Port (COMx)* ● FOMA SH906i OBEX Port (COMx)*
Modem	● FOMA SH906i

* The “x” from “COMx” is a number and differs depending on the PC.

Related Operations

If installation fails or [FOMA SH906i] does not appear in the screen of step 3

- Uninstall the file, and then install it again. Refer to “Uninstalling the FOMA communication setting file (Driver)” for steps on uninstalling.

Uninstalling the FOMA communication setting file (Driver)

This section describes how to uninstall the FOMA communication setting file.

- When uninstalling the FOMA communication setting file, the PC user must have administrator rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.
  Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

Uninstalling from the accompanying CD-ROM

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP

- The screens are different for Windows Vista and Windows 2000.

1

Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

- When the initial screen (☞P. 5) appears, exit the screen (Close the screen). The initial screen may not appear when the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC depending on your settings.

2

Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [ファイル名を指定して実行] (Run).

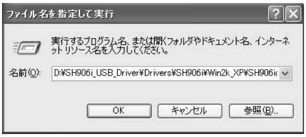
- The [ファイル名を指定して実行] (Run) screen appears.

For Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [検索の開始] (Start search) field.

3

Enter [<CD-ROM drivename>: ¥SH906i_USB_Driver¥Drivers ¥SH906i¥Win2k_XP¥SH906ic.exe] and click [OK].



実行するプログラム名、または開くフォルダやドキュメント名、インターネット リソース名を入力してください。

名前(O): D:¥SH906i_USB_Driver¥Drivers¥SH906i¥Win2k_XP¥SH906ic

For Windows Vista

- Enter [<CD-ROM drivename>: ¥SH906i_USB_Driver¥Drivers¥SH906i ¥WinVista32¥SH906ic.exe] and press enter key.

4

When [FOMA SH906i ドライバーのアンインストールを行います。] (Uninstall FOMA SH906i driver.) appears, click [はい] (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA communication setting file begins.

5

When [アンインストールは完了しました。PCを再起動してください。] (Uninstallation of the driver is completed. Restart the PC.) appears, click [OK] and restart the PC.

- Uninstallation of the FOMA communication setting file finishes.

Uninstalling from the control panel

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and click the [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) icon.

- The [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) screen appears.

For Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel), and then click the [プログラムと機能] (Programs and features) icon. The [プログラムのアンインストールまたは変更] (Uninstall or change programs) screen appears.

For Windows 2000

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [設定] (Settings) → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and double-click the [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) icon. The [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) screen appears.

2 Select [FOMA SH906i USB] and click [変更と削除] (Change/Remove).

For Windows Vista

- Double-click [FOMA SH906i USB].

3 When [FOMA SH906i ドライバーのアンインストールを行います。] (Uninstall FOMA SH906i driver.) appears, click [はい] (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA communication setting file begins.

4 When [アンインストールは完了しました。PCを再起動してください。] (Uninstallation of the driver is completed. Restart the PC.) appears, click [OK] and restart the PC.

- Uninstallation of the FOMA communication setting file finishes.

Preparing Bluetooth connection

Make data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal wirelessly to a Bluetooth communication compatible PC.

- When making data communication using Bluetooth function, the transmission speeds of FOMA terminal is for HIGH-SPEED, however, the data communication may not be available at maximum speed because the transmission speeds of Bluetooth function have limitations.
- Use a Bluetooth-linked standard modem or a Bluetooth modem provided by the Bluetooth maker. Contact the maker of your PC or Bluetooth maker for information on installation and setting methods.
- Refer to the PC manual of your PC for the details on operating it.

Connecting the FOMA terminal wirelessly to your PC using Bluetooth function

To connect a PC to the FOMA terminal for the first time, register the PC on the FOMA terminal.

- Operate the PC and the FOMA terminal.

Registering a PC on the FOMA terminal

1 In the Custom menu on the FOMA terminal, select [Lifekit] → [Bluetooth] → [Accept Registered].

- Ⓑ flashes at approximately 1-second intervals on the FOMA terminal display.

2 Search and register the Bluetooth device from the PC.

- For the FOMA terminal, keep the stand-by screen displayed.

3 Select [Yes], enter the Bluetooth passkey and press ■ on the FOMA terminal after the message stating that the device is registered appears on the FOMA terminal display.

- Enter up to 4 to 16 digits for a Bluetooth passkey.
- Enter the same Bluetooth passkey for both the FOMA terminal and PC.
- The PC is registered.
- To connect the FOMA terminal wirelessly to your PC successively, proceed to step 2 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to the registered PC”.

Note

- Ⓑ becomes illuminating in approximately 5 minutes after placing the FOMA terminal on stand-by for connection. Register the device while Ⓑ is flashing at approximately 1-second intervals.

Connecting the FOMA terminal to the registered PC

1 In the Custom menu on the FOMA terminal, select [Lifekit] → [Bluetooth] → [Accept Registered].

- ᛒ flashes at approximately 1-second intervals on the FOMA terminal display.

2 Make a connection from the PC.

- Automatically connect and ᛒ becomes flashing at approximately 0.5-second intervals.

Confirming the modem

Before setting communication, confirm the name and COM port number of the modem set for connecting the dial-up service.

- Operate the PC.

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and click [パフォーマンスとメンテナンス] (Performance and maintenance) icon → [システム] (System) icon.

- The system property screen appears.

For Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and click [パフォーマンスとメンテナンス] (Performance and maintenance) icon → [システム] (System) icon.

For Windows 2000

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [設定] (Settings) → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and double-click [システム] (System) icon.

2 Click the [ハードウェア] (Hardware) tab and then click [デバイスマネージャ] (Device manager).

- The device manager screen appears.

For Windows Vista

- Click [デバイスマネージャ] (Device manager) of [タスク] (Task).

3 Click each device, and then confirm the modem name or COM port number.

Stopping dial-up communication service

- Operate the FOMA terminal.

1 In the Custom menu, select [Lifekit] → [Bluetooth] → [List/cnnct/discnnct].

2 Select the Bluetooth device that is connected, press ▣ and select [Yes].

Communication settings with the FOMA PC setup software

- The explanations in the subsequent steps are based on the settings for Windows XP. The screens are different for Windows Vista and Windows 2000.

FOMA PC setup software

Various network settings are required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet transmissions and 64K data communications.
Use the FOMA PC setup software to easily make the following settings.

Easy settings

Follow the menu to easily create dial-up settings for FOMA data transmissions and optimize the transmission settings.

Transmission setting optimization

This optimizes the network settings in the PC before using [FOMA packet transmission].
Optimize the transmission settings and fully utilize the transmission performance.

Setting the Host (APN)

This configures the host (APN) required for packet transmissions.
Unlike in the case of 64K data communications, the host for FOMA packet transmissions does not use a telephone number. A host name, called an APN (Access Point Name), is registered to the FOMA terminal for each host in advance. The registration number (cid) of the APN is assigned to the host telephone number field and a connection is established. The APN ***mopera.ne.jp*** is registered in the first cid (cid1) and ***mopera.net*** is registered in the third cid (cid3) at the time of purchase for connection to mopera or mopera U. Configure a separate APN to connect to another provider or a corporate LAN.

cid [Context Identifier] ...
This number is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. This is configured when an APN is registered in the FOMA terminal.

Note

- Alternatively, configure packet transmissions and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC setup software (☞P. 19).
- FOMA PC setup software of versions earlier than 4.0.0 (earlier version [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software)) supplied with a FOMA terminal released before this handset are installed in the PC, uninstall the earlier version [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software) in advance.

From installing the FOMA PC setup software to connecting to the Internet

Check the operating environment of the FOMA PC setup software (☞P. 2).

STEP 1 Install the FOMA PC setup software

Uninstall earlier version FOMA PC setup software if installed before installing FOMA PC setup software of version 4.0.0. If earlier version FOMA PC setup software is installed, FOMA PC setup software of version 4.0.0 cannot be installed.
When a screen appears to indicate that earlier version W-TCP setup software and earlier version APN setup software are installed, refer to P. 11.

STEP 2 Setup preparation

Check the following before making any settings.

- The FOMA terminal is connected to a PC (For FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) ☞P. 4, For Bluetooth connection ☞P. 7)
- The FOMA terminal is recognized on the PC (☞P. 5)

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, setup and communications are not possible. Install the FOMA communication setting file (☞P. 4).

STEP 3 Use Easy settings to configure the network

- Packet transmissions using mopera U or mopera (☞P. 12)
- Packet transmissions using other providers (☞P. 14)
- 64K data communications using mopera U or mopera (☞P. 15)
- 64K data communications using other providers (☞P. 16)

Refer to P. 19 and following pages for other settings.

STEP 4 Establish a connection (☞P. 17)

Connect to the Internet.

Installing the FOMA PC setup software/FirstPass PC software

- To install the FOMA PC setup software or FirstPass PC software, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to install this software.
  Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.
- Before installation, check that the FOMA communication setting file (driver) is properly installed on the PC (☞P. 5). In addition, close all other programs. If other programs are running, click [キャンセル] (Cancel) on the FOMA PC setup software screen, close all other programs after saving, then restart installation.

1 Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

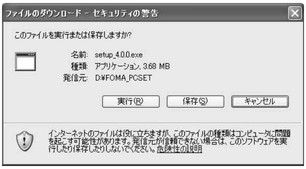
- The initial screen appears (☞P. 5).

2 Click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] (Data link software/Setting software) → [インストール] (Install) in the [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software) field.

- When [インストール] (Install) is clicked, the following warning message may appear. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

■ When the ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (File download - Security warning) screen appears

Click [実行] (Run).



このファイルを実行または保存しますか?

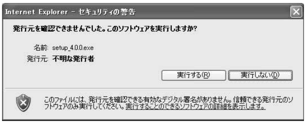
名前: setup_4.0.0.exe
種類: アプリケーション, 3.68 MB
発信元: D:¥FOMA_PCSET

インターネットのファイルは役に立ちますが、このファイルの種類はコンピュータに問題を起こす可能性があります。発信元が信頼できない場合は、このソフトウェアを実行したり保存したりしないでください。危険性の説明

■ When the Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Internet Explorer - Security warning) screen appears

Click [実行する] (Run).

- [不明な発行者] (Unknown) appears next to “発行元” (Publisher), but it does not cause any problem for use.



発行元を確認できませんでした。このソフトウェアを実行しますか?

名前: setup_4.0.0.exe
発行元: 不明な発行者

このファイルには、発行元を確認できる有効なデジタル署名がありません。信頼できる発行元のソフトウェアのみ実行してください。実行することのできるソフトウェアの詳細を表示します。

To install FirstPass PC software

- In the initial screen, click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] (Data link software/Setting software) → [インストール] (Install) in the [FirstPass PCソフト] (FirstPass PC software) field.
- A warning screen similar to the one that appears when the FOMA PC setup software is installed may appear depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but does not cause any problem for use.
- Follow the instructions of [FirstPassManual] in the FirstPassPCSoft folder of the CD-ROM to install.

For Windows 2000

- In the initial screen, click [データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト] (Data link software/Setting software) → [インストール] (Install) in the [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software)/[FirstPass PCソフト] (FirstPass PC software) field → [開く] (Open).

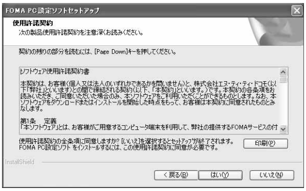
3 Click [はい] (Yes).

4 Click [次へ] (Next).

- Refer to “Notes about installing the FOMA PC setup software” on P. 10 if a screen appears, stating that an earlier version of [W-TCP設定ソフト] (W-TCP setup software), [FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト] (FOMA data transmission setup software) or [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software) is already installed.

Continued on next page ▶▶

5 Read the licensing agreement and click [はい] (Yes) to agree.



使用許諾契約
次の製品使用許諾契約を注意深くお読みください。

契約の残りの部分を読むには、[Page Down]キーを押してください。

ソフトウェア使用許諾契約書

本契約は、お客様（個人又は法人のいずれかであるかを問いません）と、株式会社エヌ・ティ・ティ・ドコモ（以下「弊社」といいます）との間で締結される契約（以下、「本契約」といいます。）です。本契約の各条項をお読みいただき、ご同意いただいた場合のみ、本ソフトウェアをご利用いただくことができるものとします。なお、本ソフトウェアをダウンロードまたはインストールを開始した時点をもって、お客様は本契約に同意されたものとみなします。

第1条　定義
「本ソフトウェア」とは、お客様がご用意するコンピュータ端末を利用して、弊社の提供するFOMAサービスの付

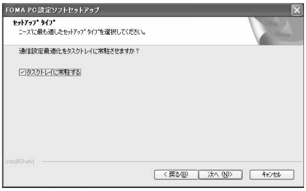
使用許諾契約の全条項に同意しますか? [いいえ]を選択するとセットアップが終了されます。FOMA PC設定ソフト をインストールするには、この使用許諾契約に同意が必要です。

- This is the user licensing agreement for the FOMA PC setup software. Clicking [いいえ] (No) cancels the installation.

For Windows Vista

- The setting in step 6 is not necessary. Proceed to step 7.

6 Put a check mark ☑ to [タスクトレイに常駐する] (Resident in task tray) and click [次へ] (Next).



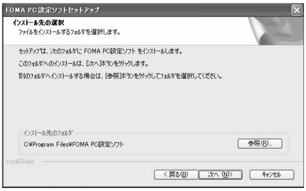
セットアップ タイプ
ニーズに最も適したセットアップ タイプを選択してください。

通信設定最適化をタスクトレイに常駐させますか？

☑ タスクトレイに常駐する

- After setup, the transmission setting optimization icon is added to the task tray (☞P. 17).
  This icon can be removed or added after installation by selecting [メニュー] (Menu) on the start screen of the FOMA PC setup software and then changing the setting of [「通信設定最適化」をタスクトレイに常駐させる] (Add the “transmission setting optimization” icon to the task tray).

7 Confirm the destination program folder and click [次へ] (Next).



インストール先の選択
ファイルをインストールするフォルダを選択します。

セットアップは、次のフォルダに FOMA PC設定ソフト をインストールします。

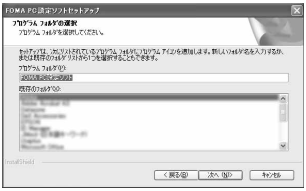
このフォルダへのインストールは、[次へ]ボタンをクリックします。

別のフォルダへインストールする場合は、[参照]ボタンをクリックしてフォルダを選択してください。

インストール先のフォルダ
C:¥Program Files¥FOMA PC設定ソフト

- To change the destination program folder, click [参照] (Browse), select a destination for installation and click [次へ] (Next).

8 Confirm the program folder name and click [次へ] (Next).



プログラム フォルダの選択
プログラム フォルダを選択してください。

セットアップは、次にリストされているプログラム フォルダにプログラム アイコンを追加します。新しいフォルダ名を入力するか、または既存のフォルダ リストから1つを選択することもできます。

プログラム フォルダ(P):
FOMA PC設定ソフト

既存のフォルダ(X):

- To change, enter a new folder name and click [次へ] (Next).

9 Click [完了] (Finish) on the [InstallShield Wizardの完了] (InstallShield Wizard completed) screen.

- The FOMA PC setup software restarts. Now configure the settings (☞P. 12).

■ Notes about installing the FOMA PC setup software

● If an earlier version of W-TCP setup software, FOMA data transmission software or FOMA PC setup software is installed

If an earlier version of W-TCP setup software, FOMA data transmission software or FOMA PC setup software is installed, a warning screen appears. Click [OK] and uninstall the software using [プログラム（アプリケーション）の追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs (application)) before installing the FOMA PC setup software (Ver. 4.0.0).

● If [キャンセル] (Cancel) is clicked during installation

The setup cancellation screen appears if [キャンセル] (Cancel) or [いいえ] (No) is clicked during setup to cancel installation. To continue with the installation, click [いいえ] (No). To cancel the installation, click [はい] (Yes).

■ Checking the FOMA PC setup software version

In the startup screen of the FOMA PC setup software, select [メニュー] (Menu) → [バージョン情報] (Version information) to view version information.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC setup software/FirstPass PC software

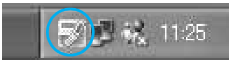
Before uninstalling the software

Return the transmission settings changed for the FOMA back to their original settings before uninstalling the FOMA PC setup software.

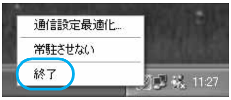
- To uninstall the FOMA PC setup software or FirstPass PC software, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.
  Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

1 Right-click in the task tray and click [終了] (Exit).

Right-click



Click



For Windows Vista

- The icon does not appear in the task tray. End the FOMA PC setup software when it is activated.

2 End any programs that are running.

Uninstalling the software

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and click the [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) icon.

- The [プログラムの追加と削除] (Add/Remove programs) screen appears.

For Windows Vista

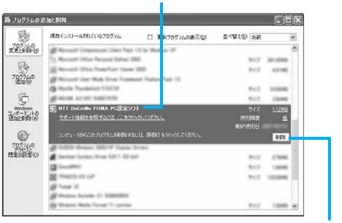
- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) → [プログラム] (Programs) → [プログラムと機能] (Programs and features).
  The [プログラムのアンインストールまたは変更] (Uninstall or change programs) screen appears.

For Windows 2000

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [設定] (Settings) → [コントロールパネル] (Control panel) and double-click the [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) icon. The [アプリケーションの追加と削除] (Add/Remove application) screen appears.

2 Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software) and click [削除] (Remove).

Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software).



Click here

For Windows Vista

- Double-click [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software).

For Windows 2000

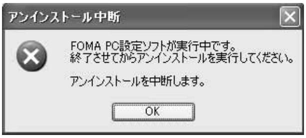
- Select [NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト] (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software) and click [変更と削除] (Change/Remove).

To uninstall FirstPass PC software

- Select [FirstPass PC ソフト] (FirstPass PC software) and click [変更と削除] (Change/Remove).

3 Confirm the program name to delete and click [はい] (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC setup software begins.
- The screen below will appear when attempting to uninstall, while FOMA PC setup software or transmission setting optimization software are running. Cancel the uninstallation program and close the running programs.



アンインストール中断

FOMA PC設定ソフトが実行中です。
終了させてからアンインストールを実行してください。

アンインストールを中断します。

OK

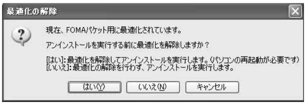
Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Click [完了] (Finish).

- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC setup software is completed.

Disabling transmission setting optimization (for Windows XP and Windows 2000 only)

- The screen below appears when the transmission settings are optimized.
- Click [はい] (Yes) to disable optimization. The transmission setting optimization is disabled after the PC is restarted.

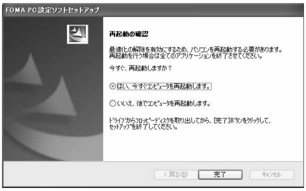


最適化の解除

現在、FOMA/パケット用に最適化されています。

アンインストールを実行する前に最適化を解除しますか？

[はい]：最適化を解除してアンインストールを実行します。(パソコンの再起動が必要です)
[いいえ]：最適化の解除を行わず、アンインストールを実行します。



FOMA PC設定ソフトセットアップ

再起動の確認

最適化の解除を有効にするため、パソコンを再起動する必要があります。
再起動を行う場合は全てのアプリケーションを終了させてください。

今すぐ、再起動しますか？

◉ はい、今すぐコンピュータを再起動します。

○ いいえ、後でコンピュータを再起動します。

ドライブからフロッピーディスクを取り出してから、[完了]ボタンをクリックして、セットアップを終了してください。

Setting up communication

Use the FOMA PC setup software to easily create a dial-up setting for FOMA data communications.

- Check that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to the PC before making any settings.

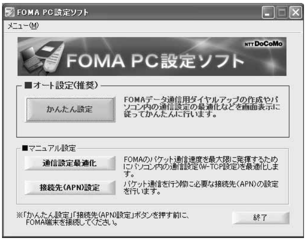
1 Start the FOMA PC setup software.

For Windows XP and Windows Vista

- Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software).

For Windows 2000

- Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software) → [FOMA PC設定ソフト] (FOMA PC setup software).



FOMA PC設定ソフト

FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成やパソコン内の通信設定の最適化などを画面表示に従ってかんたんに行います。

FOMAのパケット通信速度を最大限に発揮するためにパソコン内の通信設定(W-TCP設定)を最適化します。

パケット通信を行う際に必要な接続先(APN)の設定を行います。

※「かんたん設定」「接続先(APN)設定」ボタンを押す前に、FOMA端末を接続してください。

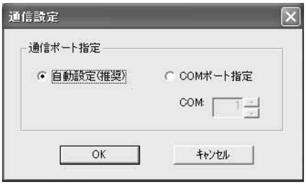
Making various settings

Communication setting

1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [メニュー] (Menu) → [通信設定] (Communication setting).

2 Select 通信ポート指定 (Specify communication port) and click [OK].

- Normally, select [自動設定（推奨）] (Automatic setting (recommended)). The connected FOMA terminal is automatically specified.
- To specify a COM port, select [COMポート指定] (Specify COM port) and specify a COM port number (COM 1 to 99) to which the FOMA terminal is connected.
- If connection is not available by Automatic setting when performing Bluetooth connection, specify the COM port number.



通信設定

通信ポート指定

◉ 自動設定(推奨)

○ COMポート指定

COM: 1

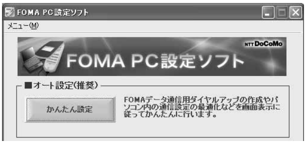
Note

- Refer to “Confirming the installed FOMA communication setting file (Driver)” on P. 5 for the checking method of COM ports when connecting via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.
- Refer to “Confirming the modem” on P. 8 for the checking method of COM ports when performing Bluetooth connection.

Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps. For the provider, use mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet connection service (The communication speed for both sending and receiving is up to 384 kbps for using mopera).

1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [かんたん設定] (Easy settings).

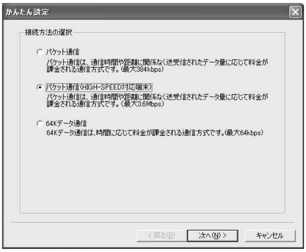


FOMA PC設定ソフト

FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成やパソコン内の通信設定の最適化などを画面表示に従ってかんたんに行います。

Continued on next page

2 Select [パケット通信 (HIGH-SPEED対応端末)] (Packet transmission (HIGH-SPEED compatible terminal)) and click [次へ] (Next).



接続方法の選択

○ パケット通信
パケット通信は、通信時間や距離に関係なく送受信されたデータ量に応じて料金が課金される通信方式です。(最大384kbps)

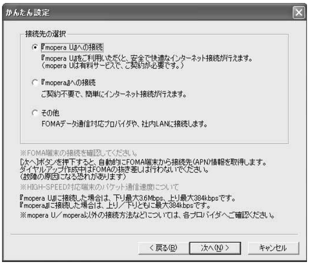
● パケット通信(HIGH-SPEED対応端末)
パケット通信は、通信時間や距離に関係なく送受信されたデータ量に応じて料金が課金される通信方式です。(最大3.6Mbps)

○ 64Kデータ通信
64Kデータ通信は、時間に応じて料金が課金される通信方式です。(最大64kbps)

For Windows Vista

- Select [パケット通信] (Packet transmission) and click [次へ] (Next).

3 Select [『mopera U』への接続] (mopera U connection) or [『mopera』への接続] (mopera connection) and click [次へ] (Next).



接続先の選択

● 『mopera U』への接続
『mopera U』をご利用いただくと、安全で快適なインターネット接続が行えます。
（mopera Uは有料サービスで、ご契約が必要です。）

○ 『mopera』への接続
ご契約不要で、簡単にインターネット接続が行えます。

○ その他
FOMAデータ通信対応プロバイダや、社内LANに接続します。

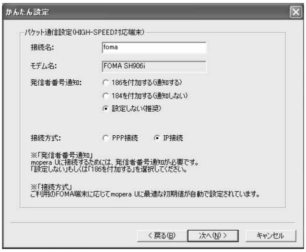
※FOMA端末の接続を確認してください。
[次へ]ボタンを押下すると、自動的にFOMA端末から接続先(APN)情報を取得します。
ダイヤルアップ作成中はFOMAの抜き差しは行わないでください。
(故障の原因になる恐れがあります)
※HIGH-SPEED対応端末のパケット通信速度について
『mopera U』に接続した場合は、下り最大3.6Mbps、上り最大384kbpsです。
『mopera』に接続した場合は、上り／下りともに最大384kbpsです。
※mopera U／mopera以外の接続方法などについては、各プロバイダへご確認ください。

- mopera U is a paid service that requires subscription. A subscription confirmation message appears when mopera U is selected.
- Using another provider (☞P. 14)

4 Click [OK] on the [FOMA 端末設定取得] (FOMA terminal setting acquisition) screen.

- The Host (APN) setting is acquired from the FOMA terminal connected to the PC.
  Wait until acquisition is completed.

5 Enter the connection name and click [次へ] (Next).



パケット通信設定(HIGH-SPEED対応端末)

接続名: foma
モデム名: FOMA SH906i
発信者番号通知: ○ 186を付加する(通知する) ○ 184を付加する(通知しない) ● 設定しない(推奨)
接続方式: ○ PPP接続 ● IP接続

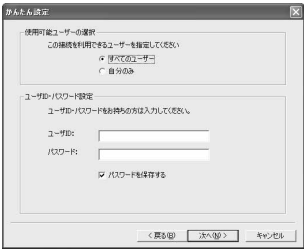
※「発信者番号通知」
mopera Uに接続するためには、発信者番号通知が必要です。
「設定しない」もしくは「186を付加する」を選択してください。

※「接続方式」
ご利用のFOMA端末に応じてmopera Uに最適な初期値が自動で設定されています。

- Enter a name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
  ¥ / : ＊ ? ! < > | ”
- For Bluetooth connection, [モデム名] (Modem name) field becomes the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)].
- To connect to mopera U and mopera, Notify caller ID must be enabled. Select [設定しない] (No) or [186を付加する] (Add 186).
- mopera U supports both PPP connections and IP connections. When using overseas, select IP connections for the connection method and [設定しない] (No) for Notify caller ID.
- mopera supports PPP connections only. Cannot be used overseas.

6 Click [次へ] (Next).

- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー ID] (User ID) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- For Windows XP and Windows 2000, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



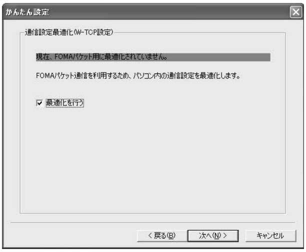
使用可能ユーザーの選択
この接続を利用できるユーザーを指定してください
● すべてのユーザー
○ 自分のみ

ユーザID・パスワード設定
ユーザID・パスワードをお持ちの方は入力してください。
☑ パスワードを保存する

For Windows Vista

- The setting in steps 7 and 8 is not necessary. Proceed to step 9.

7 Make sure that [最適化を行う] (Optimize) is checked ☑ and click [次へ] (Next).



通信設定最適化(W-TCP設定)
現在、FOMAパケット用に最適化されていません。
FOMAパケット通信を利用するため、パソコン内の通信設定を最適化します。
☑ 最適化を行う

- The transmission settings on the PC are optimized for using FOMA packet transmission. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized. Proceed to step 9.

Continued on next page ▶▶

8 Click [はい] (Yes).

9 Confirm the setting information and click [完了] (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

  If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

  To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

10 Click [OK] on the [完了] (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click [はい] (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞P. 17)

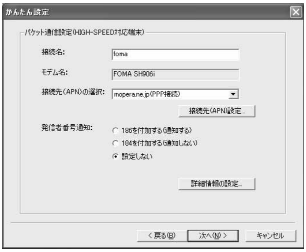
Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps.

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 12.

- Select [その他] (Other) for the host in step 3.

2 Enter the connection name and click [接続先 (APN) 設定] (Host (APN) settings).



接続名: foma

モデム名: FOMA SH906i

接続先(APN)の選択: mopera.ne.jp(PPP接続)

発信者番号通知:
○ 186を付加する(通知する)
○ 184を付加する(通知しない)
● 設定しない

- Enter a name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.

  ¥ / : ＊ ? ! < > | ”
- For Bluetooth connection, [モデム名] (Modem name) field becomes the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)].
- Select whether to enable Notify caller ID when dialing up. For details on the Notify caller ID setting, follow instructions provided by your provider.
- When using overseas, select [設定しない] (No) for Notify caller ID.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click [詳細情報の設定] (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

3 Configure the host (APN).

- The default setting for the first cid is ***mopera.ne.jp***, the APN used to connect to mopera. The default setting for the third cid is ***mopera.net***, the APN used to connect to mopera U.

1 Click [追加] (Add).

The [接続先 (APN) の追加] (Add host (APN)) screen appears.

2 Properly enter the FOMA packet transmission supported host name (APN) for the provider in the [接続先 (APN)] **(Host (APN)) field, and click** [OK].

The [接続先 (APN) 設定] (Host (APN) settings) screen reappears.

- Enter only single-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) or period (.) for [接続先 (APN)] (Host (APN)).
- When using overseas, select [IP接続] (IP connections).

※ Register up to ten cids.

4 Click [OK] on the [接続先 (APN) 設定] (Host (APN) settings) screen.

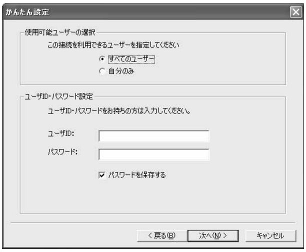
- The screen in step 2 reappears. The host (APN) set in step 3 appears in [接続先 (APN) の選択] (Selected host (APN)).

5 Check the host name (APN) in the [接続先 (APN) の選択] (Selected host (APN)) and click [次へ] (Next).

Continued on next page ▶▶

6 Enter the user ID and password, and click [次へ] (Next).

- Enter the user ID and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- For Windows XP and Windows 2000, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



この接続を利用できるユーザーを指定してください

● すべてのユーザー
○ 自分のみ

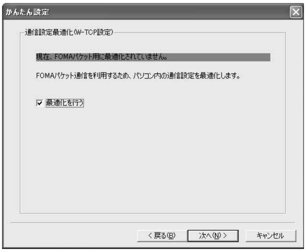
ユーザID・パスワードをお持ちの方は入力してください。

☑ パスワードを保存する

For Windows Vista

- The setting in steps 7 and 8 is not necessary. Proceed to step 9.

7 Make sure that [最適化を行う] (Optimize) is checked ☑ and click [次へ] (Next).



現在、FOMAパケット用に最適化されていません。

FOMAパケット通信を利用するため、パソコン内の通信設定を最適化します。

☑ 最適化を行う

- The transmission settings on the PC are optimized for using FOMA packet transmission. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized. Proceed to step 9.

8 Click [はい] (Yes).

9 Confirm the setting information and click [完了] (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
  If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.
  To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

10 Click [OK] on the [完了] (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click [はい] (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞P. 17)

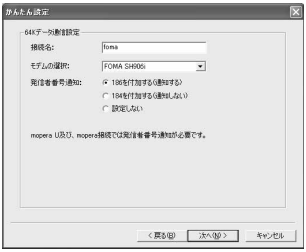
Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for 64K data communications. For the provider, use mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet connection service.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 12.

- Select [64K データ通信] (64K data communications) for the connection method in step 2.

2 Enter the connection name, select a modem and click [次へ] (Next).



接続名: foma

モデムの選択: FOMA SH906i

発信者番号通知:
● 186を付加する(通知する)
○ 184を付加する(通知しない)
○ 設定しない

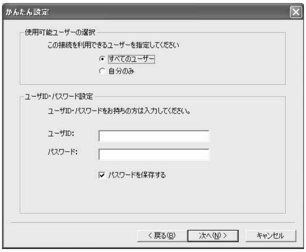
mopera U及び、mopera接続では発信者番号通知が必要です。

- Enter a name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.
  ¥ / : ＊ ? ! < > | ”
- Make sure that [FOMA SH906i] is set in [モデムの選択] (Select a modem) field.
- For Bluetooth connection, select the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)] in the [モデムの選択] (Select a modem) field.
- To connect to mopera U and mopera, Notify caller ID must be enabled. Select [設定しない] (No) or [186を付加する] (Add 186).

Continued on next page ▶▶

3 Click [次へ] (Next).

- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザーID] (User ID) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- For Windows XP and Windows 2000, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



かんたん設定

使用可能ユーザーの選択

この接続を利用できるユーザーを指定してください

● すべてのユーザー
○ 自分のみ

ユーザID・パスワード設定

ユーザID・パスワードをお持ちの方は入力してください。

ユーザID:
パスワード:

☑ パスワードを保存する

4 Confirm the setting information and click [完了] (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
  If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.
  To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

5 Click [OK] on the [完了] (Finish) screen.

- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞P. 17)

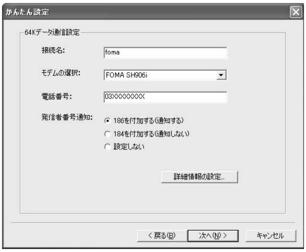
Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for 64K data communications.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 12.

- Select [64K データ通信] (64K data communications) in step 2 and [その他] (Other) in step 3.

2 Make the settings and click [次へ] (Next).



かんたん設定

64Kデータ通信設定

接続名: foma
モデムの選択: FOMA SH906i
電話番号: 03XXXXXXXX
発信者番号通知:
● 186を付加する(通知する)
○ 184を付加する(通知しない)
○ 設定しない

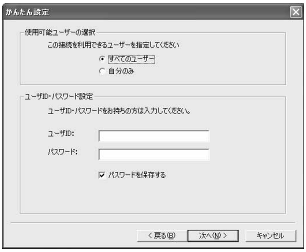
- To connect to a provider with an ISDN synchronous 64K access point, make the following settings when creating a dial-up setting.
  - ■ Connection name: Enter a connection name.
  - ■ Selected modem: FOMA SH906i
  - ■ Phone number:
    Enter the phone number provided by the provider.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered for the connection name.
  ¥ / : ＊ ? ! < > | ”
- The following characters can be entered for the phone number.
  0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D P T W a b c d p t w ! @ $ - . ( ) + ＊ # , & and single-byte space
- For Bluetooth connection, select the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)] in the [モデムの選択] (Select a modem) field.
- Select whether to enable Notify caller ID when dialing up. For details on the Notify caller ID setting, follow instructions provided by your provider.

Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click [詳細情報の設定] (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

3 Enter the User ID and password and click [次へ] (Next).

- Enter the User ID and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- For Windows XP and Windows 2000, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



かんたん設定

使用可能ユーザーの選択

この接続を利用できるユーザーを指定してください

● すべてのユーザー
○ 自分のみ

ユーザID・パスワード設定

ユーザID・パスワードをお持ちの方は入力してください。

ユーザID:
パスワード:

☑ パスワードを保存する

Continued on next page ▶▶

4 Confirm the setting information and click [完了] (Finish).

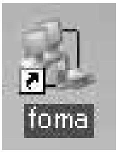
- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.
  If [デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する] (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.
  To change the settings, click [戻る] (Back).

5 Click [OK] on the [完了] (Finish) screen.

Executing the configured transmission

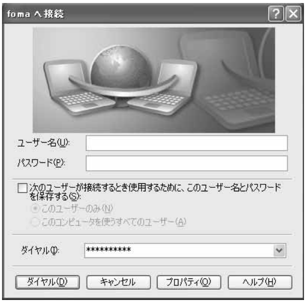
1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

- The connection screen appears.
- The name of the connection icon is the connection name entered in the earlier setting.



2 Click [ダイヤル] (Dial).

- The connection starts.



ユーザー名(U):

パスワード(P):

☐ 次のユーザーが接続するとき使用するために、このユーザー名とパスワードを保存する(S):

● このユーザーのみ(N)

○ このコンピュータを使うすべてのユーザー(A)

ダイヤル(I): **********

- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- If a user name and password are entered in step 3 on P. 16, that information is entered automatically into the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.
- When using other providers or dial-up to connect, enter the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) and click [ダイヤル] (Dial).
- When Save user name and password field is checked ☑, the user name and password do not need to be entered next time.

Note

- When there is no connection icon on the desktop
  <Windows XP>
  Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワーク接続] (Network connections).
  <Windows Vista>
  Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [接続先] (Connect to).
  <Windows 2000>
  Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続] (Network and dial-up connections).
- A screen appears on the FOMA terminal showing the calling for packet transmission or dialing for 64K data communications.
- The transmission speed shown on the PC may differ from the actual transmission speed.

Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

1 Click in the task tray and click [切断] (Disconnect).

- The connection is disconnected.

For Windows Vista

- Click in the task tray → [接続または切断...] (Connect or disconnect), and double-click the disconnection icon.

Transmission setting optimization (for Windows XP and Windows 2000 only)

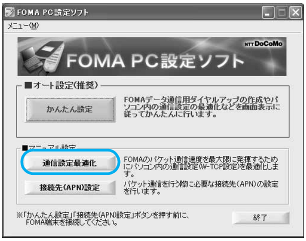
Transmission setting optimization function

Transmission setting optimization software is a TCP parameter setup tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capacity when sending and receiving packet transmissions over the FOMA network. Configure the transmission settings with this software to fully utilize the transmission performance of the FOMA terminal.

- When connecting a PC overseas, disable transmission setting optimization before using.

Enabling and disabling optimization

1 Start the FOMA PC setup software and click [通信設定最適化] (Transmission setting optimization).



FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成やパソコン内の通信設定の最適化などを画面表示に従ってかんたんに行います。

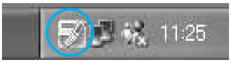
FOMAのパケット通信速度を最大限に発揮するためにパソコン内の通信設定(W-TCP設定)を最適化します。

パケット通信を行う際に必要な接続先(APN)の設定を行います。

※「かんたん設定」「接続先(APN)設定」ボタンを押す前に、FOMA端末を接続してください。

When optimizing the transmission setting in the task tray

- Click in the task tray to start the transmission setting optimization.



2 Perform the next operation.

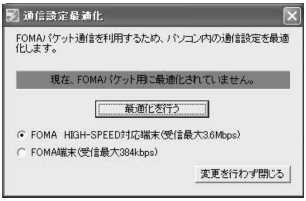
When the system setting is not optimized

- The following screen appears.

  Select [3.6 Mbps] and click [最適化を行う] (Optimize).

  The HIGH-SPEED対応端末の確認 (Confirm HIGH-SPEED compatible terminal) screen appears. Click [はい] (Yes). Optimization of the system setting begins. Setting completed screen appears when optimization ends. Click [OK].

  Follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization is enabled.



FOMAパケット通信を利用するため、パソコン内の通信設定を最適化します。

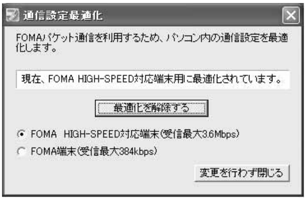
現在、FOMAパケット用に最適化されていません。

◉ FOMA HIGH-SPEED対応端末(受信最大3.6Mbps)
○ FOMA端末(受信最大384kbps)

When the system setting is optimized

- The following screen appears.

  Click [最適化を解除する] (Disable optimization) → [OK] to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.



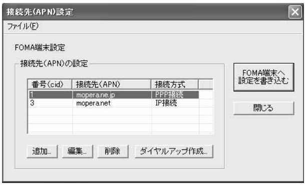
FOMAパケット通信を利用するため、パソコン内の通信設定を最適化します。

現在、FOMA HIGH-SPEED対応端末用に最適化されています。

◉ FOMA HIGH-SPEED対応端末(受信最大3.6Mbps)
○ FOMA端末(受信最大384kbps)

Host (APN) settings

Reading Host (APN) information from the FOMA terminal



番号(cid)	接続先(APN)	接続方式
1	mopera.ne.jp	PPP接続
3	mopera.net	IP接続

Click [接続先(APN) 設定] (Host (APN) settings) and on the retrieve setting from FOMA terminal screen, click [OK]. The connected FOMA terminal is accessed automatically and the registered host (APN) information is read (This operation is not performed if the FOMA terminal is not connected). The setting information can also be read by selecting from the toolbar [ファイル] (File) → [FOMA 端末から設定を取得] (Retrieve setting from FOMA terminal).

Adding, editing or deleting a host (APN)

● To add a host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, click [追加] (Add).

● To edit a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click [編集] (Edit).

● To delete a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click [削除] (Delete).

- The host (APN) registered to the first and third cid cannot be deleted. When the third number (cid) is selected and [削除] (Delete) is clicked, the number is not actually deleted. The number returns to ***mopera.net***.

Saving to a file

Select [ファイル] (File) from the toolbar to back up the host (APN) settings registered to the FOMA terminal or to save settings being edited.

Loading settings from a file

To load saved host (APN) settings in order to re-edit them or write them onto the FOMA terminal, select the appropriate function from the [ファイル] (File) menu on the toolbar.

Writing host (APN) information onto the FOMA terminal

To write the indicated host (APN) setting to the FOMA terminal, click [FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む] (Write settings onto FOMA terminal) on the host (APN) setting screen.

Creating dial-up settings

On the host (APN) settings screen, select an added or edited host (APN) and click [ダイヤルアップ作成] (New dial-up). A screen confirming the writing of the setting to the FOMA terminal appears. Click [はい] (Yes). After the setting is written to the host (APN), the [パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成] (New dial-up for packet transmission) screen appears.

Enter a connection name and click [ユーザID・パスワードの設定] (Set user ID and password) (Can be left blank to connect when using mopera U or mopera).

● For Windows XP and Windows 2000

Enter a [ユーザID] (User ID) and [パスワード] (Password), specify the users to whom rights are granted and click [OK].

● For Windows Vista

Enter a [ユーザID] (User ID) and [パスワード] (Password), and click [OK].

If the IP and DNS information from your provider are available, click [詳細情報の設定] (Advanced) on the new dial-up for packet transmission screen, enter the necessary information and click [OK].

After entering the information, click [OK] → [OK] → [FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む] (Write settings onto FOMA terminal), confirm that the old setting is to be overwritten and then write the settings.

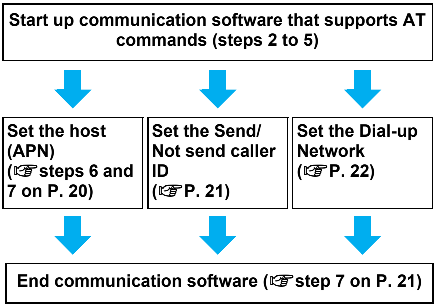
Communication settings without the FOMA PC setup software

Setting communications for packet transmissions and 64K data communications

This section describes how to set up packet transmission and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC setup software.

To make the settings, communication software for entering AT commands are required. “Hyper terminal”, which is included as standard with Windows, is used here.

- The flow for setting up with use of AT commands is as follows.
- To use 64K data communications, there is no host (APN) setting.
- Windows Vista is not compatible with “Hyper terminal”. Use Windows Vista compatible software to set up communications (follow the instructions for the software).



Start up communication software that supports AT commands (steps 2 to 5)

Set the host (APN) (☞steps 6 and 7 on P. 20)

Set the Send/ Not send caller ID (☞P. 21)

Set the Dial-up Network (☞P. 22)

End communication software (☞step 7 on P. 21)

Note

- Install the FOMA communication setting file before making settings for packet transmission and 64K data communications (☞P. 4).
- AT commands are commands for controlling the modem. The FOMA terminal is compliant with AT commands and also supports some extended commands, as well as some unique AT commands.
- Making host (APN) settings is not necessary when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet connection service, since it is set as the default.
- Set Notify caller ID as necessary (When using mopera U or mopera, set [Send]). The default setting is [Not send].
- Set other settings as necessary. Use is possible with the default settings.

Setting the host (APN)

Set the host (APN) for using packet transmission. Register up to ten numbers. Hosts are managed using cid numbers from 1 to 10 (☞P. 20). The default setting for the first cid is ***mopera.ne.jp***, the APN used to connect to mopera. The setting for the third cid is ***mopera.net***, the APN used to connect to mopera U. Save hosts (APN) to cid2 or 4 to 10.

- The registered cid is the connection number set in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for hosts (APNs) other than mopera U or mopera.

Example: When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) on Windows XP

- The screens are different for Windows 2000.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.

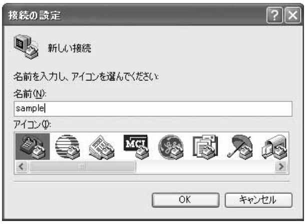
2 Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ハイパーターミナル] (Hyper terminal).

- Hyper terminal starts up.

For Windows 2000

- Select [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ハイパーターミナル] (Hyper terminal).

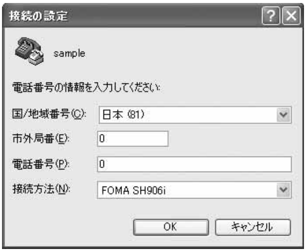
3 Enter a name (such as a host name) in the [名前] (Name) field and click [OK].



名前(N): sample

- The advanced settings screen for phone number appears.

4 Select [FOMA SH906i] from [接続方法] (Connection method), enter a temporary number in the [電話番号] (Phone number) field that does not actually exist (such as [0]), and click [OK].

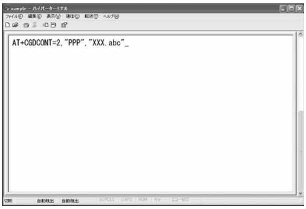


国/地域番号(C): 日本 (81)
市外局番(E): 0
電話番号(P): 0
接続方法(N): FOMA SH906i

- For the area code, the default setting in Windows (such as [03]), appears. Set any number for the area code, since it is not related to the host (APN) setting.

5 When the connection screen appears, click [キャンセル] (Cancel).

6 Enter host (APN) and press ⏎.


sample - ハイパーターミナル
ファイル(F) 編集(E) 表示(V) 通信(C) 転送(T) ヘルプ(H)

```
AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "XXX. abc"_
```

- Enter host (APN) in the format:
  AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "<PDP_type>","APN" (☞P. 33).
  <cid> : Enter 2 or any of 4 to 10.
  "<PDP_type>" : Enter "PPP" or "IP".
  "APN" : Enter the host (APN) enclosed in " ".
- If [OK] appears, the APN is set successfully.
- To check the current host (APN) setting, enter AT+CGDCONT?⏎, and the settings appear in a list.

Continued on next page ▶▶

When nothing appears on the screen when AT commands are entered

- ATE1↵
  Refer to P. 36 for details on AT commands.

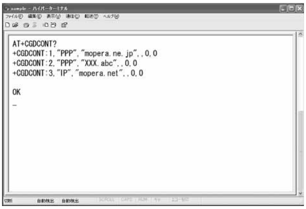
When resetting APN settings using AT commands

- AT+CGDCONT=↵ : To reset all the cids
- AT+CGDCONT=<cid>↵: To reset only specific cids

When reset, <cid>=1 returns to ***mopera.ne.jp*** (default setting), <cid>=3 returns to ***mopera.net*** (default setting) and settings for <cid>=2 or 4 to 10 are unregistered.

When confirming APN settings using AT commands

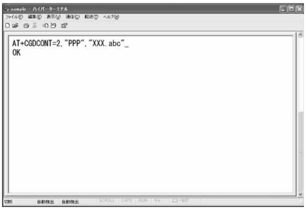
- AT+CGDCONT?↵
  Refer to P. 33 for details on AT commands.


sample - ハイパーターミナル
ファイル(F) 編集(E) 表示(V) 通信(C) 転送(T) ヘルプ(H)
切断 自動検出 自動検出

```
AT+CGDCONT?
+CGDCONT:1,"PPP","mopera.ne.jp",,0,0
+CGDCONT:2,"PPP","XXX.abc",,0,0
+CGDCONT:3,"IP","mopera.net",,0,0

OK
_
```

7 **Confirm that [OK] appears and select [ハイパーターミナルの終了] (Exit hyper terminal) from the [ファイル] (File) menu.**


sample - ハイパーターミナル
ファイル(F) 編集(E) 表示(V) 通信(C) 転送(T) ヘルプ(H)
切断 自動検出 自動検出

```
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc"_
OK
```

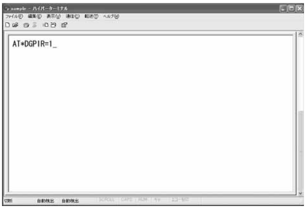
- Hyper terminal ends.
- [セッション×××を保存しますか？] (Save session xxx?) appears. However there is no need to save.

Setting Send/Not send caller ID

Handset number (Caller ID) is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

1 **Follow steps 1 to 5 of “Setting the host (APN)” on P. 20.**

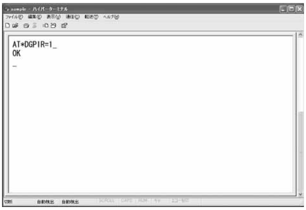
2 **Set either Send caller ID (186) or Not send caller ID (184) during packet transmission.**


sample - ハイパーターミナル
ファイル(F) 編集(E) 表示(V) 通信(C) 転送(T) ヘルプ(H)
切断 自動検出 自動検出

```
AT*DGPIR=1_
```

- Enter in the format: “AT∗DGPIR=<n>” (☞P. 32).
  AT∗DGPIR=1↵:
  Adds ***184*** when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).
  AT∗DGPIR=2↵:
  Adds ***186*** when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

3 **Confirm that [OK] appears.**


sample - ハイパーターミナル
ファイル(F) 編集(E) 表示(V) 通信(C) 転送(T) ヘルプ(H)
切断 自動検出 自動検出

```
AT*DGPIR=1_
OK
_
```

Send/Not send setting on dial-up networks

Adding ***186*** (Send) and ***184*** (Not send) to the host number in dial-up networks is also possible. Setting ***186*** (Send) and ***184*** (Not send) in both the ∗DGPIR command setting and the dial-up network setting results in the following.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=1)	Using the *DGPIR command Send/ Not send setting	Send/Not send caller ID
*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send
	Not send	Not send
	Send	Send
184*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Not send (dial-up network ***184*** is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	
186*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send (dial-up network ***186*** is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	

- Enter "AT*DGPIR=0" to return ***186*** (Send)/***184*** (Not send) to [Not set] (default setting).
- Set [Send] for sending caller ID when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet connection service.

Setting the dial-up network

Set the host and TCP/IP protocol. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.

Hosts

For packet transmissions, set the host (APN) in advance. Register numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for the host (APN) in advance, to enable using packet transmission by specifying control numbers. Host (APN) settings are the equivalent to a phonebook for packet transmissions on a PC. Compared to normal phonebook entries, they appear as follows.

In phonebook	In Packet transmission setting
Registered number (memory number)	Control numbers (cids) 1 to 10
Other party's name	Host name (host (APN))
Other party's phone number	*99***<cid>#

For example, when the mopera host (APN), ***mopera.ne.jp***, is registered for cid1, connecting to mopera is possible by specifying the host number "*99***1#". Other registered cids can be used similarly.

*99***1# :	Connects to host (APN) registered to cid1. Alternatively, connect with just *99#.
*99***2# :	Connects to host (APN) registered to cid2.
to	
*99***10# :	Connects to host (APN) registered to cid10.

As the default setting, ***mopera.ne.jp***, the APN used to connect to mopera is registered for cid1, and ***mopera.net***, the APN used to connect to mopera U is registered for cid3. When connecting to a corporate LAN or Internet service providers other than mopera or mopera U, register the host (APN) using cid2 or cid4 to 10 (☞P. 20).
For 64K data communications, enter the access point phone number supplied by the Internet service provider or network administrator.

- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.
- Access point phone number is "*8701" for mopera U and "*9601" for mopera when using 64K data communications.
- When using packet transmissions, enter "*99***3#" for mopera U and "*99***1#" for mopera (default setting).

Setting a dial-up network on Windows XP

On Windows XP, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.
Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet connection service

- Subscription to mopera U requires a charge.

1 **Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワーク接続] (Network connections).**

- The network connections screen appears.

2 **Click [新しい接続を作成する] (Create new connection) in the [ネットワークタスク] (Network tasks).**

- A new connection wizard screen appears.

3 **Click [次へ] (Next).**

- The screen to select network connection type appears.

4 **Select [インターネットに接続する] (Dial-up to the Internet) and click [次へ] (Next).**

- A preparation screen appears.

5 **Select [接続を手動でセットアップする] (Manually set up Internet connection) and click [次へ] (Next).**

- The Internet connection screen appears.

6 **Select [ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する] (Connect through phone line and modem) and click [次へ] (Next).**

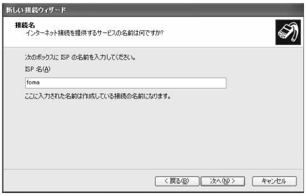
- A screen to specify the device appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

7 Select [モデム－ FOMA SH906i (COMx)] (Modem - FOMA SH906i (COMx)) and click [次へ] (Next).

- A number will replace “x”.
- The connection name screen appears.
- For Bluetooth connection, select the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)].
- The screen appears only when multiple modems are installed.

8 Enter a connection name in the [ISP名] (ISP name) field and click [次へ] (Next).



接続名
インターネット接続を提供するサービスの名前は何ですか?

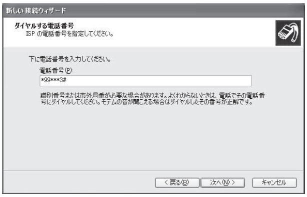
次のボックスに ISP の名前を入力してください。

ISP 名(A)
foma

ここに入力された名前は作成している接続の名前になります。

- The phone number to dial screen appears.
- The [ISP名] (ISP name) is the name of the Internet service provider.

9 Enter the host number in the [電話番号] (Phone number) field and click [次へ] (Next).



ダイヤルする電話番号
ISP の電話番号を指定してください。

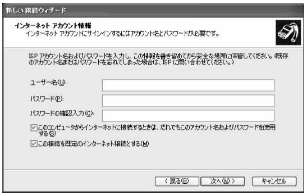
下に電話番号を入力してください。

電話番号(P):
*99***3#

識別番号または市外局番が必要な場合があります。よくわからないときは、電話でその電話番号にダイヤルしてください。モデムの音が聞こえる場合はダイヤルしたその番号が正解です。

- The Internet account information screen appears.
- To connect to <cid>=3 (mopera U), enter “*99***3#”.

10 Set options in the screen, as shown below and click [次へ] (Next).



インターネット アカウント情報
インターネット アカウントにサインインするにはアカウント名とパスワードが必要です。

ISP アカウント名およびパスワードを入力し、この情報を書き留めてから安全な場所に保管してください。(既存のアカウント名またはパスワードを忘れてしまった場合は、ISP に問い合わせてください。)

ユーザー名(U):
パスワード(P):
パスワードの確認入力(C):

☑ このコンピュータからインターネットに接続するときは、だれでもこのアカウント名およびパスワードを使用する(S)
☑ この接続を既定のインターネット接続とする(M)

- The new connection wizard completed screen appears.
- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.

11 When [新しい接続ウィザードの完了] (New connection wizard completed) appears, click [完了] (Finish).

- The newly created connection wizard appears.

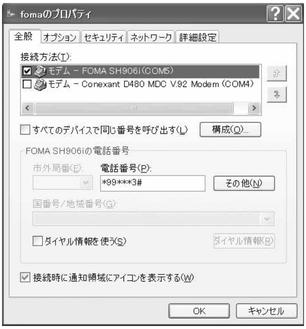
12 Confirm the setting information and click [キャンセル] (Cancel).

- Only confirming the settings without actually connecting.

13 Select the icon for host created and select [プロパティ] (Properties) in the [ファイル] (File) menu.

- Properties screen for the host appears.

14 Confirm all the settings in the [全般] (General) tab.



接続方法(T):
☑ モデム － FOMA SH906i (COM5)
☐ モデム － Conexant D480 MDC V.92 Modem (COM4)

☐ すべてのデバイスで同じ番号を呼び出す(L)

FOMA SH906iの電話番号
市外局番(E):
電話番号(P): *99***3#

国番号/地域番号(G):

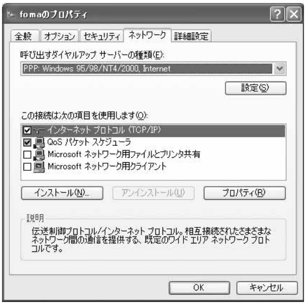
☐ ダイヤル情報を使う(S)

☑ 接続時に通知領域にアイコンを表示する(W)

- When two or more modems are connected to the PC
  - ■ For FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02: Make sure that [FOMA SH906i] in [接続の方法] (Connection method) shows ☑. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than [FOMA SH906i], change ☑ to ☐.
  - ■ For Bluetooth connection: Make sure that the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)] in [接続の方法] (Connection method) shows ☑. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)], change ☑ to ☐.
- Confirm that [ダイヤル情報を使う] (Use dialing rules) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.

Continued on next page ▶▶

15 Click the [ネットワーク] (Networking) tab, confirm all settings and click [設定] (Settings).



呼び出すダイヤルアップ サーバーの種類(E): PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet

この接続は次の項目を使用します(O):

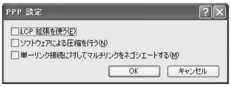
- ☑ インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)
- ☑ QoS パケット スケジューラ
- ☐ Microsoft ネットワーク用ファイルとプリンタ共有
- ☐ Microsoft ネットワーク用クライアント

説明

伝送制御プロトコル/インターネット プロトコル。相互接続されたさまざまなネットワーク間の通信を提供する、既定のワイド エリア ネットワーク プロトコルです。

- Set [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類] (Type of dial-up server to call) to [PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet].
- In the [この接続は次の項目を使用します] (Components checked are used by this connection) field, ☑ should appear only for [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)). Leave [QoS パケットスケジューラ] (QoS packet scheduler) settings as is. No changes are necessary.
- The PPP setting screen appears.
- For TCP/IP settings used for connecting to an Internet service provider, confirm with the Internet service provider or network administrator.

16 Check all options to show ☐ and click [OK].



- ☐ LCP 拡張を使う(E)
- ☐ ソフトウェアによる圧縮を行う(N)
- ☐ 単一リンク接続に対してマルチリンクをネゴシエートする(M)

- Properties screen of the host reappears.

17 Click [OK] on the [プロパティ] (Properties) screen.

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 27 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

Setting a dial-up network on Windows Vista

On Windows Vista, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) to set the host (APN).

Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet connection service

- Subscription to mopera U requires a charge.

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [接続先] (Connect to).

- The connect to a network screen appears.

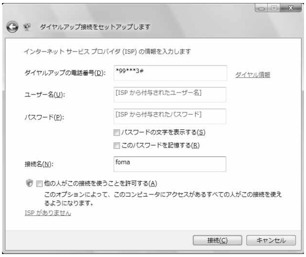
2 Click [接続またはネットワークをセットアップします] (Set up a connection or network).

- The connect to a network screen appears.

3 Click [ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします] (Set up a dial-up connection) → [次へ] (Next).

- For Bluetooth connection, select the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)].
- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, [どのモデムを使いますか？] (Which modem do you want to use?) appears. Select [FOMA SH906i].
- The set up a dial-up connection screen appears.

4 Enter the host number in the [ダイヤルアップの電話番号] (Dial-up phone number) field and a connection name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field, and then click [接続] (Connect).



インターネット サービス プロバイダ (ISP) の情報を入力します

ダイヤルアップの電話番号(D): *99***3#

ユーザー名(U): [ISP から付与されたユーザー名]

パスワード(P): [ISP から付与されたパスワード]

□ パスワードの文字を表示する(S)

□ このパスワードを記憶する(R)

接続名(N): foma

□ 他の人がこの接続を使うことを許可する(A)

このオプションによって、このコンピュータにアクセスがあるすべての人がこの接続を使えるようになります。

- To connect to <cid>=3 (mopera U), enter "*99***3#" in the [ダイヤルアップの電話番号] (Dial-up phone number) field.
- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.

5 When [(接続名) に接続中] (Connecting to (Connection name)) appears, click [スキップ] (Skip).

- Only confirming the settings without actually connecting.
- If [スキップ] (Skip) is not clicked, the network is connected to the Internet.

6 Click [接続をセットアップします] (Set up a connection), and click [閉じる] (Close).

7 Click [スタート] (Start) → [ネットワーク] (Networking), and then click [ネットワークと共有センター] (Network and sharing center) → [ネットワーク接続の管理] (Manage network connections).

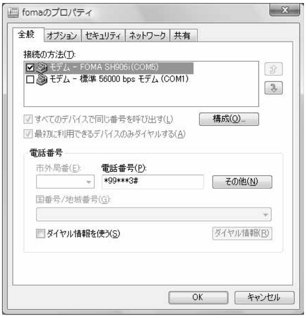
- The network connections screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

8 Select and right-click the icon for host created and select [プロパティ] (Properties).

- Properties screen appears.

9 Confirm all the settings in the [全般] (General) tab.



接続の方法(T):

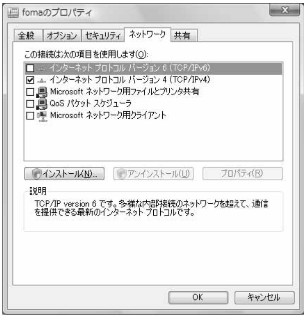
☑ モデム - FOMA SH906i (COM5)
☐ モデム - 標準 56000 bps モデム (COM1)

☑ すべてのデバイスで同じ番号を呼び出す(L)
☑ 最初に利用できるデバイスのみダイヤルする(A)

電話番号
市外局番(E):
電話番号(P): *99***3#
国番号/地域番号(G):
☐ ダイヤル情報を使う(S)

- When two or more modems are connected to the PC
  - ■ For FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02: Make sure that [FOMA SH906i] in [接続の方法] (Connection method) shows ☑. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than [FOMA SH906i], change ☑ to ☐.
  - ■ For Bluetooth connection: Make sure that the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)] in [接続の方法] (Connection method) shows ☑. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)], change ☑ to ☐.
- Confirm that [ダイヤル情報を使う] (Use dialing rules) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.

10 Click the [ネットワーク] (Networking) tab and confirm all settings.



この接続は次の項目を使用します(O):

☐ インターネット プロトコル バージョン 6 (TCP/IPv6)
☑ インターネット プロトコル バージョン 4 (TCP/IPv4)
☐ Microsoft ネットワーク用ファイルとプリンタ共有
☐ QoS パケット スケジューラ
☐ Microsoft ネットワーク用クライアント

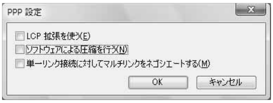
説明
TCP/IP version 6 です。多様な内部接続のネットワークを超えて、通信を提供できる最新のインターネット プロトコルです。

- In the [この接続は次の項目を使用します] (Components checked are used by this connection) field, ☑ should appear only for [インターネットプロトコルバージョン４ (TCP/IPv4)] (Internet protocol version 4 (TCP/IPv4)). Set [QoS パケットスケジューラ] (QoS packet scheduler) according to the instructions of the provider.

11 Click the [オプション] (Option) tab and click [PPP設定] (PPP setting).

- The PPP setting screen appears.

12 Check all options to show ☐ and click [OK].



☐ LCP 拡張を使う(E)
☐ ソフトウェアによる圧縮を行う(N)
☐ 単一リンク接続に対してマルチリンクをネゴシエートする(M)

- The option setting screen reappears.

13 Click [OK].

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 27 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

Setting a dial-up network on Windows 2000

On Windows 2000, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to mopera U,
the DoCoMo Internet connection
service

- Subscription to mopera U requires a charge.

1 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [プログラム] (Programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続] (Network and dial-up connections).

- The network and dial-up connections screen appears.

2 Double-click the [新しい接続の作成] (Create new connection) icon.

- The location information screen appears.
- This screen appears the first time the [新しい接続の作成] (Create new connection) icon is double-clicked.
  For the second and subsequent times, proceed to step 5.

3 Enter [市外局番] (Area code) and click [OK].

- The phone and modem options screen appears.

4 Click [OK].

- A network connection wizard screen appears.

5 Click [次へ] (Next).

- The screen to select network connection type appears.

6 Select [インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する] (Dial-up to the Internet) and click [次へ] (Next).

- A wizard startup screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

7 Select [インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します] (Connect to Internet manually or through local area network (LAN)) and click [次へ] (Next).

- The screen to select the Internet appears.

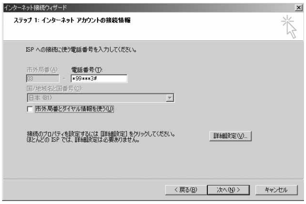
8 Select [電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します] (Connect through phone line and modem) and click [次へ] (Next).

- The screen to specify the modem appears.

9 Confirm that [FOMA SH906i] is set in [インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する] (Select modem to use to connect to the Internet) and click [次へ] (Next).

- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- Set to [FOMA SH906i] if not set.
- For Bluetooth connection, set the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)].
- The screen appears only when multiple modems are installed.

10 Enter the host number in the [電話番号] (Phone number) field and click [詳細設定] (Advanced).


インターネット接続ウィザード
ステップ 1: インターネット アカウントの接続情報
市外局番(A):
国/地域名と国番号(C):
詳細設定(V)...
< 戻る(B)
次へ(N) >
キャンセル

ISP への接続に使う電話番号を入力してください。

市外局番(A): 03 - 電話番号(T): *99***3#

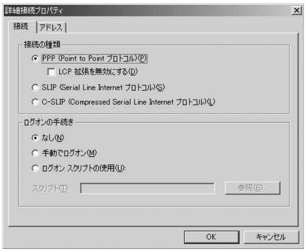
国/地域名と国番号(C): 日本 (81)

□ 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う(U)

接続のプロパティを設定するには [詳細設定] をクリックしてください。
ほとんどの ISP では、詳細設定は必要ありません。

- Advanced connection properties screen appears.
- Confirm that [市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う] (Use area code and dial-up information) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.

11 Confirm that all settings in the [接続] (Connection) tab are set as shown in the example screen below.



接続の種類

● PPP (Point to Point プロトコル)(P)

□ LCP 拡張を無効にする(D)

○ SLIP (Serial Line Internet プロトコル)(S)

○ C-SLIP (Compressed Serial Line Internet プロトコル)(L)

ログオンの手続き

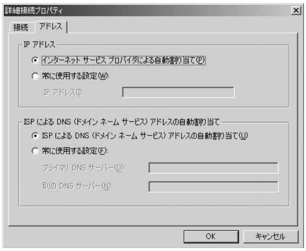
● なし(N)

○ 手動でログオン(M)

○ ログオン スクリプトの使用(U):

スクリプト(T):

12 Click the [アドレス] (Addresses) tab and confirm that all settings are set as shown in the example screen below.



IP アドレス

● インターネット サービス プロバイダによる自動割り当て(P)

○ 常に使用する設定(W):

IP アドレス(I):

ISP による DNS (ドメイン ネーム サービス) アドレスの自動割り当て

● ISP による DNS (ドメイン ネーム サービス) アドレスの自動割り当て(U)

○ 常に使用する設定(F):

プライマリ DNS サーバー(D):

別の DNS サーバー(N):

- For TCP/IP settings used for connecting to an Internet service provider, confirm with the Internet service provider or network administrator.

13 Click [OK].

- The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

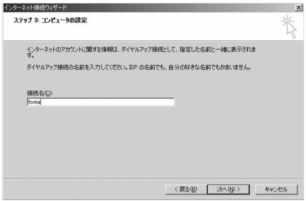
14 Click [次へ] (Next).

- The Internet account login information screen appears.

15 Confirm all settings and click [次へ] (Next).

- The PC configuration screen appears.
- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect. When [次へ] (Next) is clicked with [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) left blank, a confirmation screen appears for the each of them. Click [はい] (Yes).
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) fields.

16 Enter a connection name in the [接続名] (Connection name) field and click [次へ] (Next).



インターネットのアカウントに関する情報は、ダイヤルアップ接続として、指定した名前と一緒に表示されます。

ダイヤルアップ接続の名前を入力してください。ISP の名前でも、自分の好きな名前でもかまいません。

接続名(C): foma

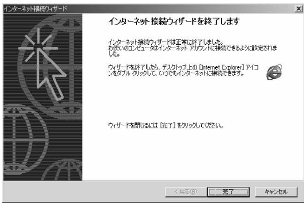
- The e-mail account configuration screen appears.

Continued on next page ▶▶

17 Select [いいえ] (No) and click [次へ] (Next).

- An Internet connection wizard completed screen appears.

18 Click [完了] (Finish).



インターネット接続ウィザードを終了します

インターネット接続ウィザードは正常に終了しました。
お使いのコンピュータはインターネット アカウントに接続できるように設定されました。

ウィザードを終了したら、デスクトップ上の [Internet Explorer] アイコンをダブル クリックして、いつでもインターネットに接続できます。

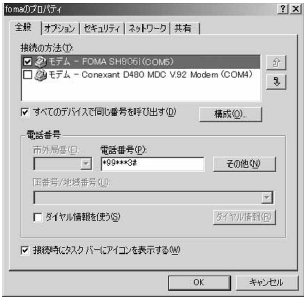
ウィザードを閉じるには [完了] をクリックしてください。

- The network and dial-up connections screen reappears.

19 Select the icon for host created and select [プロパティ] (Properties) from the [ファイル] (File) menu.

- Properties screen for the host appears.

20 Confirm all the settings in the [全般] (General) tab.



接続の方法(T):
☑ モデム – FOMA SH906i (COM5)
☐ モデム – Conexant D480 MDC V.92 Modem (COM4)

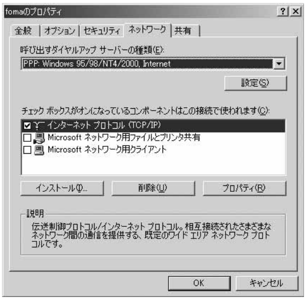
☑ すべてのデバイスで同じ番号を呼び出す(D)

電話番号
市外局番(E):
電話番号(P): *99***3#
国番号/地域番号(U):
☐ ダイヤル情報を使う(S)

☑ 接続時にタスク バーにアイコンを表示する(W)

- When two or more modems are connected to the PC
  - For FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02: Make sure that [FOMA SH906i] in [接続の方法] (Connection method) shows ☑. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than [FOMA SH906i], change ☑ to ☐.
  - For Bluetooth connection: Make sure that the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)] in [接続の方法] (Connection method) shows ☑. When ☐ appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than the [(in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem)] or [(Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker)], change ☑ to ☐.
- Confirm that [ダイヤル情報を使う] (Use dialing rules) shows ☐. When ☑ appears instead, change to ☐.

21 Click the [ネットワーク] (Networking) tab and check all the settings.



呼び出すダイヤルアップ サーバーの種類(E):
PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet

チェック ボックスがオンになっているコンポーネントはこの接続で使われます(C):
☑ インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)
☐ Microsoft ネットワーク用ファイルとプリンタ共有
☐ Microsoft ネットワーク用クライアント

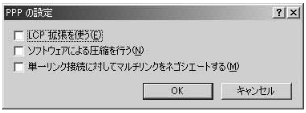
説明
伝送制御プロトコル/インターネット プロトコル。相互接続されたさまざまなネットワーク間の通信を提供する、既定のワイド エリア ネットワーク プロトコルです。

- Set [呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類] (Type of dial-up server to call) to [PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet].
- Only [インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)] (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) should show ☑.

22 Click [設定] (Settings).

- The PPP setting screen appears.

23 Check all options to show ☐ and click [OK].



☐ LCP 拡張を使う(E)
☐ ソフトウェアによる圧縮を行う(N)
☐ 単一リンク接続に対してマルチリンクをネゴシエートする(M)

- Properties screen of the host reappears.

24 Click [OK].

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 27 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

Connecting to the dial-up network

Example: Connecting to the dial-up network via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 on Windows XP

- The screens are different for Windows Vista and Windows 2000.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.

2 Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [すべてのプログラム] (All programs) → [アクセサリ] (Accessories) → [通信] (Communications) → [ネットワーク接続] (Network connections).

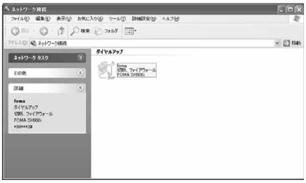
- The dial-up network screen appears.

For Windows Vista

- Click [スタート] (Start) menu → [接続先] (Connect to).

Continued on next page ▶▶

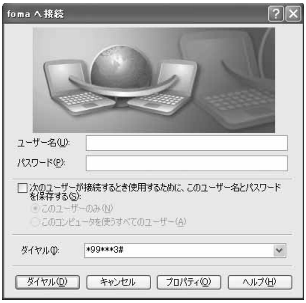
3 Double-click the connection icon.



foma
ダイヤルアップ
切断、ファイアウォール
FOMA SH906i
*99***3#

- The connection screen appears.
- Alternatively, select the host icon and then select [接続] (Connect) in the [ファイル] (File) menu to display the connection screen.

4 Confirm the settings and click [ダイヤル] (Dial-up).



ユーザー名(U):
パスワード(P):
☐ 次のユーザーが接続するとき使用するために、このユーザー名とパスワードを保存する(S):
● このユーザーのみ(N)
○ このコンピュータを使うすべてのユーザー(A)
ダイヤル(I): *99***3#
ダイヤル(D)

- The FOMA is connected to the host.
- The phone number set in “Setting the dial-up network” (☞P. 22) appears in the [ダイヤル] (Dial-up) field.
- When using mopera U or mopera, [ユーザー名] (User name) and [パスワード] (Password) can be left blank to connect.

Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

1 Click in the task tray and click [切断] (Disconnect).

- The connection is disconnected.

For Windows Vista

- Click in the task tray → [接続または切断...] (Connect or disconnect), and double-click the disconnection icon.

Sending and receiving data (OBEX™ communication)

Sending/Receiving FOMA terminal data to/from a PC

- The FOMA terminal has OBEX™ function as a data communication protocol. Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC via FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately), and the data communication (data communication with OBEX™ communication) enables sending and receiving phonebook, owner information from the own number screen, schedule, sent mail (including SMS), received mail (including SMS), unsent mail (including SMS), Area mail, text memos, melodies, My picture, i-motion, My Documents, bookmark, ToruCa, and location service client data.
- Use the following three types of data communication with the FOMA terminal.
  - ■ Send data one item at a time from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write 1)
  - ■ Send data in bulk from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write all)
  - ■ Send data in bulk from a FOMA terminal to a PC (Read all)
- During data communication, the handset will be outside the service area, and functions such as voice/Videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, packet transmission, and PushTalk will not be available.
- Even after completion of data communication, 圏外 (outside the service area) may be displayed for a short time.

Note

- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Check the PC power supply as well. If not turned on, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Perform data communication with the FOMA terminal in stand-by. When movie/i-motion is set as the stand-by display, stop movie/i-motion playback before performing data communication.
- During communication (voice/Videophone call, data communication, and PushTalk), data cannot be sent or received. Also, when sending and receiving data, other data communication cannot be performed. However, receiving a call, right after data communication has begun, may be possible. In such cases, the sending or receiving of data is canceled.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent.

Continued on next page ▶▶

Note

- Mail with i-αppli start up designations can be sent after attached data has been deleted.
- Mail attachment data exceeding 100 KB (including the message text) are deleted and only message is sent.
- Data such as phonebook entries cannot be sent or received while All lock is set. Data of locked functions cannot be received while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Depending on data size, data communication may take some time. In addition, the FOMA terminal may not be able to receive data due to data size.
- When receiving phonebook data, data will be added from memory number [010] for single entry, or in accordance with memory number information when receiving all entries.
- When receiving all phonebook entries, Owner information (excluding first phone number) registered in Own number will be overwritten.
- Phonebook entries are sent in memory number order.
- When sending all phonebook entries, Owner information from own number screen is also sent.
- PDF files which exceed 2 MB cannot be sent.
- Alternatively, send and receive data (OBEX) with the following methods.
  - ■ Ir exchange
  - ■ iC transmission
  - ■ microSD Card
  - ■ Bluetooth communication

Devices required for data communication (OBEX™ communication)

- To perform data communication, downloading data transfer software complied with OBEX™ standard from the Internet, and installing this software to your PC is necessary. Refer to the software manual for information on operating environment and installation methods. In addition, installation of the FOMA communication setting file (☞P. 4 to P. 6) is necessary beforehand.
- A FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 is required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Note

- The FOMA terminal data communication (OBEX™ communication) function complies with IrMC™ 1.1 standard. However, depending on the application, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC™ 1.1 standard.

Sending single data item (Write 1)

- Send data from a PC to a FOMA terminal one item at a time.
- Sending one item at a time from a FOMA terminal to a PC is not possible.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

1 Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Write 1).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.

Note

- When phonebook data is sent (from a PC to the FOMA terminal handset) one entry at a time, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number from [010] to [999]. If all memory numbers from [010] to [999] are already used, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number between [000] and [009].
- When phonebook data is received and 1,000 entries (names, phone numbers, or mail addresses) are already registered, or more than 1,000 entries have been registered, a message appears notifying that no further entries can be saved.

Sending all data (Write all/Read all)

- Write and read all data at once, between a PC and the FOMA terminal.
- “Write all” and “Read all” operations require data transfer software and your FOMA terminal authentication password.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

1 Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Forward all).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.
- Entering your authentication password on the PC will be necessary.
- Enter your authentication password (four digits).

2 Enter the terminal security code (four to eight digits) and the authentication password (four digits).

3 Start data transmission.

Note

- Performing Write all from a PC to your FOMA terminal replaces all data stored in the FOMA terminal. All data previously stored in your FOMA terminal will be deleted. This includes phonebook, schedule, and protected mail data saved as secret data.
- If an error occurs during data transmission from a PC to the FOMA terminal, all data stored in the FOMA terminal may be deleted. Check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal battery level, and the PC power supply before performing Write all. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Depending on the connected device, the transmission status (bar display) may not appear.

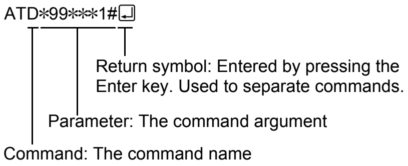
AT command list

AT commands

AT commands are commands used to set the FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations.

AT command input format

AT commands must always start with “AT”. Enter in single-byte alphanumeric characters. Below is an input example.



```
ATD∗99∗∗∗1#↵
```

Return symbol: Entered by pressing the Enter key. Used to separate commands.

Parameter: The command argument

Command: The command name

Each AT command including parameter (number or symbol) following the command must be entered on a single line. A single line means the characters from the first character until the character directly before the ↵ is pressed. Up to 160 characters (including “AT”) can be entered.

AT command input modes

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to terminal mode. In terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate the FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode
  The FOMA terminal is in stand-by. Normally, this mode is used to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.
- Online data mode
  The FOMA terminal is connected and performing data communication. When an AT command is entered in this mode, the characters are sent directly to the receiver, and may cause the receiver’s modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands in this mode.
- Online command mode
  Even when the FOMA terminal is connected and performing communication, with special operations, operation by AT commands is possible. When in this mode, AT commands are executed while remaining connected to the receiver, and communications can be resumed after the operation is completed.

Note

- Terminal mode enables a single PC to operate like a communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

Switching between online data mode and online command mode

Use either of the following methods to switch the FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode.

- Enter “+++” command, or enter the set code in the “S2” register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set to “AT&D1”.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter “ATO↵”.

* USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, enabling RS-232C signal line control by the communication application.

AT command list

[M]: AT commands that can be used with the FOMA SH906i Modem Port.

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example
AT [M]	—	The modem function of the FOMA terminal can be controlled by adding commands in the list to the end of this command. ※ Returns OK if only AT is entered.	AT⏎ OK
AT%V [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT%V⏎ Ver1.00 OK
AT&C<n> [M]	Sets operating condition for circuit CD (DCD) signals sent to DTE.*1	n=0: Circuit CD always ON n=1: Circuit CD signal changes according to line connection status (default setting) When “&C1” is set, the CD signal is turned “ON” directly before the CONNECT signal is sent when connection is completed. The CD signal is turned “OFF” right before “NO CARRIER” is sent when the circuit is disconnected.	AT&C1⏎ OK
AT&D<n> [M]	Sets the operation when the circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE changes from “ON” to “OFF” during online data mode.*1	n=0: Ignores status (always considers signal ON) n=1: Sets online command mode when signal changes from ON to OFF n=2: Disconnects line and activates offline mode when signal changes from ON to OFF (default setting)	AT&D1⏎ OK
AT&E<n> [M]	Selects speed display specifications when connecting.*1	n=0: Wireless area transmission speed appears n=1: DTE serial transmission speed appears. (Default setting)	AT&E0⏎ OK
AT&F<n> [M]	Resets the FOMA terminal’s AT command settings to their default settings. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected.*2	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted)	AT&F⏎ OK
AT&S<n> [M]	Controls when the signal of data set ready (DR) is set to DTE.*1	n=0: Always ON (default setting) n=1: DR signal ON when line is connected	AT&S0⏎ OK
AT&W<n> [M]	Stores the current settings in the FOMA terminal’s memory.*2, 5	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted)	AT&W⏎ OK
AT∗DANTE [M]	Displays the reception status of the FOMA terminal.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. ∗DANTE:<m> <m> 0: Status where outside the service area appears on the FOMA terminal 1: Status where zero or one antenna appears on the FOMA terminal 2: Status where two antennas appears on the FOMA terminal 3: Status where three antennas appears on the FOMA terminal	AT∗DANTE⏎ ∗DANTE:3 OK
AT∗DGANSM=<n> [M]	Sets Accept/Reject call modes for incoming packet communications. This setting is only valid for incoming packet communications after entering setup commands.*2	n=0: Sets Reject call and Accept call settings to [OFF] (Default setting) n=1: Sets Reject call settings to [ON] n=2: Sets Accept call settings to [ON]	AT∗DGANSM=0⏎ OK AT∗DGANSM?⏎ ∗DGANSM:0 OK

AT∗DGAPL=<n>[,<cid>]
[M]
	Sets host (APN) to accept transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by “+CGDCONT”.*2	Adds or deletes from Accept calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> to or from list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with “+CGDCONT” to (from) list with this command.
		n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Accept calls list)
		n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Accept calls list)
			AT∗DGAPL=0,1⏎
			OK
			AT∗DGAPL?⏎
			∗DGAPL:1
			
			OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example

AT*DGARL=<n>[,<cid>]
[M]
	Sets host (APN) to reject transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by “+CGDCONT”.*2	Adds or deletes from Reject calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> or from list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with “+CGDCONT” to (from) list with this command.
		n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list)
		n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Reject calls list)
			AT*DGARL=0,1↵
			OK
			AT*DGARL?↵
			*DGARL:1
			
			OK

AT*DRPW [M]	Displays the reception power sent from FOMA terminal.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. *DRPW:<m> m: 0 to 75 (reception power)	AT*DRPW↵ *DRPW:0 OK
AT*DGPIR=<n> [M]	Setting this command is valid when establishing communication. Enables adding 186 (send caller ID) and 184 (not send caller ID) to host number. Also available in dial-up network settings.*2	n=0: When establishing packet transmission, connects to host (APN) directly (default setting) n=1: When establishing packet transmission, adds 184 and connects to host (APN) n=2: When establishing packet transmission, adds 186 and connects to host (APN) When 186 (send caller ID)/184 (not send caller ID) are set by this command and in the dial-up network settings, refer to the table on P. 21.	AT*DGPIR=0↵ OK AT*DGPIR?↵ *DGPIR:0 OK
+++ [M]	Switches the FOMA terminal mode from online data mode to online command mode. Escape guard interval is fixed at 1 second.*2	—	(During communication) +++ (Does not appear) OK
AT+CACM=[<passwd>] [M]	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM.*2	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM, if the password matches. <passwd>: SIM PIN2 ※ Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (“ ”) when entering.	AT+CACM=“0123”↵ OK
AT+CAOC=[<mode>] [M]	Inquires the current accumulated cost.*2	<mode> 0: Inquires the cost of current call The result from this command is in the following format. +CAOC:“<ccm>”	AT+CAOC↵ +CAOC:“00001E” OK
AT+CBC [M]	Inquires the battery status.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl> <bcs> 0: The battery operates the FOMA terminal 1: Charging the battery 2: The battery is unconnected 3: Reducing the power <bcl> 0 to 100 (remaining battery power)	AT+CBC↵ +CBC:0,80 OK
AT+CBST=[<speed>[,<name>[,<ce>]]] [M]	Sets the bearer service when establishing transmission. This setting is only valid when AT+FCLASS=<n> command (☞P. 35) = 0.*1	<speed> 116: 64K data communications (default setting) <name> 1: Fixed value <ce> 0: Fixed value	AT+CBST=116,1,0↵ OK
AT+CEER [M]	Displays disconnection reason for preceding communication session.*2	Refer to “Reasons for disconnection” (☞P. 39).	AT+CEER↵ +CEER:36 OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example
AT+CGDCONT [M]	Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.*2	Refer to “More on AT commands” (☞P. 39).	Refer to “More on AT commands” (☞P. 39).
AT+CGEQMIN [M]	Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from network when establishing packet transmission.*2	Refer to “More on AT commands” (☞P. 40).	Refer to “More on AT commands” (☞P. 40).
AT+CGEQREQ [M]	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested of network during packet transmission.*2	Refer to “More on AT commands” (☞P. 41).	Refer to “More on AT commands” (☞P. 41).
AT+CGMR [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT+CGMR↵ 1234567890123456 OK
AT+CGREG=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send network registration status. Service area information (inside/outside) is sent.*1	<n> 0: Does not set (default setting) 1: Sets When AT+CGREG=1 is set, information is sent in the format “+CGREG:<stat>”. 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CGREG=1↵ OK (Set to send) AT+CGREG?↵ +CGREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CGREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CGSN [M]	Displays the FOMA terminal’s serial number.*2	—	AT+CGSN↵ 123456789012345 OK
AT+CLIP=<n> [M]	Shows PC calling number when receiving 64K data communications.*1	<n> 0: Does not output results (default setting) 1: Outputs results Displays +CLIP:<n>,<m> for “AT+CLIP?”. <m> 0: NW setting to not send own number during transmissions 1: NW setting to send own number during transmissions 2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0↵ OK AT+CLIP?↵ +CLIP:0,1 OK
AT+CLIR=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send terminal’s phone number when establishing 64K data communications.*2	<n> 0: Follows the service agreement 1: Does not send 2: Sends (default setting) Displays +CLIR:<n>,<m> for AT+CLIR?. <m> 0: CLIR is not running (always send) 1: CLIR is always running (never send) 2: Unknown 3: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is Do not send) 4: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is Send)	AT+CLIR=0↵ OK AT+CLIR?↵ +CLIR:2,3 OK
AT+CDIP=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send an incoming sub-address. Also, check the status of Multi Number subscription. This command is the one that is activated when performing the data communication with USB. The command is not activated when performing the data communication using Bluetooth function.	<n> 0: Does not display sub-addresses (default setting) 1: Displays sub-addresses <m> 0: Multi Number is not subscribed 1: Subscribing Multi Number	AT+CDIP=0↵ OK AT+CDIP?↵ +CDIP:0,1 OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example
AT+CMEE=<n> [M]	Sets the manner to display FOMA terminal error reports.*1	Sets whether to display errors only as “ERROR”, or to display reason with text or numerical value. <n> 0: Displays “ERROR” and no result codes (default setting) 1: Displays result codes with numerical values 2: Displays result codes with text When reports are set to display by setting “n=1” or “n=2”, they are displayed in the following format: +CME ERROR:xxxx xxxx is a numerical value or text. Refer to “Error reports” (☞P. 39).	AT+CMEE=0↵ OK AT+CNUM↵ ERROR AT+CMEE=1↵ OK AT+CNUM↵ +CME ERROR:10
AT+CNUM [M]	Displays FOMA terminal phone number.*2	number: Phone number type : 129 or 145 129: Does not include + international access code 145: Includes + international access code	AT+CNUM↵ +CNUM:,“+819012345678”,145 OK
AT+COPS=[<mode>[,<format>[,<oper>]]] [M]	Selects a telecommunications carrier to be connected.*2	<mode> 0: Auto (Automatically searches network and switch telecommunications carriers) 1: Manual (Connects to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper>) 2: Cancels (disconnects) the connection to the telecommunications carrier ※ Unsupported. 3: Does not make mapping 4: Manual auto (Performs “Auto” processing if not connected to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper>) ※ Unsupported. <format> 2: Fixed value <oper> is indicated by a hexadecimal number consisting of a country code (MCC) and a network code (MNC). The formats are shown below. Digit 1 of MCC...octet 1 bits 1 to 4. Digit 2 of MCC...octet 1 bits 5 to 8. Digit 3 of MCC...octet 2 bits 1 to 4. Digit 3 of MNC...octet 2 bits 5 to 8. Digit 2 of MNC...octet 3 bits 5 to 8. Digit 1 of MNC...octet 3 bits 1 to 4.	AT+COPS=1,2,“44F001”↵ OK (Connects to MCC:440MNC:10)
AT+CPAS [M]	Inquires the activity status of the FOMA terminal.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. +CPAS:<pas> <pas> 0: AT commands can be sent/received 1: AT commands cannot be sent/received (does not send the +CPAS:1 result) 2: Unknown 3: AT commands can be sent/received and the FOMA terminal is receiving a call 4: AT commands can be sent/received and performing data communication	AT+CPAS↵ +CPAS:0 OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example
AT+CPIN=<pin>[,<newpin>] [M]	Enters the UIM password (PIN1, PIN2).*2	<pin> Enters PIN1 while waiting for PIN1 input (Enter <pin> parameter only) Enters PIN2 while waiting for PIN2 input (Enter <pin> parameter only) Enters PUK1 while waiting for PUK1 input Enters PUK2 while waiting for PUK2 input ※ Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering. <newpin> Enters a new PIN1 while waiting for PUK1 input Enters a new PIN2 while waiting for PUK2 input ※ Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering.	AT+CPIN?↵ +CPIN:SIM PIN1 OK (Indicates waiting status for PIN1 input) AT+CPIN="1234"↵ OK AT+CPIN?↵ +CPIN:SIM PUK1 OK (Indicates waiting status for PUK1 input) AT+CPIN="12345678","1234"↵ OK
AT+CR=<mode> [M]	Sets whether to display packet transmission/64K data communications before "CONNECT" result code is displayed during line connection.*1 "GPRS" is displayed for packet transmission, and "SYNC" is displayed for 64K data communications.	<mode> 0: Does not display when line is connected (default setting) 1: Displays when line is connected	AT+CR=1↵ OK ATD*99***1# +CR:GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC=<n> [M]	Sets to use extended results code at reception.*1	n=0: Does not use extended results code (default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes	AT+CRC=0↵ OK
AT+CREG=<n> [M]	Sets service area information on or off.*1	When AT+CREG=1 is set, information is set in the format "+CREG:<stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <n> 0: Does not send (default setting) 1: Sends <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CREG=1↵ OK (Set to send) AT+CREG?↵ +CREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CUSD=[<n>[,<str>[,<dcs>]]] [M]	Changes setting toward net for optional services, etc.*1	<n> 0: Answers without intermediate result (default setting) 1: Answers with intermediate result <str> Service code ※ Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]". <dcs> 0: Fixed value	AT+CUSD=0,"xxxxxx"↵ OK
AT+FCLASS=<n> [M]	Sets the mode.*1	<n> 0: Data (fixed value)	AT+FCLASS=0↵ OK
AT+GCAP [M]	Displays the ability list of the FOMA terminal.*2	—	AT+GCAP↵ +GCAP:+CGSM,+FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI [M]	Displays FOMA terminal maker name in single-byte alphanumeric characters.*2	—	AT+GMI↵ SHARP OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example
AT+GMM [M]	Displays abbreviated FOMA terminal product name (FOMA SH906i) in alphanumeric characters.*2	—	AT+GMM↵ FOMA SH906i OK
AT+GMR [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	—	AT+GMR↵ Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC=<n,m> [M]	Sets local flow control format between the PC and FOMA terminal.*1	DCE by DTE (<n>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting) DTE by DCE (<m>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting)	AT+IFC=2,2↵ OK
AT+WS46? [M]	Answers according to the 3G/GSM setting of the International roaming setting.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. <n> 12: GSM/GPRS mode 22: 3G mode 25: AUTO mode	AT+WS46?↵ 25 OK (AUTO mode)
A/ [M]	Performs the preceding executed command.*2	—	A/ OK
ATA [M]	Performs incoming process for packet or 64K data if entered when receiving the data.*2	Enter “ATA184↵” (arrival call action for anonymous call) or “ATA186↵” (arrival call action for identified call) while receiving packets.	RING ATA↵ CONNECT
ATD [M]	Establishes communication.*2, 3	● Packet transmission ATD∗99∗∗∗<cid>#↵ When ATD∗99# is entered: Uses <cid>=1 (default setting) (When <cid> is not entered, setting becomes <cid>=1). When syntax starting with ATD184∗99∗∗∗<cid># is entered: “184” is added to host (APN) defined by specified <cid> (Alternatively, “186” can be added by same operation to turn caller ID sending to ON). ● 64K data communications ATD [parameter] [phone number] ↵ Number cannot be dialed if characters other than 0 to 9, ∗, #, +, A, a, B, b, C, c, D, d, hyphens (-), spaces, T, t, P, p, !, W, w, @, or commas (,) are included. Characters highlighted with ▨ can be entered but are ignored during dialing.	ATD∗99∗∗∗1#↵ CONNECT
ATE<n> [M]	Sets whether the FOMA terminal returns echo of AT commands sent from the PC.*1	n=0: Does not return echo n=1: Returns echo (default setting) Normally, set to n=1. If the PC has an echo function, set to n=0.	ATE1↵ OK
ATH [M]	Disconnects line when entered during packet transmission or 64K data communications.*2	—	(During communication) +++ (Does not appear) OK ATH↵ NO CARRIER
ATI<n> [M]	Displays the verification code.*2	n=0: NTT DoCoMo n=1: Displays abbreviated product name (FOMA SH906i) n=2: Displays the product version in a format such as “VerX.XX” n=3: Displays each element of ACMP signals n=4: Displays details of the communication functions provided in the FOMA terminal	ATI0↵ NTT DoCoMo OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example
ATO [M]	Returns to online data mode from online command mode during communication.*2	—	ATO↵ CONNECT
ATQ<n> [M]	Sets whether to display result codes.*1	n=0: Displays result codes (default setting) n=1: Does not display result codes	ATQ0↵ OK
ATV<n> [M]	Sets manner of displaying result codes.*1	Displays all result codes with numbers or text. n=0: Displays result codes with numbers n=1: Displays result codes with text (default setting)	ATV1↵ OK
ATX<n> [M]	Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. Also detects busy tone or dial tone.*1	Busy tone detection: Sends BUSY response when number dialed is busy. Dial tone detection: Determines whether FOMA terminal is connected. Speed display: Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. n=0: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, no speed display n=1: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=2: No busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display n=3: Busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=4: Busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display (default setting)	ATX1↵ OK
ATZ<n> [M]	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings.*2, 4	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to the values set in non-volatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected. Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	(When online) ATZ↵ NO CARRIER (When offline) ATZ↵ OK
ATS0=<n> [M]	Sets number of rings before FOMA terminal automatically receives.*1	n=0: No automatic receiving (default setting) n=1 to 255: Automatically receives after sets number of rings	ATS0=0↵ OK
ATS2=<n> [M]	Sets the escape character.	n=0 to 127 (default setting: n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is disabled.	ATS2=43↵ OK ATS2?↵ 043 OK
ATS3=<n> [M]	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	Defines the character used to recognize the end of an AT command character string. Appended to the end of the echoed command character string and result code. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=13).	ATS3=13↵ OK ATS3?↵ 013 OK
ATS4=<n> [M]	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	Appended after the CR character, when result codes are displayed as text. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=10).	ATS4=10↵ OK ATS4?↵ 010 OK
ATS5=<n> [M]	Sets the backspace (BS) character.	When detected while entering an AT command, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=8).	ATS5=8↵ OK ATS5?↵ 008 OK
ATS6=<n> [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until dialing.	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 2 to 10 (default setting: n=5)	ATS6=10↵ OK
ATS8=<n> [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until comma dialing.	Sets a register but does not affect the pause time (3 seconds). n=0: Does not pause n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=3)	ATS8=3↵ OK

Continued on next page ▶▶

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution example
ATS10=<n> [M]	Sets the delay time (seconds) for automatic disconnection (1/10 seconds).*1	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=1)	ATS10=1↵ OK
ATS30=<n> [M]	Disconnects when no data is sent/received for at least this amount of time.	Only valid during 64K data communications. <n> is set in minutes. n: 0 to 255 (default setting: n=0) n=0 sets inactive timer off.	ATS30=3↵ OK

ATS103=<n>
[M]
	Sets delimiter used when adding an incoming sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications.
		n=0: *Asterisk
		n=1: /Slash (default setting)
		n=2: ¥Yen mark or backslash
			ATS103=0↵
			OK

ATS104=<n>
[M]
	Sets delimiter used when adding an outgoing sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications.
		n=0: #Pound sign
		n=1: %Percent symbol (default setting)
		n=2: &Ampersand
			ATS104=0↵
			OK

AT¥S
[M]
	Displays current command and S register settings.*2	—	AT¥S↵
			E1 Q0 V1 X4
			&C1 &D2 &S0
			&E1 ¥V0
			S000=000
			S002=043
			S003=013
			S004=010
			S005=008
			S006=005
			S007=060
			S008=003
			S010=001
			S030=000
			S103=001
			S104=001
			
			OK

AT¥V<n> [M]	Selects response code type used during connection.*1	Only valid when the ATX<n> command (☞P. 37) setting is not n=0. n=0: Does not use extended result codes (default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes	AT¥V1↵ OK

*1 Stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands.

*2 Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

*3 Perform Redial with ATDN↵ or ATDL↵.

*4 If the ATZ command is executed before the AT&W command is used, terminal settings return to last written memory, and prior changes are erased.

*5 Settings written into the FOMA terminal's memory using the AT&W command is stored as non-volatile data when power is turned off.

Reasons for disconnection

Packet transmissions

Value	Reason
27	Host (APN) does not exist, or was incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	No packet transmission subscription.
36	Disconnected properly.

64K data communications

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected properly.
17	Line busy.
18	Number was dialed, but no response received within specified time.
19	Dialed number is making a call.
21	Dialed number refused incoming call.
63	Network service or option is not valid.
65	Transmission capacity not provided was specified.
88	Dialed number of terminal with different terminal attribute, or call was received.

Error reports

Numerical display	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	FOMA card not inserted.
15	SIM wrong	A non-DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to FOMA card) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Password is incorrect.
100	unknown	Unknown error occurred.

More on AT commands

Command name: +CGDCONT=[parameter]

Overview

Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.
Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,“<PDP_type>”[,“<APN>”]]]↵

Parameter description

<cid>* : 1 to 10
<PDP_type>* : PPP or IP
<APN>* : Optional

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are ***mopera.ne.jp*** for <cid>=1 (<PDP_type> is “PPP”) and ***mopera.net*** for <cid>=3 (<PDP_type> is “IP”). Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10.
<APN> is a user-specified character string for each connection, indicating the host.

Execution example

Command when registering host (APN) name “abc” (for <cid>=2)

AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“abc”↵
OK

Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGDCONT=
Clears all <cid> settings. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.
AT+CGDCONT=<cid>
Clears specified <cid> setting. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.
AT+CGDCONT=?
Displays list of values that can be set.
AT+CGDCONT?
Displays current settings.

Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

Overview

Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.
Not stored in FOMA terminal’s memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

```
AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid> [,, <Maximum bitrate UL> [,
<Maximum bitrate DL>[,,,,<Maximum SDU size>]]]]⏎
```

Parameter description

<cid>* : 1 to 10
<Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial setting) or 384
<Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial setting) or 3648
<Maximum SDU size>*

When <PDP_type> is PPP with USB connection: 1502 (initial setting)
When <PDP_type> is IP with USB connection: 1500 (initial setting)
When <PDP_type> is PPP with Bluetooth connection: 10 (initial setting) to 1500 or 1502
When <PDP_type> is IP with Bluetooth connection: 10 (initial setting) to 1500

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are ***mopera.ne.jp*** for <cid>=1 and ***mopera.net*** for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10. [Maximum bitrate UL] and [Maximum bitrate DL] set the minimum uplink and downlink transmission speed (kbps) between the FOMA terminal and base station. When set to [None] (default setting), all speeds are permitted. However, when set to “384” and “3648”, connections established under these speeds are not permitted, so packet transmission connection may not be established. Set the maximum permitting SDU size for [Maximum SDU size]. Note that when “10 (initial setting) to 1500 or 1502” is set for Bluetooth connection, connections established under these values are not permitted, and packet transmission may not be connected. For USB connection, packet transmission can be connected regardless of the maximum permitting SDU size.

Execution examples

Setting (1) is the initial setting for all cid.

(1) Command permitting all uplink/downlink speeds (for <cid>=2)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=2⏎
OK
```

(2) Command permitting uplink speeds of 384 kbps, downlink speeds of 3,648 kbps, and maximum permitting SDU size 1500 (for <cid=3>)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,384,3648,,,,1500⏎
OK
```

(3) Command permitting uplink speeds of 384 kbps and all downlink speeds (for <cid>=4)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384⏎
OK
```

(4) Command permitting all uplink speeds and downlink speeds of 3,648 kbps (for <cid>=5)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,3648⏎
OK
```

Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGEQMIN=
Clears all <cid> settings.
AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>
Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.
AT+CGEQMIN=?
Displays list of values that can be set.
AT+CGEQMIN?
Displays current settings.

Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

Overview

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) required of the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.

Not stored in FOMA terminal’s memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

Syntax

```
AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid> [,<Traffic class> [,<Maximum bitrate UL> [,<Maximum bitrate DL> [,,,,<Maximum SDU size>]]]]]↵
```

Parameter description

This setting is assigned to each cid by default value.

<cid>✻: 1 to 10

<Traffic class>✻: 2 or 3
- 2: interactive (initial setting)
- 3: background

<Maximum bitrate UL>✻: None (initial setting) or 64 to 384

<Maximum bitrate DL>✻: None (initial setting) or 64 to 3648

However, even if the values of [Maximum bitrate UL] and [Maximum bitrate DL] are permitted level, they may be set to the values whose fractions were discarded.

<Maximum SDU size>✻
- When <PDP_type> is PPP with USB connection: 1502 (initial setting)
- When <PDP_type> is IP with USB connection: 1500 (initial setting)
- When <PDP_type> is PPP with Bluetooth connection: 10 to 1500 or 1502 (initial setting)
- When <PDP_type> is IP with Bluetooth connection: 10 to 1500 (initial setting)

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are ***mopera.ne.jp*** for <cid>=1 and ***mopera.net*** for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10.

Execution example

Setting (1) is set to each cid as initial setting.

(1) Command when requesting connection without setting uplink/downlink speeds (for <cid>=2, Traffic class=2)

```
AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK
```

(2) Command when requesting connection at uplink speeds of 384 kbps, downlink speeds of 3,648 kbps, and maximum permitting SDU size 1500 (for <cid>=3, Traffic class=2)

```
AT+CGEQREQ=3,2,384,3648,,,,1500
OK
```

(3) Command when requesting connection without setting uplink speeds of 384 kbps or downlink speeds (for <cid>=4, Traffic class=2)

```
AT+CGEQREQ=4,2,384
OK
```

(4) Command when requesting connection at downlink speeds of 3,648 kbps without setting uplink speeds (for <cid>=5, Traffic class=2)

```
AT+CGEQREQ=5,2,,3648
OK
```

Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> settings to default settings.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQREQ?

Displays current settings.

Result codes

Result codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected to number dialed.
2	RING	Call detected.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not accepted.
6	NO DIAL TONE	No dial tone detected.
7	BUSY	Detecting busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. The server connection timed out.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redial restricted.

Extended result codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 1,200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 2,400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 4,800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 7,200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 9,600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 14,400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 19,200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 38,400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 57,600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 115,200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 230,400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 460,800 bps.

Note

- When n=1 is set for the ATV<n> command (☞P. 37), result codes are displayed as text (default setting). When set to n=0, they are displayed as numerical values.
- Transmission speed is displayed to maintain compatibility with conventional modems connected by RS-232C. However, since the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (sold separately) or Bluetooth function, the displayed speed will differ from the actual speed of connection.

Note

- When [RESTRICTION] (Number: 100) appears, the transmission network is congested. Try connecting again later.

Communication protocol result codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connected with 64K data communications
5	PACKET	Connected with packet transmission

Result code display examples

When ATX0 is set

The CONNECT display appears only when connection is completed, regardless of the AT¥V<n> command (☞P. 38) setting.

Text display example:

ATD*99***1#
CONNECT

Numerical display example:

ATD*99***1#
1

When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1 and AT¥V0 are set (initial value)

When connection is completed, CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> appears in the syntax.

Text display example:

ATD*99***1#
CONNECT 460800

Numerical display example:

ATD*99***1#
1 21

- When ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set*

When connection is completed, the information below appears in the syntax.

CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> PACKET <host (APN)>/<maximum uplink speed (FOMA terminal to mobile network base station)>/<maximum downlink speed (mobile network base station to FOMA terminal)>

Text display example:

ATD*99***1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/384/3648
(Indicates terminal connected to ***mopera.ne.jp***, at maximum uplink speed of 384 kbps and maximum downlink speed of 3,648 kbps)

Numerical display example:

ATD*99***1#
1 21 5

* Dial-up connection may not be processed correctly when ATX1 and AT¥V1 are simultaneously set. Using only AT¥V0 is recommended.

Kuten Code List

’08.4 (1st Edition)

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a particular character.
  Refer to “Inputting Kuten Code” of the user’s guide for details.
- If an unregistered kuten code is entered, either a space or nothing will be entered.
- Some entries in the kuten code list may differ from on the screen.

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(スペース)	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	‘	’
014	“	”	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	＄	￠	￡	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020		◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
027	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
028			Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶
029					◯					
031							0	1	2	3
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				
033				A	B	C	D	E	F	G
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	
036						a	b	c	d	e
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y
039	z									
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ	て	で
044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ
045	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ
046	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ
047	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ
048	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん						
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ
054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ
055	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ
056	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ
057	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ
058	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ			
060		Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι
061	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ
062	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080		─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳
082	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰
083	┥	┸	╂							
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ		㍉	㌔	㌢	㍍	㌘	㌧	㌃	㌶
134	㍑	㍗	㌍	㌦	㌣	㌫	㍊	㌻	㎜	㎝
135	㎞	㎎	㎏	㏄	㎡					
136				㍻	〝	〟	№	㏍	℡	㊤
137	㊥	㊦	㊧	㊨	㈱	㈲	㈹	㍾	㍽	㍼
138	≒	≡	∫	∮	∑	√	⊥	∠	∟	⊿
139	∵	∩	∪							
						あ				
160		亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏								
						い				
164			以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170		院	陰	隠	韻	吋				
						う				
170							右	宇	烏	羽
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲							
						え				
173				荏	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩			
						お				
178								於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音		
						か				
182									下	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬
193	馨	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓
194	拡	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角
195	赫	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額
196	顎	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝
197	恰	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹
198	叶	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌
199	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱					
200		粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊
201	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干
202	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環	甘	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	艦	莞	観
205	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願					
						き				
207						企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸	漁
219	禦	魚	亨	享	京					
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狂	狭	矯	胸	脅	興
223	蕎	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	
						く				
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					
230		掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈	粂
231	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍
232	郡									
						け				
232		卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩	掲
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙	桁
237	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月	件
238	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	拳	捲					
240		検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺	限					
						こ				
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
247	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
248	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功
249	効	勾	厚	口	向					
250		后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工
251	巧	巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗
252	拘	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構
253	江	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠
254	紅	紘	絞	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏
255	航	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱
256	砿	鋼	閤	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫
257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
258	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
259	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
260		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
261	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	
						さ				
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			
						し				
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280		次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而
281	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺
282	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉
283	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝
284	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮
285	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺
286	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱
287	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種
288	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹
289	綬	需	囚	収	周					
290		宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋
291	終	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴
292	輯	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十
293	従	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔
294	夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術
295	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循
296	旬	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵
297	醇	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒
298	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐
299	恕	鋤	除	傷	償					
300		勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
301	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠
302	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶
303	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦
304	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧
305	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔
306	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上
307	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常
308	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
309	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾					
310		拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食
311	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審
312	心	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申
313	疹	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診
314	身	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬
315	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		
						す				
315									笥	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
319	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾					
320		澄	摺	寸						
						せ				
320					世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎
329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線					
330		繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎					
						そ				
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜
						た				
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350		叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿
351	棚	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦
352	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					
						ち				
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯
359	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵					
360		帖	帳	庁	弔	張	彫	徴	懲	挑
361	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	聴	脹	腸	蝶
362	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長	頂	鳥	勅	捗
363	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮	陳			
						つ				
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	漬	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				
						て				
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
370		邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		
						と				
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380		董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	呑	曇	鈍						
						な				
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							
						に				
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
390		如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認		
						ぬ～の				
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					
						は				
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400		函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	
						ひ				
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410		鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
415	敏	瓶								
						ふ				
415			不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420		福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				
						へ				
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
					ほ					
426		保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430		法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						
					ま					
436					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	末	沫	迄	侭
439	繭	麿	万	慢	満					
440		漫	蔓							
					み					
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密
441	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	
					む					
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
					め					
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
					も					
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
					や					
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									
					ゆ					
449		愉	愈	油	癒					
450		諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
					よ					
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
					ら					
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
					り					
458									利	吏
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460		痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
					る～れ					
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
470		蓮	連	錬						
					ろ					
470					呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
					わ					
473				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								
476										
477										
478										
479										
480		弌	丐	丕	个	丱	丶	丼	丿	乂
481	乖	乘	亂	亅	豫	亊	舒	弍	于	亞
482	亟	亠	亢	亰	亳	亶	从	仍	仄	仆
483	仂	仗	仞	仭	仟	价	伉	佚	估	佛
484	佝	佗	佇	佶	侈	侏	侘	佻	佩	佰
485	侑	佯	來	侖	儘	俔	俟	俎	俘	俛
486	俑	俚	俐	俤	俥	倚	倨	倔	倪	倥
487	倅	伜	俶	倡	倩	倬	俾	俯	們	倆
488	偃	假	會	偕	偐	偈	做	偖	偬	偸
489	傀	傚	傅	傴	傲					
490		僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭	僣
491	僮	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔	儚
492	儡	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌	兔
493	兢	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册	冉
494	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩	冪
495	冫	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉	凛
496	几	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋	刔
497	刎	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剄	剋	剌
498	剞	剔	剪	剴	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍	劔
499	劒	剱	劈	劑	辨					
500		辧	劬	劭	劼	劵	勁	勍	勗	勞
501	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵	勸	勹	匆	匈
502	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚	匣	匯	匱	匳
503	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉	卍	凖	卞	卩
504	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖	厠	厦	厥	厮
505	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟	曼	燮	叮	叨
506	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听	吭	吼	吮	吶
507	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎	呟	呱	呷	呰
508	咒	呻	咀	呶	咄	咐	咆	哇	咢	咸
509	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨					
510		咫	哂	咤	咾	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏
511	唔	哽	哮	哭	哺	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌
512	售	啜	啅	啖	啗	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀
513	咯	喊	喟	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃
514	喩	喇	喨	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔
515	嘔	嗷	嘖	嗾	嗽	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營
516	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆
517	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥	嚮	嚶	嚴	囂
518	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈	囎	囑	囓	囗	囮
519	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉					
520		圈	國	圍	圓	團	圖	嗇	圜	圦
521	圷	圸	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡
522	坿	垉	垓	垠	垳	垤	垪	垰	埃	埆
523	埔	埒	埓	堊	埖	埣	堋	堙	堝	塲
524	堡	塢	塋	塰	毀	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹
525	墟	墫	墺	壞	墻	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑
526	壗	壙	壘	壥	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹
527	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬
528	夭	夲	夸	夾	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘
529	奢	奠	奧	奬	奩					
530		奸	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆	姨
531	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉	娚
532	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼	媾
533	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺	嫻
534	嬌	嬋	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃	孅
535	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥	孩	孰	孳	孵
536	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇	寉
537	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰	寶
538	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨	尸
539	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓					
540		屐	屏	孱	屬	屮	乢	屶	屹	岌
541	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶	岼	岷	峅	岾
542	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭	嶌	峪	崋	崕
543	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔	崢	崚	崙	崘
544	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳	嵶	嶇	嶄	嶂
545	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐	嶷	嶼	巉	巍
546	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已	巵	帋	帚	帙
547	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃	幀	幎	幗	幔

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit									
1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
548	幟	幢	幤	幇	幵	并	幺	麼	广	庠
549	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏					
550		廖	廣	廝	廚	廛	廢	廡	廨	廩
551	廬	廱	廳	廰	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝
552	彜	弋	弑	弖	弩	弭	弸	彁	彈	彌
553	彎	弯	彑	彖	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷
554	徃	徂	彿	徊	很	徑	徇	從	徙	徘
555	徠	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻	忤	忸	忱	忝
556	悳	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐	怩	怎	怱	怛
557	怕	怫	怦	怏	怺	恚	恁	恪	恷	恟
558	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫	恙
559	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚					
560		悄	悛	悖	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡	悸
561	惠	惓	悴	忰	悽	惆	悵	惘	慍	愕
562	愆	惶	惷	愀	惴	惺	愃	愡	惻	惱
563	愍	愎	慇	愾	愨	愧	慊	愿	愼	愬
564	愴	愽	慂	慄	慳	慷	慘	慙	慚	慫
565	慴	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖
566	憇	憬	憔	憚	憊	憑	憫	憮	懌	懊
567	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	憺	懋	罹	懍	懦
568	懣	懶	懺	懴	懿	懽	懼	懾	戀	戈
569	戉	戍	戌	戔	戛					
570		戞	戡	截	戮	戰	戲	戳	扁	扎
571	扞	扣	扛	扠	扨	扼	抂	抉	找	抒
572	抓	抖	拔	抃	抔	拗	拑	抻	拏	拿
573	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊	拂	拇	抛	拉
574	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈	拯	拵	捐	挾
575	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	掫	捶	掣	掏
576	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾	揩	揀	揆	揣
577	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆	搓	搦	搶
578	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪	撕
579	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼					
580		據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擘	擂	擱	擧
581	舉	擠	擡	抬	擣	擯	攬	擶	擴	擲
582	擺	攀	擽	攘	攜	攅	攤	攣	攫	攴
583	攵	攷	收	攸	畋	效	敖	敕	敍	敘
584	敞	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斟	斫
585	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旌	旒	旛	旙	无
586	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴
587	昜	晏	晄	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨
588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝
589	曁	暹	曉	暾	暼					
590		曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	昿	曦	曩	曰
591	曵	曷	朏	朖	朞	朦	朧	霸	朮	朿
592	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣	杤
593	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡	枅
594	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞	柝
595	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框	栩
596	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桷	桿
597	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹	桴
598	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈	棘
599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍					
600		棔	棧	棕	椶	椒	椄	棗	棣	椥
601	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣	椡	棆	楹
602	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾	楮	椹	楴	椽
603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨	槊	槝	榻	槃
605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
606	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	橲
608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
610		檗	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞
611	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒
612	欖	鬱	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃
613	歉	歐	歙	歔	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿
614	殀	殄	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫
615	殯	殲	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟
616	毬	毫	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤
617	氣	汞	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛
618	汾	汨	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗
619	泅	泝	沮	沱	沾					
620		沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶	洫
621	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓	浤

Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
622	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕	渊
623	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨	淒
624	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮	渮
625	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍	渟
626	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪	溘
627	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕	溏
628	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾	漿
629	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌					
630		漾	漓	滷	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀	潯
631	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂	潦
632	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕	濬
633	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑	瀁
634	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾
635	瀲	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸	炳
636	炮	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙	煥
637	煕	熈	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	熕	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燬	燧	燵	燼					
640		燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨	爭	爬	爰
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牆	牋	牘	牴	牾
642	犂	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犹	犲	狃
643	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠	狡	狹	狷	倏
644	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴	猯	猩	猥	猾
645	獎	獏	默	獗	獪	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻
646	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀	珥	珮	珞	璢
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙
648	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪	瑶	瑾	璋	璞
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650		瓠	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸
651	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞
652	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊	畉	畛	畆	畚
653	畩	畤	畧	畫	畭	畸	當	疆	疇	畴
654	疊	疉	疂	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳
655	痃	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙
656	痣	痞	痾	痿	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳
657	瘋	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴
658	瘰	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨
659	癩	癪	癧	癬	癰					
660		癲	癶	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎
661	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
664	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
665	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬					
670		磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙	礬
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穗	穉	穡
675	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕	窘
676	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃	竇
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笶	筐					
680		筺	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅	筵	筥	筴
681	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箚	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	篩	簑	簔	篦	篥	籠	簀
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籤	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690		紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	絏	絣
692	經	綉	絛	綏	絽	綛	綺	綮	綣	綵
693	緇	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰
694	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緡	縅	縊	縣
695	綷	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦	縻
696	縵	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繖	繞
697	繙	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕	繽
698	辮	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐	纓	纔	纖
699	纎	纛	纜	缸	缺					
700		罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
701	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
702	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膤
712	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾	膸	膽	臀
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘	臈	臚	臟
714	臠	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艀	艙	艘
716	艝	艚	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫	舮	艱
717	艷	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	苡
718	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹
719	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙					
720		茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅
721	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢	莖
722	茣	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉
723	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽	萃	菘	萋	菁
724	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢	萠	莽	萸	蔆
725	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄	葷	葫	蒭	葮
726	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	萵	蓊	葢	蒹
727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖
728	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	蔟	蔕	蔔
729	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈					
730		蕁	蘂	蕋	蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑	薊
731	薨	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐
732	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
735	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
736	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
737	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙					
740		蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢	螟	螂	螯	蟋
741	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻
742	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒
743	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻
744	衄	衂	衒	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾	袞
745	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮	袙	袢
746	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔	裘	裙
747	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄	褌	褊
748	褓	襃	褞	褥	褪	褫	襁	襄	褻	褶
749	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞					
750		襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃
751	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
752	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧	觴	觸
753	訃	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛
754	詒	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	誂	誄
755	誨	誡	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂
756	諚	諫	諳	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷
757	諞	諛	謌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎
759	證	譖	譛	譚	譫					
760		譟	譬	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒
761	讓	讖	讙	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊					
770		蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠	踪
771	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躄	躋
772	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躡	躬	躰	軆
773	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軻	軫
774	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛
775	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780		遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖	遘
781	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁	邀
782	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤	扈
783	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘	酣
784	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫	醯
785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐	釖
786	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔	鈬
787	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕	鈿
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790		錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠
791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗
792	鏨	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔
793	鐓	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐺	鑁
794	鑒	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵
795	鑷	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊
796	閔	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻
797	閹	閾	闊	濶	闃	闍	闌	闕	闔	闖
798	關	闡	闥	闢	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌
799	陏	陋	陷	陜	陞					
800		陝	陟	陦	陲	陬	隍	隘	隕	隗
801	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴	隶	隸	隹	雎
802	雋	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靱	靹	鞅	靼	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜	韭	齏	韲	竟
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頡	頷	頽	顆
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餒	餔	餘	餡	餝
812	餞	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饌	饕	馗	馘	馥	馭
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
825	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鴃	鴆	鴪	鴦	鶯	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕	鴒
829	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵆	鵈					
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶤	鶩	鶲	鷄	鷁	鶻
832	鶸	鶺	鷆	鷏	鷂	鷙	鷓	鷸	鷦	鷭
833	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁	麈
834	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸	麪
835	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點	黝
836	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼
837	黽	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒
838	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪	齷
839	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠					
840		堯	槇	遥	瑤	凜	熙			